

Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000, G1500, and F1500

SVOS RF 8.3

Provisioning Guide for Open Systems

This document describes and provides instructions for performing provisioning operations on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F1500 and Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1x00. The provisioning software includes LUN Manager, Virtual LUN, Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and Data Retention Utility.

© 2014, 2018 Hitachi, Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including copying and recording, or stored in a database or retrieval system for commercial purposes without the express written permission of Hitachi, Ltd., or Hitachi Vantara Corporation (collectively "Hitachi"). Licensee may make copies of the Materials provided that any such copy is: (i) created as an essential step in utilization of the Software as licensed and is used in no other manner; or (ii) used for archival purposes. Licensee may not make any other copies of the Materials. "Materials" mean text, data, photographs, graphics, audio, video and documents.

Hitachi reserves the right to make changes to this Material at any time without notice and assumes no responsibility for its use. The Materials contain the most current information available at the time of publication.

Some of the features described in the Materials might not be currently available. Refer to the most recent product announcement for information about feature and product availability, or contact Hitachi Vantara Corporation at https://support.hitachivantara.com/en_us/contact-us.html.

Notice: Hitachi products and services can be ordered only under the terms and conditions of the applicable Hitachi agreements. The use of Hitachi products is governed by the terms of your agreements with Hitachi Vantara Corporation.

By using this software, you agree that you are responsible for:

1. Acquiring the relevant consents as may be required under local privacy laws or otherwise from authorized employees and other individuals; and
2. Verifying that your data continues to be held, retrieved, deleted, or otherwise processed in accordance with relevant laws.

Notice on Export Controls. The technical data and technology inherent in this Document may be subject to U.S. export control laws, including the U.S. Export Administration Act and its associated regulations, and may be subject to export or import regulations in other countries. Reader agrees to comply strictly with all such regulations and acknowledges that Reader has the responsibility to obtain licenses to export, re-export, or import the Document and any Compliant Products.

Contents

Preface	18
Intended audience.....	18
Product version.....	18
Release notes.....	18
Changes in this revision.....	19
Referenced documents.....	19
Document conventions.....	19
Conventions for storage capacity values.....	20
Accessing product documentation.....	21
Getting help.....	22
Comments.....	22
Chapter 1: Introduction to provisioning	23
About provisioning.....	23
Key terms.....	23
Thin provisioning.....	25
About Dynamic Provisioning.....	25
Dynamic Provisioning concepts	26
Advantages of using Dynamic Provisioning	27
Storing Thin Image pair and snapshot data in a Dynamic Provisioning pool.....	28
About DP-VOLs with the data direct mapping attribute.....	29
Dynamic Provisioning high-level workflow.....	33
About pool volumes from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups.....	33
Accelerated compression-enabled parity groups.....	34
Pool auto expansion function.....	35
Storing data written to DP-VOLs.....	35
Monitoring used pool capacity and used pool capacity reserved for writing.....	35
Dynamic Tiering.....	37
Overview of tiers.....	38
Active flash	39
System requirements for provisioning	41
Shared memory requirements.....	42

Cache management device requirements.....	43
Calculating the number of cache management devices required for DP-VOLs.....	43
Resource access requirements for Device Manager - Storage Navigator operations.....	44
Access requirements for Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering....	44
Access requirements for Encryption License Key and FMD Encryption License Key.....	45
Access requirements for LUN Manager.....	46
Access requirements for Performance Monitor.....	49
Access requirements for ShadowImage.....	49
Access requirements for Thin Image.....	50
Access requirements for TrueCopy.....	51
Access requirements for global-active device.....	52
Access requirements for Universal Replicator.....	53
Access requirements for Universal Volume Manager.....	54
Access requirements for Virtual LUN.....	56
Access requirements for Virtual Partition Manager.....	57
Access requirements for Volume Shredder.....	58
Access requirements for Server Priority Manager.....	58
Chapter 2: About adaptive data reduction.....	60
Introducing adaptive data reduction and related concepts.....	60
Capacity saving and accelerated compression functions.....	60
Capacity saving effects for DP-VOLs and pools.....	63
Capacity saving function: data deduplication and compression.....	66
Use cases for capacity saving.....	72
Preparing your environment to use capacity saving.....	73
Compatibility with the capacity saving function.....	73
Usage planning requirements for the capacity saving function.....	75
Storage planning considerations for the capacity saving function.....	76
Monitoring performance when capacity saving is in use.....	78
Terminating the usage of capacity saving.....	81
Removing DRD-VOLs.....	81
Disabling capacity saving settings.....	81
Chapter 3: Managing virtual storage machine resources.....	83
About virtual storage machines and virtualized resources.....	83
Using virtual storage machines for nondisruptive migration.....	84
Using virtual storage machines for global-active device.....	85
Requirements and specifications for global storage virtualization.....	86
Virtual storage machine operations in CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator.....	87

Performing provisioning operations for resources in a virtual storage machine.....	89
Pair operations with virtual storage machine pairs.....	89
Creating a virtual storage machine.....	91
Enabling the virtualization management setting for LDEVs.....	94
Editing virtual LDEV ID and virtual volume configuration.....	96
Disabling the virtualization management setting for LDEVs.....	97
Chapter 4: Configuring custom-sized provisioning.....	99
Configuring volumes in a parity group	99
Configuration of interleaved parity groups.....	99
Virtual LUN specifications.....	100
Virtual LUN specifications for open systems.....	100
CV capacity by emulation type for open systems.....	101
LDEV size calculations.....	102
Calculating OPEN-V volume size (CV capacity unit is MB).....	102
Calculating OPEN-V volume size (CV capacity unit is blocks).....	103
Calculating fixed-size open-systems volume size (CV capacity unit is MB).....	104
Calculating fixed-size open-systems volume size (CV capacity unit is blocks).....	104
Management area capacity of an open-systems volume.....	105
Boundary values of volumes.....	106
Capacity of a slot.....	106
Enabling accelerated compression.....	106
Disabling accelerated compression.....	108
Blocking LDEVs.....	108
Formatting LDEVs.....	109
About formatting LDEVs.....	109
Quick Format function.....	110
Quick Format specifications.....	111
Formatting a specific LDEV.....	112
Formatting all LDEVs in a parity group.....	113
Restoring blocked LDEVs.....	114
Editing an LDEV name.....	115
Deleting an LDEV (converting to free space).....	115
Assigning an MP blade.....	116
Enabling and disabling MP blade auto assignment.....	116
Changing the MP blade assigned to an LDEV.....	117
Chapter 5: Configuring thin provisioning	119
Dynamic Provisioning overview.....	119
Dynamic Tiering overview.....	119

Active flash overview.....	119
Thin provisioning requirements.....	120
License requirements.....	120
Pool specifications and requirements.....	120
Pool auto expansion: specifications and requirements.....	122
Pool-VOL requirements.....	123
DP-VOL requirements.....	126
Deduplication system data volume specifications and requirements.....	128
Pool capacity consumed by metadata.....	129
V-VOL page reservation requirement	129
Operating system and file system capacity.....	130
Using Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering with other software products.....	132
Interoperability of DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs.....	132
ShadowImage pair status for reclaiming zero pages.....	138
TrueCopy.....	139
Global-active device.....	139
Universal Replicator.....	140
ShadowImage.....	141
Volume Migration.....	142
Interoperability restrictions for Thin Image.....	143
Virtual Partition Manager CLPR setting.....	143
Dynamic Provisioning workflow.....	143
Dynamic Tiering and active flash.....	144
About tiered storage.....	144
Tier monitoring and data relocation.....	145
Multi-tier pool.....	145
How the tier relocation process works.....	146
Tier monitoring and relocation cycles.....	148
Auto execution mode.....	149
Manual execution mode.....	150
Tier relocation rules, restrictions, and guidelines.....	152
Buffer area of a tier.....	158
Setting external volumes for each tier.....	160
Execution modes for tier relocation.....	161
Execution modes when using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator	161
Viewing monitor and tier relocation information in HDvM - SN.....	162
Execution modes when using Command Control Interface.....	165
Viewing monitor and tier relocation information using CCI.....	166
Relocation speed.....	166
Monitoring modes.....	167

Functions overview for active flash and Dynamic Tiering.....	169
Downloading the tier relocation log file.....	171
Tier relocation log file contents.....	172
Tiering policy.....	179
Custom policies.....	180
Tiering policy examples.....	181
Setting tiering policy on a DP-VOL.....	182
Tiering policy levels.....	182
Viewing the tiering policy in the performance graph.....	183
Reserving tier capacity when setting a tiering policy.....	185
Example of reserving tier capacity.....	186
Notes on tiering policy settings.....	188
Execution mode settings and tiering policy.....	190
New page assignment tier.....	191
Relocation priority.....	194
Assignment tier when pool-VOLs are deleted.....	195
Formatted pool capacity.....	196
Used capacity, mapped capacity, and reserved capacity.....	197
Rebalancing the usage level among parity groups.....	197
Changing the tiering policy level of a DP-VOL.....	198
Changing new page assignment tier of a V-VOL.....	198
Changing a tiering policy name.....	199
Changing an allocation threshold.....	200
Changing relocation priority setting of a V-VOL.....	201
Page relocation by active flash.....	202
Dynamic Tiering workflow.....	202
Active flash workflow.....	204
User interface specifications for Dynamic Tiering tasks.....	207
Managing Dynamic Tiering and active flash.....	211
Changing a Dynamic Provisioning pool to a Dynamic Tiering pool.....	211
Viewing pool tier information.....	213
Changing monitoring and tier relocation settings.....	213
Changing monitoring mode settings.....	214
Changing relocation speed.....	215
Changing buffer space for new page assignment setting.....	216
Changing buffer space for tier relocation setting.....	216
Enabling active flash on an existing Dynamic Tiering pool.....	217
Changing a Dynamic Tiering pool to a pool for Dynamic Provisioning.....	218
Working with pools.....	219
About pools.....	219
About pool-VOLs.....	219

Creating pools.....	220
Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually.....	221
Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs automatically.....	225
Creating Dynamic Tiering or active flash pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually.....	228
Creating a Dynamic Tiering or active flash pool by automatically selecting pool-VOLs.....	233
Working with DP-VOLs.....	237
About DP-VOLs.....	237
Relationship between a pool and DP-VOLs.....	237
DP-VOL protection function.....	238
Configuring the DP-VOL protection function options.....	239
Creating DP-VOLs.....	240
Editing the SSID of a DP-VOL.....	244
Workflow for migrating V-VOL data.....	245
Monitoring capacity and performance.....	245
Monitoring pool capacity.....	245
Protecting data during pool shortages.....	246
Monitoring pools and DP-VOLs.....	247
Managing I/O usage rates example.....	247
Tuning with Dynamic Tiering.....	248
Improving performance by monitoring pools.....	248
Thresholds for monitoring pools.....	251
Pool utilization thresholds.....	251
Pool subscription limit.....	253
Monitoring total DP-VOL subscription for a pool.....	254
Changing pool thresholds.....	255
Changing the pool subscription limit.....	255
Controlling Thin Image pair behavior in a Dynamic Provisioning pool.....	256
Working with SIMs	257
About SIMs.....	257
SIMs for HDP/HDT.....	257
Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output.....	269
Automatic completion of a SIM	269
Manually completing a SIM.....	270
Managing pools and DP-VOLs.....	271
Viewing pool information.....	271
Viewing the capacity information for a pool.....	273
Viewing formatted percentages for pool capacity.....	273

Reasons to check pool capacity.....	274
Viewing the progress of rebalancing the usage level among parity groups	274
Estimating the required capacity of pool-VOLs with system area in a pool with data direct mapping enabled.....	275
Expanding a pool.....	276
Changing a pool name.....	277
Setting the pool auto expansion function.....	278
Enabling deduplication on an existing pool.....	279
Disabling deduplication on a pool.....	280
Recovering a blocked pool.....	281
Decreasing pool capacity.....	281
About decreasing pool capacity.....	281
Shrinking a pool	285
Stopping the decrease of pool capacity.....	286
Deleting a tier in a pool.....	286
Deleting a pool.....	288
Changing the tier rank of an external pool-VOL.....	289
Requirements for increasing DP-VOL capacity.....	289
Increasing DP-VOL capacity.....	290
Changing the name of a DP-VOL.....	291
About releasing pages in a DP-VOL.....	292
Releasing pages in a DP-VOL.....	293
Stopping the release of pages in a DP-VOL.....	294
Changing full allocation settings in DP-VOLs.....	295
Enabling or disabling tier relocation of a DP-VOL.....	296
Enabling capacity saving on DP-VOLs.....	297
Disabling the capacity saving functions on DP-VOLs.....	298
Deleting a DP-VOL.....	300
Deleting all capacity saving-enabled DP-VOLs in a pool.....	301
Starting pool monitoring manually.....	302
Stopping pool monitoring manually.....	302
Starting tier relocation manually.....	303
Stopping tier relocation manually.....	303
Enabling data direct mapping for external volumes, pools, and DP-VOLs.....	304
Creating external volumes with data direct mapping enabled.....	304
Creating pools with data direct mapping enabled.....	306
Creating DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled.....	308
Enabling and disabling the data direct mapping attribute for a pool.....	309
Chapter 6: Protecting volumes using Data Retention Utility.....	310
About access attributes.....	310

Access attribute requirements.....	311
Access attributes and permitted operations.....	311
Access attribute restrictions.....	312
Assigning an access attribute to a volume.....	312
Changing an access attribute to read-only or protect.....	313
Changing an access attribute to read/write.....	314
Enabling or disabling the expiration lock.....	315
Disabling an S-VOL.....	316
Reserving volumes.....	317
Troubleshooting for Data Retention Utility.....	318

Chapter 7: Managing logical volumes.....319

LUN Manager overview.....	319
LUN Manager operations.....	319
Fibre Channel and iSCSI functions.....	319
Host groups and LU path configuration (Fibre Channel).....	320
Workflow for configuring logical units (Fibre Channel).....	321
Rules, restrictions, and guidelines for managing LUs.....	322
Configuring hosts and Fibre Channel ports.....	324
Configuring Fibre Channel ports.....	324
Setting the data transfer speed on a Fibre Channel port.....	324
Available data-transfer speeds for FC ports.....	325
Setting the Fibre Channel port address.....	326
Addresses for Fibre Channel ports.....	327
Setting the fabric switch.....	328
Fibre Channel topology.....	329
Example of FC-AL and point-to-point topology.....	329
Setting the Fibre Channel topology.....	329
Configuring hosts.....	330
Configure hosts workflow.....	330
Host modes for host groups.....	331
Host mode options.....	332
How to find the WWN of a host bus adapter.....	338
Finding a WWN on a Windows host.....	339
Finding a WWN on a Solaris host.....	339
Finding a WWN on an AIX, IRIX, or Sequent host.....	340
Finding a WWN on an HP-UX host.....	340
Creating a host group and registering hosts in the host group (Fibre Channel).....	342
Setting a command device.....	344
Configuring LU paths.....	346
Configure LU paths workflow.....	346

Defining LU paths.....	346
Setting a UUID.....	347
UUID requirements.....	348
Correspondence table for defining devices.....	349
Defining alternate LU paths.....	349
Copying all LU paths defined in a host group.....	350
Copying all LU paths defined in an iSCSI target.....	350
Copying selected (but not all) LU paths defined in a host group.....	351
Copying selected (but not all) LU paths defined in an iSCSI target.....	351
Managing LU paths.....	352
Deleting LU paths.....	352
Clearing a UUID setting.....	353
Viewing LU path settings.....	354
Releasing LUN reservation by host.....	354
LUN security on ports.....	355
Examples of enabling and disabling LUN security on ports.....	355
Enabling LUN security on a port.....	356
Disabling LUN security on a port.....	357
Overview of iSCSI operations.....	357
Network configuration for iSCSI.....	358
Multi VLAN operations with iSCSI virtual port mode.....	361
Managing hosts.....	362
Changing WWN or nickname of a host bus adapter.....	362
Changing HBA iSCSI name or nickname of a host bus adapter.....	363
Changing the name, host mode, or host mode options of a host group.....	364
Changing iSCSI target setting.....	365
Removing hosts from iSCSI targets.....	367
Initializing host group 0.....	367
Deleting a host bus adapter from a host group.....	368
Deleting WWNs from the WWN table.....	369
Deleting a host group.....	369
Deleting an iSCSI target.....	370
Deleting login iSCSI names.....	370
Adding a selected host to a host group.....	371
Adding a host to the selected host group.....	372
Adding a host to the selected iSCSI target.....	372
Confirming communication status.....	373
Setting the T10 PI mode on a port.....	373
Creating iSCSI targets and registering hosts in an iSCSI target.....	374
Editing iSCSI port settings.....	376
Adding CHAP users.....	378

Editing CHAP users.....	379
Removing CHAP users.....	379
Removing target CHAP users.....	380
Removing port CHAP users.....	380
Chapter 8: Working with ALUs and SLUs for vSphere VVOL.....	382
Creating LDEVs with the ALU attribute.....	382
Viewing the ALUs and SLUs in the storage system.....	384
Unbinding the SLUs from the ALUs.....	385
Chapter 9: Troubleshooting for provisioning.....	386
Troubleshooting Dynamic Provisioning.....	386
Resolving errors when using CCI to perform Dynamic Provisioning operations (SSB1: 0x2e31/0xb96d/0xb980)	397
Troubleshooting Data Retention Utility.....	399
Troubleshooting for Data Retention Utility.....	399
Resolving errors when using CCI to perform Data Retention Utility operations (SSB1:2E31/B9BF/B9BD).....	400
Contacting customer support.....	402
Appendix A: CCI command reference for provisioning.....	403
Provisioning tasks and CCI commands.....	403
Parameter ranges for CCI options.....	405
Appendix B: Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled.....	407
Checking whether accelerated compression can be enabled.....	407
Estimating required FMD capacity.....	407
Hitachi Data Reduction Estimation Tool.....	407
Estimating FMD capacity for a new pool.....	408
Estimating FMD capacity to expand an existing pool.....	411
Creating parity groups, LDEVs, and pools with accelerated compression.....	412
Monitoring the pool capacity.....	416
Estimating FMD capacity when pool capacity is insufficient.....	416
Disabling accelerated compression on a parity group.....	417
Appendix C: LDEV GUI reference.....	420
Parity Groups window.....	420
Parity Groups tab: Internal or external volume.....	425
LDEVs tab: Internal or external volumes.....	430
Logical Devices window.....	434
Create LDEVs wizard.....	444
Create LDEVs window.....	444
Create LDEVs confirmation window.....	458

Edit LDEVs wizard.....	463
Edit LDEVs window.....	463
Edit LDEVs confirmation window.....	465
Change LDEV Settings window.....	468
View SSIDs window.....	469
Select Free Spaces window.....	470
Select Pool window.....	472
View LDEV IDs window.....	475
View Physical Location window.....	476
Edit SSIDs window.....	478
Change SSIDs window.....	480
Format LDEVs wizard.....	480
Format LDEVs window.....	481
Format LDEVs confirmation window.....	481
Restore LDEVs window.....	483
Block LDEVs window.....	485
Delete LDEVs window.....	486
LDEV Properties window.....	489
ALUs / SLUs window.....	504
Unbind SLUs window.....	505
Components window.....	506
DKC: MP Blades tab.....	508
Edit MP Blades wizard.....	509
Edit MP Blades window.....	510
Edit MP Blades confirmation window.....	510
Assign MP Blade wizard.....	511
Assign MP Blade window.....	511
Assign MP Blade confirmation window.....	512
View Management Resource Usage window.....	514
Edit Parity Groups wizard.....	514
Edit Parity Groups window.....	515
Edit Parity Groups confirmation window.....	515

Appendix D: Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and active flash GUI reference..... 517

Pools window.....	517
Pools: Volume tabs.....	533
Create Pools wizard.....	555
Create Pools window.....	555
Create Pools confirmation window.....	567
Expand Pool wizard.....	573
Expand Pool window.....	573

Expand Pool confirmation window.....	574
Edit Pools wizard.....	576
Edit Pools window.....	576
Edit Pools confirmation window.....	582
Delete Pools wizard.....	588
Delete Pools window.....	588
Delete Pools confirmation window.....	589
Expand V-VOLs wizard.....	591
Expand V-VOLs window.....	591
Expand V-VOLs confirmation window.....	592
Restore Pools window.....	594
Shrink Pool window.....	596
Stop Shrinking Pools window.....	598
Complete SIMs window.....	600
Select Pool VOLs window.....	601
Reclaim Zero Pages window.....	607
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window.....	608
Pool Property window.....	608
Tier Properties window.....	612
Monitor Pools window.....	622
Stop Monitoring Pools window.....	624
Start Tier Relocation window.....	625
Stop Tier Relocation window.....	627
View Pool Management Status window.....	628
Edit External LDEV Tier Rank wizard.....	637
Edit External LDEV Tier Rank window.....	637
Edit External LDEV Tier Rank confirmation window.....	638
Edit Tiering Policies wizard.....	639
Edit Tiering Policies window.....	639
Edit Tiering Policies confirmation window.....	640
Change Tiering Policy window.....	641
Change Pool Configuration Pattern window.....	643
Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options window.....	645
Edit Deduplication System Data Volume window.....	646
Appendix E: Data Retention Utility GUI reference.....	649
Data Retention window.....	649
Error Detail dialog box.....	652
Appendix F: LUN Manager GUI reference.....	654
Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets window.....	654
Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs (Fibre Channel).....	665

Ports / Host Groups / iSCSI Targets: Hosts, LUNs, Host Mode Options, and CHAP Users tabs.....	668
Ports/iSCSI Targets: iSCSI Targets, Hosts, and CHAP Users tabs (iSCSI)....	688
Add LUN Paths wizard.....	694
Select LDEVs window.....	694
Select Host Groups/iSCSI Targets window.....	697
Add LUN Paths window.....	704
Add LUN Paths confirmation window.....	706
Create Host Groups wizard.....	710
Create Host Groups window.....	710
Create Host Groups confirmation window.....	714
Edit Host Groups wizard.....	716
Edit Host Groups window.....	716
Edit Host Groups confirmation window.....	717
Add to Host Groups wizard (when specific host is selected).....	719
Add to Host Groups window.....	719
Add to Host Groups confirmation window.....	722
Add Hosts wizard (when specific hosts group is selected).....	724
Add Hosts window.....	724
Add Hosts confirmation window.....	729
Delete LUN Paths wizard.....	732
Delete LUN Paths window.....	732
Delete LUN Paths confirmation window.....	734
Edit Host wizard.....	735
Edit Host window.....	736
Edit Host confirmation window.....	738
Edit Ports wizard.....	739
Edit Ports window.....	739
Edit Ports confirmation window.....	745
Create Alternative LUN Paths wizard.....	749
Create Alternative LUN Paths window.....	749
Create Alternative LUN Paths confirmation window.....	751
Copy LUN Paths wizard.....	755
Copy LUN Paths window.....	755
Copy LUN Paths confirmation window.....	761
Remove Hosts wizard.....	765
Remove Hosts window.....	765
Remove Hosts confirmation window.....	766
Edit UUIDs wizard.....	767
Edit UUIDs window.....	767
Edit UUIDs confirmation window.....	768
Add New Host window.....	770

Change LUN IDs window.....	771
Delete Host Groups window.....	772
Delete Login WWNs window.....	773
Delete UUIDs window.....	774
Host Group Properties window.....	774
LUN Properties window.....	776
Authentication window.....	781
Authentication window (Fibre Channel folder selected).....	781
Authentication window (Fibre Channel port selected).....	783
Add New User Information (Host) window.....	785
Change User Information (Host) window.....	786
Clear Authentication information window.....	787
Specify Authentication Information window.....	787
Set Port Information.....	788
Default Setting(User Name/Secret) window.....	789
Edit Command Devices wizard.....	789
Edit Command Devices window.....	790
Edit Command Devices confirmation window.....	791
Host-Reserved LUNs window.....	793
Release Host-Reserved LUNs wizard.....	795
Release Host-Reserved LUNs window.....	795
View Login WWN Statuses window.....	796
View Login iSCSI Name Statuses window.....	797
Port Properties window.....	798
CHAP User Properties window.....	801
Host Properties window.....	803
Create iSCSI Targets wizard.....	804
Create iSCSI Targets window.....	804
Create iSCSI Targets Confirm window.....	811
Edit iSCSI Targets wizard.....	812
Edit iSCSI Targets window.....	813
Edit iSCSI Targets Confirm window.....	815
Add CHAP Users wizard when selected iSCSI target.....	817
Add CHAP Users window.....	817
Add CHAP Users Confirm window.....	819
Edit CHAP User wizard.....	820
Edit CHAP User window.....	820
Edit CHAP User confirm window.....	821
iSCSI Target Properties window.....	822
Add New CHAP User window.....	824
Delete iSCSI Targets window.....	825

Delete Login iSCSI Names window.....	826
Remove CHAP Users window.....	827
Remove Target CHAP Users window.....	828
Remove Port CHAP Users window.....	829
Remove Hosts window.....	829
Test Communication Statuses window.....	830
Edit T10 PI Mode wizard.....	831
Edit T10 PI Mode window.....	831
Edit T10 PI Mode confirmation window.....	832
Appendix G: Notices.....	833
LZ4 Library.....	833
Glossary.....	834
Index.....	841

Preface

This document describes and provides instructions for performing provisioning operations on the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1x00 (VSP G1x00) and VSP F1500 storage systems. The provisioning software includes LUN Manager, Virtual LUN, Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and Data Retention Utility.

Please read this document carefully to understand how to use these products, and maintain a copy for your reference.

Intended audience

This document is intended for system administrators, Hitachi Vantara representatives, and authorized service providers who install, configure, and operate the VSP G1000, VSP G1500, or VSP F1500 storage system.

Readers of this document should be familiar with the following:

- Data processing and RAID storage systems and their basic functions.
- The VSP G1000, VSP G1500, or VSP F1500 storage system and the Hardware Guide for your storage system model.
- The Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator software and the *System Administrator Guide*.
- The concepts and functionality of storage provisioning operations.

Product version

This document revision applies to the following product versions:

- VSP G1x00, VSP F1500: microcode 80-06-6x or later
- SVOS RF 8.3.0 or later

Release notes

Read the release notes before installing and using this product. They may contain requirements or restrictions that are not fully described in this document or updates or corrections to this document. Release notes are available on Hitachi Vantara Support Connect: <https://knowledge.hitachivantara.com/Documents>.

Changes in this revision

- Updated the description of host mode 0F for AIX to add information about NACA ([Host modes for host groups \(on page 331\)](#)).
- Added information about support of fragmentation on iSCSI ports ([Fibre Channel and iSCSI functions \(on page 319\)](#), [Network configuration for iSCSI \(on page 358\)](#)).

Referenced documents

The following documents are referenced in this guide:

- *Hitachi Thin Image User Guide*, MK-97HM85032
- *Performance Guide*, MK-97HM85025
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide*, MK-97HM85034
- *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*, MK-97HM85033
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*, MK-97HM85035
- *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*, MK-97HM85030
- *Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide*, MK-97HM85031
- *Product Overview*, MK-97HM85011





Document conventions

This document uses the following typographic conventions:

Convention	Description
Bold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Indicates text in a window, including window titles, menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels. Example: Click OK. ▪ Indicates emphasized words in list items.
<i>Italic</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Indicates a document title or emphasized words in text. ▪ Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or for output by the system. Example: <code>pairdisplay -g group</code> <p>(For exceptions to this convention for variables, see the entry for angle brackets.)</p>

Convention	Description
Monospace	Indicates text that is displayed on screen or entered by the user. Example: <code>pairdisplay -g oradb</code>
< > angle brackets	Indicates variables in the following scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Variables are not clearly separated from the surrounding text or from other variables. Example: <pre>Status-<report-name><file-version>.csv</pre> Variables in headings.
[] square brackets	Indicates optional values. Example: [a b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.
{ } braces	Indicates required or expected values. Example: { a b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
vertical bar	Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments. Examples: [a b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing. { a b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.

This document uses the following icons to draw attention to information:

Icon	Label	Description
	Note	Calls attention to important or additional information.
	Tip	Provides helpful information, guidelines, or suggestions for performing tasks more effectively.
	Caution	Warns the user of adverse conditions and/or consequences (for example, disruptive operations, data loss, or a system crash).
	WARNING	Warns the user of a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

Conventions for storage capacity values

Physical storage capacity values (for example, disk drive capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

Physical capacity unit	Value
1 kilobyte (KB)	1,000 (10 ³) bytes
1 megabyte (MB)	1,000 KB or 1,000 ² bytes
1 gigabyte (GB)	1,000 MB or 1,000 ³ bytes
1 terabyte (TB)	1,000 GB or 1,000 ⁴ bytes
1 petabyte (PB)	1,000 TB or 1,000 ⁵ bytes
1 exabyte (EB)	1,000 PB or 1,000 ⁶ bytes

Logical capacity values (for example, logical device capacity, cache memory capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

Logical capacity unit	Value
1 block	512 bytes
1 cylinder	Mainframe: 870 KB Open-systems: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ OPEN-V: 960 KB ▪ Others: 720 KB
1 KB	1,024 (2 ¹⁰) bytes
1 MB	1,024 KB or 1,024 ² bytes
1 GB	1,024 MB or 1,024 ³ bytes
1 TB	1,024 GB or 1,024 ⁴ bytes
1 PB	1,024 TB or 1,024 ⁵ bytes
1 EB	1,024 PB or 1,024 ⁶ bytes

Accessing product documentation

Product user documentation is available on Hitachi Vantara Support Connect: <https://knowledge.hitachivantara.com/Documents>. Check this site for the most current documentation, including important updates that may have been made after the release of the product.

Getting help

[Hitachi Vantara Support Connect](#) is the destination for technical support of products and solutions sold by Hitachi Vantara. To contact technical support, log on to Hitachi Vantara Support Connect for contact information: https://support.hitachivantara.com/en_us/contact-us.html.

[Hitachi Vantara Community](#) is a global online community for Hitachi Vantara customers, partners, independent software vendors, employees, and prospects. It is the destination to get answers, discover insights, and make connections. **Join the conversation today!** Go to community.hitachivantara.com, register, and complete your profile.

Comments

Please send us your comments on this document to doc.comments@hitachivantara.com. Include the document title and number, including the revision level (for example, -07), and refer to specific sections and paragraphs whenever possible. All comments become the property of Hitachi Vantara Corporation.

Thank you!

Chapter 1: Introduction to provisioning

There are several provisioning strategies that you can implement on your storage system to solve business requirements. Provisioning your storage system requires balancing the costs of the solution with the benefits that the solution provides.

About provisioning

Provisioning is a method or strategy of managing the logical devices (LDEVs), also called volumes, on a storage system. Some provisioning methods are host-based, while other methods use inherent storage system capabilities such as concatenated parity groups. Provisioning methods can also be primarily hardware-based or software-based. Each method has its particular uses and benefits in a specific storage environment, such as optimizing capacity, reliability, performance, or cost. When used in the right scenario, each method can be cost-effective, efficient, reliable, and straightforward to configure and maintain. On the other hand, inappropriate implementations can be expensive, awkward, time-consuming to maintain, and potentially error prone. Your support representatives are available to help you configure the highest quality solution for your storage environment.

Provisioning strategies fall into the following two fundamental categories:

- Basic provisioning (or traditional provisioning). Basic provisioning involves defining logical devices (LDEVs) on physical storage.
- Thin provisioning (or virtual provisioning). Thin provisioning involves the use of virtualization to pool physical storage and provide on-demand allocation of volumes to hosts.

Key terms

Term	Description
access attributes	Security function used to restrict the access to a logical volume. Using Data Retention Utility, you can assign an access attribute to each volume: read only, read/write, or protect.
capacity expansion	The data compression services provided by the FMD drives, called accelerated compression.

Term	Description
capacity saving	The data deduplication and data compression functions provided by the storage system controllers.
CV	Custom-size volume (for example, OPEN-3-CVS, OPEN-V).
deduplication system data volumes	The volumes used to manage data deduplication in a pool. Deduplication system data volumes (also called DSD volumes) are created when you enable deduplication.
DP pool	A group of DP-VOLs. The DP pool consists of one or more pool-VOLs.
DP-VOL	A virtual volume (V-VOL) used for Dynamic Provisioning.
expiration lock	Security option used to allow or prevent changing of the Data Retention Utility access attribute on a volume.
FMD (flash module drive)	A large-capacity flash module drive (FMD) that supports the accelerated compression functionality. A dedicated drive box is required for FMD drives.
FV	Fixed-sized volume. An FV is a logical volume of a specific device emulation type (for example, OPEN-3) that constitutes a parity group immediately after installation. The FV size varies according to the emulation type. OPEN-V volumes are not fixed-size volumes.
meta_resource	A resource group to which additional resources (other than external volumes) and the resources existing before installing Resource Partition Manager belong.
page	In Dynamic Provisioning, a page is 42 MB of continuous storage allocated from a DP pool to store data written to a DP-VOL.
pool	A set of volumes that are reserved for storing Dynamic Provisioning or Thin Image write data.
pool threshold	In Dynamic Provisioning, the proportion (%) of used capacity of the pool to the total pool capacity. Each pool has its own pool threshold values for warning and depletion.
pool volume (pool-VOL)	A volume that is reserved for storing Dynamic Provisioning data or Thin Image operations.
resource group	A group that consists of one or more resources of the storage system. The resources that can be assigned to a resource group are LDEV IDs, parity groups, iSCSI targets, external volumes, ports, and host group IDs.
tier boundary	The value of the reached maximum I/O counts that each tier can process.

Term	Description
tier relocation	A combination of determining the appropriate storage tier and migrating the pages to the appropriate tier.
tiered storage	A storage hierarchy of layered structures of data drives consisting of different performance levels, or tiers, that match data access requirements with the appropriate performance tiers.

Thin provisioning

Thin provisioning is an approach to managing storage that maximizes physical storage capacity. Instead of reserving a fixed amount of storage for a volume, capacity from the available physical pool is assigned when data is actually written to the storage media.

Thin provisioning provides automatic performance optimization and storage space savings across pools of virtual capacity. Provisioning storage from a virtual pool reduces administration costs by cutting the time to provision new storage. Capacity is allocated to an application without it being physically mapped until it is used. In this approach, it is possible to achieve overall higher rates of storage utilization with just-in-time provisioning. It also simplifies performance optimization by transparently spreading workloads across many physical devices, thereby reducing performance management concerns and self-optimizing performance and throughput.

About Dynamic Provisioning

While basic or traditional provisioning strategies can be appropriate and useful in specific scenarios, they can be expensive to set up, time-consuming to configure, difficult to monitor, and error prone. Dynamic Provisioning allows you to reserve virtual storage capacity based on anticipated future capacity needs, using virtual volumes instead of physical disk capacity. Although Dynamic Provisioning requires some additional setup steps, it can provide a simpler and more beneficial alternative to traditional provisioning methods.

Overall storage use rates can improve because you can potentially provide more virtual capacity to applications while using fewer physical drives. Dynamic Provisioning can provide lower initial cost, greater efficiency, and ease of storage management for storage administrators. The Dynamic Provisioning feature offers the following benefits:

- Simplifies storage management
- Provides a better balance of resources and performance optimization by default than traditional provisioning
- Optimizes physical drive usage
- Reduces device address requirements over traditional provisioning by providing larger volume sizes

When to use Dynamic Provisioning

Dynamic Provisioning is a best fit in an open-systems environment in the following scenarios:

- When the aggregation of storage pool capacity usage across many volumes provides the best opportunity for performance optimization.
- For stable environments and large consistently growing files or volumes.
- When device addressing constraints are a concern.

Dynamic Provisioning concepts

Dynamic Provisioning is a volume management feature that allows storage managers and system administrators to efficiently plan and allocate storage to users or applications. It provides a platform for the array to dynamically manage data and physical capacity without frequent manual involvement.

Dynamic Provisioning provides three important capabilities: as-needed provisioning of storage, enhanced volume performance, and larger volume sizes.

Dynamic Provisioning is more efficient than traditional provisioning strategies. It is implemented by creating one or more Dynamic Provisioning pools (DP pools) of physical storage space using multiple LDEVs. Then, you can establish virtual DP volumes (DP-VOLs) and associate them to the individual DP pools. In this way, capacity to support data can be optimally assigned on demand within the pool.

DP-VOLs are of a user-specified logical size without any corresponding physical space. Actual physical space allocated (in 42-MB pool page units) is automatically assigned to a DP-VOL from the associated DP pool as that volume's logical space is written to over time. A new DP-VOL does not have any pool pages assigned to it. The pages are loaned out from its associated pool to that DP volume until the volume is reformatted or deleted. At that point, all of that volume's assigned pages are returned to the pool's free page list. This handling of logical and physical capacity is called thin provisioning. In many cases, logical capacity will exceed physical capacity.

Dynamic Provisioning also enhances volume performance. This is an automatic result of how DP-VOLs map capacity from individual DP pools. A pool is created using from one to 1024 LDEVs (pool volumes) of physical space. Each pool volume is sectioned into 42-MB pages. Each page is consecutively laid down on a number of RAID stripes from one pool volume. The pool's 42-MB pool pages are assigned on demand to any of the DP-VOLs that are connected to that pool. Other pages assigned over time to that DP-VOL randomly originate from the next free page of some other pool volume in the pool.

Setting up a Dynamic Provisioning environment requires a few extra steps. Similar to basic provisioning, you still configure various array groups to a desired RAID level and create one or more volumes (LDEVs) on each of them. Then set up a Dynamic Provisioning environment by creating one or more DP pools of physical storage space that are each a collection of some of these LDEVs (DP pool volumes). This pool structure supports creation of Dynamic Provisioning virtual volumes (DP-VOLs), where 42-MB pages of data are randomly assigned on demand.

Advantages of using Dynamic Provisioning

Advantages	Without Dynamic Provisioning	With Dynamic Provisioning
Reduces initial costs	You must purchase physical drive capacity for expected future use. The unused capacity adds costs for both the storage system and software products.	You can logically allocate more capacity than is physically installed. You can purchase less capacity, reducing initial costs and you can add capacity later by expanding the pool. Note: Some file systems take up pool space. For details, see Operating system and file system capacity (on page 130) .
Reduces management costs	You must stop the storage system to reconfigure it.	When physical capacity becomes insufficient, you can add pool capacity without service interruption. In addition, with Dynamic Tiering, you can configure pool storage consisting of multiple types of data drives, including SSD, FMD, SAS, and external volumes. This eliminates unnecessary costs.
Reduces management labor and increases availability of storage volumes for replication	As the expected physical drive capacity is purchased, the unused capacity of the storage system also needs to be managed on the storage system and on licensed products.	Licenses for storage system software products are based on used capacity rather than the total defined capacity. You can allocate volumes of up to 256 TB regardless of physical drive capacity. Dynamic Tiering allows you to use storage efficiently by automatically migrating data to the most suitable data drive.

Advantages	Without Dynamic Provisioning	With Dynamic Provisioning
Increases the performance efficiency of the data drive	Because physical drive capacity is initially purchased and installed to meet expected future needs, portions of the capacity may be unused. I/O loads may concentrate on just a subset of the storage which might decrease performance.	Effectively combines I/O patterns of many applications and evenly spreads the I/O activity across available physical resources, preventing bottlenecks in parity group performance. Configuring the volumes from multiple parity groups improves parity group performance. This also increases storage use while reducing power and pooling requirements (total cost of ownership).

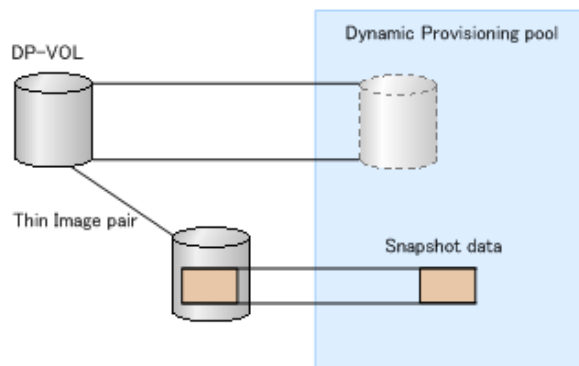
Dynamic Provisioning advantage example

To illustrate the advantages of a Dynamic Provisioning environment, assume you have 12 LDEVs from 12 RAID1 (2D+2D) array groups assigned to a DP pool. All 48 drives contribute their IOPS and throughput power to all DP volumes assigned to that pool. Instead, if more random read IOPS horsepower is desired for a pool, then the DP pool can be created with 32 LDEVs from 32 RAID5 (3D+1P) array groups, thus providing 128 drives of IOPS power to that pool. Up to 1024 LDEVs can be assigned to a single pool, providing a considerable amount of I/O capability to just a few DP volumes.

Storing Thin Image pair and snapshot data in a Dynamic Provisioning pool

You can create Thin Image (TI) pairs and store snapshot data in a Dynamic Provisioning pool.

The following figure shows a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pair and snapshot data. When you use Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image in one pool created from one parity group, the total capacity used by Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image is required. Dynamic Tiering and active flash pools cannot be used for Thin Image pairs.



When you create Thin Image pairs in a Dynamic Provisioning pool, you can use the **Suspend TI pairs when the depletion threshold is exceeded** option to prevent Thin Image pair operations from affecting the DP-VOLs in the pool. When this option is enabled and the depletion threshold for the pool is exceeded, Thin Image pair operations are suspended, so the depletion threshold of the pool functions as the upper limit capacity for the Thin Image pairs.

- When the depletion threshold is not exceeded:
 - Thin Image pairs can be created.
 - Thin Image pairs can be split.
- When the depletion threshold is exceeded and the Suspend TI Pairs option is not enabled:
 - Thin Image pairs cannot be created.
 - Thin Image pairs can be split.
- When the depletion threshold is exceeded and the Suspend TI Pairs option is enabled:
 - SIM code 62Exxx is output.
 - Thin Image pairs cannot be created.
 - Thin Image pairs cannot be split.

For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, the capacity of snapshot data is included in the used capacity of the pool.

If you are concerned about operations when Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image share a pool, it is recommended that you use separate pools for Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image.

About DP-VOLs with the data direct mapping attribute

By using a DP-VOL for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled, you can create a mapping of an external volume larger than 4 TB without having to change its capacity as a DP-VOL of the local storage system.

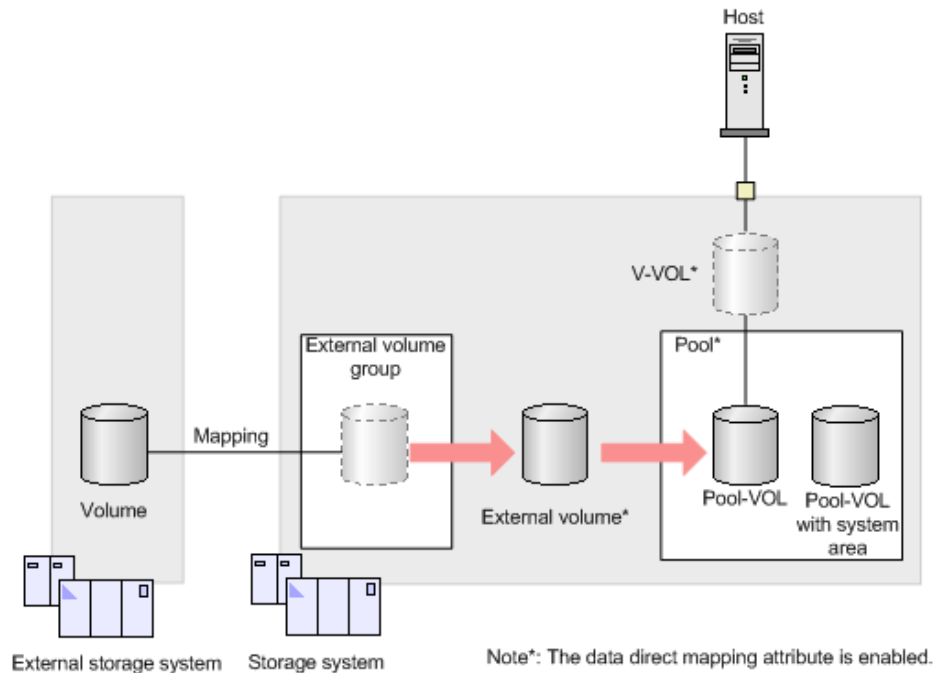
A DP-VOL with the data direct mapping attribute enabled is associated with the following pool-VOLs: an external volume for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled, and a pool-VOL with System Area.

To use DP-VOLs with the data direct mapping attribute enabled, you must enable the data direct mapping attribute for pool-VOLs, pools, and DP-VOLs.

Procedure

1. In the **Add External Volumes** window, add a volume of an external storage system to an external volume group, and create an external volume for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled.
2. In the **Create Pools** window, create a Dynamic Provisioning pool for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled. Specify the following volumes as pool-VOLs:
 - The external volume with the data direct mapping attribute enabled.
 - One or more normal volumes or external volumes.

3. In the **Create LDEVs** window, create a DP-VOL with the data direct mapping attribute enabled.
4. In the **Add LUN Paths** window, configure a LU path to the DP-VOL with the data direct mapping attribute enabled.



The following table shows what kind of external volumes can be added as pool-VOLs.

Operation	Data direct mapping attribute of external volumes	
	Disabled	Enabled
Add volumes to a pool with the data direct mapping attribute enabled	The volumes can be added.	The volumes can be added.
Add volumes to the following pools: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning pools ▪ Dynamic Tiering pools (including active flash) 	The volumes can be added.	The volumes cannot be added.

The following table shows what kind of operations can be performed when the data direct mapping attribute of a Dynamic Provisioning pool is enabled or disabled.

Operation	Data direct mapping attribute of the pool	
	Disabled	Enabled
Add an LDEV for which the data direct mapping attribute is disabled to the pool	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Add an external volume for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled to the pool	The operation cannot be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Set the depletion threshold and the warning threshold	The operation can be performed.	The operation cannot be performed.
Set subscription	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Performing rebalancing	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Define the used capacity of the pool	The sum of the reserved pages capacity and the mapped capacity	The sum of the reserved pages capacity and the mapped capacity
Define the licensed capacity	The sum of the pool-VOLs	The sum of pool-VOLs for which the data direct mapping attribute is disabled. However, the license capacity does not include the capacity of pool-VOLs for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled.
Expand pool	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed. However, the capacity of pool-VOLs with System Area must be reserved in advance.

Operation	Data direct mapping attribute of the pool	
	Disabled	Enabled
Shrink pool	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed. However, if a pool-VOL for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled is associated with a DP-VOL, you cannot shrink the pool.
Delete pool	The operation can be performed. Note: You can delete a pool only when there are no DP-VOLs associated with the pool.	The operation can be performed. Note: You can delete a pool only when there are no DP-VOLs associated with the pool.
Create DP-VOL	You can only create DP-VOLs for which the data direct mapping attribute is disabled.	You can only create DP-VOLs for which the data direct mapping attribute is enabled.
Implement a change to Dynamic Tiering (including active flash pool)	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.

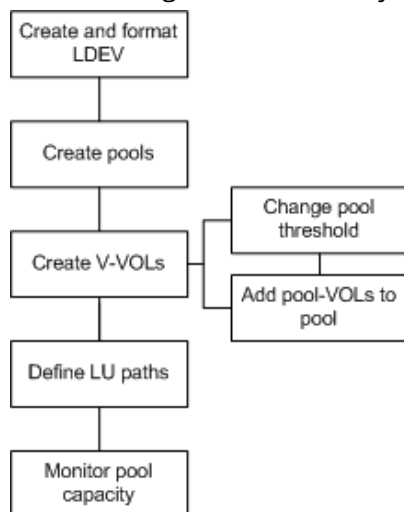
The following table shows what kind of operations can be performed when the data direct mapping attribute of a DP-VOL is enabled or disabled.

Operation	Data direct mapping attribute of the DP-VOL	
	Disabled	Enabled
Configure LU paths	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Format LDEVs	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Delete LDEVs	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Expand V-VOLs	The operation can be performed.	The operation cannot be performed.

Operation	Data direct mapping attribute of the DP-VOL	
	Disabled	Enabled
Reclaim zero pages	The operation can be performed.	The operation cannot be performed.
Execute the V-VOL full allocation function	The operation can be performed.	The operation cannot be performed.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	The operation can be performed.	The operation can be performed.
Apply to LDEVs of SLU attribution	The operation can be performed.	The operation cannot be performed.

Dynamic Provisioning high-level workflow

The following illustrates the Dynamic Provisioning workflow.



About pool volumes from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups

Volumes carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups can only be used as pool volumes to create or expand a pool. Pools that contain pool volumes from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups must be monitored to ensure adequate pool capacity. You can set thresholds for used pool capacity that trigger the output of SIMs when exceeded, enabling you to expand the pool or delete unwanted data before the pool becomes full. LDEVs that are created by Storage Navigator are allocated in the physical capacity area only. If you create LDEVs using Command Control Interface, it is recommended that you create LDEVs in the physical capacity area. You can confirm the location for LDEVs to be created in the View Physical Location window.

Accelerated compression-enabled parity groups

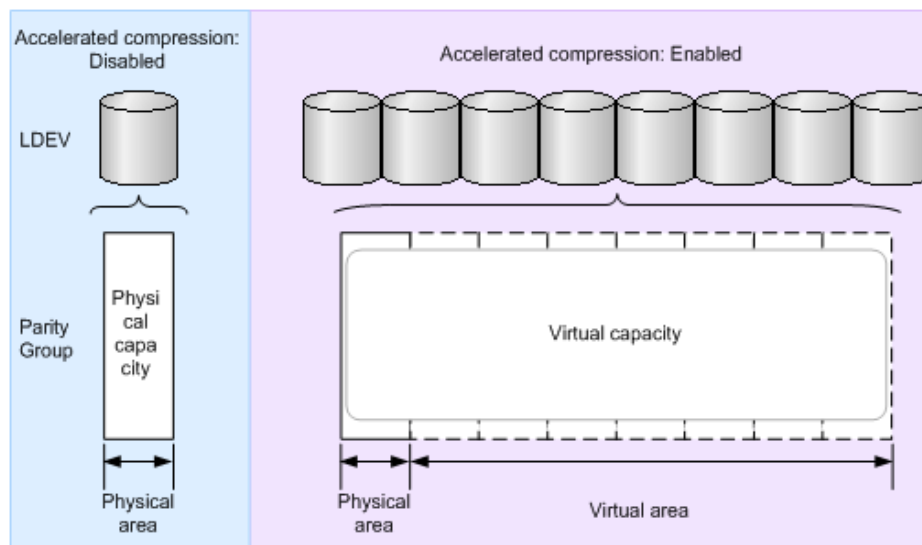
Data on LDEVs carved from parity groups comprised of drives that support accelerated compression is compressed before it is stored onto the drives. The default setting of accelerated compression is Disabled. You must enable this feature to take advantage of the data compression services on the drives.



Note: For details about enabling both accelerated compression and encryption on a parity group, see the *Encryption License Key User Guide*.

When you enable accelerated compression on a parity group:

- The capacity of the parity group expands the usable physical capacity of the parity group. You can potentially carve out LDEVs from this expanded capacity and use them as pool volumes to create or expand a pool. When you do this, you can utilize the increased available capacity because the data on the accelerated compression-enabled drives has been compressed.
- LDEVs carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups can only be used as pool volumes to create or expand a pool. These LDEVs cannot be assigned directly to a host and must be assigned to a single pool as pool volumes. LDEVs from a single parity group cannot be shared among multiple pools.
- For the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, the total of the physical capacity and expanded area is displayed as the parity group capacity.



Pool auto expansion function

When the free space runs low in a pool comprised of pool volumes belonging to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the pool auto expansion function automatically adds new pool volumes to the pool and creates new pool volumes as needed. The pool auto expansion function automatically creates and adds pool volumes to a pool based on the data usage rate of the data written by the hosts. Therefore, when the pool auto expansion function is enabled, you do not have to plan a configuration definition for pool volumes related to the compression rates.

The pool auto expansion function uses physical capacity to manage pool capacity. For pools for which the pool auto expansion function is enabled, refer to the physical capacity to check the total capacity and the used capacity of the pool.

For VSP G1x00 and VSP F1500, the pool auto expansion function is not enabled by default. To enable the pool auto expansion function on a pool, in the **Create Pools** or **Edit Pools** window select Enable for the Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group pool option and use pool volumes in accelerated compression-enabled parity groups for the pool. You can also use Command Control Interface to enable and disable the pool auto expansion function on pools.

Storing data written to DP-VOLs

Data written by hosts to DP-VOLs is stored in pool volumes on a page basis. When pool volumes are created from a parity group with accelerated compression enabled, data is compressed and stored to drives.

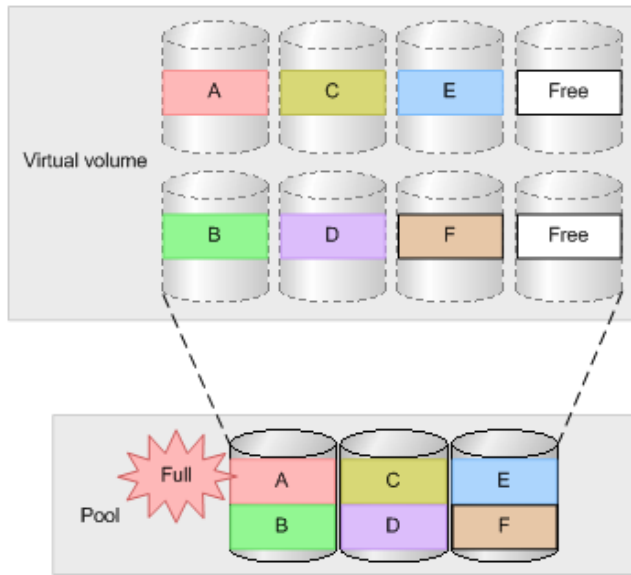
The compression ratio of data varies for each data update or data deletion operation. The capacity that is displayed as the used capacity is the user data capacity that is compressed by accelerated compression. Therefore, for a pool containing pool volumes in accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the smaller capacity of the following two capacities is displayed as the pool capacity to which data can be stored: either the total capacity of the pool volumes, or the capacity of the parity groups to which the pool volumes are defined. When a pool contains both pool volumes carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups and pool volumes carved from other parity groups, the total capacity of the pool capacity is calculated by the following formula:

Total-writable-capacity-of-the-pool = Capacity-that-can-store-data-in-the-accelerated-compression-enabled-pool + Total-capacity-of-pool-volumes-carved-from-other-parity-groups

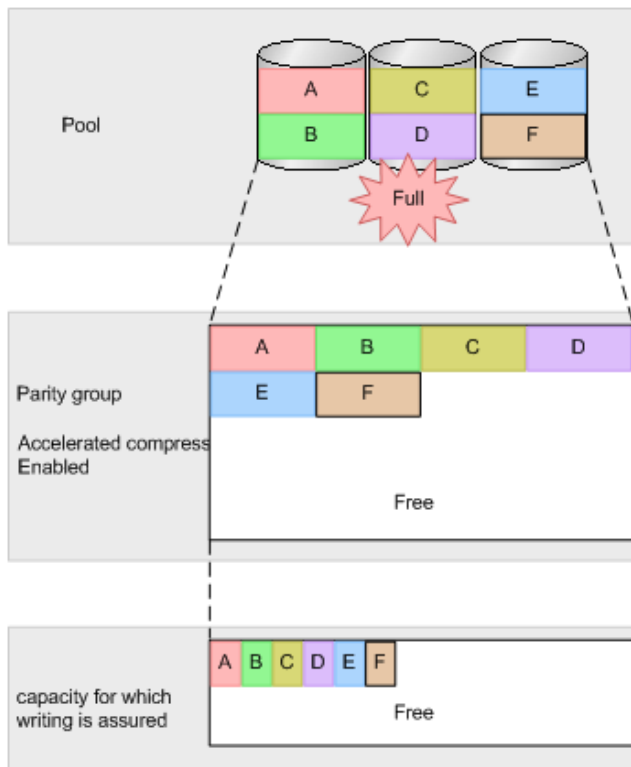
The purchased license of Dynamic Provisioning is consumed with respect to the defined pool capacity.

Monitoring used pool capacity and used pool capacity reserved for writing

Data written to DP-VOLs is stored to the pool. For example, if the capacity of a pool is larger than the capacity of the DP-VOLs, the pool might become full before the DP-VOLs become full. Therefore, if the DP-VOLs are used, the used capacity of the pool must always be monitored. A threshold value is set for the used capacity of the pool. If the used capacity of the pool exceeds the threshold value, a SIM is output and a notification is sent to the user.



For a pool consisting of pool volumes belonging to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the capacity for which writing is assured might become full even though DP-VOLs have free space. Alternatively, DP-VOLs might become full even though the capacity for which writing is assured has free space. When using a pool consisting of pool volumes assigned by accelerated compression-enabled parity group, the user must monitor the capacity of the parity group. A threshold value is set for the used capacity of the capacity for which writing is assured. If the used capacity of the capacity for which writing is assured exceeds the threshold value, a SIM is output and a notification is sent to the user.



If pool-VOLs created from the accelerated compression-enabled parity group are used to create a new pool, the percentage of data saved must be confirmed beforehand. Hitachi Vantara recommends using pool volumes with accelerated compression disabled to create a pool. When creating a pool, set the same value for the pool capacity and Basic Usable FMC Capacity.

- Monitoring used pool capacity

The used pool capacity must always be monitored. As data is written to DP-VOLs and stored in the pool, in cases where DP-VOLs are over-provisioned, the pool might become full before the DP-VOLs become full. Therefore, the used pool capacity must always be monitored to prevent this from happening. A threshold value is set for the used pool capacity. If the used pool capacity exceeds the threshold value, a SIM is reported and a notification is sent to the hosts. If these SIMs are reported, you can resolve the status of threshold exceeded by expanding the pool capacity or by deleting data. For details about the threshold values, see [Thresholds for monitoring pools \(on page 251\)](#). If you are using a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the depletion threshold for the pool is fixed with 90%.

Dynamic Tiering

Hitachi Dynamic Tiering (HDT) simplifies storage administration by automatically optimizing data placement in 1, 2, or 3 tiers of storage that can be defined and used within a single virtual volume. Tiers of storage can be made up of internal or external (virtualized) storage, and use of HDT can lower capital costs. Simplified and unified management of HDT allows for lower operational costs and reduces the challenges of ensuring applications are placed on the appropriate classes of storage.

When you use Dynamic Provisioning to implement a thin provisioning strategy, the array has all the elements in place to offer automatic self-optimizing storage tiers provided by Hitachi Dynamic Tiering (HDT). Dynamic Tiering enables you to configure a storage system with multiple storage tiers consisting of different types of data drives (for example, SSD, FMD, SAS) to improve the speed and cost of performance. Dynamic Tiering extends and improves the functionality and value of the Dynamic Provisioning feature. Both features use pools of physical storage against which virtual disk capacity, or V-VOLs, is defined. Each thin provisioning pool can be configured to operate either as a DP pool or as a Dynamic Tiering pool.

Automated tiering of physical storage is the ability of the array to dynamically monitor usage and relocate data to the appropriate storage tier based on performance requirements. Data relocation focuses on data segments rather than on entire volumes. The Dynamic Tiering functionality is entirely within the array and does not require any host level involvement.

Dynamic Tiering enables you to:

- Configure physical storage into tiers based on drive performance. Host volumes are configured as usual from a common pool, but the pool consists of multiple types of drives that offer different levels of performance (for example, high-speed SSDs and lower-speed SAS).
- Automatically migrate data to the most suitable tier according to access frequency. Data that is accessed frequently is placed on the high-performance drives, while data that is accessed infrequently is placed on the lower-performance drives.

Dynamic Tiering simplifies storage administration by automating and eliminating the complexities of efficiently using tiered storage. It automatically moves data on pages in Dynamic Provisioning virtual volumes to the most appropriate storage media, according to workload, to maximize service levels and minimize total cost of storage.

Dynamic Tiering gives you:

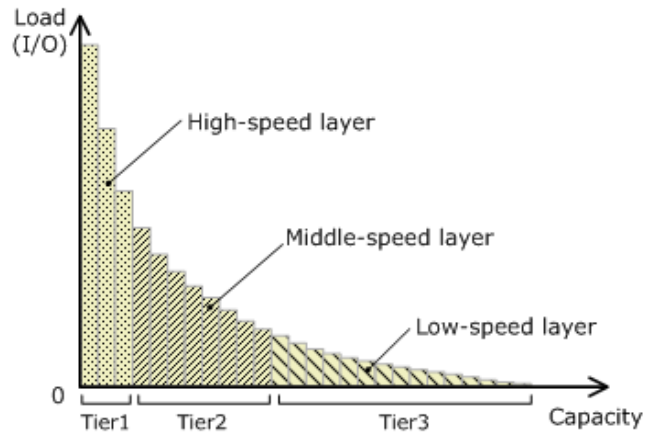
- Improved storage resource usage
- Improved return on high-cost storage tiers
- Reduced storage management effort
- More automation
- Nondisruptive storage management
- Reduced costs
- Improved overall performance

Overview of tiers

When not using Dynamic Tiering data is allocated to only one kind of data drive (typically an expensive high-speed data drive) without regard to the workload because the volumes are configured with only one kind of data drive. When using Dynamic Tiering, frequently access data is automatically allocated to the higher-speed HDT pool volumes and the lower speed drive to the volumes of low workload. This improves performance and reduces costs.

Dynamic Tiering places the host volume's data across multiple tiers of storage contained in a pool. There can be up to three tiers (high-, medium-, and low-speed layers) in a pool. Dynamic Tiering determines tier usage based on data access levels. It allocates the page with high I/O load to the upper tier, which contains a higher speed drive, and the page with low I/O load to the lower tier, which contains a lower speed drive.

The following figure illustrates the basic tier concept.



Active flash

The active flash feature of Dynamic Tiering monitors page accesses over a set time frame and attempts to keep the most frequently accessed pages in Tier 1.

The active flash feature monitors a page's access frequency level real time and promotes pages that suddenly became busy from a slower media to high-performance flash media, in real-time.

The active flash feature can be enabled on any Dynamic Tiering pool as long as you have SSD and FMD drives in Tier 1 of the pool. No special configuration beyond what is needed for active flash is required.

Prompt Promotion

A primary goal of Dynamic Tiering and active flash is to have the most frequently access pages in Tier 1. As the workload varies in both the frequency of access and the type of access, reads or writes, the threshold for moving pages from one tier to another changes. Dynamic Tiering generates a dynamic tier range value that is used to determine which pages need to be in Tier 1 and which need to be in a lower tier.

The active flash feature compares the recent the access frequency of each page to the Prompt Promotion threshold to determine whether a page should be promoted to Tier 1. The Prompt Promotion threshold is a dynamic threshold that adjusts based upon changes in workload to make most efficient use of the SSD and FMD drives. If the recent access frequency for a page meets or exceeds the Prompt Promotion threshold, the page is relocated to Tier 1 without waiting for the next Dynamic Tiering relocation cycle.

Certain type of I/O benefit more from being served by flash media then others. To achieve the best performance gains for certain I/O, active flash gives read I/O greater weight than write I/O when calculating the total access frequency for a page.

High Prioritized Demotion

In order to be certain that there is always some room for active flash to do Prompt Promotion of pages to Tier 1, High Prioritized Demotion is used to demote pages out of Tier 1. Pages that have the lowest IOPH are candidates for High Prioritized Demotion. Similar to Prompt Promotion, High Prioritized Demotion does not wait for the current Dynamic Tiering cycle to end to make relocation decisions.

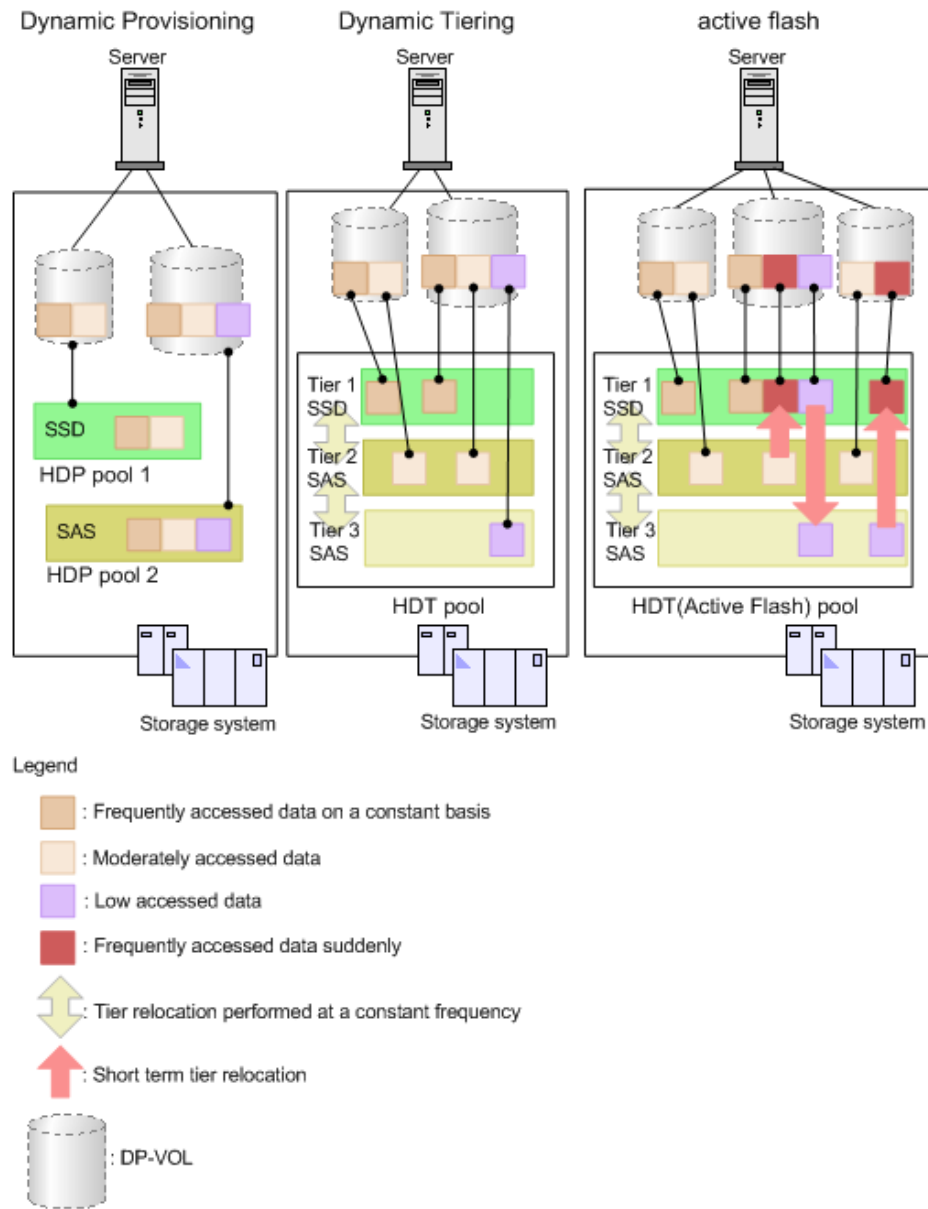
Page demotion is only triggered when:

- Tier 1 free capacity is depleted
- performance utilization reaches 80%

Peak performance utilization is predefined for a particular media.

Performance utilization of a tier is the maximum amount of I/O it can receive. The maximum I/O load that should be targeted to a tier depends upon the media type used to make the tier. A performance utilization of 100% means that the tier is receiving the maximum amount of I/O it can sustain. When performance utilization reaches about the 60% level, response time to the particular media becomes noticeably slower.

The following diagram shows the differences in the way pools are managed between Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and active flash



System requirements for provisioning

The system requirements for provisioning include basic hardware and licensing requirements as well as additional requirements for shared memory and cache management devices.

- The storage system hardware and microcode must be configured and ready for use.
- The parity groups in the storage system must be configured and ready for use.

- Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator must be configured and ready for use. For details and instructions, see the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.
- The license keys for the provisioning software products must be enabled. For details and instructions, see the *System Administrator Guide* for your storage system.
- The required amount of shared memory for your operational environment must be installed in the storage system.
- The required number of cache management devices must be available.
- The desired system option modes (SOMs) must be enabled on your storage system before you begin operations. For information about SOMs, contact customer support.

Shared memory requirements

Additional shared memory is required when Dynamic Provisioning is used and the total capacity of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, capacity saving (deduplication and compression), and Thin Image pools is 1.1 PB or more.

If the capacity saving function (deduplication and compression) is used, additional shared memory is required. If Dynamic Tiering or active flash is used, additional shared memory is required.



Caution: Before shared memory is removed, all Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering pools must be deleted.

When Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, capacity saving, and Thin Image are used, the pool capacity and the V-VOL capacity that can be created are expanded according to the shared memory expansion status.

The following table shows the pool capacity and the V-VOL capacity that can be created when Dynamic Provisioning is used.

Shared memory function	Pool/V-VOL capacity	
	Open system	Mainframe system
None	Up to 1.1 PB	Up to 1.0 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension1	Up to 3.4 PB	Up to 3.0 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension2	Up to 7.9 PB	Up to 7.1 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension3	Up to 12.3 PB	Up to 11.0 PB



Tip: The V-VOL management area is automatically created when shared memory is added. This area is used to store information for associating pool-VOLs and DP-VOLs.

If Dynamic Tiering is used in conjunction with Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image pools, additional shared memory must be installed.

When Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, capacity saving, and Thin Image are used, the pool capacity and the V-VOL capacity that can be created are expanded according to the shared memory expansion status.

The following table shows the pool capacity and the V-VOL capacity that can be created when Dynamic Tiering is used.

Shared memory function	Pool/V-VOL capacity	
	Open system	Mainframe system
None	Up to 1.1 PB	Up to 1.0 PB
HDT/Active Flash	Up to 1.1 PB	Up to 1.0 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension1	Up to 3.4 PB	Up to 3.0 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension2	Up to 7.9 PB	Up to 7.1 PB
DP/HDT/Active Flash/TI Extension3	Up to 12.3 PB	Up to 11.0 PB

Cache management device requirements

Cache management devices are used to manage the cache associated with volumes (LDEVs). Each volume (LDEV) requires at least one cache management device. An LDEV that is not a DP-VOL requires one cache management device. For an LDEV that is a DP-VOL, you need to calculate the number of cache management devices required.

The storage system can manage up to 65,280 cache management devices.

The View Management Resource Usage window in Device Manager - Storage Navigator displays the number of cache management devices in use and the maximum number of cache management devices. To open the View Management Resource Usage window, click Actions and then select View Management Resource Usage.

Calculating the number of cache management devices required for DP-VOLs

A volume that is not a DP-VOL requires one cache management device. The number of cache management devices that a DP-VOL requires depends on the capacity of the V-VOL (capacity of the user area) and the maximum capacity of the cache management device.

The following table explains the relationship between the pool volume attribute and the maximum capacity of the cache management device.

Pool volume attribute of V-VOL	Maximum capacity of cache management device		
	MB (GB)	Blocks	Cylinders
Internal volume	711,768.75 MB	1,457,702,400 blocks	837,760 cylinders

Pool volume attribute of V-VOL	Maximum capacity of cache management device		
	MB (GB)	Blocks	Cylinders
	(695.08 GB)		
External volume	949,659.37 MB (927.40 GB)	1,944,902,400 blocks	1,117,760 cylinders

Use the following formula to calculate the number of cache management devices that a DP-VOL requires. In this formula, the user-specified capacity is the user area capacity of a V-VOL.

$\text{ceiling}(\text{user-specified-capacity} / \text{max-capacity-of-cache-management-device})$

where

- ceiling: The value enclosed in ceiling() must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.



Note:

- For a DP-VOL with the deduplication or compression function enabled, use twice the number of the cache management devices calculated by this formula.

Resource access requirements for Device Manager - Storage Navigator operations

When you log on to Device Manager - Storage Navigator, your user access privileges determine the resources you can view and the operations you can perform. User access privileges are determined by the user groups to which the user belongs and the resources assigned to those user groups. To perform an operation on the storage system, you must have access to the resources (for example, volumes, pools, ports) that are required for the operation.

The following tables specify the resource access requirements for Device Manager - Storage Navigator operations.

Access requirements for Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering operations.

Operation name	Condition
Create LDEVs	If DP-VOLs are created, the following must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID ▪ Pool-VOL of the pool
Delete LDEVs	If DP-VOLs are deleted, the following must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID ▪ Pool-VOL of the pool
Create pools Expand pools	Volumes to be specified as pool-VOLs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them. All the volumes that are specified when creating a pool must belong to the same resource group.
Edit pools Delete pools	Pool-VOLs of the specified pool must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Expand V-VOLs	You can expand only the DP-VOLs that are assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Reclaim zero pages Stop reclaiming zero pages	You can reclaim or stop reclaiming zero pages only for the DP-VOLs that are assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for Encryption License Key and FMD Encryption License Key

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Encryption License Key operations.

Operation name	Condition
Edit encryption keys	When you specify a parity group and open the Edit Encryption window, the specified parity group and LDEVs carved from the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Operation name	Condition
	When you open the Edit Encryption window without specifying a parity group, more than one parity group and LDEVs carved from the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for LUN Manager

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for LUN Manager operations.

For Fibre Channel

Operation name	Condition
Add LUN paths	<p>When you specify host groups and open the Add LUN Paths window, the specified host groups must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify LDEVs and open the Add LUN paths window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Delete LUN paths	<p>When you specify a host group and open the Delete LUN Paths window, the specified host group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify LDEVs and open the Delete LUN Paths window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When selecting the Delete all defined LUN paths to above LDEVs check box, the host groups of all the alternate paths in the LDEV displayed on the Selected LUNs table must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Edit host groups	The specified host groups and initiator ports must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Add hosts	The specified host groups must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit hosts	The specified host group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Operation name	Condition
	When you select the Apply same settings to the HBA WWN of all ports check box, all the host groups where the specified HBA WWNs are registered must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Remove hosts	When you select the Remove hosts from all host groups containing the hosts in the storage system check box, all the host groups where the HBA WWNs displayed in the Selected Hosts table are registered must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit ports	<p>The specified port must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>If this port attribute is changed from Target or RCU Target to Initiator or to External, the host group of this port belongs to meta_resource.</p> <p>Therefore, the host group of this port is not displayed in windows.</p>
Create alternative LUN paths	The specified host groups and all the LDEVs where the paths are set to the host groups must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Copy LUN paths	The specified host groups and the LDEVs where the paths are set must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit command devices	LDEVs where the specified paths are set must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit UUIDs	The specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Delete UUIDs	The specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Create host groups	When you open the Create Host Groups window by specifying host groups, the specified host groups must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Delete host groups	The specified host groups and all the LDEVs where the paths are set to the host groups must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Release Host-Reserved LUNs	LDEVs where the specified paths are set must be assigned to you.

For iSCSI

Operation name	Condition
Add LUN paths	<p>When you specify host groups and open the Add LUN Paths window, the specified iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify LDEVs and open the Add LUN paths window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Delete LUN paths	<p>When you specify an iSCSI target and open the Delete LUN Paths window, the specified iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify LDEVs and open the Delete LUN Paths window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When selecting the Delete all defined LUN paths to above LDEVs check box, the iSCSI target of all the alternate paths in the LDEV displayed on the Selected LUNs table must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Add hosts	The specified iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit hosts	<p>The specified iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you select the Apply same settings to the HBA WWN of all ports check box, all the iSCSI targets where the specified HBA WWNs are registered must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Remove hosts	The specified iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit ports	The specified port must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Create alternative LUN paths	The specified iSCSI target and all the LDEVs where the paths are set to the iSCSI target must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Copy LUN paths	The specified iSCSI target and the LDEVs where the paths are set must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Operation name	Condition
Edit command devices	LDEVs where the specified paths are set must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit UUIDs	The specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Delete UUIDs	The specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Release Host-Reserved LUNs	LDEVs where the specified paths are set must be assigned to you.
Create iSCSI targets	When you open the Create iSCSI targets window by specifying iSCSI targets, the specified iSCSI targets must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit iSCSI targets	The specified iSCSI targets and ports must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Delete iSCSI targets	The specified iSCSI targets and all the LDEVs where the paths are set to the iSCSI targets must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for Performance Monitor

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Performance Monitor operations.

Operation name	Condition
Add to ports	The specified ports must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Add new monitored WWNs	
Edit WWNs	

Access requirements for ShadowImage

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for ShadowImage operations.

Operation name	Condition
Create pairs	Both primary volume and secondary volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Split pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Suspend pairs	
Resynchronize pairs	
Release pairs	

Access requirements for Thin Image

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Thin Image operations.

Operation name	Condition
Create LDEVs	If LDEVs for Thin Image are created, the following must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID ▪ Pool VOL of the pool
Delete LDEVs	If LDEVs for Thin Image are deleted, the following must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID ▪ Pool VOL of the pool
Create pools Expand Pool	Volumes that are specified when creating or expanding pools must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them. All the volumes that are specified when creating pools must belong to the same resource group.
Edit Pools Delete Pools	Pool-VOLs of the specified pools must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them.
Create pairs	Both primary volumes and secondary volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them.

Operation name	Condition
Split pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group that is permitted to manage them.
Suspend pairs	
Resynchronize pairs	
Release pairs	

Access requirements for TrueCopy

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for TrueCopy operations.

Operation name	Condition
Edit Ports	Specified ports must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Connection	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Operation can be performed with no conditions.
Create Pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user. Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Split Pairs	Specified primary volumes or secondary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Resync Pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Delete Pairs	Specified volumes must be assigned to the user. If primary volumes are specified, the initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Edit Pair Options	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Remove Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected to a specified remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Remove Remote Connections	Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected to a specified remote storage must be assigned to the user.

Operation name	Condition
Force Delete Pairs	Specified primary volumes or secondary volumes must be assigned to the user.

Access requirements for global-active device

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for global-active device operations.

Operation name	Condition
Edit Ports	Specified ports must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Connection	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Operation can be performed with no conditions.
Create Pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user. Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Split Pairs	Specified primary volumes or secondary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Resync Pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Delete Pairs	Specified volumes must be assigned to the user. If primary volumes are specified, the initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Edit Pair Options	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Remove Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected to a specified remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Remove Remote Connections	Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected to a specified remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Force Delete Pairs	Specified primary volumes or secondary volumes must be assigned to the user.

Operation name	Condition
Add Quorum Disks	LDEVs to be set as quorum disks must be assigned to the user.
Remove Quorum Disks	LDEVs set as quorum disks to be deleted must be assigned to the user.

Access requirements for Universal Replicator

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Universal Replicator operations.

Operation name	Condition
Edit Ports	Specified ports must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Connection	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Add Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Create Journals	All LDEVs that are specified when creating a journal must belong to the same resource group. Volumes to be assigned to a journal must be assigned to the user.
Assign Journal Volumes	Volumes to be assigned to a journal must be assigned to the user. All volumes to be assigned to a journal must belong to a same resource group to which the existing journal volumes belong.
Assign MP Blade	Journal volumes must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Operation can be performed with no conditions.
Create Pairs	Journal volumes for pair volumes and primary volumes must be assigned to the user. Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Split Pairs	Specified primary volumes or secondary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Split Mirrors	All data volumes configured to a mirror must be assigned to the user.
Resync Pairs	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.

Operation name	Condition
Resync Mirrors	All data volumes configured to a mirror must be assigned to the user.
Delete Pairs	Specified volumes or secondary volume must be assigned to the user. Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected with the primary volume in the remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Delete Mirrors	All data volumes configured to a mirror must be assigned to the user.
Edit Pair Options	Primary volumes must be assigned to the user.
Force Delete Pairs	Specified volumes must be assigned to the user.
Edit Journal Options	All data volumes consisting of the specified journal must be assigned to the user. Journal volumes must be assigned to the user.
Edit Mirror Options	All data volumes configuring the specified journal must be assigned to the user. Journal volumes must be assigned to the user.
Remove Journals	Journal volumes must be assigned to the user.
Edit Remote Connection Options	Initiator ports of remote paths that are connected to a specified remote storage must be assigned to the user.
Remove Remote Paths	Specified initiator ports must be assigned to the user.
Move LDEVs to other resource groups	When you move LDEVs used for journal volumes to other resource groups, you must specify all the journal volumes of the journal to which the LDEVs belong.
Assign Remote Command Devices	Journal volumes must be assigned to the user. Specified remote command devices must be assigned to the user.
Release Remote Command Devices	Journal volumes must be assigned to the user. Specified remote command devices must be assigned to the user.

Access requirements for Universal Volume Manager

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Universal Volume Manager operations.

Operation name	Condition
Add external volumes	<p>When creating an external volume, a volume is created in the resource group where the external port belongs.</p> <p>When you specify a path group and open the Add External Volumes window, all the ports that compose the path group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Delete external volumes	<p>The specified external volume and all the LDEVs allocated to that external volume must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Disconnect external storage systems	<p>All the external volumes belonging to the specified external storage system and all the LDEVs allocated to that external volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Reconnect external storage systems	<p>All the external volumes belonging to the specified external storage system and all the LDEVs allocated to that external volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Disconnect external volumes	<p>The specified external volume and all the LDEVs allocated to the external volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Reconnect external volumes	<p>The specified external volume and all the LDEVs allocated to the external volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Edit external volumes	<p>The specified external volume must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Assign MP Blade	<p>The specified external volumes and all the ports of the external paths connecting the external volumes must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Disconnect external paths	<p>Ports of the specified external paths and all the external volumes connecting with the external path must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify By Ports, all the external paths connecting with the specified ports and all the external volumes connecting with the external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>

Operation name	Condition
	When you specify By External WWNs, all the ports of the external paths connecting to the specified external WWN and all the external volumes connecting with those external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Reconnect external paths	<p>Ports of the specified external paths and all the external volumes connecting with those external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify By Ports, all the external paths connecting with the specified ports and all the external volumes connecting with the external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify By External WWNs, all the ports of the external paths connecting to the specified external WWN and all the external volumes connecting with those external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>
Edit external WWNs	All the ports of the external paths connecting to the specified external WWN and all the external volumes connecting with the external paths must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit external path configuration	Ports of all the external paths composing the specified path group and all the external volumes that belong to the path group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for Virtual LUN

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Virtual LUN operations.

Operation name	Condition
Create LDEVs	<p>When you specify a parity group and open the Create LDEVs window, the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you create an internal or external volumes parity groups where the LDEV belongs and ID of the new LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>

Operation name	Condition
Delete LDEVs	When deleting an internal or external volume, the deleted LDEV and parity groups where the LDEV belongs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Edit LDEVs	The specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Restore LDEVs	When you specify LDEVs and open the Restore LDEVs window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them. When you specify a parity group and open the Restore LDEVs window, the specified parity group and all the LDEVs in the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Block LDEVs	When you specify LDEVs and open the Block LDEVs window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them. When you specify a parity group and open the Block LDEVs window, the specified parity group and all the LDEVs in the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Format LDEVs	When you specify LDEV and open the Format LDEVs window, the specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them. When you specify a parity group and open the Format LDEVs window, the specified parity group and all the LDEVs in the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for Virtual Partition Manager

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Virtual Partition Manager operations.

Operation name	Condition
Migrate parity groups	When you specify virtual volumes, the specified LDEV must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them. When you specify a parity group, the specified parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.

Access requirements for Volume Shredder

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Volume Shredder operations.

Operation name	Condition
Shred LDEVs	<p>When you specify LDEVs and open the Shred LDEVs window, the specified LDEVs must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p> <p>When you specify a parity group and open the Shred LDEVs window, the specified parity group and all the LDEVs in the parity group must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>

Access requirements for Server Priority Manager

The following table specifies the resource access requirements for Server Priority Manager operations.

Operation name	Conditions
Set priority of ports (attribute/threshold/upper limit)	The specified ports must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Release settings on ports by the decrease of ports	
Set priority of WWNs (attribute/upper limit)	
Change WWNs and SPM names	
Add WWNs (add WWNs to SPM groups)	
Delete WWNs (delete WWNs from SPM groups)	
Add SPM groups and WWNs	
Delete SPM groups	
Set priority of SPM groups (attribute/upper limit)	
Rename SPM groups	
Add WWNs	
Delete WWNs	

Operation name	Conditions
Initialization	All ports must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.
Set threshold	

Chapter 2: About adaptive data reduction

Adaptive data reduction (ADR) includes both controller-based capacity saving and hardware-based accelerated compression functions.

The use of ADR requires compatibility with certain program products and functions. Before using ADR functions, review the related concepts, usage, and other conditions.

Introducing adaptive data reduction and related concepts

Capacity saving and accelerated compression are functions that can be combined to streamline the available capacity of data volumes.

Capacity saving and accelerated compression functions

Your storage system provides the following functions to make efficient use of user capacity:

- **Capacity saving:** The capacity saving function includes data deduplication and data compression. Capacity saving enables you to reduce your bitcost for the stored data by deduplicating and compressing the data. These deduplication and compression functions are performed by the controllers of the storage system.
- **Accelerated compression:** The accelerated compression function enables you to reduce your bitcost for the stored data by allowing you to take advantage of the compression function in the FMD drives. Accelerated compression allows you to assign FMD capacity to a pool that is larger than the physical capacity of the FMD parity groups. The data access performance of the storage system is maintained when the accelerated compression function is used, as the compression engine is offloaded to the FMD drives.

The following table lists combinations of using deduplication and compression together, controller-based compression only, or accelerated compression and describes the functionality and performance impacts for each combination.

Combination	Functionality
Using only accelerated compression	Data compression is performed by the FMD drives and not by the storage controller.

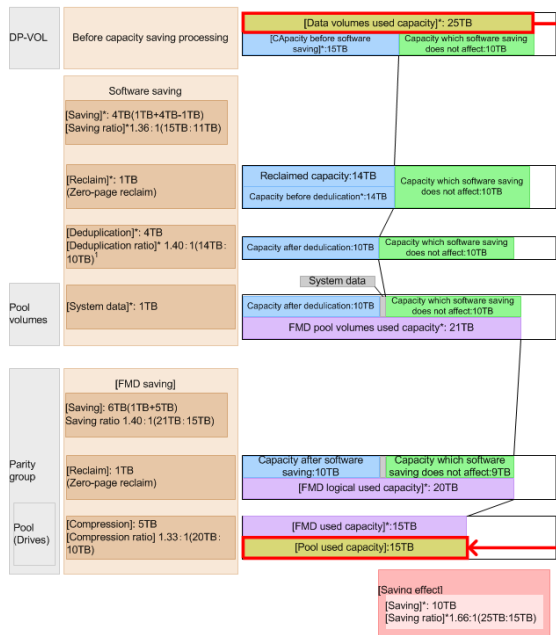
Combination	Functionality
	Because there is no overhead due to compression processing by the storage controller, I/O performance is not affected.
Using only controller-based compression	<p>The storage controller compresses data and stores the compressed data in the pool.</p> <p>Use controller-based compression for drives that do not support accelerated compression (for example, SAS, SSD) and for FMD drives for which accelerated compression is not enabled (for example, an encrypted parity group of FMD DC2 drives).</p> <p>If both accelerated compression and controller-based compression are used on the same drives, compression is performed only in the FMD drives. Because of differences in storing and managing data by the storage controller, performance is lower than when only accelerated compression is used. Therefore, when accelerated compression can be enabled, you should use accelerated compression instead of controller-based compression. Use controller-based compression only when accelerated compression cannot be enabled.</p>
Using accelerated compression and deduplication and compression See Example 1 below	<p>When multiple copies of identical data are stored in the pool, the storage controller keeps only one copy (deduplication). For compression, the storage controller detects that accelerated compression is enabled* and uses it instead of controller-based compression.</p> <p>*Accelerated compression must be enabled for all parity groups in the pool.</p>
Using deduplication and compression See Example 2 below	<p>The storage controller performs the compression and deduplication processing.</p> <p>The storage controller has the largest overhead of the capacity saving processing.</p>



Note: For details about enabling both encryption and accelerated compression on a parity group, see the *Encryption License Key User Guide*.

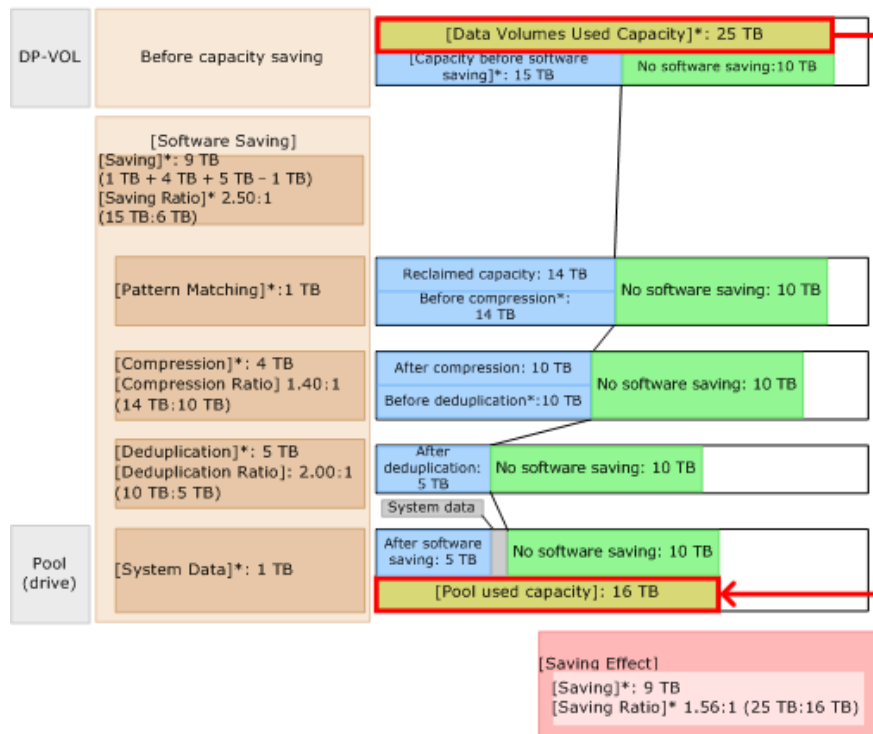
The following figures illustrate effects achieved by the capacity saving and accelerated compression functions. In these figures, items enclosed by the square brackets are displayed by HDvM - SN, and items with an asterisk are displayed using CCI.

Example 1: Using accelerated compression and deduplication and compression



Legend
 Item within square brackets([]). GUI Items
 Item with an asterisk (*): Item displayed by CCI

Example 2: Using the capacity saving function (deduplication and compression)



Legend:
 Item within square brackets([]); GUI Items
 Item with an asterisk (*): Item displayed by CCI

**Note:**

- **Saving Effect:** When the capacity saving function is used, the saving ratio is calculated to include user data, metadata and garbage data (generated by the system). When the data volume used capacity before the capacity saving processing is smaller than the pool used capacity, the saving ratio might be lower than expected and the saving capacity value might be invalid (a hyphen (-) is displayed).

When data in DP-VOLs is deleted by performing the following tasks, the saving ratio might be lower than expected due to nonformatted data on FMDs:

- Deleting DP-VOLs
- Formatting DP-VOLs
- Initializing duplicated data in a pool

By default, the maximum displayable value (99999999999999.99) for the saving effect is displayed.

- **Software Saving (pool):** When the capacity saving function is used, the saving ratio is calculated with user data, metadata and garbage data (generated by the system). When the data volume used capacity before the capacity saving processing is smaller than the pool used capacity, the saving ratio might be lower than expected and the saving capacity value might be invalid (a hyphen (-) is displayed).

When you initialize the duplicated data in a pool, the saving effect might be different than expected, at least until after the LDEV format processing has completed. Verify the saving effect only after the duplicated data in a pool has finished initializing.

- **Software saving (virtual volume):** The formula for calculating the saved capacity in a virtual volume and the formula for a pool are different. Therefore, there are differences between the saved capacity in a pool and the saved capacity totaling the applicable virtual volumes.
- **FMD Saving:** When data in DP-VOLs is deleted by performing the following tasks, the saving ratio might be lower than expected due to nonformatted data on FMDs:
 - Deleting DP-VOLs
 - Formatting DP-VOLs
 - Initializing duplicated data in a pool

For details about the formatted pool capacity or progress, see the item for Free + Reserved in the [View Pool Management Status window \(on page 628\)](#).

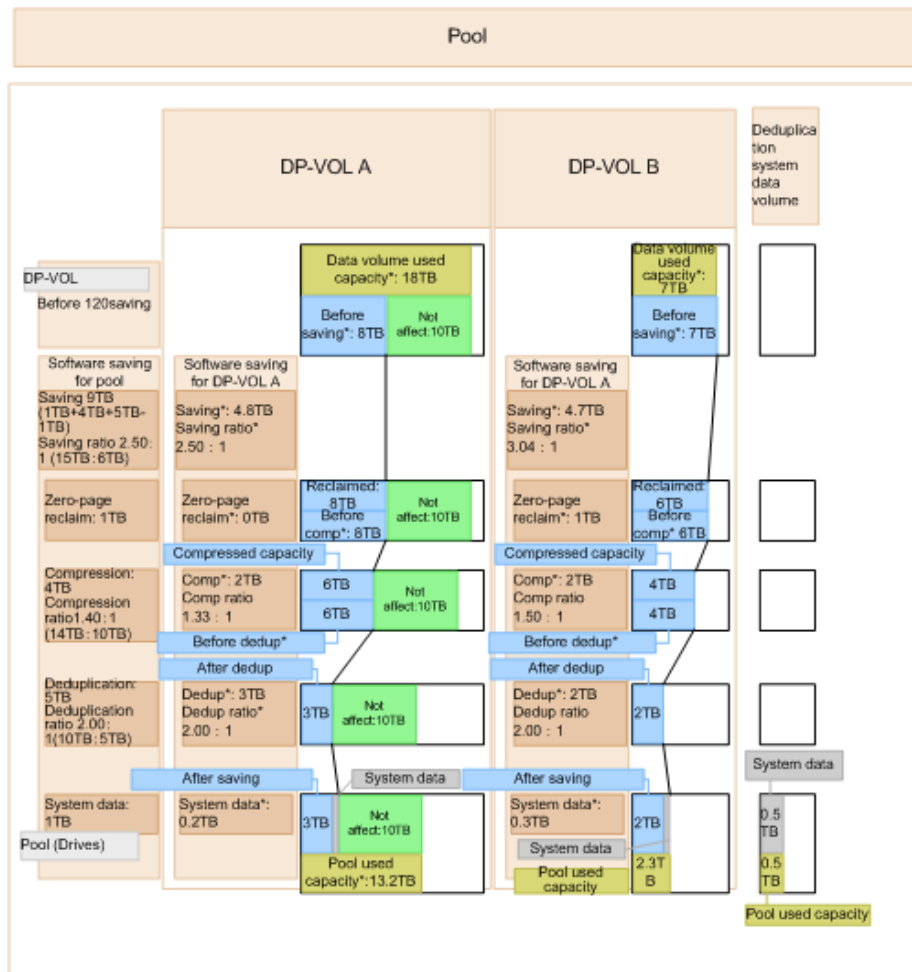
Capacity saving effects for DP-VOLs and pools

You can use HDvM - SN or CCI to check the capacity saving effects for DP-VOLs, but you can only use HDvM - SN to check the capacity saving effects for each pool.

Certain types of DP-VOLs have high capacity saving values. These types of DP-VOLs should not be used as the basis of comparison with other DP-VOLs. The following conditions can cause abnormally high capacity saving values on DP-VOLs:

- DP-VOLs with large amounts of duplicated data have high capacity saving values due to the deduplication function.
- DP-VOLs that are replication targets of host-based or storage system-based replication usually have higher capacity saving values than DP-VOLs that are not replication targets.

The following figure illustrates the capacity saving effect for pools and DP-VOLs. Items with an asterisk (*) in the figure are displayed using CCI.



Legend
 Item with an asterisk (*): Can be displayed by CCI.

Not affect: Capacity which software saving does not affect
 Before saving: Capacity before software saving
 After saving: Capacity after software saving
 Reclaimed: Reclaimed capacity
 Before comp: Capacity before compression
 Compressed capacity: Capacity after compression
 Before dedup: Capacity before deduplication
 After dedup: Capacity after deduplication

The following table lists the CCI commands that show the capacity saving effect for each pool.

CCI command		Item in the figure
Command name	Output of command	
raidcom get pool -key total_saving	SE_SAVING(BLK)	Saving under Saving effect
	SES(%)	Saving ratio under Saving effect
	DATAVOL_USED(BLK)	Data volumes used capacity
raidcom get pool -key software_saving	PLS(%)	Saving ratio under Software saving
	PL_SAVING(BLK)	Saving under Software saving
	CMP(BLK)	Compression under Software saving
	DDP(BLK)	Dedup under Software saving
	RECLAIM(BLK)	Reclaim under Software saving
	SYSTEM(BLK)	System data under Software saving
	PL_PRE_USED(BLK)	Capacity before software saving
	PRE_CMP_USED(BLK)	Capacity before compression
	PRE_DDP_USED(BLK)	Capacity before deduplication
raidcom get pool -key fmc	FMC_LOG_USED(BLK)	FMD logical used capacity
	FMC_ACT_USED(BLK)	FMD used capacity
	FMC_PLV_USED(BLK)	FMD pool volumes used capacity

The following table lists the CCI commands that show the capacity saving effect for DP-VOLs.

CCI command		Item in the figure
Command name	Output of command	

raidcom get ldev	Used_Block(BLK)	Data volume used capacity
raidcom get ldev -key software_saving	TLS_R	Saving ratio of Software saving
	TOTAL_SAVING(BLK)	Saving of Software saving
	CMP(BLK)	Compression of Software saving
	DDP(BLK)	Deduplication of Software saving
	RECLAIM(BLK)	Zero page reclaim of Software saving
	SYSTEM(BLK)	System data of Software saving
	PRE_USED(BLK)	Capacity which software saving does not affect
	POOL_USED(BLK)	Pool used capacity

Capacity saving function: data deduplication and compression

When the capacity saving function is in use, the controller of the storage system performs data deduplication and compression to reduce the size of data to be stored. Capacity saving can be enabled on DP-VOLs in Dynamic Provisioning pools. You can use the capacity saving function on internal flash drives only, including data stored on encrypted flash drives.

How capacity saving works

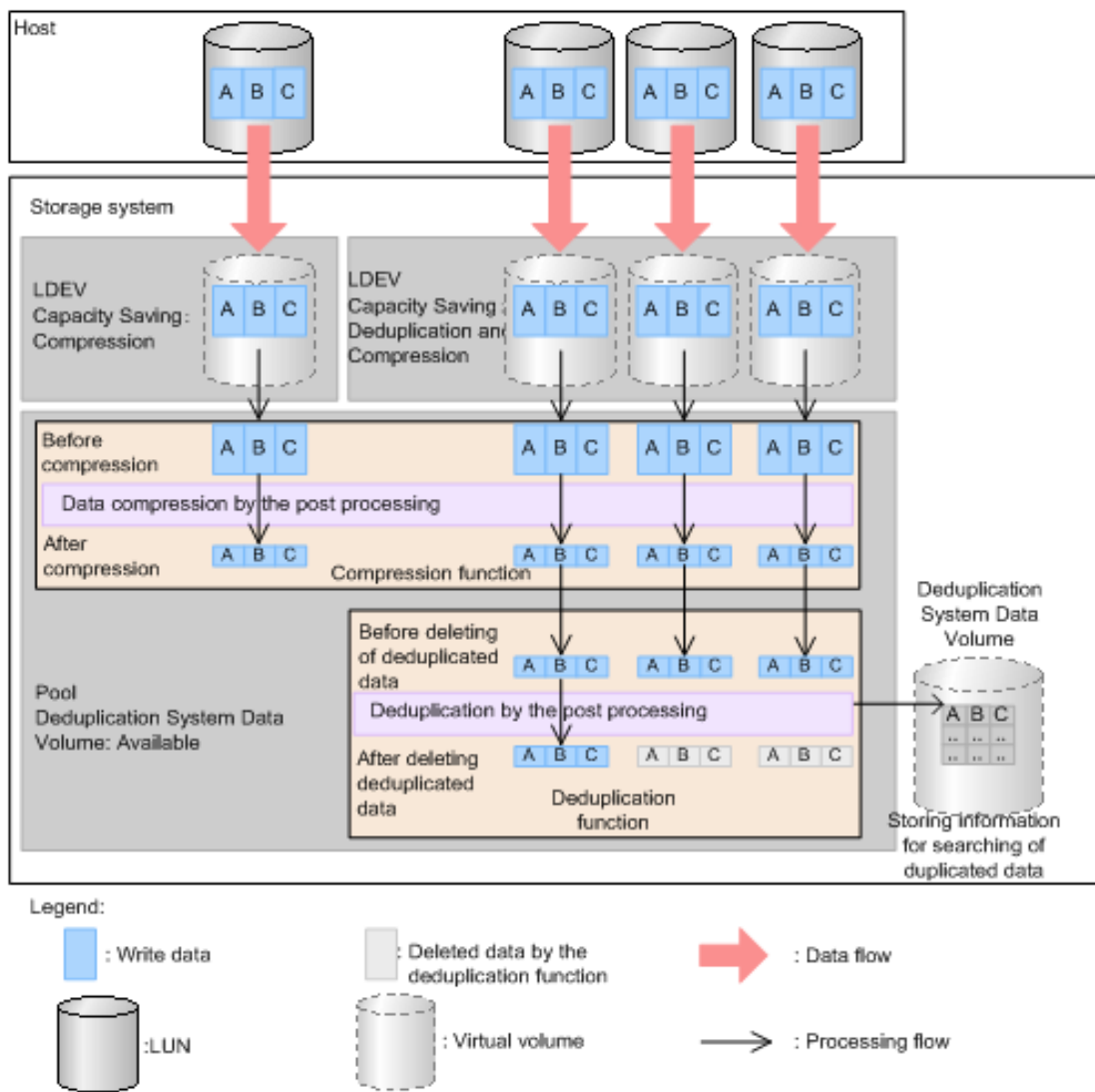
The capacity saving function includes deduplication and compression:

- **Deduplication:** The data deduplication function deletes duplicate copies of data written to different addresses in the same pool and maintains only a single copy of the data at one address. The deduplication function is enabled on a Dynamic Provisioning pool and then on the desired DP-VOLs in the pool. When deduplication is enabled, data that has multiple copies between DP-VOLs assigned to that pool is removed.

When you enable deduplication on a pool, a deduplication system data volume (DSD volume) for that pool is created. The DSD volume is used exclusively by the storage system to manage the deduplication function. A search table in the DSD volume is used to locate redundant data in the pool.

- **Compression:** The data compression function utilizes the LZ4 compression algorithm to compress the data. The compression function can be enabled for specific DP-VOLs.

The following figure illustrates the capacity saving function.



When the post-process mode is applied, data received by the storage controller is stored in a temporary area in the pool. When the data is classified as inactive (one hour since the last update for Dynamic Provisioning), the capacity saving processing is performed, and the post-process data is stored in the data storage area. When post-process data is updated again, the data stored in the data storage area is no longer required. This kind of data is called garbage data. The used capacity of the pool increases until garbage collection, which collects old data that is no longer required. The pool capacity that is eventually required is the sum of the physical data capacity after capacity saving plus the amount of metadata.



Note:

- The temporary area and the data storage area are not assigned fixed capacities. They share the pool and use the pool as needed.
- The temporary area is used only when the post-process mode is applied. When the inline mode is applied, capacity saving processing is performed simultaneously with receiving of data from the host, and host data is not stored in the temporary area.

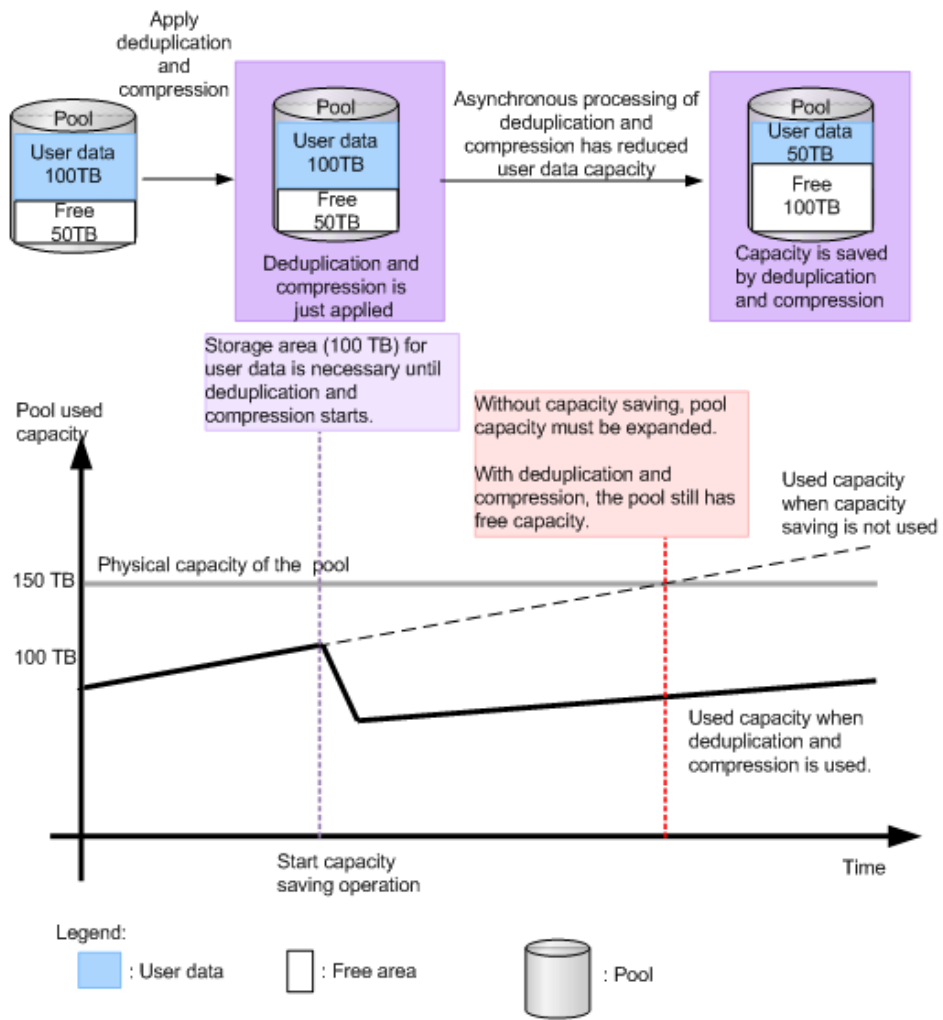
The capacity overhead associated with the capacity saving function includes the following:

- **Capacity consumed by metadata:** The capacity consumed by metadata for the capacity saving function (deduplication and compression) is approximately 3% of the consumed DP-VOL capacity that has been processed by capacity saving. For example, if the consumed capacity of a DP-VOL is 150 TB and the capacity saving feature has processed 100 TB of the 150 TB consumed capacity and reduced it to 30 TB, the capacity consumed by metadata for capacity saving function is approximately 3 TB (3% of 100 TB). The total consumed capacity of this DP-VOL at this instant is 83 TB (30 TB + 50 TB + 3 TB).
- **Capacity consumed by garbage (invalid) data:** The capacity consumed by garbage data is approximately 7% of the total consumed capacity of all DP-VOLs with capacity saving enabled. The capacity is dynamically consumed based on garbage data created by the capacity saving process and cleaned by the background garbage collection process. The garbage collection process is a background process with a lower priority than host I/O, so the capacity consumed by garbage data depends on both the garbage created and the host I/O rate.

The total capacity consumed by these overheads is about 10% (3% for metadata + 7% for garbage data) of the consumed capacity of DP-VOLs with capacity saving enabled. During periods of high write activity from the host, this capacity might increase over 10% temporarily, and then it returns to around 10% when host write activity decreases.

Capacity saving processing for existing data

The deduplication and compression processing is performed asynchronously for pages that store data, and the free area of the pool can be increased, thereby reducing the cost of purchasing drives over time.



Capacity saving processing for new write data

The capacity saving mode of a DP-VOL (post-process mode or inline mode) determines how capacity saving is applied to new write data from the host:

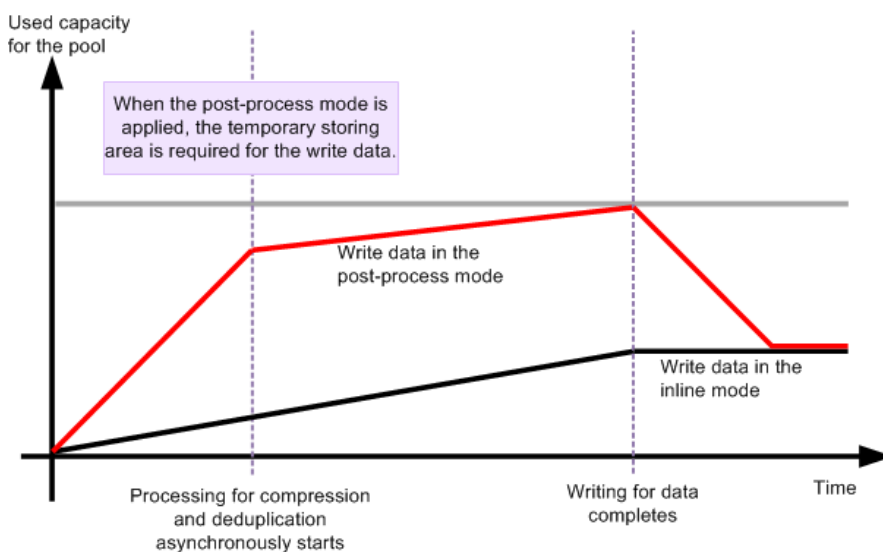
- Post-process mode:** When you apply capacity saving with the post-process mode to a DP-VOL, the compression and deduplication processing are performed asynchronously for new write data. Since capacity saving processing is not performed at the time the new data is written, the post-process mode can reduce the impact of capacity saving processing on I/O performance, but pool capacity is required to store the new write data until the capacity saving processing is performed.

When you enable capacity saving on a DP-VOL using Device Manager - Storage Navigator, post-process mode is applied.

- Inline mode (CCI only):** When you apply capacity saving with the inline mode to a DP-VOL, the compression and deduplication processing are performed synchronously for new write data. The inline mode minimizes the pool capacity required to store new write data but can impact I/O performance more than the post-process mode. The inline mode should be applied when writing data with sequential I/Os, for example, when writing data to target volumes of data migration or secondary volumes of copy pairs. When the data migration or copy pair creation has completed, the mode should be changed from the inline mode to the post-process mode.

If you want to use inline mode, you must use CCI (raidcom add ldev [-capacity_saving_mode <saving mode>] or raidcom modify ldev [-capacity_saving_mode <saving mode>]).

The following example illustrates how the pool used capacity changes over time when performing data migration. The red line shows the capacity when the post-process mode is applied, and the black line shows the capacity when the inline mode is applied. This example assumes that the writing speed (GB/h) for the new data is faster than the initial capacity saving processing (GB/h).



When the inline mode is applied, capacity saving processing is performed synchronously for the writing of data. When the post-process mode is applied, capacity saving processing is performed asynchronously for the writing of data, and the temporary storage area is required for the write data. The capacity required for the temporary storing area depends on the writing speed of the new data, or on the frequency of data updates during migration.

The following table shows the processing method (synchronous or asynchronous) for initial data, new write data, and update data. For new write data, the capacity saving processing is performed at different times for the post-process mode and the inline mode.

Mode	Initial data*	New write data		Updated write data	
		Compression processing	Deduplication processing	Compression processing	Deduplication processing
Post-process mode	Asynchronous	Asynchronous	Asynchronous	Synchronous when compressed data is updated Asynchronous when uncompressed data is updated	Asynchronous
Inline mode	Asynchronous	Synchronous	Synchronous for data whose transfer length is 256 KB or more. Asynchronous for data whose transfer length is less than 256 KB.	Synchronous when compressed data is updated Asynchronous when uncompressed data is updated	Asynchronous

* The initial data is the existing data on the DP-VOL when the capacity saving function is enabled. Both compression and deduplication processing are performed asynchronously for the initial data.

Use cases for capacity saving

The results of enabling the capacity saving functions of deduplication and compression depend on the properties and access patterns of the stored data. In addition, when capacity saving is enabled, some storage behaviors are different from conventional behaviors because of the increase in load of storage controller processing caused by data scanning and garbage collection by data update. Before implementing capacity saving, you need to confirm whether it should be applied to your specific storage environment.

The following table lists several storage use cases and describes the application of capacity saving to each use case.

Use case	Settings	Description
Office	Deduplication and compression	Because there are many identical file copies, deduplication is effective.
VDI	Deduplication and compression	Deduplication is very effective because of OS area cloning.
Database	Compression	Deduplication is not effective because the database has unique information for each block.
Image/video	Not suitable (Disable)	Compressed by application.
Backup/archive	Deduplication and compression	Deduplication is effective between backups.



Caution:

- I/O performance to data with compression and deduplication is degraded. Verify the performance by utilizing best practices or Cache Optimization Tool (COT) tool before using the capacity saving function.
- Because approximately 10% is used for metadata and garbage data, capacity saving should be applied only when the result is expected to be 20% or higher.
- In deduplication and compression, processing is performed per 8 KB. Therefore, if the block size of the file system is an integral multiple of 8 KB, capacity saving is likely to be effective.
- The capacity saving function is not a good fit for high-write workloads. If the write workload rate is higher than garbage collection throughput, Cache Write Pending increases, causing performance degradation. Contact customer support to determine the garbage collection throughput for your configuration.

Preparing your environment to use capacity saving

Capacity saving cannot be used in conjunction with certain program products or functions. It's important to understand the usage compatibility and planning requirements, and storage planning points before implementing capacity saving within your environment.

Compatibility with the capacity saving function

The capacity saving function is not compatible with certain products and functions.

The following table specifies the compatibility restrictions for the capacity saving function.

Program product/function	Restrictions when using the capacity saving function
Dynamic Provisioning	The V-VOL full allocation function cannot be used. To prevent writing failures caused by full pool capacity, you must consider monitoring the free space of a pool.
Dynamic Tiering	Dynamic Tiering cannot be used. You must separate Dynamic Tiering pools and pools for which capacity saving is enabled.
Universal Volume Manager	The data direct mapping attribute cannot be set to DP-VOLs for which capacity saving is enabled. You must separate pools for which data direct mapping is applied and pools for which capacity saving is enabled.
ShadowImage quick restore	The ShadowImage quick restore function cannot be used. Therefore, it takes time when you restore the backup data and then resume the application.
Volume Migration	The Volume Migration product cannot be used on DP-VOLs for which capacity saving is enabled. If you need to migrate capacity saving-enabled DP-VOLs, use a different method to migrate the DP-VOLs (for example, host-based migration).

Program product/function	Restrictions when using the capacity saving function
Accelerated compression	The capacity saving function can be used with accelerated compression, but accelerated compression is effective only for certain tasks. In this case, you must select the appropriate function depending on the task, as described in the following table.

The following table describes the behavior when capacity saving and accelerated compression are used.

Capacity saving		Accelerated compression	Behavior
Compression	Deduplication and compression		
Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	Only accelerated compression is performed. The storage controller does not perform the compression/ deduplication processing, so I/O performance is not impacted.
Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	The storage controller compresses data and stores the compressed data in the pool. Controller-based compression and accelerated compression can be used simultaneously, but it is not recommended because performance would be degraded compared to use of only accelerated compression.
Disabled	Enabled	Enabled	When identical data is stored in a pool, the storage controller keeps only one of copy of the data (deduplication). For compression, the storage controller automatically determines that accelerated compression can be used and uses it. The pool must consist of only FMDs, and accelerated compression needs to be enabled in all parity groups in the pool.

Capacity saving		Accelerated compression	Behavior
Compression	Deduplication and compression		
Disabled	Enabled	Disabled	The storage controller performs the deduplication and compression processing. The storage controller has the largest overhead of the capacity saving processing.

Usage planning requirements for the capacity saving function

The following table outlines the items to review and plan for before using the capacity saving function.

Classification	Item	Remarks
Implementation	Implementation method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ New implementation ▪ Changing DP-VOL to DRD-VOL ▪ Migrating from old model (using a Program Product) ▪ Migrating from old model (through a server)
Capacity	Total used capacity of DRD-VOL	Total used capacity (before capacity saving) of VOL (DRD-VOL) to which the capacity saving function is applied.
	Capacity saving ratio [%]	<p>If the data to which capacity saving is applied already exists, you can run the data reduction estimation tool.</p> <p>If the data to which capacity saving is applied does not exist, you can estimate the capacity saving ratio by use cases. Contact customer support for the use cases and estimated capacity saving ratio.</p> <p>Capacity saving ratio shown as N:1 can be converted to the capacity saving rate in % by using the following formula:</p> <p>Capacity saving rate [%]=(1-1÷N)×100</p>
	Total used capacity of DP-VOL	Total used capacity of DP-VOL to which the capacity saving function is not applied.

Classification	Item	Remarks
Configuration	Storage system model	When planning the pool, if you want to implement capacity saving and maintain host performance, you must consider which model is suitable.
	RAID level	RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 6 can be used.
	Drive type	Having the same drive type (including rotational speed) in a pool is recommended.
	Capacity of one parity group	None.
Performance	Requirement for throughput (IOPS)	When planning the pool, if you want to implement capacity saving and maintain host performance, these items must be considered. If you account for these items, Performance Monitor output can be used. Average I/O size can be calculated as follows: Average throughput [MB/s] ÷ Average throughput [IOPS] × 1024
	Read/Write ratio	
	Average I/O size [KB]	
	Performance boundary for one parity group [IOPS]	Calculate the performance boundary for one parity group by using performance information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Drive type: Consider the drive you plan to use. ▪ Read/Write ratio: Consider the throughput requirements. ▪ I/O size: Consider the throughput requirements.
Other requirement	Use of encryption	You can use both encryption and accelerated compression with the FMD-HDE drives. For details, see <i>Encryption License Key User Guide</i> .

Storage planning considerations for the capacity saving function

Review the following table for information about settings, configuration, and performance considerations when using the capacity saving function.

Category	Item	Remarks
Setting	Capacity saving setting	Determine the capacity saving function to use by using the capacity saving rate(%) that is estimated by the data reduction estimation tool or the capacity saving rate(%) obtained by making a guess.
Configuration	Volume capacity	<p>Estimate the number of volumes and the volume capacity provided to the host. For DRD-VOL, we recommend that you create volume of smaller than 2.4 TB. When 2.4 TB or larger volume is created, the processing efficiency of the capacity saving processing and that of garbage collection are degraded due to the limitation of the cache management device capacity, and the effect of data reduction is reduced.</p> <p>When the number of volumes is small, the following performance might not be fully achieved; host I/O performance, post-process initial capacity saving, garbage collection performance, inline data migration performance, performance of disabling capacity saving function, LDEV format performance, LDEV removal performance, and initial copy performance.</p>
	Number of parity groups	<p>Determine the number of parity groups when designing a pool. If you consider the number of parity groups, following cases can be considered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The capacity, alone ▪ The capacity and performance <p>For details, contact customer support.</p>
	Cache memory capacity	Determine the cache memory capacity to be installed based on the total used DRD-VOL capacity. For details, contact customer support.
	Shared memory capacity	Determine the shared memory capacity to be installed based on the total used DRD-VOL capacity. For details, contact customer support.
Performance	Estimated performance value	Estimate the average write throughput in a customer use case and confirm that garbage data does not keep increasing with the workload. For the average write throughput, estimate the write throughput in the operation cycle (1 day to 1 week, for example). Use information output by Performance Monitor for estimation. In the case where garbage data increases constantly, the capacity saving function cannot be applied.

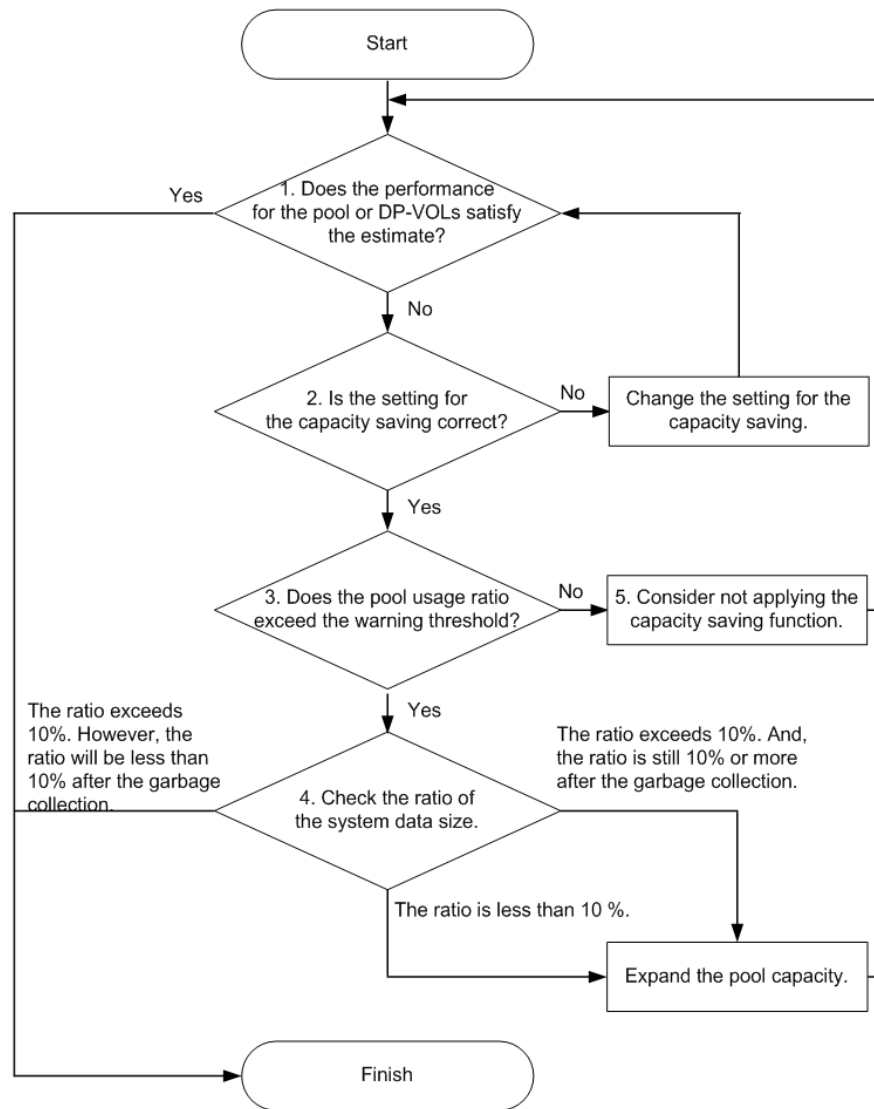
Monitoring performance when capacity saving is in use

When your site implements capacity saving with deduplication and compression, you'll need to monitor performance. If there are performance issues, there are steps you can take to resolve them.

The following table outlines the best practices for items that can be monitored when deduplication and compression is used.

Monitored item	Description
Performance	Verify the throughput for DRD-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Throughput for each DRD-VOL ▪ Total throughput for DRD-VOLs belonging to the same MP Unit. ▪ Total throughput for DRD-VOLs in a storage system. When the performance requirements are not met, you can change the capacity saving setting or expand the pool capacity.
Pool capacity monitoring	Check whether the used pool capacity exceeds the threshold. When the capacity exceeds the threshold, check the amount of system data (amount of garbage data). If the amount of garbage data is small, you should expand the pool capacity.

Use the following workflow to detect and troubleshoot performance issues associated with the capacity saving function.



Additional details for steps 1-5 of the performance assessment workflow.

1. **Identify the pools or the volumes for which performance is insufficient.** Any of the following conditions can indicate that there is a performance issue:
 - The current throughput is lower than the required throughput.
 - The average write throughput of DRD-VOL in the operation cycle is greater than the garbage collection performance of each DRD-VOL

- The average write throughput of each MP unit in the operation cycle is greater than the garbage collection performance of each MP unit
 - The average write throughput of each system in the operation cycle is greater than the garbage collection performance of each system
- 2. Check the settings for the capacity saving function.** When insufficient performance has been detected, check the following capacity saving settings: If they are correct, go to step 3.
- If the capacity saving setting is set to Compression or Deduplication or Compression by mistake, disable the capacity saving setting.
 - If the capacity saving mode is set to **Inline** by mistake, change it to **Post process**. For details how to change the capacity saving mode, see *Command Control Interface Command Reference*.
- 3. Check if the used pool capacity exceeds the threshold.** Check if the Pool Usage exceeds the warning threshold of the pool. If the pool usage exceeds the threshold, a SIM is issued. When performance is insufficient--even if the settings are as designed--it is likely that the pool capacity will soon be full, and garbage collection is prioritized over I/O.
- If the threshold is exceeded, go to step 4.
 - If the threshold is not exceeded, go to step 5.
- 4. Check the percentage of the amount of system data.** Check [the amount of system data]÷[the amount of garbage data].
- When the percentage of system data in the used pool capacity is higher than 10%:

If you know that garbage data is increased only temporarily, and time required for recovering the performance is acceptable, wait until the performance is recovered. If it is not acceptable, expand the pool capacity.

When the percentage of system data in the used pool capacity is higher than 10%, if garbage data is collected by garbage collection, the pool usage is lower than the threshold. When it is lower than the threshold, the priority of garbage collection is lowered, and I/O performance is recovered.
 - When the percentage of system data in the used pool capacity is lower than 10%:

To prioritize I/O processing, expand the pool capacity. Although the garbage data that should be collected is small, the priority of garbage collection is high.
- 5. Decide whether the capacity saving function should be used:**
- When garbage collection is not effective, and performance is not sufficient, dedupe and compression cannot be applied to the volume. If there is any volume for which the capacity saving setting can be disabled, disable it.
 - The used capacity of the pool increases when the capacity saving setting is disabled. Confirm in advance that the pool has enough free capacity.

Terminating the usage of capacity saving

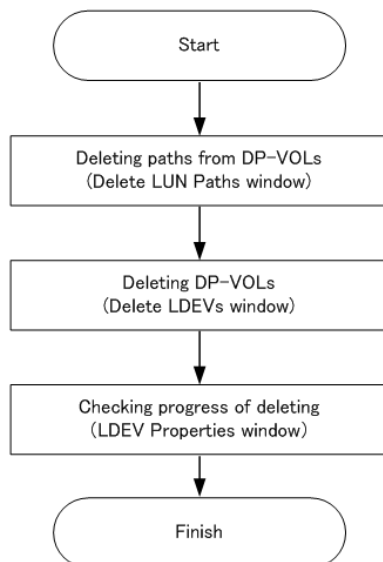
When your site no longer needs to use capacity saving, you can end the usage in one of two ways. Following are the options for terminating the use of capacity saving:

- Remove all DRD-VOLs
- Change the capacity saving setting from DRD-VOLs to DP-VOLs

When you disable the capacity saving setting for all DRD-VOLs, they are restored to normal DP-VOLs.

Removing DRD-VOLs

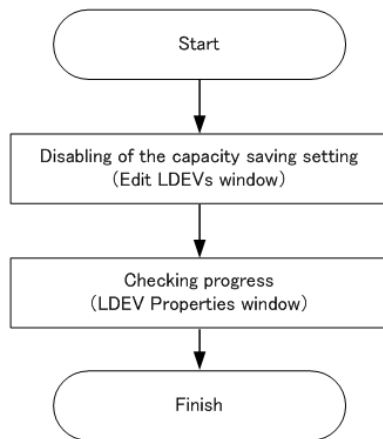
The following chart outlines the task flow for removing DRD-VOLs.



- Even if a DRD-VOL with Deduplication and Compression enabled is removed, duplicate data might be kept in the pool. The free pool capacity is not always increased.
- You can delete a DRD-VOL by using the **Delete LDEVs** window. The LDEV removal operation might take a few hours. You cannot cancel LDEV removal.
- With LDEV removal, even after the operation is complete, volume exists. The capacity saving status of volumes is changed to **Deleting Volume**, and the progress is displayed.

Disabling capacity saving settings

The following chart outlines the task flow for disabling capacity saving settings.



- You can disable the setting using the **Edit LDEVs** window.
- When the capacity saving setting is disabled, data to which compression/ deduplication was applied is decompressed, and the used capacity of the pool increases. Before disabling the capacity saving function, verify that the pool has enough free capacity.
- When the capacity saving setting is being disabled, [Rehydrating] is displayed as **Capacity Saving Status**.
- Even if the capacity saving setting is being disabled, I/O can continue. You cannot cancel disabling it or enable it again.
- The processing time of disabling the capacity saving setting takes long because of data decompression. You can check the progress from Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface. The disabling processing time increases depending on the used capacity of virtual volume. The disabling processing time changes according to the storage system configuration, data layout, and data content.

Chapter 3: Managing virtual storage machine resources

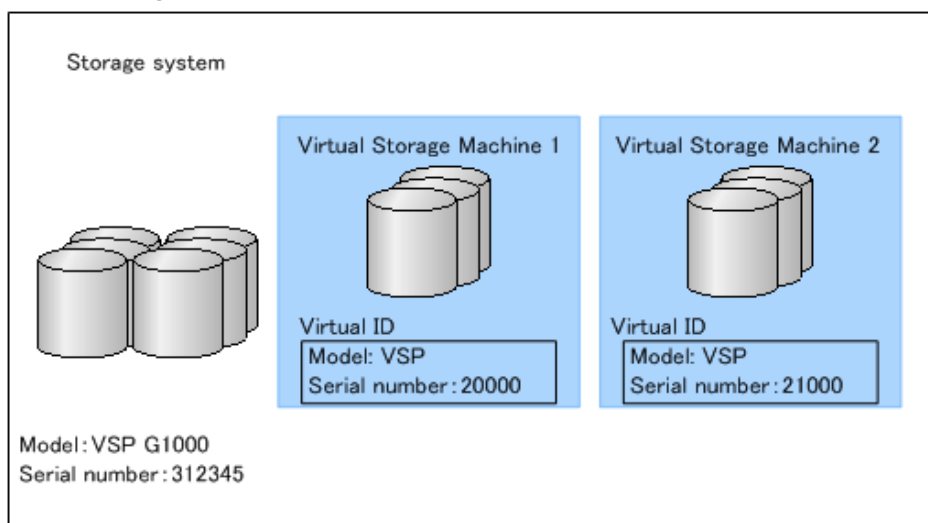
Virtual storage machines are used to achieve continuous access to data for global-active device volumes and for data migration.

About virtual storage machines and virtualized resources

The virtual storage machine is the unit that is used to manage virtualized storage system resources. When you use global storage virtualization functions (global-active device, nondisruptive migration), you create a virtual storage machine within a physical storage system to enable the host server to recognize two storage systems as one virtual storage system.

For example, when global-active device (GAD) is used to provide nondisruptive host access to volumes that reside on different storage systems, a virtual storage machine for the storage system that contains the primary volumes (P-VOLs) of the GAD pairs is created in the secondary storage system. For GAD, the primary storage system is the virtualized storage system.

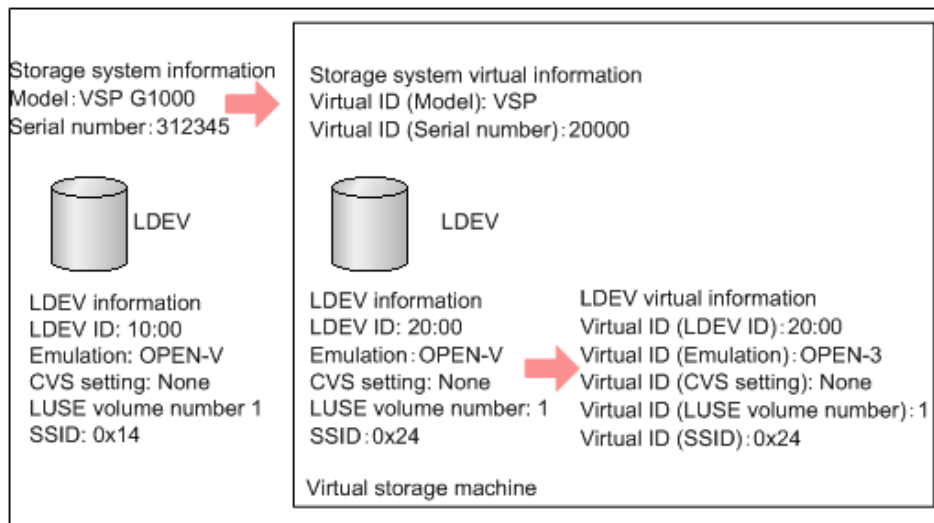
The following figure illustrates the relationship between a (physical) storage system and virtual storage machines.



Virtual IDs

For operations involving virtualized resources in a virtual storage machine, physical resources must be linked to virtualized resources. For example, when you perform operations on LDEVs in a virtual storage machine, you must specify physical LDEV IDs (not virtual LDEV IDs) that link to resources in the virtual storage machine. The following table lists the virtual IDs that must be set for resources in the (physical) storage system to enable the host server to recognize two storage systems as one virtual storage system.

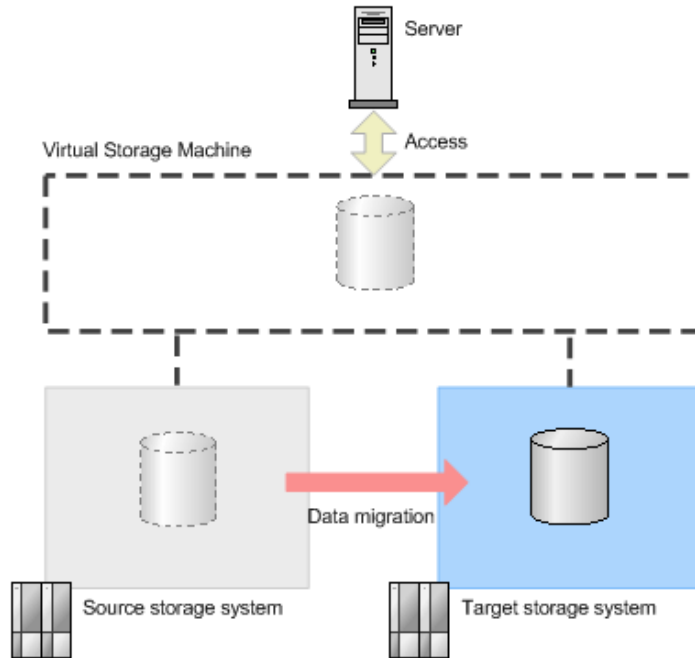
Virtual ID	Resource on which the virtual ID is set
Model type of the virtualized storage system Serial number of the virtualized storage system	Resource group
LDEV ID Emulation type CVS SSID	LDEV



Using virtual storage machines for nondisruptive migration

The nondisruptive migration (NDM) software is used to migrate data nondisruptively from a source storage system to a target storage system. When NDM is used, the program product configuration data is also migrated to enable business operations to continue without interruption.

When NDM migration is performed, a resource group is created in the target storage system, and the model type and serial number of the source storage system are assigned to the resource group to create the virtual storage machine.



You can use NDM to migrate the following storage systems:

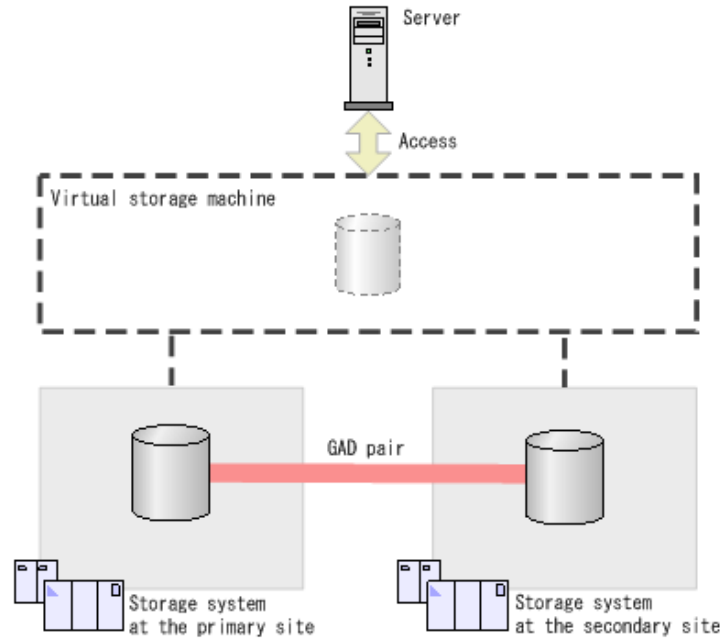
- Migration source:
 - TagmaStore USP, TagmaStore NSC
 - Universal Storage Platform V/VM
 - Virtual Storage Platform
 - Unified Storage VM
- Migration target:
 - VSP Gx00 models
 - VSP Fx00 models
 - VSP G1x00
 - VSP F1500

For details about nondisruptive migration, see the *Nondisruptive Migration User Guide*.

Using virtual storage machines for global-active device

Global-active device (GAD) enables you to create and maintain synchronous, remote copies of data volumes. Both volumes of a GAD pair can receive the same data from the server.

When you use GAD, a resource group is created in the secondary storage system, and the model type and serial number of the primary storage system are assigned to the resource group to create the virtual storage machine. The server then recognizes both storage systems (the storage systems at the primary and secondary sites) as the same storage system and can synchronously access both volumes of a GAD pair.



For details about global-active device, see the *Global-Active Device User Guide*.

Requirements and specifications for global storage virtualization

The following table lists the requirements and specifications for global storage virtualization.

Item	Requirement
Storage system	The following storage systems support global storage virtualization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ VSP G1x00 and VSP F1500 ▪ VSP Gx00 models and VSP Fx00 models

Item	Requirement
Virtual storage machine	<p>The following storage system models can be virtualized as virtual storage machines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TagmaStore USP, TagmaStore NSC ▪ USP V/VM ▪ VSP ▪ VSP G1x00 and VSP F1500 ▪ HUS VM ▪ VSP G200, G400, G600, G800 and VSP F400, F600, F800
Maximum number of virtual storage machines per storage system	You can define up to 7 virtual storage machines in a single physical storage system.
User interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Control Interface (CCI) ▪ Device Manager - Storage Navigator ▪ Hitachi Command Suite <p>For details about using CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator, see Virtual storage machine operations in CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator (on page 87).</p> <p>For details about using Hitachi Command Suite, see the <i>Hitachi Command Suite User Guide</i> and the <i>Nondisruptive Migration User Guide</i>.</p>

Virtual storage machine operations in CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator

You can use Command Control Interface (CCI) and Device Manager - Storage Navigator to perform operations with virtual storage machines. Both CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator display all virtual storage machine information, but some operations can only be performed using CCI.

The following table lists the virtual storage machine operations and indicates whether the operations can be performed in CCI, Device Manager - Storage Navigator, or both.

Operation	CCI	Device Manager - Storage Navigator
Creating/deleting virtual storage machines	Yes	No

Operation	CCI	Device Manager - Storage Navigator
Reserving host groups in a virtual storage machine	Yes	No
Deleting default virtual LDEV IDs	Yes	No
Reserving virtual LDEV IDs in a virtual storage machine	Yes	No
Setting virtual LDEV IDs	Yes	Yes
Setting device parameters for virtual LDEVs	Yes	Yes
Viewing virtual storage machine information (model type, serial number)	Yes	Yes
Viewing virtual LDEV information	Yes	Yes

Viewing virtual storage machine information in Device Manager - Storage Navigator

Information about the virtualized resources of a virtual storage machine is displayed in Device Manager - Storage Navigator with associated physical storage information. If the information about these resources is not displayed by default, change the settings for the table columns displayed in the window.

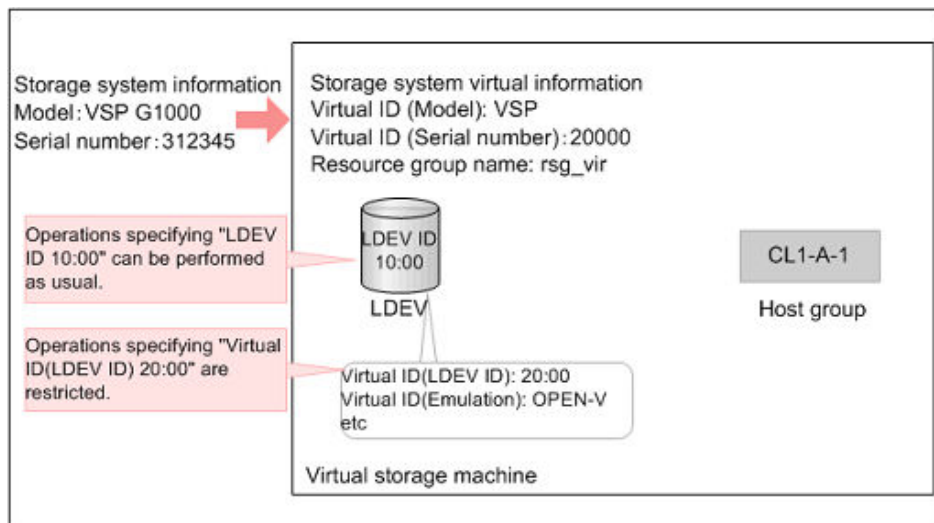
Device Manager - Storage Navigator uses the following terms about virtualized resources:

- **LDEV for which virtualization management is enabled:** An LDEV that satisfies one of these conditions:
 - The virtual storage machine that manages the resource group with the LDEV is different from the storage system involved in the operation (their model types and serial numbers are different).
 - The virtual storage machine that manages the resource group with the LDEV is the same as the storage system involved in the operation (their model types and serial numbers are the same), but the virtual LDEV ID and the LDEV ID are different.
- **LDEV for which virtualization management is disabled:** An LDEV that satisfies both of these conditions:
 - The virtual storage machine that manages the resource group with the LDEV is the same as the storage system involved in the operation (their model types and serial numbers are the same).
 - The virtual LDEV ID and the LDEV ID are the same.

Performing provisioning operations for resources in a virtual storage machine

CCI must be used to perform provisioning operations on virtualized resources.

For provisioning operations that involve virtualized resources in a virtual storage machine, you can perform provisioning operations that specify conventional physical resources or virtualized resources. As shown in the following figure, for example, provisioning operations in which "LDEV ID:10:00" is specified can be performed as usual, but provisioning operations in which "Virtual ID(LDEV ID): 20:00" is specified are limited. For details about performing provisioning operations for virtualized resources, see the *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*.



Pair operations with virtual storage machine pairs

Specifying virtual IDs in CCIpair operations

You can perform GAD pair operations by specifying both of the following in the HORCM_LDEV parameters of the CCI configuration definition file:

- Serial number of the virtual storage machine in the `Serial#` parameter
- Virtual LDEV number in the `CU:LDEV(LDEV#)` parameter

You can perform CCI pair operations that do not involve virtual storage machines by specifying both of the following in the HORCM_LDEV parameters of the CCI configuration definition file:

- Serial number of the physical storage system in the `Serial#` parameter
- Physical LDEV number in the `CU:LDEV(LDEV#)` parameter



Caution: If the following condition exists, local copy pair operations cannot be performed by specifying virtual IDs:

- The primary volume and secondary volume are defined differently for the virtual storage machine.

If both of the following conditions exist, remote copy pair operations cannot be performed by specifying virtual IDs:

- The primary volume is an LDEV in a storage system that does not support global storage virtualization (a VSP, HUS VM, or USP V/VM storage system).
- The secondary volume is an LDEV in a storage system that does support global storage virtualization (a VSP G1000, VSP G1500, or VSP F1500 storage system).



Caution: Global-active device pair operations that specify the virtual ID cannot be performed.

Displaying pair information

You can create GAD pairs by specifying both of following in the HORCM_LDEV parameters of the CCI configuration definition file:

- Serial number of the physical storage system in the `Serial#` parameter
- Virtual LDEV number in the `CU:LDEV(LDEV#)` parameter

If the pair is created under the above conditions, the `pairdisplay` command displays the following information:

- Serial number of the virtual storage machine in the `Seq#` parameter
- Virtual LDEV number in the `LDEV#` parameter

You can create GAD pairs by specifying both of the following in the HORCM_LDEV parameters of the CCI configuration definition file:

- Serial number of the physical storage system in the `Serial#` parameter
- Physical LDEV number in the `CU:LDEV(LDEV#)` parameter

If the pair is created under the above conditions, the `pairdisplay` command displays the following information:

- Physical serial number of the virtual storage machine in the `Seq#` parameter
- Physical virtual LDEV number in the `LDEV#` parameter



Caution: You can create GAD pairs by specifying both of the following in the HORCM_LDEV parameters of the CCI configuration definition file:

- Serial number of the physical storage system in the `Serial#` parameter
- Physical LDEV number in the `CU:LDEV(LDEV#)` parameter

For GAD pairs created under the above conditions, the device information that is recognized by the server and the device information displayed by the `pairdisplay` command are different.

Creating a virtual storage machine

Use the following workflow to create a virtual storage machine. You must use CCI to create a virtual storage machine.

To create a virtual storage machine, you add a resource group and assign the model type and serial number of the virtualized storage system to the resource group.

Before you begin

You will need to enter the following information when you create a virtual storage machine:

- Model type and serial number of the storage system to be virtualized
- Port/host group information of the LDEVs to be virtualized (for example, CL1-A-1)
- LDEV IDs of the LDEVs to be virtualized

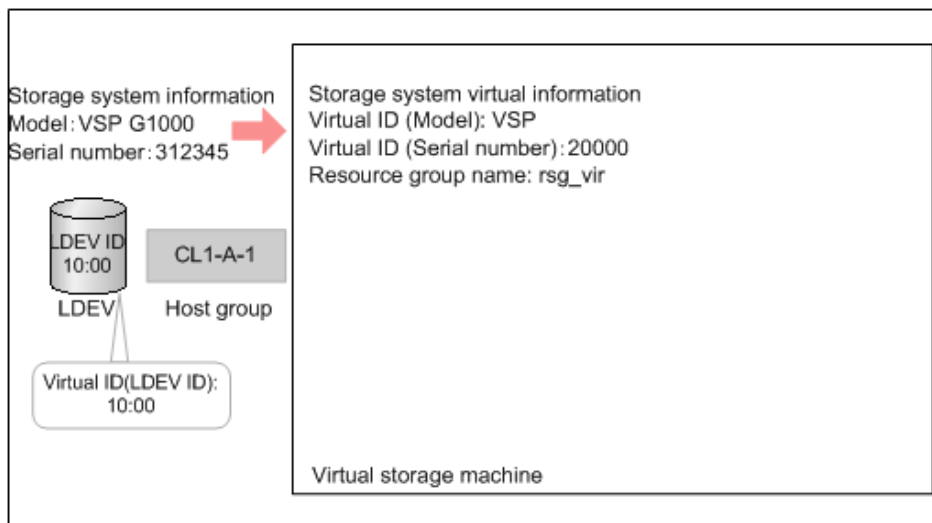
Procedure

1. Create a virtual storage machine by using the `raidcom add resource` command. For example:

```
raidcom add resource -resource_name rsg_vir -virtual_type 20000 R700
```

where:

- `rsg_vir` is the name of the new resource group that will contain the virtualized resources.
- `200000` is the serial number of the virtual storage machine.
- `R700` is the model type of the virtual storage machine.



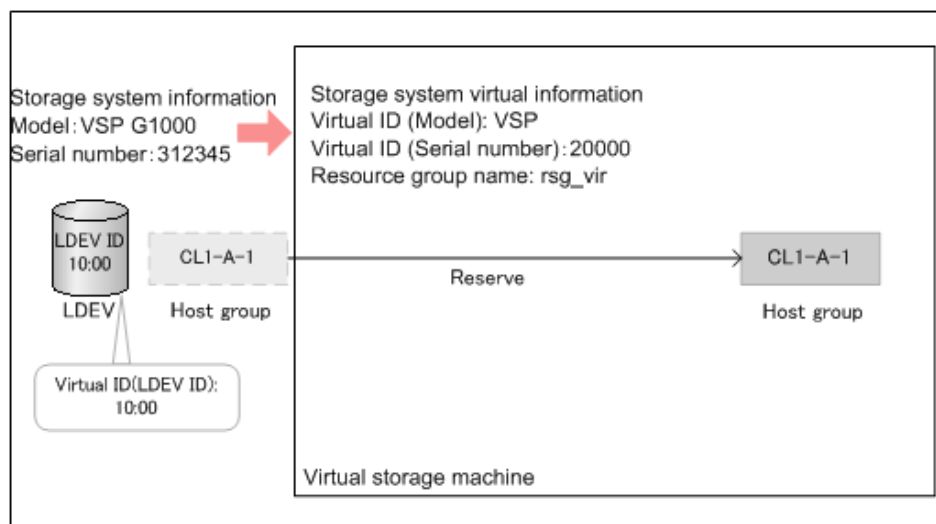
The following model types are supported:

- TagmaStore USP: R500
- TagmaStore NSC: RK500
- USP V: R600
- USP VM: RK600
- VSP: R700
- VSP G1x00, VSP F1500: R800
- HUS VM: M700
- VSP Gx00 models, VSP Fx00 models: M800

2. In the virtual storage machine, reserve the ID for the host group that will be accessed by the host server.

For example:

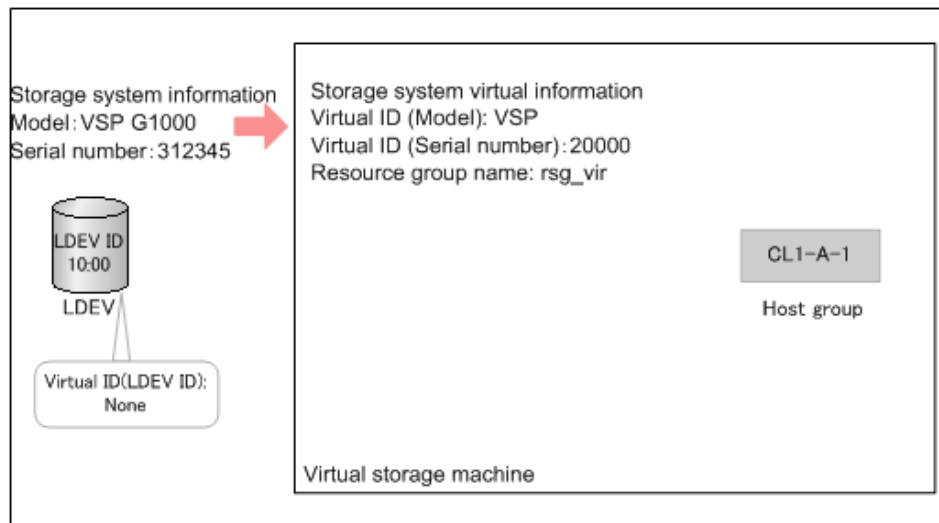
```
raidcom add resource -resource_name rsg_vir -port CL1-A-1
```



3. Delete the default virtual ID.

By default, virtual IDs are set in the LDEVs in the storage system. Delete the default virtual ID from the LDEV that you plan to use by using the **raidcom unmap resource** command. For example:

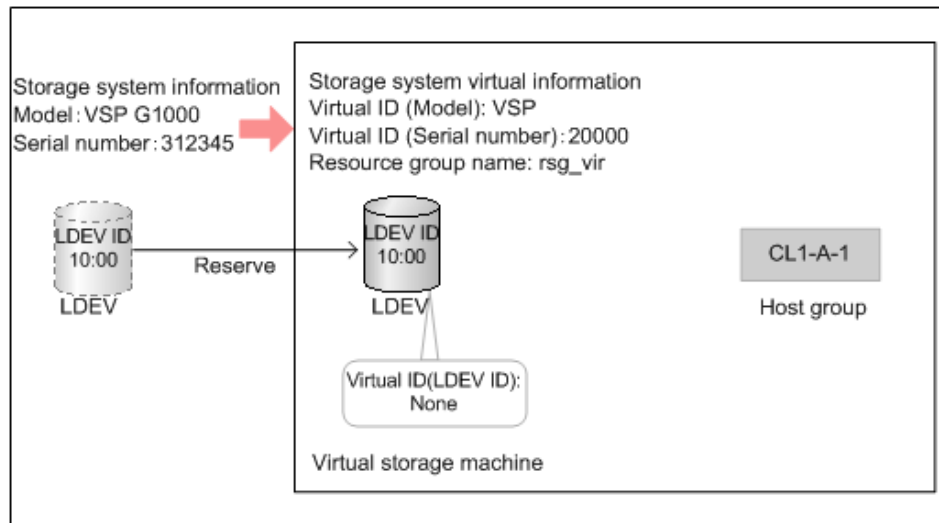
```
raidcom unmap resource -ldev_id 10:00 -virtual_ldev_id 10:00
```



4. Reserve the ID for the LDEV in the resource group.

In the resource group, reserve the LDEV ID for the LDEV that you plan to use in the virtual storage machine. For this operation, use the **raidcom add resource** command. For example:

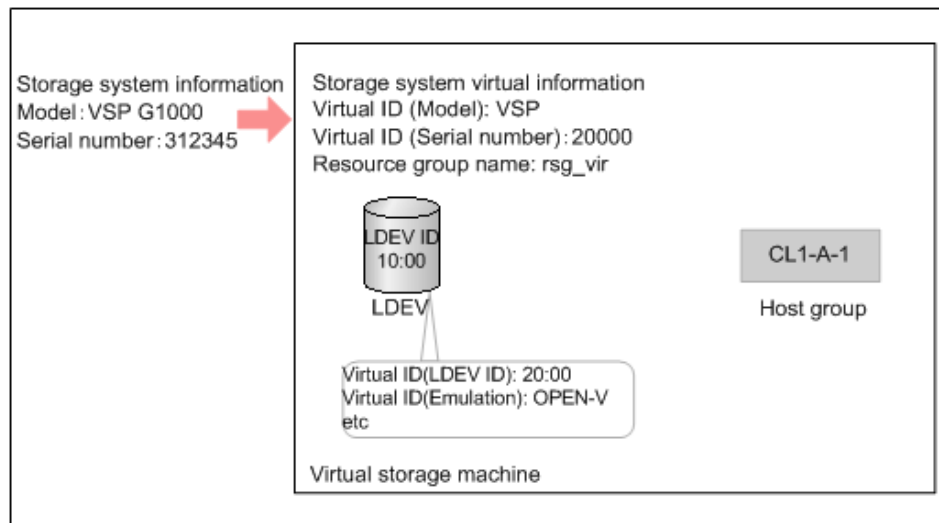
```
raidcom add resource -resource_name rsg_vir -ldev_id 10:00
```



5. Setting the virtual ID for the LDEV.

Set the virtual ID for the LDEV in the virtual storage machine by using the **raidcom map resource** command. For example:

```
raidcom map resource -ldev_id 10:00 -virtual_ldev_id 20:00
```



Enabling the virtualization management setting for LDEVs

Use this procedure to enable the virtualization management setting of volumes using Device Manager - Storage Navigator. When virtualization management is enabled for a volume, you can set the virtual LDEV ID and specify the virtual volume configuration of the volume.

Before you begin

- You must have the Security Administrator (View & Modify) role to perform this task.

Procedure

1. In the **Administration** tree, select **Resource Groups**.
2. Select the resource group that contains the target volume.
3. In the **LDEVs** tab, select the target volume, and click **Edit Virtualization Management Settings**.
4. In **Virtualization Management Settings**, select **Enable** or **Enable (Not Set)**.
 - **Enable:** Virtualization management can be used. You can set the virtual LDEV ID and specify the virtual LDEV configuration using Device Manager - Storage Navigator.
 - **Enable (Not Set):** Virtualization management can be used, but you cannot set the virtual LDEV ID or specify the virtual LDEV configuration using Device Manager - Storage Navigator.
 - **Disable:** Virtualization management cannot be used for the selected volume.
5. If you selected **Enable** in **Virtualization Management Settings**, set the virtual LDEV ID for the selected volume.
 If you selected more than one volume, set the starting virtual LDEV ID in **Initial Virtual LDEV ID**, and set the interval for the subsequent LDEV IDs in **Interval**.

Virtual LDEV IDs that are not used in the virtual storage machine are assigned sequentially at the specified interval, starting from the specified virtual LDEV ID.



Note: If the virtual storage machine is the same as the storage system, assign a virtual LDEV ID that is different from the LDEV ID of the selected LDEV. If the virtual storage machine is the same as the storage system and you need to assign a virtual LDEV ID that is the same as the LDEV ID of the selected LDEV, select **Disable** in **Virtualization Management Settings**.



Caution: If the virtual storage machine is configured in multiple storage systems, a virtual LDEV ID that is already used in another storage system might be assigned. In such a configuration, set the interval so that a virtual LDEV ID that is already used in another storage system is not assigned.

6. If you selected **Enable** in **Virtualization Management Settings**, select **Virtual Configuration** to specify the volume configuration information. For the virtual volume configuration, the specified values are set for all selected LDEVs.
 - If the volume configuration of the virtual LDEV and the LDEV are the same, select **Not Set**.
 - If the volume configuration of the virtual LDEV and the LDEV are different, select **Specify**, and then set the following parameters:
 - a. In **Emulation Type**, select the virtual emulation type. For the virtual emulation type, which is similar to the emulation type, set one of the emulation types that exists in the same group of 32 volumes with LDEV IDs.
 - b. Select **CVS Settings**.
 - c. If the virtual LDEV is a LUSE volume, in **Number of Concatenated LDEVs** specify the number of concatenated LDEVs (decimal number from 2 to 36). If the virtual LDEV is not a LUSE volume, enter 1.
 - d. In **SSID**, specify the virtual SSID (hexadecimal number from 0004 to FFFE). Set a virtual SSID for each virtual LDEV address (64, 128, 256) in the virtual storage machine.
7. Click **Finish**.
8. Enter the task name in **Task Name**.
If you want the **Tasks** window to open automatically, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to register the task.

**Caution:**

If the LDEV virtualization management setting is canceled, **Failed** is displayed in the **Status** column of the **Task** window and **Transient** is displayed for the Virtual LDEV ID. To resolve the transient status, perform one of the following operations on the LDEVs:

- Resolve the cause of the failure by addressing the error message in the **Task** window, and then retry the operation by using the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window.
- In the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window, set **Virtual Management Settings** to **Disable** before applying the setting to the storage system.

Editing virtual LDEV ID and virtual volume configuration

Use this procedure to edit the virtual LDEV ID and volume configuration (emulation type, CVS and LUSE settings, and SSID) of a virtualized volume using Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

Before you begin

- You must have the Security Administrator (View & Modify) role to perform this task.
- The virtualization management setting for the target volume must be set to Enabled.

Procedure

1. In the **Administration** tree, select **Resource Groups**.
2. Select the resource group that contains the target volume.
3. In the **LDEVs** tab, select the target volume, and click **Edit Virtualization Management Settings**.
4. In **Virtualization Management Settings**, make sure that **Enable** is selected. If **Enable (Not Set)** or **Disable** is selected, you cannot edit the virtual LDEV ID or the volume configuration.
5. Edit the virtual LDEV ID for the selected volume.

If you selected more than one volume, set the starting virtual LDEV ID in **Initial Virtual LDEV ID**, and set the interval for the subsequent LDEV IDs in **Interval**. Virtual LDEV IDs that are not used in the virtual storage machine are assigned sequentially at the specified interval, starting from the specified virtual LDEV ID.



Note: If the virtual storage machine is the same as the storage system, assign a virtual LDEV ID that is different from the LDEV ID of the selected LDEV. If the virtual storage machine is the same as the storage system and you need to assign a virtual LDEV ID that is the same as the LDEV ID of the selected LDEV, select **Disable** in **Virtualization Management Settings**.



Caution: If the virtual storage machine is configured in multiple storage systems, a virtual LDEV ID that is already used in another storage system might be assigned. In such a configuration, set the interval so that a virtual LDEV ID that is already used in another storage system is not assigned.

6. Select **Virtual Configuration** to edit the volume configuration information. For the virtual volume configuration, the specified values are set for all selected LDEVs.
 - If the volume configuration of the virtual LDEV and the LDEV are the same, select **Not Set**.
 - If the volume configuration of the virtual LDEV and the LDEV are different, select **Specify**, and then set the following parameters:
 - a. In **Emulation Type**, select the virtual emulation type. For the virtual emulation type, which is similar to the emulation type, set one of the emulation types that exists in the same group of 32 volumes with LDEV IDs.
 - b. Select **CVS Settings**.
 - c. If the virtual LDEV is a LUSE volume, in **Number of Concatenated LDEVs** specify the number of concatenated LDEVs (decimal number from 2 to 36). If the virtual LDEV is not a LUSE volume, enter 1.
 - d. In **SSID**, specify the virtual SSID (hexadecimal number from 0004 to FFFE). Set a virtual SSID for each virtual LDEV address (64, 128, 256) in the virtual storage machine.
7. Click **Finish**.
8. Enter the task name in **Task Name**.
If you want the **Tasks** window to open automatically, select **Go to tasks window for status**.
9. Click **Apply** to register the task.

**Caution:**

If the LDEV virtualization management setting is canceled, **Failed** is displayed in the **Status** column of the **Task** window and **Transient** is displayed for the Virtual LDEV ID. To resolve the transient status, perform one of the following operations on the LDEVs:

- Resolve the cause of the failure by addressing the error message in the **Task** window, and then retry the operation by using the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window.
- In the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window, set **Virtual Management Settings** to **Disable** before applying the setting to the storage system.

Disabling the virtualization management setting for LDEVs

Use this procedure to disable the virtualization management setting of volumes using Device Manager - Storage Navigator. When virtualization management is disabled for a volume, you cannot set the virtual LDEV ID or specify the virtual volume configuration of the volume.

Before you begin

- You must have the Security Administrator (View & Modify) role to perform this task.

Procedure

1. In the **Administration** tree, select **Resource Groups**.
2. Select the resource group that contains the target volume.
3. In the **LDEVs** tab, select the target volume, and click **Edit Virtualization Management Settings**.
4. In **Virtualization Management Settings**, select **Disable**.
5. Click **Finish**.
6. Enter the task name in **Task Name**.
7. Click **Apply**.

The task is registered. If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.



Caution:

If the LDEV virtualization management setting is canceled, **Failed** is displayed in the **Status** column of the **Task** window and **Transient** is displayed for the Virtual LDEV ID. To resolve the transient status, perform one of the following operations on the LDEVs:

- Resolve the cause of the failure by addressing the error message in the **Task** window, and then retry the operation by using the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window.
- In the **Edit Virtualization Management Settings** window, set **Virtual Management Settings** to **Disable** before applying the setting to the storage system.

Chapter 4: Configuring custom-sized provisioning

Configuring custom-sized provisioning involves creating and configuring custom-size volumes (CVs). This provisioning strategy is suitable for use on both open and mainframe systems. The Virtual LUN software is required to configure custom-sized provisioning on open systems.

Configuring volumes in a parity group

For RAID 5 (7D+1P), RAID 6 (6D+2P), or RAID 6 (14D+2P) a maximum of 2,048 fixed-size volumes (FVs) and a certain amount of free space are available in one parity group. For other RAID levels, a maximum of 1,024 FVs and a certain amount of free space are available in one parity group. Each parity group has the same configuration, and is assigned the same FVs of the same size and RAID level.

The Delete LDEV and Create LDEV functions are performed on each parity group. Parity groups are also separated from each other by boundary limitations. Therefore, you cannot define a volume across two or more parity groups beyond these boundaries.

As the result of creating and deleting LDEVs, a parity group contains CVs and free spaces that are delimited in logical cylinders. Sequential free spaces are combined into a single free space.

Configuration of interleaved parity groups

If RAID configurations are RAID1 (2D+2D) or RAID5 (7D+1P), the interleaved parity group can be created by concatenating multiple of parity groups. The following table lists the RAID configurations and the number of parity groups that can be concatenated.

RAID configuration	2 concatenating	4 concatenating
RAID1 (2D+2D)	Available	Not Available
RAID5 (7D+1P)	Available	Available

When concatenating parity groups, data in LDEVs is allocated between the interleaved parity groups. Therefore, loads are dispersed because of the parity group concatenation, and the LDEV performance is improved.

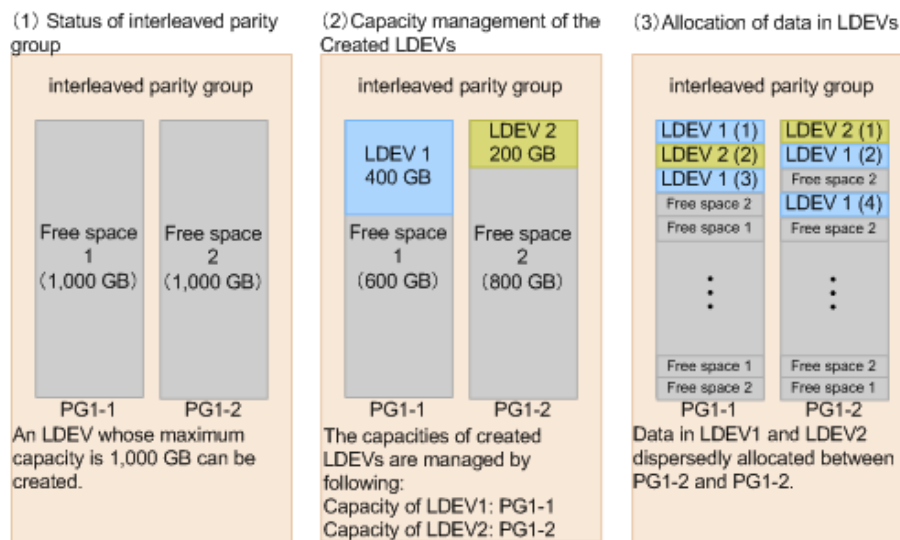
The capacity of the created LDEV is managed by each of the parity groups that are in the interleaved parity group. The maximum capacity of an LDEV is the same as the capacity of the interleaved parity group.



Note: Even if the parity groups are concatenated, they cannot be regarded as a large single parity group.

See the following example:

- Creating the interleaved parity group by concatenating parity groups PG1-1 and PG1-2.
- Creating LDEVs in each parity group that are in the interleaved parity group.
 - LDEV 1 in PG1-1
 - LDEV 2 in PG1-2



Virtual LUN specifications

Virtual LUN specifications for open systems

Parameter	Specification for fixed-size volumes	Specification for variable-size volumes
Emulation type	OPEN-3, OPEN-8, OPEN-9, OPEN-E	OPEN-V
Ability to intermix emulation type	Depends on the track geometry	Depends on the track geometry

Parameter	Specification for fixed-size volumes	Specification for variable-size volumes
Maximum number of volumes (normal and Virtual LUN) per parity group	2,048 for RAID 5 (7D+1P), RAID 6 (6D+2P), and RAID 6 (14D+2P) 1,024 for all other RAID levels	2,048 for RAID 5 (7D+1P), RAID 6 (6D+2P), and RAID 6 (14D+2P) 1,024 for all other RAID levels
Maximum number of volumes (normal and Virtual LUN) per storage system	65,280	65,280
Minimum size for one Virtual LUN volume	36,000 KB (+ control cylinders)	48,000 KB (50 cylinders)
Maximum size for one Virtual LUN volume	See CV capacity by emulation type for open systems (on page 101) .	See CV capacity by emulation type for open systems (on page 101) .
Size increment	1 MB or 1 block (512 bytes)	1 MB or 1 block (512 bytes)
Disk location for Virtual LUN volumes	Anywhere	Anywhere

CV capacity by emulation type for open systems

Emulation type*	Minimum CV capacity (CYL)	Maximum CV capacity	Number of control cylinders (cyl)
OPEN-V	48,000 KB (50 cyl)	Internal volume: 3,221,159,680 KB (2.99 TB) External volume: 4,294,967,296 KB (4 TB)	None
OPEN-3	36,000 KB (50 cyl)	2,403,360 KB	5,760 KB (8 cyl)
OPEN-8	36,000 KB (50 cyl)	7,175,520 KB	19,440 KB (27 cyl)
OPEN-9	36,000 KB (50 cyl)	7,211,520 KB	19,440 KB (27 cyl)
OPEN-E	36,000 KB (50 cyl)	14,226,480 KB	13,680 KB (19 cyl)
*Virtual LUN operations are not available for OPEN-L volumes.			

LDEV size calculations

When you create custom volumes (CVs), you can specify the capacity of each CV. However, rounding will produce different values for the user-specified CV capacity and the actual entire CV capacity. To calculate the actual capacity of a CV, you must use a mathematical formula. The following topics explain how to calculate the user area capacity and the entire capacity of a CV.

The entire capacity of a CV or an LDEV consists of two types of capacity. One type is the user area capacity that stores the user data. The second type is the capacity of all areas that are necessary for an LDEV implementation including control information. The sum of these two types of capacities is called the entire capacity.

Implemented LDEVs consume the entire capacity from the parity group capacity. Therefore, even if the sum of user areas of multiple CVs is the same as the user area of one CV, the remaining free space generated when multiple CVs are created can be smaller than the free space in the parity group when one CV is created.

When you create an LDEV, the actual capacity of the LDEV depends on whether you select the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option on the **Create LDEVs** window. If the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option is not selected, the LDEV is created with the specified capacity. If the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option is selected, the specified LDEV capacity is offset by conforming to the prescribed boundary values, and an LDEV is created. The prescribed boundary value depends on the device emulation type and RAID level. For details about boundary values, see [Boundary values of volumes \(on page 106\)](#).

- **When to select the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option:** In the storage system, data is managed based on a slot, and RAID data protection is performed based on a parity stripe unit. For an LDEV created with capacity offset by a boundary, the efficiency of the drive capacity is improved because the capacity of the LDEV is offset by the unit of the data management. Therefore, if there is an emphasis on the efficiency of the drive capacity, select the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option when creating LDEVs.
- **When NOT to select the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option:** If you want the LDEV capacity to be a specific size, do not select the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) option when creating LDEVs. For example, if you want to create copy pairs with VSP, HUS VM, or other previous storage system models, you must use exactly the same LDEV capacity for the volumes in a pair.



Note: When you use CCI to create a CV, the CV is created with the specified size regardless of the capacity calculation. Therefore, even if you specify the same capacity size (for example, 1 TB), the actual capacity size might be different between CVs created using CCI and CVs created using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

Calculating OPEN-V volume size (CV capacity unit is MB)

The methods for calculating the user area capacity and the entire capacity of a CV vary depending on the CV capacity unit that is specified when creating the CV.

To calculate the user area capacity of a CV whose capacity unit is defined as megabytes:

```
ceiling(ceiling(user-specified-CV-capacity * 1024 / 64) / 15) * 64 * 15
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in megabytes.
- The resulting *user area capacity* is expressed in kilobytes.

To calculate the entire capacity of a CV:

```
ceiling(user-area-capacity / boundary-value) * boundary-value / 1024
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-area-capacity* is expressed in kilobytes
- *boundary value* is expressed in kilobytes. The boundary value depends on the device emulation type and the RAID level (see [Boundary values of volumes \(on page 106\)](#)).
- The resulting entire capacity is expressed in megabytes.

Calculating OPEN-V volume size (CV capacity unit is blocks)

To calculate the user area capacity of a CV whose capacity unit is defined as blocks:

```
ceiling(user-specified-CV-capacity / 2)
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in blocks.
- The resulting *user area capacity* is expressed in kilobytes.

To calculate the entire capacity of a CV:

```
ceiling(user-specified-CV-capacity / (boundary-value * 2)) * (boundary-value * 2)
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in blocks.

- *boundary-value* is expressed in kilobytes. The boundary value depends on the device emulation type and the RAID level (see [Boundary values of volumes \(on page 106\)](#)).
- The resulting entire capacity is expressed in blocks. To convert the resulting entire capacity into megabytes, divide this capacity by 2,048.

Calculating fixed-size open-systems volume size (CV capacity unit is MB)

To calculate the user area capacity of a CV whose capacity unit is defined as megabytes:

```
ceiling(ceiling(user-specified-CV-capacity * 1024 /
capacity-of-a-slot) / 15) * capacity-of-a-slot * 15
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in megabytes.
- *capacity-of-a-slot* is expressed in kilobytes. The capacity of a slot depends on the device emulation type (see [Capacity of a slot \(on page 106\)](#)).
- The resulting *user area capacity* is expressed in kilobytes.

To calculate the entire capacity of a CV:

```
ceiling((user-area-capacity + management-area-capacity) /
boundary-value) * boundary-value / 1024
```

where

- The value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-area-capacity* is expressed in kilobytes.
- *management-area-capacity* is expressed in kilobytes. The management area capacity depends on the device emulation type (see [Management area capacity of an open-systems volume \(on page 105\)](#)).
- *boundary-value* is expressed in kilobytes. The boundary value depends on the device emulation type and RAID level (see [Boundary values of volumes \(on page 106\)](#)).
- The resulting entire capacity is expressed in megabytes.

Calculating fixed-size open-systems volume size (CV capacity unit is blocks)

To calculate the user area capacity of a CV whose capacity unit is defined as blocks:

```
user-specified-CV-capacity / 2
```


where

- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in blocks.
- The resulting *user area capacity* is expressed in kilobytes.

To calculate the entire capacity of a CV:

```
ceiling((user-specified-CV-capacity + management-area-capacity * 2)
/ (boundary-value * 2)) * (boundary-value * 2)
```

where

- the value enclosed in `ceiling()` must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- *user-specified-CV-capacity* is expressed in blocks.
- *management-area-capacity* is expressed in kilobytes. The management area capacity depends on volume emulation types (see [Management area capacity of an open-systems volume \(on page 105\)](#)).
- *boundary-value* is expressed in kilobytes. The boundary value depends on volume emulation types and RAID levels (see [Boundary values of volumes \(on page 106\)](#)).
- The CV capacity recognized by hosts is the same as the CV capacity calculated by the above formula.
- If block is selected as the LDEV capacity unit in the **Create LDEVs** window and dialog boxes, the window and dialog boxes correctly show the calculated LDEV capacity. However, if MB, GB, or TB is selected as the LDEV capacity unit in the **Create LDEVs** window and dialog boxes, the capacity values shown might have a margin of error due to unit conversion reasons. If you need to know the exact LDEV capacity, select block as the capacity unit.
- The resulting entire capacity is expressed in blocks. To convert the resulting entire capacity into megabytes, divide this capacity by 2,048:

Management area capacity of an open-systems volume

Emulation type	Management area capacity (KB)
OPEN-V	0
OPEN-3	5,760
OPEN-8	19,440
OPEN-9	19,440
OPEN-E	13,680

Boundary values of volumes

The following table provides the boundary values (expressed as kilobytes) for internal volumes. The boundary value for an external volume is always one kilobyte, regardless of emulation type and RAID level.

Emulation type	Boundary value (KB)				
	RAID 1 (2D +2D)	RAID 5 (3D +1P)	RAID 5 (7D +1P)	RAID 6 (6D +2P)	RAID 6 (14D+2P)
OPEN-xx (except for OPEN-V) xx indicates one or more numbers or letters (for example, OPEN-3).	768	1,152	2,688	2,304	- (not supported)
OPEN-V	1,024	1,536	3,584	3,072	7,168

Capacity of a slot

Emulation type	Capacity of a slot
OPEN-xx (except for OPEN-V) xx indicates one or more numbers or letters (for example, OPEN-3).	48 KB
OPEN-V	256 KB
Note: Slot capacity is expressed in kilobytes.	

Enabling accelerated compression

Use this procedure to enable accelerated compression on a parity group. If you change the accelerated compression from disable to enable for the parity group used by the pool, each of 120 GB on a basis of a accelerated compression-parity group are decreased in the pool. The process of decreasing a pool capacity may take an extended period of time.

Before you begin

- You must have the Storage Administrator role.
- The drive type of the target parity group must be FMD DC2 or FMD-HDE.
- The emulation type of the target parity group must be OPEN-V.
- The target parity group must be an internal parity group.
- The status of LDEVs in the target parity group must be **Normal** or **Blocked**.
- All LDEVs in the parity group must already be added to the same pool.
- The capacity of the defined internal volumes must be 8 GB or more. (The capacity is equal to or greater than the minimum capacity of a pool volume.)
- If the defined internal volumes are used as pool volumes, those pool volumes belong to the same Dynamic Provisioning pool or Thin Image pool.
- The defined internal volumes must have no LUN path definitions.
- The defined internal volumes must not be used by Volume Migration.
- The defined internal volumes must not be reserved by the Data Retention Utility.
- The defined internal volumes must not have the Protect, Read Only, or S-VOL Disable attribute of Data Retention Utility.
- There must not be any DP-VOL page reserved areas.

Procedure

1. In the Device Manager - Storage Navigator **Explorer** pane, select **Storage Systems**, and then expand the tree for the storage system.
2. Display the parity group for which you want to enable accelerated compression.
 - To display all parity groups in the storage system, click **Parity Groups**.
 - To display only internal parity groups, expand **Parity Groups**, and then click **Internal**.
3. Select the desired parity group, and then click **More Actions** > **Edit Parity Groups**.
4. In **Accelerated Compression**, check **Enable**.



Caution:

When you enable accelerated compression, confirm if the data reduction efficiency can be achieved. For details, see [Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled \(on page 407\)](#).

5. Click **Finish**.
6. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings. In **Task Name**, type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**. If **Go to tasks** window for status is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Disabling accelerated compression

Before you begin

- You must have the Storage Administrator role.
- The emulation type of the target parity group must be OPEN-V.
- The status of LDEVs in the target parity group must be **Normal** or **Blocked**.
- The Expanded Spaced Used column for the parity group must be No.

Procedure

1. Format the parity group.



Caution: The parity group must be formatted before you can disable accelerated compression.

2. In the storage system tree, expand **Parity Groups**, select **Internal**, and then select the **Parity Groups** tab to display the internal parity groups.
3. Select the target parity group, and click **More Actions > Edit Parity Groups**.
4. For **Accelerated Compression**, check **Disable**, and then click **Finish**.
5. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings. In **Task Name**, type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**. If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Blocking LDEVs

Use this procedure to block internal and external volumes (LDEVs). A volume must be blocked before you can format it or shred it.

When you want to block volumes, you can locate and select the volumes using any of the following methods:

- Use the **Parity Groups** window if you want to block one or more volumes in a specific parity group.
- Use the **Pools** window if you want to block one or more volumes in a specific pool.
- Use the **Logical Devices** window if you want to select the volumes to be blocked from a list of all volumes in the storage system.

**Caution:**

When a V-VOL is blocked, if correction or drive copy starts, data in the blocked V-VOL can no longer be used. Therefore, block an LDEV when you do not need data in the LDEV any more, such as for LDEV format.

Besides, when a V-VOL whose Capacity Saving is Deduplication and Compression is blocked, if correction or drive copy starts, data in all V-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is Deduplication and Compression within the pool where the V-VOL belongs can no longer be used. Because of this, block virtual volumes whose Capacity Saving is Deduplication and Compression only when you format deduplication system data volumes.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Locate and select the volumes to be blocked:
 - To block one or more volumes in a specific parity group, expand **Parity Groups**, expand **Internal** or **External**, select the desired parity group in the tree, and then select the desired volumes on the **LDEVs** tab.
 - To block all volumes in a specific parity group, click **Parity Groups**, and then select the desired parity group on the **Parity Groups** tab.
 - To block one or more volumes in a specific pool, expand **Pools**, select the desired pool, click the **Virtual Volumes** tab, and then select the desired volumes.
 - To select the volumes from a list of all volumes in the storage system, click **Logical Devices**, and then select the desired volumes. You can sort the volume list as needed by clicking on the desired column.
3. Click **More Actions** > **Block LDEVs**.
4. Verify the settings in the **Confirm** window, enter a unique **Task Name** or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Formatting LDEVs

If you initialize LDEVs that are being used, you will need to format the LDEVs.

About formatting LDEVs

The LDEV formatting function, which includes Normal Format and Quick Format, enables you to format volumes (LDEVs). Volumes must be in the blocked status to be formatted.

The following table lists the formatting functions and specifies the LDEV types on which each formatting function can be performed.

Formatting function	Corresponding volume
Normal Format	Internal volume Virtual volume External volume
Quick Format	Internal volume, except for a volume in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled

When an LDEV is added, the storage system performs one of the following actions depending on the setting:

- The storage system automatically formats the added LDEV. This is the default setting.
- The storage system blocks the LDEV and does not automatically format it.

To confirm or change the formatting setting on the storage system, contact the administrator. Users who have the Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role can change the formatting setting.

Quick Format function

The Quick Format function allows you to format internal volumes (LDEVs) in the background. While Quick Format operations are in process, you can perform other tasks to configure the storage system. I/O operations from hosts are allowed during Quick Format, but performance might be affected because shared resources such as MP blades and cache paths are used during Quick Format operations.

In the following specific cases, host I/O performance might decrease during Quick Format operations due to the load concentration on a specific component at the same time:

- Many Quick Format operations are started at the same time when there are only one or two modules and each module is configured with minimum CPEX (Cache Path control adapter and PCI EXpress path switch), back-end directors (BEDs), and front-end directors (FEDs).
- Quick Format operations are started at the same time when there are more than two modules but the number of CPEXs, BEDs, and FEDs installed in the modules is extremely unbalanced, for example:
 - One module contains many CPEXs, BEDs, and FEDs, and another module contains the minimum number of CPEXs, BEDs, and FEDs.
 - In one of the modules, CPEX (Basic) is connected with many BEDs, FEDs, or other devices, and CPEX (Option) is connected with the minimum number of BEDs, CHAs, or other devices.

For these specific configurations, start the Quick Format operation on one LDEV first to confirm that the host I/O performance does not decrease. After that, increase the number of concurrent Quick Format operations by one, and verify host performance each time.

For other than these specific configurations, you should not start more than eight Quick Format operations at the same time. After eight or fewer Quick Format operations have started, you should not start more than four Quick Format operations at the same time, and you should monitor host I/O performance.

Quick Format specifications

Item	Description
Preparation for executing the Quick Format feature	The internal volume must be in blocked status.
Maximum number of parity groups that can undergo Quick Format	Up to 72 parity groups can concurrently undergo Quick Format. There is no limit on the number of volumes that can undergo Quick Format.
Concurrent Quick Format operations	While one Quick Format operation is in progress, another Quick Format operation can be performed. A maximum of 72 parity groups can concurrently undergo Quick Format.
Preliminary processing	At the beginning of the Quick Format operation, preliminary processing is performed to generate management information. If a volume is undergoing preliminary processing, the status of the volume is <code>Preparing Quick Format</code> . While preliminary processing is in progress, hosts cannot perform I/O access to the volume.
Blocking and restoring of volumes	<p>If a volume undergoing Quick Format is blocked, the storage system recognizes that the volume is undergoing Quick Format. After the volume is restored, the status of the volume changes to <code>Normal (Quick Format)</code>.</p> <p>If all volumes in one or more parity groups undergoing Quick Format are blocked, the displayed number of parity groups undergoing Quick Format decreases by the number of blocked parity groups. However, the number of parity groups that have not undergone and can undergo Quick Format does not increase. To calculate the number of parity groups that have not undergone but can undergo Quick Format, use the following formula:</p> $72 - X - Y$ <p>Where:</p> <p>X = number of parity groups on which Quick Format is being performed.</p> <p>Y = number of parity groups for which all volumes are blocked during the Quick Format.</p>

Item	Description
Storage system is powered off and back on	The Quick Format operation resumes when power is turned back on.
Restrictions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Quick Format cannot be executed on LDEV in the parity group with Accelerated Compression enabled, external volumes, virtual volumes, or journal volumes of Universal Replicator. ▪ The volume migration feature or the QuickRestore feature cannot be applied to volumes undergoing Quick Format. When you use Command Control Interface to execute the volume migration operation or the QuickRestore operation on volumes undergoing Quick Format, <code>EX_CMDRJE</code> will be reported to Command Control Interface. In this case, check the volume status. ▪ The prestaging feature of Cache Residency Manager cannot be applied to volumes undergoing Quick Format. ▪ Quick format cannot be performed on a deduplication system data volume.

Formatting a specific LDEV

Use this procedure to perform Normal or Quick formatting on a volume.



Caution: Do not format V-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Deduplication and Compression. When V-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is Deduplication and Compression are blocked, if drive or correction copy starts, data in all V-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is Deduplication and Compression within the pool where the V-VOL belongs can no longer be used.

For V-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Deduplication and Compression, initialize data by deleting or recreating the virtual volumes.



Note:

- If DP-VOLs with deduplication and compression enabled are formatted, the pool usage might increase by the format processing. Once the format processing starts, it cannot be stopped.
- If you format the deduplication system data volume for a pool that has DP-VOLs for which the capacity saving setting is disabled and Deduplication Data is Enabled, the capacity saving setting for the DP-VOLs might become Deduplication and compression. Therefore, verify the capacity saving setting of the DP-VOLs after the format operation completes.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The status of the LDEV to be formatted must be Blocked. For information about blocking internal volumes, see [Blocking LDEVs \(on page 108\)](#). For information about blocking external volumes, see the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **Logical Devices** window, select the **LDEV ID** of the LDEV you want to format.



Note: When you format a deduplication system data volume, you must select only the (one) deduplication system data volume. Do not select any other volumes.

4. Click **More Actions**, and select **Format LDEVs**.
5. In the **Format LDEVs** window, select the desired format type (**Normal** or **Quick**), and then click **Finish**.
You can select **Quick** only when the **Provisioning Type** of the selected LDEV is Basic and the parity group to which it belongs does not have accelerated compression enabled.
6. Verify the settings in the **Confirm** window, enter a unique **Task Name** or accept the default, and click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Formatting all LDEVs in a parity group

Use this procedure to perform Normal formatting on all of the volumes (LDEVs) in the parity group you select.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Before you format the LDEVs in the selected parity group, make sure that all the LDEVs in the parity group have been blocked. See [Blocking LDEVs \(on page 108\)](#) for blocking an internal volume. See the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide* for blocking an external volume.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Parity Groups**.
3. In the **Parity Groups** window, select a **Parity Group ID** of parity group with the LDEVs you want to format.

You can select multiple parity groups that are listed together or separately.

4. Block the LDEV to be formatted.
For information about blocking internal volumes, see [Blocking LDEVs \(on page 108\)](#). For information about blocking external volumes, see the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*.
5. Click **More Actions**, and select **Format LDEVs**.
6. In the **Format LDEVs** window, select the format type from the **Format Type** list, and then click **Finish**.
In the **Confirm** window, click **Next** to go to the next operation.
7. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Restoring blocked LDEVs

Use this procedure to restore blocked volumes (LDEVs).

When you want to restore blocked volumes, you can locate and select the volumes using any of the following methods:

- Use the **Parity Groups** window if you want to restore one or more volumes in a specific parity group.
- Use the **Pools** window if you want to restore one or more volumes in a specific pool.
- Use the **Logical Devices** window if you want to select the volumes to be restored from a list of all volumes in the storage system.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Locate and select the blocked volumes to be restored:
 - To restore one or more volumes in a specific parity group, expand **Parity Groups**, expand **Internal** or **External**, select the desired parity group in the tree, and then select the desired volumes on the **LDEVs** tab.
 - To restore all volumes in a specific parity group, click **Parity Groups**, and then select the desired parity group on the **Parity Groups** tab.
 - To restore one or more volumes in a specific pool, expand **Pools**, select the desired pool, click the **Virtual Volumes** tab, and then select the desired volumes.
 - To select the volumes from a list of all volumes in the storage system, click **Logical Devices**, and then select the desired volumes. You can sort the volume list as needed by clicking on the desired column.
3. Click **More Actions > Restore LDEVs**.
4. Verify the settings in the **Confirm** window, enter a unique **Task Name** or accept the default, and click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Editing an LDEV name

Use this procedure to edit the name of a registered internal volume.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. Select the **LDEV ID** of the LDEV you want to edit.
4. Click **Edit LDEVs**.
5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, edit the **LDEV Name**.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Deleting an LDEV (converting to free space)

You can convert one or more of the LDEVs on a selected parity group into free space by deleting the LDEVs. That free space can be used to either create one or more variable-sized volumes (CVs) using the Create LDEVs function, or left as free space for future use.



Caution: Deleting LDEVs will erase your data. Back up your data before deleting LDEVs.

An LDEV cannot be deleted successfully if it is:

- In the defined path (including the pair volumes of TrueCopy, global-active device, and Universal Replicator).
- A pool-VOL.
- A journal volume.
- A remote command device.
- A volume security volume.
- A quorum disk used by global-active device.
- An LDEV that has the Read/Write access attribute.

When you delete an LDEV, the alias information contained in the LDEV is also deleted. Therefore, if you delete an LDEV related to an alias device, you should do one of the following:

- Allocate another LDEV to the alias device, and then delete the LDEV.
- Delete the LDEV first, and then allocate another LDEV to the alias device.

For information about how to delete a registered external volume, see the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Back up your data before deleting LDEVs.



Caution: Deleting many LDEVs at the same time might impact host I/O performance. When the microcode is earlier than 80-05-23, you should not delete more than approximately 25 LDEVs at the same time. When the microcode is 80-05-23 or later, you should not delete more than approximately 200 LDEVs at the same time.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. Select the **LDEV ID** of the LDEV you want to delete.
4. Click **More Actions** and select **Delete LDEVs**.
The LDEV is deleted.
5. Note the settings in the **Confirm** window and enter a unique **Task Name** or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Assigning an MP blade

Enabling and disabling MP blade auto assignment

Use this procedure to enable or disable auto assignment of a specific MP blade.

When auto assignment is enabled, the MP blade can be automatically assigned to resources in the storage system (logical devices, external volumes, and journal volumes). When auto assignment is disabled, the MP blade cannot be automatically assigned to resources in the storage system. For details about how MP blades are assigned to resources, contact customer support.



Caution: Enabling and disabling MP blade auto assignment can have a significant impact on storage system performance. Contact customer support for assistance before enabling or disabling auto assignment of an MP blade.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Expand **Components**, and click the controller (DKC) containing the MP blade that you want to change.
3. On the **MP Blades** tab, select the **MP Blade ID** of the MP blade that you want to change, and then click **Edit MP Blades**.

When the **Edit MP Blades** window opens, the current auto assignment setting of the selected MP blade is displayed. For example, if auto assignment is currently enabled, the **Edit MP Blades** window opens with **Enable** selected.

4. In the **Edit MP Blades** window, select **Enable** to enable auto assignment for the selected blade, or select **Disable** to disable auto assignment for the selected blade.
5. Click **Finish**.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Changing the MP blade assigned to an LDEV

Use this procedure to change the MP blade assigned to an LDEV.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role is required to perform this task.

**Caution:**

- Changes to the MP blade ID of an LDEV should be made during off-peak hours when the I/O load is as low as possible. Before and after changes are made, it is recommended that the cache write-pending rate (%) for all CLPRs is lower than 50%. Do not change the MP blade ID when the I/O load is high -- for example: during initial copy of ShadowImage, TrueCopy, global-active device, or Universal Replicator.
- When you change the MP blade ID of an LDEV, you should use Performance Monitor before and after the change to check the load status of devices. Do not change several LDEV MP blade IDs during a short period of time. As a guideline, you can change 10% or less of the total number or the full workload of LDEV MP blade IDs assigned to the same MP blade ID at the same time.
- After you change the MP blade for an LDEV, wait more than 30 minutes before you try to change the ID again for the same LDEV.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **Logical Devices** window, select the **LDEV ID** of the LDEV that has the MP blade you want to change.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Assign MP Blade**.
5. In the **Assign MP Blade** window, specify the MP blade in **MP Blade**.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Chapter 5: Configuring thin provisioning

Thin provisioning technology allows you to allocate virtual storage capacity based on anticipated future capacity needs, using virtual volumes instead of physical disks. Thin provisioning is an optional provisioning strategy for your storage systems. Thin provisioning is implemented by creating one or more Dynamic Provisioning pools (DP pools) of physical storage space.

Dynamic Provisioning overview

Dynamic Provisioning is an advanced thin-provisioning software product that allows you to save money on storage purchases and reduce storage management expenses.

You can use Device Manager - Storage Navigator and Command Control Interface to perform Dynamic Provisioning operations.

Dynamic Tiering overview

Dynamic Tiering is a software product that helps you reduce storage costs and increase storage performance by supporting a volume configured with different storage media of different cost and performance capabilities. This support allows you to allocate data areas with heavy I/O loads to higher-speed media and to allocate data areas with low I/O loads to lower-speed media. In this way, you can make the best use of the capabilities of installed storage media. Up to three storage tiers consisting of different types of data drives are supported in a single pool of storage.

Active flash overview

The active flash feature of Dynamic Tiering automatically promotes pages when their access frequency suddenly becomes high.

Based on functions for Dynamic Tiering, active flash can promote pages to Tier 1 if their latest access frequency suddenly becomes high. The active flash feature can improve Tier 1 I/O performance by reallocating Tier 2 pages if their I/O loads have increased suddenly.

Thin provisioning requirements

License requirements

Before you use Dynamic Provisioning, the Dynamic Provisioning must be installed on the storage system.

Before you use the capacity saving function, Dynamic Provisioning and dedupe and compression must be installed on the storage system.

Before you use Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering must be installed on the storage system.

You need the Dynamic Tiering license to access the total capacity of the pool with the tier function enabled.

For Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, active flash, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, and active flash for mainframe, the same license capacity as the DP-VOLs is required.

For Dynamic Tiering, active flash, Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, and active flash for mainframe, the same license capacity as the pool capacity is required.

For active flash and active flash for mainframe, the same license capacity as the pool capacity is required.

Before you use active flash, the Dynamic Provisioning, and Dynamic Tiering software must be installed on the storage system. For this, you will need to purchase the Storage Virtualization Operating System (SVOS) license and the Dynamic Tiering and active flash license. You will need the Dynamic Tiering and active flash licenses for the total capacity of the pool with the tier function enabled.

If the DP-VOLs of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering are used for the primary volumes and secondary volumes of ShadowImage, TrueCopy, Universal Replicator, Volume Migration, global-active device, or Thin Image, you will need the ShadowImage, TrueCopy, Universal Replicator, Volume Migration, global-active device, and Thin Image licenses for the total pool capacity in use.

If you expand a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, the licensed capacity for both Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image is required.

If you exceed the licensed capacity, you will be able to use the additional unlicensed capacity for 30 days. For more information about temporary license capacity, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Pool specifications and requirements

A pool is a set of volumes reserved for storing Dynamic Provisioning write data.

Items	Requirements
Pool capacity	Calculate pool capacity using the following formula:

Items	Requirements
	<p>Capacity of the pool (MB) = total-number-of-pages * 42 - 4200.</p> <p>4200 in the formula is the management area size of the pool-VOL with System Area.</p> <p>Total number of pages = $\Sigma(\text{floor}(\text{floor}(\text{pool-VOL number of blocks} / 512) / 168))$ for each pool-VOL.</p> <p>floor(): Truncates the value calculated from the formula in parentheses after the decimal point (that is, round down to nearest whole number).</p> <p>However, the upper limit of total capacity of all pools is 12.3 PB if shared memory is installed.</p>
Max number of pool-VOLs	<p>From 1 to 1,024 volumes (per pool).</p> <p>A volume can be registered as a pool-VOL to one pool only.</p>
Maximum number of pools	<p>Up to a total of 128 pools per storage system. The 128 pools include following pool types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning (including Dynamic Tiering) ▪ Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe (including Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe) ▪ Thin Image <p>Pool IDs (0 to 127) are assigned as pool identifiers.</p>
Increasing capacity	<p>You can increase pool capacity dynamically. Best practice is to add pool-VOLs to increase capacity by one or more parity groups.</p>
Reducing capacity	<p>You can reduce pool capacity by removing pool-VOLs.</p>
Deleting	<p>You can delete pools that are not associated with any DP-VOLs or with any Thin Image pairs or Thin Image snapshot data.</p>

Items	Requirements
Thresholds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning Threshold: You can set the value between 1% and 100%, in 1% increments. The default is 70%. ▪ Depletion Threshold: You can set the value between the Warning Threshold and 100%, in 1% increments. The default is 80%. <p>If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning Threshold or the Depletion Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system. In addition, when the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pool rebalance ▪ Pool relocation ▪ Creation of DP-VOLs ▪ Creation of HTI pairs <p>Thresholds cannot be defined for a pool with data direct mapping enabled.</p>
Data allocation unit	<p>42 MB</p> <p>The 42-MB page corresponds to a 42-MB continuous area of the DP-VOL. Pages are allocated for the pool volumes only when data has been written to the area of the DP-VOL.</p>
Tier (Dynamic Tiering and active flash)	<p>Defined based on the media type (see Drive type for a Dynamic Tiering tier, below). Maximum 3 tiers. If active flash is used, SSD must be assigned to the first tier.</p>
Maximum capacity of each tier (Dynamic Tiering and active flash)	<p>4.0 PB (Total capacity of the tiers must be within 4.0 PB)</p>

Pool auto expansion: specifications and requirements

The following table lists the specifications and requirements for pools for which the pool auto expansion function (also called the automatically adding pool volumes function) is enabled.

Item	Requirement
Target pool	<p>To use the pool auto expansion function (automatically adding pool volumes function), all of the following requirements must be met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group (Pools window). ▪ The pool consists of pool volumes belonging to parity groups with the following settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enable is selected for Accelerated Compression (Parity groups window) • Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group (Pools window)
Pool volumes to be added	<p>The system adds LDEVs that are created in a physical area and extended area of an accelerated compression-enabled parity group. LDEV IDs are automatically assigned in a descending order in a resource group to which the initial pool volumes belong.</p> <p>In addition, if no SSID is allocated to the CU of the LDEV ID to be added, an SSID is automatically assigned in descending order.</p>
Capacity of pool volume to be added	<p>The smallest of one of the following capacities is added:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 2.99 TB ▪ Free space
Timing for adding pool volumes	<p>The system automatically adds pool volumes if the accelerated compression-enabled parity group meets the following condition:</p> <p><i>Logical-free-space < Physical-free-space + 2.99 TB</i></p>
Pool capacity monitoring	<p>The system monitors pools every 10 seconds.</p>

Pool-VOL requirements

Pool-VOLs make up a DP pool.

Item	Requirements
Volume type	Logical volume (LDEV)

Item	Requirements
	<p>While pool-VOLs can coexist with other volumes in the same parity group, for best performance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pool-VOLs for a pool should not share a parity group with other volumes. ▪ Pool-VOLs should not be located on concatenated parity groups. <p>Pool-VOLs cannot be used for any other purpose. For instance, you cannot specify the following volumes as pool-VOLs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Volumes used by ShadowImage, Volume Migration, TrueCopy, global-active device, or Universal Replicator ▪ Volumes defined by Cache Residency Manager ▪ Volumes already registered in Thin Image, Dynamic Provisioning, or Dynamic Tiering pools ▪ Volumes used as Thin Image P-VOLs or S-VOLs ▪ Volumes reserved by Data Retention Utility ▪ Data Retention Utility volumes with a Protect, Read Only, or S-VOL Disable attribute ▪ LDEVs whose status is other than Normal, Correction Access, or Copying. ▪ Command devices ▪ Quorum disks used by global-active device <p>The following volume cannot be specified as a pool-VOL for Dynamic Tiering:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ An external volume with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. <p>If pool-VOLs are LDEVs created from the parity group with accelerated compression enabled, these pool-VOLs must be applied to one pool.</p>
Emulation type	OPEN-V
RAID level for a Dynamic Provisioning pool	<p>You can use one of the following RAID levels:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RAID 1 (2D+2D, or concatenated 2 of 2D+2D) ▪ RAID 5 (3D+1P, 4D+1P, 6D+1P, 7D+1P, concatenated 2 of 7D+1P, or concatenated 4 of 7D+1P) ▪ RAID 6 (6D+2P, 12D+2P, or 14D+2P)

Item	Requirements
	<p>Pool-VOLs of RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 1, and external volumes can coexist in the same pool. For pool-VOLs in the same pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RAID 6 is the recommended RAID level for pool-VOLs, especially for a pool where the recovery time of a pool failure due to a drive failure is not acceptable. ▪ Pool-VOLs of the same drive type with different RAID levels can coexist in the same pool. We recommend that you set one RAID level for pool-VOLs. If you register pool-VOLs with multiple RAID levels to the same pool, the I/O performance depends on the RAID levels of pool-VOLs to be registered. In that case, note the I/O performance of the drives.
RAID level for a Dynamic Tiering pool	<p>You can use one of the following RAID levels:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RAID 1 (2D+2D, or concatenated 2 of 2D+2D) ▪ RAID 5 (3D+1P, 4D+1P, 6D+1P, 7D+1P, concatenated 2 of 7D+1P, or concatenated 4 of 7D+1P) ▪ RAID 6 (6D+2P, 12D+2P, or 14D+2P) <p>Pool-VOLs of RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 1, and external volumes can coexist in the same pool. For pool-VOLs in the same pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RAID 6 is the recommended RAID level for pool-VOLs, especially for a pool where the recovery time of a pool failure due to a drive failure is not acceptable. ▪ Pool-VOLs of the same drive type with different RAID levels can coexist in the same pool. Set one RAID level for pool-VOLs. If you register pool-VOLs with multiple RAID levels to the same pool, the I/O performance depends on the RAID levels of pool-VOLs to be registered. In that case, note the I/O performance of the drives. ▪ Because the speed of RAID 6 is slower than other RAID levels, tiers that use other RAID levels should not be placed under a tier that uses RAID 6.
Data drive type for a Dynamic Provisioning pool	SSD, SAS15K, SAS10K, SAS7.2K, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, and external volumes can be used as the data drive type. These data drive types can coexist in the same pool.

Item	Requirements
	<p>Cautions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Best practice is for drives of different types not to coexist in the same pool. If multiple pool-VOLs with different drive types are registered in the same pool, the I/O performance depends on the drive type of the pool-VOL to which the page is assigned. Therefore, if different drive types are registered in the same pool, ensure that the required I/O performance is not degraded by using less desirable drive types. ▪ If multiple data drives coexist in the same pool, we recommend not using data drives that are the same types and different capacities.
Data drive type for a Dynamic Tiering or active flash pool	<p>SSD, SAS15K, SAS10K, SAS7.2K, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, and external volumes can be used as the data drive type. These data drive types can coexist in the same pool. If active flash is used, SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE drives must be installed in advance.</p> <p>Caution: If multiple data drives coexist in the same pool, we recommend not using data drives that are the same types and different capacity sizes.</p>
Volume capacity	<p>Internal volume: From 8 GB to 2.9 TB</p> <p>External volume: From 8 GB to 4 TB</p> <p>External volume with the data direct mapping attribute: From 8 GB to 256 TB</p>
LDEV format	<p>The LDEV format operation can be performed on pool-VOLs only when all of the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ There are no DP-VOLs defined for the pool, or all DP-VOLs defined for the pool are blocked. ▪ The pool does not contain any Thin Image pairs or snapshot data.
Path definition	<p>You cannot specify a volume with a path definition as a pool-VOL.</p>

DP-VOL requirements

Items	Requirements
Volume type	DP-VOL (V-VOL)

Items	Requirements
	The LDEV number is handled in the same way as for normal volumes.
Emulation type	OPEN-V
Maximum number of DP-VOLs	<p>Up to 63,232 per pool. Any number of available DP-VOLs can be associated with a pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For a pool with data direct mapping enabled: up to 1,023 per pool ▪ For a pool with Deduplication enabled, 32,632 is the maximum number of DP-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Compression or Deduplication and Compression. ▪ For a pool with Deduplication disabled, 32,639 is the maximum number of DP-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Compression. <p>Up to 63,232 volumes per system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For a pool with data direct mapping enabled: up to 1,023 per pool ▪ For a pool with Deduplication enabled, 32,632 is the maximum number of DP-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Compression or Deduplication and Compression. ▪ For a pool with Deduplication disabled, 32,639 is the maximum number of DP-VOLs whose Capacity Saving is set to Compression. <p>If external volumes and V-VOLs are used, the total number of external volumes and V-VOLs must be 63,232 or fewer.</p>
Volume capacity	<p>The volume capacity range per volume is from 46.87 MB to 256 TB. For DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled, the capacity range is from 8 GB to 256 TB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TB: 0.01 to 256 (For DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled, the capacity range is from 0.01 TB to 256 TB) ▪ GB: 0.04 to 262,144 (For DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled, the capacity range is from 8 GB to 262,144 GB.) ▪ MB: 46.87 to 268,435,456 (For DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled, the capacity range is from 8,192 MB to 268,435,456 MB.) ▪ Blocks: 96,000 to 549,755,813,888 (For DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled, the capacity range is from 16,777,216 blocks to 549,755,813,888 blocks.) <p>Total maximum volume capacity of 12.3 PB per storage system.</p>
Path definition	Available.
LDEV format	Available. Quick Format is not available.

Items	Requirements
	<p>System option mode (SOM) 867 ON: When you format an LDEV on a DP-VOL, the capacity mapped to the DP-VOL is released to the pool as free space.</p> <p>When you format a DP-VOL, the storage system releases the allocated page area in the DP-VOL. The quick format operation cannot be performed. If the LDEV format is applied to V-VOLs that are enabled for full allocation, the used capacity of the pool is not changed before the LDEV format is applied.</p> <p>Caution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For a DP-VOL with deduplication and compression enabled, a deduplication system data volume whose capacity saving status is Failed cannot be formatted.

Deduplication system data volume specifications and requirements

When you enable deduplication on a pool, the deduplication system data volume (DSD volume) for the pool is created. The deduplication system data volume is used exclusively by the storage system to manage the data deduplication function. The deduplication system data volume for a pool is deleted automatically when you disable the Capacity Saving setting for the pool or delete the pool.

The following table lists the requirements for the deduplication system data volume.

Items	Requirements
Volume type	DP-VOL (V-VOL)
Emulation type	OPEN-V
Number per pool	One deduplication system data volume per pool (fixed)
Volume capacity	40 TB (fixed)
Path definition	Not available
LDEV format	<p>Available</p> <p>Warning: Format a deduplication system data volume only when you want to delete all deduplication-enabled DP-VOLs in the associated pool. After the deduplication system data volume has been formatted, all deduplication-enabled DP-VOLs assigned to the pool are not usable and must be formatted and deleted.</p>

Items	Requirements
	When you format a deduplication system data volume, you must specify only one deduplication system data volume and no other volumes in the Format LDEVs window.
Resource group	A deduplication system data volume and its associated pool volumes must be in the same resource group.
Cache management devices	Each deduplication system data volume uses 14 cache management devices.

Pool capacity consumed by metadata

When you use the capacity saving function, the following capacities are consumed for the pool capacity:

- Used capacity of the pool consumed by user data
- Used capacity of the pool consumed by metadata

Metadata for the compression function. When the compression function is enabled, 2% of the total used capacity of the compression-enabled DP-VOLs is consumed as the metadata for the compression function. The capacity of the metadata for the compression function is added to the used capacity of the pool. To view the used capacity of the pool, see **Pool Capacity (Used/Total)** in the **Pools** window.

Metadata for the deduplication function. When the deduplication function is enabled, 3% of the total used capacity of the deduplication-enabled DP-VOLs is consumed as the metadata for the deduplication function. To view the capacity of the metadata for the deduplication function, see the capacity of the deduplication system data volumes. The capacity of the metadata of the deduplication function is added to the used capacity of the pool. To view the used capacity of the pool, see **Pool Capacity (Used/Total)** in the **Pools** window.

V-VOL page reservation requirement

The V-VOL full allocation is performed in a range less than the depletion threshold size of the pool. If the capacity of V-VOLs is larger than the depletion threshold size, the full allocation operation is rejected.



Caution: The page reservation function is not supported by the following pools. To prevent data writing from being disabled due to pool overflow, you must monitor the free area of these pools frequently.

- Pools that contain pool volumes belonging to a parity group with accelerated compression enabled
- Pools with capacity saving enabled

Use the following formula to calculate the reserved page capacity for each pool. In the formula, the value enclosed in ceiling() must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.

$$\text{Reserved capacity for each pool [block]} = \text{ceiling}(\text{CV-capacity-of-V-VOL [block]} / 86016) * 86016 + \text{ceiling}(\text{CV-capacity-of-V-VOL [block]} / 6442082304) * 4 * 86016 - \text{used-capacity-of-V-VOL [block]}$$

Operating system and file system capacity

When initializing a DP-VOL operating systems and file systems will consume some Dynamic Provisioning pool space. Some combinations initially take up little pool space, while other combinations take as much pool space as the virtual capacity of the DP-VOL.

The following table shows the effects of some combinations of operating system and file system capacity. For more information, contact your service representative.

OS	File System	Metadata Writing	Pool Capacity Consumed
Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008*	NTFS	Writes metadata to first block.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Small (one page) If file update is repeated, allocated capacity increases when files are updated (overwritten). Therefore, the effectiveness of reducing the pool capacity consumption decreases.
Linux	XFS	Writes metadata in Allocation Group Size intervals.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Depends upon allocation group size. The amount of pool space consumed will be approximately [DP-VOL Size] × [42 MB/Allocation Group Size]
	Ext2 Ext3	Writes metadata in 128-MB increments.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: About 33% of the size of the DP-VOL.

OS	File System	Metadata Writing	Pool Capacity Consumed
			The default block size for these file systems is 4 KB. This results in 33% of the DP-VOL acquiring DP pool pages. If the file system block size is changed to 2 KB or less then the DP-VOL Page consumption becomes 100%.
Solaris	UFS	Writes metadata in 52-MB increments.	No effective reduction of pool capacity. Size of DP-VOL.
	VxFS	Writes metadata to the first block.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Small (one page).
AIX	JFS	Writes metadata in 8-MB increments.	No effective reduction of pool capacity. Size of DP-VOL. If you change the Allocation Group Size settings when you create the file system, the metadata can be written to a maximum interval of 64 MB. Approximately 65% of the pool is used at the higher group size setting.
	JFS2	Writes metadata to the first block.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Small (one page).
	VxFS	Writes metadata to the first block.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Small (one page).
HP-UX	JFS (VxFs)	Writes metadata to the first block.	Effective reduction of pool capacity: Small (one page).
	HFS	Writes metadata in 10-MB increments.	No effective reduction of pool capacity. Size of DP-VOL.

OS	File System	Metadata Writing	Pool Capacity Consumed
<p>* In a Windows environment, both Normal Format and Quick Format are commonly used. In this environment, Quick Format consumes less thin provisioning pool capacities than Normal Format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On Windows Server 2008, using Normal Format issues Write commands to the overall volume (for example, overall "D" drive). When Write commands are issued, pages corresponding to the overall volume are allocated, so pool capacities corresponding to the ones of the overall volume are consumed. In this case, the thin provisioning advantage of reducing capacities is lost. Quick Format issues Write commands only to management information (for example, index information). Therefore, pages corresponding to the management information areas are allocated, but the capacities are smaller than the ones consumed by Normal Format. 			

Using Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering with other software products

Interoperability of DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs

DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs can be used in conjunction with other software products with certain limitations and restrictions. The following table lists the software products and indicates the operations that are permitted and not permitted for each product.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
Cache Residency Manager (<i>Performance Guide</i>)	Not applicable	Performing operations on DP pool-VOLs or DP-VOLs.
Data Retention Utility (<i>Provisioning Guide</i>)	Performing operations on DP-VOLs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Performing operations on DP pool-VOLs. Performing operations on an external volume with data direct mapping enabled. Performing operations on LDEVs with accelerated compression enabled. Performing operations on a deduplication system data volume.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
Global-active device (<i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i>)	Using a DP-VOL as a global-active device primary volume (P-VOL) or secondary volume (S-VOL).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a DP-VOL as a quorum disk. ▪ Using a pool-VOL as a global-active device P-VOL or S-VOL. ▪ Increasing the capacity of a DP-VOL used by global-active device. ▪ Using an external volume with data direct mapping enabled as a quorum disk. ▪ Using a DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled as a quorum disk. ▪ Using a deduplication system data volume as a global-active device P-VOL or S-VOL.
LUN Manager (<i>Provisioning Guide</i>) LUN Security (<i>Provisioning Guide</i>)	Performing operations on DP-VOLs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Performing operations on DP pool-VOLs. ▪ Performing operations on an external volume with data direct mapping enabled. ▪ Performing operations on LDEVs with accelerated compression enabled. ▪ Performing operations on a deduplication system data volume.
ShadowImage (<i>Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide</i>)	Using a DP-VOL as a ShadowImage primary volume (P-VOL) or secondary volume (S-VOL).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a pool-VOL as a ShadowImage P-VOL or S-VOL. ▪ Increasing the capacity of a DP-VOL used by ShadowImage.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
	<p>If a pool contains both the P-VOL and S-VOL of a pair and deduplication is enabled for the pool, only one copy of the P-VOL data is saved physically due to deduplication of the P-VOL and S-VOL data. If you want to protect the P-VOL data, use separate pools for the P-VOL and S-VOL.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of a DP-VOL is determined by the pair status. For details, see ShadowImage pair status for reclaiming zero pages (on page 138). ▪ Using a deduplication system data volume as a ShadowImage P-VOL or S-VOL.
Thin Image (<i>Hitachi Thin Image User Guide</i>)	Using a DP-VOL as a Thin Image primary volume.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a DP-VOL as a Thin Image secondary volume or pool-VOL. ▪ Using a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a Thin Image primary volume, secondary volume, or pool-VOL. ▪ Increasing the capacity of a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash DP-VOL that is used as a primary volume or secondary volume of a Thin Image pair. ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of Thin Image secondary volumes with the cascade attribute disabled. ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of Thin Image secondary volumes with the cascade and clone attributes enabled. Reclaiming zero pages can be performed for Thin Image secondary volumes with the cascade and snapshot attributes enabled. ▪ Using an external volume with data direct mapping enabled as a Thin Image primary volume, secondary volume, or pool-VOL.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a normal LDEV with accelerated compression enabled as a primary volume or secondary volume of a Thin Image pair. ▪ Using a deduplication system data volume as a primary volume or secondary volume of a Thin Image pair.
TrueCopy (<i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i>)	<p>Using a DP-VOL as a TrueCopy primary volume (P-VOL) or secondary volume (S-VOL).</p> <p>For disaster recovery (DR) operations, apply the same capacity saving setting to the P-VOL and S-VOL of the pair by assuming failover.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a pool-VOL as a TrueCopy P-VOL or S-VOL. ▪ Increasing the capacity of DP-VOL used as a P-VOL or S-VOL of a TrueCopy pair. ▪ Using a deduplication system data volume as a TrueCopy P-VOL or S-VOL.
Universal Replicator (<i>Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide</i>)	<p>Using a DP-VOL as a Universal Replicator primary volume (P-VOL), secondary volume (S-VOL), or journal volume. The journal volume must be an OPEN-V emulation DP-VOL.</p> <p>For disaster recovery (DR) operations, apply the same capacity saving setting to the P-VOL and S-VOL of the pair by assuming failover.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a DP-VOL as a journal volume that has a mainframe emulation type. ▪ Using a DP pool-VOL as a Universal Replicator P-VOL, S-VOL, or journal volume. ▪ Increasing the capacity of a DP-VOL used as a P-VOL or S-VOL of a Universal Replicator pair. ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of a DP-VOL used by a journal volume. ▪ Using an external volume with data direct mapping enabled as a journal volume. ▪ Using a DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled as a journal volume.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using a DP-VOL with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume) as a journal volume. ▪ Using a deduplication system data volume (DSD volume) as a Universal Replicator P-VOL or S-VOL.
Universal Volume Manager (<i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i>)	Using Universal Volume Manager volumes as pool-VOLs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Increasing the capacity of a DP-VOL that is mapped to the Universal Volume Manager. If you try to increase the capacity of a DP-VOL with the conventional LDEV operation, the capacity of the DP-VOL will not be changed. In this case, remove the mapping between the DP-VOL and Universal Volume Manager, increase the capacity of the external volume used as a pool-VOL, and then perform the mapping between the DP-VOL and Universal Volume Manager again. ▪ Setting the data direct mapping attribute on a DP-VOL with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume). ▪ Setting the data direct mapping attribute on a deduplication system data volume (DSD volume). ▪ Enabling capacity saving on a DP-VOL from a pool with Universal Volume Manager pool-VOLs.
Virtual LUN (Provisioning Guide)	Registering Virtual LUN volumes in Dynamic Provisioning pools.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Performing Virtual LUN operations on volumes that are already registered in a DP pool.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
Virtual Partition Manager (<i>Performance Guide</i>)	Performing operations on DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs.	Not applicable
Volume Migration (For details, contact customer support.)	<p>Using a DP-VOL as a migration source or a migration target.</p> <p>The maximum capacity of a DP-VOL used as a migration source or target is the same as the maximum capacity of a DP-VOL.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using on pool-VOLs. ▪ Increasing the capacity of DP-VOL used by Volume Migration. ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of V-VOL used by Volume Migration. ▪ Using on an external volume with data direct mapping enabled. ▪ Using an external volume with data direct mapping enabled as a target volume. ▪ Using on a deduplication system data volume. ▪ Deleting the DP-VOL used by Volume Migration with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume). ▪ Initializing duplicated data for the pool containing the DP-VOL used by Volume Migration with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume).
Volume Shredder (<i>Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide</i>)	Use on DP-VOLs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using on pool-VOLs. ▪ Performing operations on an LDEV that has accelerated compression enabled. ▪ Increasing the capacity of DP-VOL used by Volume Shredder. ▪ Reclaiming zero pages of V-VOL used by Volume Shredder.

Software product (<i>user guide</i>)	Permitted	Not permitted
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Performing operations on a DP-VOL with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume). ▪ Performing operations on a deduplication system data volume. ▪ Deleting the DP-VOL used by Volume Migration with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume). ▪ Initializing duplicated data for the pool containing the DP-VOL used by Volume Migration with capacity saving enabled (DRD volume).

ShadowImage pair status for reclaiming zero pages

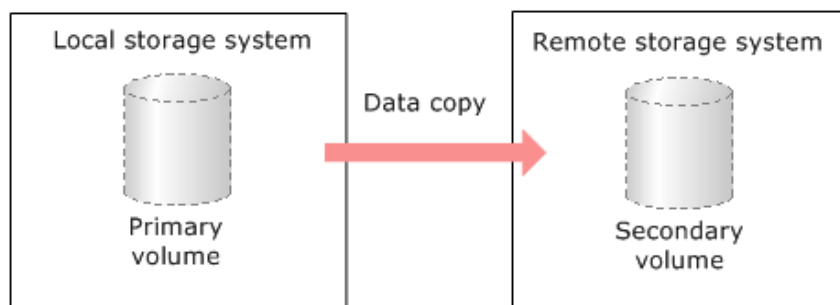
You can use this table to determine whether reclaiming zero pages is possible for a particular pair status

Pair status	Reclaim zero pages from Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator	Reclaim zero pages from Command Control Interface
SMPL, status of an unpaired volume	Enabled	Enabled
COPY(PD)/COPY	Disabled	Disabled
PAIR	Disabled	Disabled
COPY(SP)	Disabled	Disabled
PSUS(SP)/PSUS	Disabled	Disabled
PSUS	Enabled	Enabled
COPY(RS)/COPY	Disabled	Disabled
COPY(RS-R)/RCPY	Disabled	Disabled
PSUE	Disabled	Disabled

TrueCopy

You can use Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash in combination with TrueCopy to replicate V-VOLs.

The following figure illustrates the interaction when the TrueCopy primary volume and secondary volume are also V-VOLs.

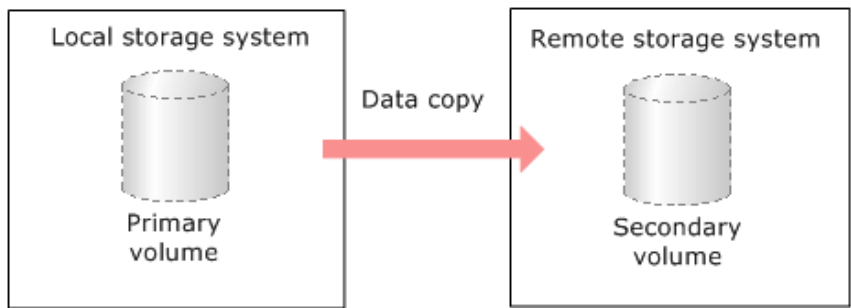


TrueCopy P-VOL	TrueCopy S-VOL	Explanation
DP-VOLs	DP-VOLs	Supported.
DP-VOLs	Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	Supported.
Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	DP-VOLs	Supported. Note, however, that this combination consumes the same amount of pool capacity as the original normal volume (primary volume).
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. Normal volumes include the internal volumes and external volumes that are mapped to the volumes of the external storage system using Universal Volume Manager. For more information about external volumes, see the <i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i>.</p>		

You cannot specify a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a primary volume or secondary volume.

Global-active device

You can use Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash in combination with global-active device to replicate V-VOLs. The following figure illustrates the interaction when the global-active device primary volume and secondary volume are also V-VOLs.

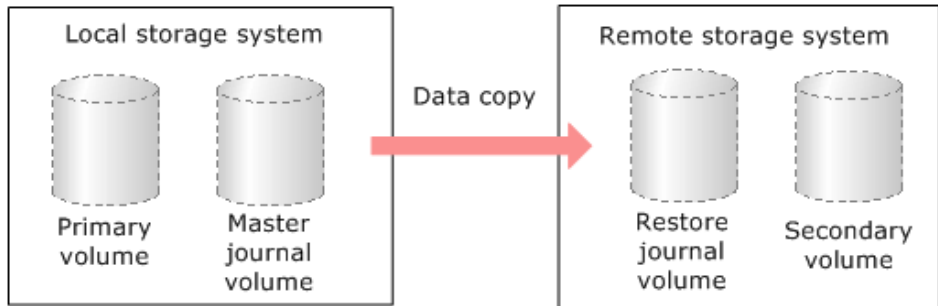


Global-active device P-VOL	Global-active device S-VOL	Explanation
DP-VOLs	DP-VOLs	Supported.
DP-VOLs	Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	Not supported.
Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	DP-VOLs	Not supported.
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. Normal volumes include the internal volumes and external volumes that are mapped to the volumes of the external storage system using by Universal Volume Manager. For more information about external volumes, see the <i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i>.</p>		

You cannot specify a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a primary volume or secondary volume. For more information, see the *Global-Active Device User Guide*.

Universal Replicator

You can use Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash in combination with Universal Replicator to replicate DP-VOLs.



The following table lists the supported Universal Replicator and Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering volume combinations.

Universal Replicator P-VOL	Universal Replicator S-VOL	Universal Replicator journal volume	Explanation
DP-VOLs	DP-VOLs	DP-VOL that has the OPEN-V emulation type ²	Supported.
DP-VOLs	Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	DP-VOL that has the OPEN-V emulation type ²	Supported.
Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	DP-VOLs	DP-VOL that has the OPEN-V emulation type ²	Supported. Note, however, that this combination consumes the same amount of pool capacity as the original normal volume (primary volume).

Notes:

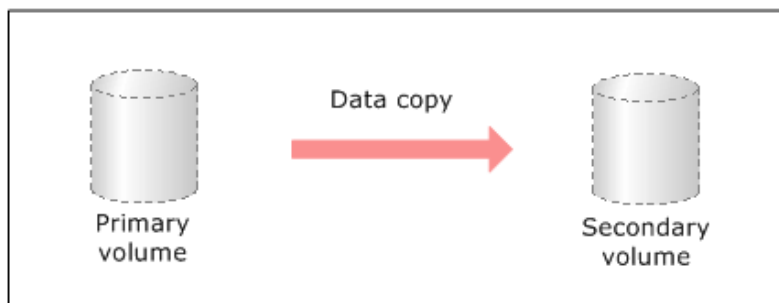
1. Normal volumes include the internal volumes and external volumes that are mapped to the volumes of the external storage system using Universal Volume Manager. For more information about external volumes, see the *Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide*.
2. DP-VOL that has a mainframe emulation type cannot be used.

You cannot specify a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a primary volume, secondary volume, or journal volume.

ShadowImage

You can use Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash in combination with ShadowImage to replicate DP-VOLs.

Storage system



The following table lists the interaction when the ShadowImage primary volume and secondary volume are also DP-VOLs.

ShadowImage P-VOL	ShadowImage S-VOL	Explanation
DP-VOLs	DP-VOLs	Supported.
DP-VOLs	Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	Supported. The Quick Restore function is unavailable.
Normal (ordinary) volumes ¹	DP-VOLs	Supported. Note, however, that this combination consumes the same amount of pool capacity as the normal volume. The Quick Restore function is unavailable.
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. Normal volumes include the internal volumes and external volumes that are mapped to the volumes of the external storage system using Universal Volume Manager. For more information about external volumes, see the <i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i>.</p>		

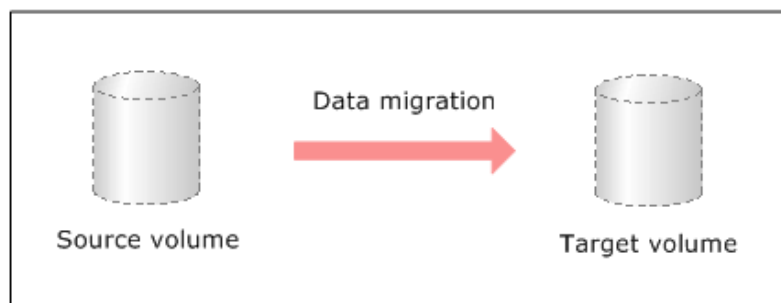
You cannot specify a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a primary volume or secondary volume.

Volume Migration

You can use Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering in combination with Volume Migration to migrate DP-VOLs.

The following shows the interaction when the Volume Migration source volume and target volume are also DP-VOLs.

Storage system



Volume Migration source volume	Volume Migration target volume	Explanation
DP-VOLs	DP-VOLs	Supported.

Volume Migration source volume	Volume Migration target volume	Explanation
DP-VOLs	Normal (ordinary) volumes*	Supported.
Normal (ordinary) volumes*	DP-VOLs	Supported. Note, however, that this combination consumes the same amount of pool capacity as the normal volume.
*Normal volumes include the internal volumes and external volumes that are mapped to the volumes of the external storage system by Universal Volume Manager. For more information about external volumes, see the <i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i> .		

You cannot specify a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering pool-VOL as a Volume Migration source volume and target volume.

If you specify the DP-VOL as the source volume, you must not specify the DP-VOL that uses the same pool of the source volume.

- ShadowImage
- Universal Replicator

Interoperability restrictions for Thin Image

When you are using Thin Image and Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash in the same storage system, the following interoperability restrictions apply.

- The maximum total number of pools per storage system, including Thin Image, Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and active flash pools, is 128.
- A Thin Image pool-VOL cannot be shared with Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash.

Virtual Partition Manager CLPR setting

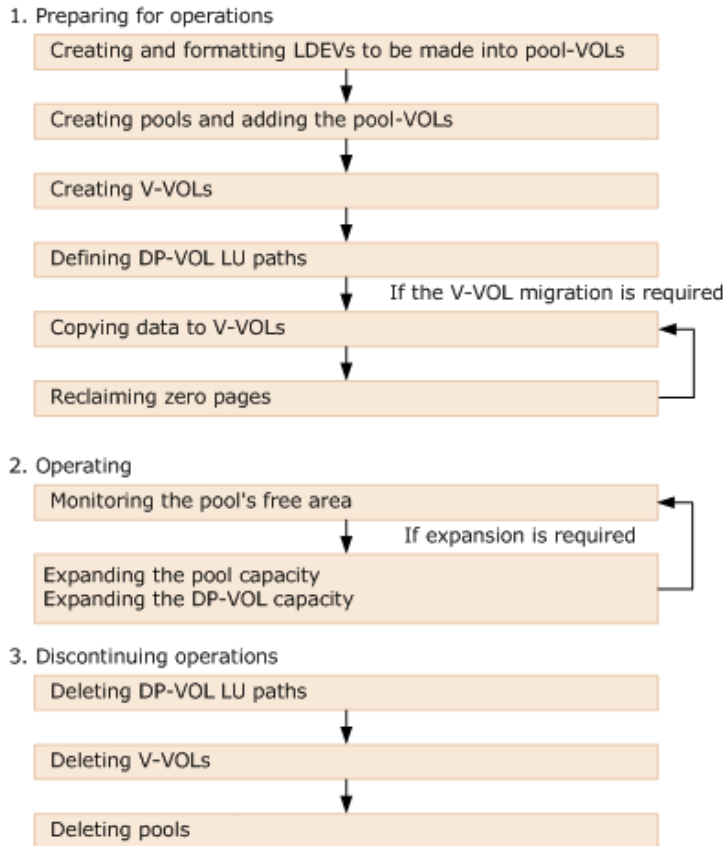
If DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs related to the same pool are assigned to a CLPR, the DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs in the same pool should be assigned to the same CLPR.

For details about CLPRs, see the *Performance Guide*.

Dynamic Provisioning workflow

The following diagram shows the workflow for setting up Dynamic Provisioning on the storage system.

Use Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface to create pools and DP-VOLs.



Dynamic Tiering and active flash

Hitachi Dynamic Tiering (HDT) simplifies storage administration by automatically optimizing data placement in 1, 2, or 3 tiers of storage that can be defined and used within a single virtual volume. Tiers of storage can be made up of internal or external (virtualized) storage, and use of HDT can lower capital costs. Simplified and unified management of HDT allows for lower operational costs and reduces the challenges of ensuring applications are placed on the appropriate classes of storage.

About tiered storage

In a tiered storage environment, storage tiers can be configured to accommodate different categories of data. A tier is a group of storage media (pool volumes) in a DP pool. Tiers are determined by a single storage media type. A storage tier can be one type of data drive, including SSD, FMD, SAS, or external volumes. Media of high-speed performance make up the upper tiers. Media of low-speed response become the lower tiers. Up to a maximum of three tiers can coexist in each Dynamic Tiering pool.

Categories of data may be based on levels of protection needed, performance requirements, frequency of use, and other considerations. Using different types of storage tiers helps reduce storage costs and improve performance.

Because assigning data to particular media may be an ongoing and complex activity, Dynamic Tiering software automatically manages the process based on user-defined policies.

As an example of the additional implementation of tiered storage, tier 1 data (such as mission-critical or recently accessed data) might be stored on expensive and high-quality media such as double-parity RAID6s (redundant arrays of independent disks). Tier 2 data (such as financial or seldom-used data) might be stored on less expensive storage media.

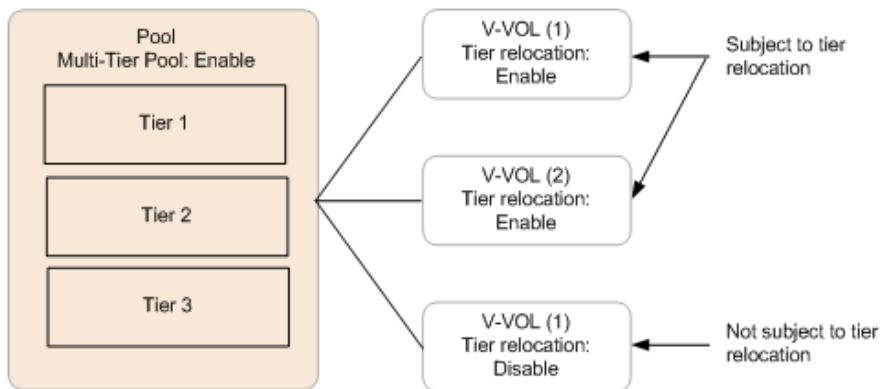
Tier monitoring and data relocation

Dynamic Tiering uses tiers to manage data storage. It classifies the specified drives in the pool into tiers (storage hierarchy). Up to three tiers can be defined in a pool depending on the processing capacity of the data drives. Tiering allocates more frequently accessed data to the upper tier and less frequently accessed data, stored for a long period of time, to the lower tier.

Multi-tier pool

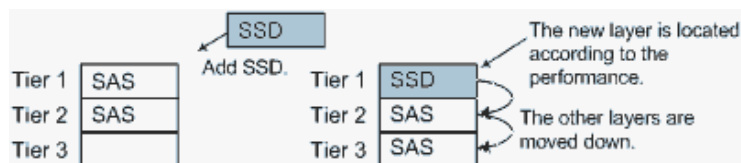
With Dynamic Tiering, you can enable the Multi-Tier pool option for an existing pool. The default is to allow tier relocation for each DP-VOL. Only the DP-VOLs for which tier relocation is enabled are subject to calculation of the tier range value, and tier relocation will be performed on them. If tier relocation is disabled for all DP-VOLs in a pool, tier relocation is not performed.

The following figure illustrates the relationship between multi-tier pool and tier relocation.



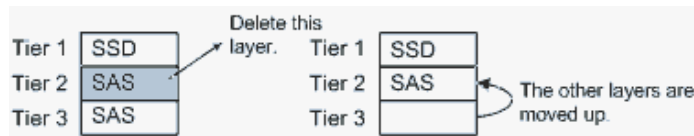
Example of adding a tier

If the added pool-VOL is a different media type, then a new tier is created in the pool. The tier is added to the appropriate position according to its performance. The following figure illustrates the process of adding a tier.



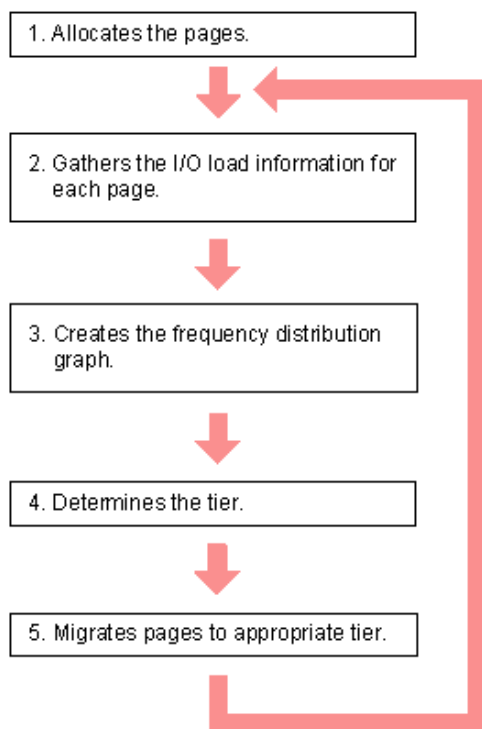
Example of deleting a tier

If a tier no longer has any pool-VOLs when you delete them, the tier is deleted from the pool. The following figure illustrates deleting a tier.



How the tier relocation process works

The term tier relocation refers to the process of determining the appropriate storage tier and migrating the pages to that tier. The following figure shows the tier relocation process.



Explanation of the tier relocation process:

1. Allocate pages and map them to DP-VOLs

Pages are allocated and mapped to DP-VOLs on an on-demand basis. Page allocation occurs when a write is performed to an area of any DP-VOL that does not already have a page mapped to that location. Normally, a free page is selected for allocation from an upper tier with a free page. If the capacity of the upper tier is insufficient for the allocation, the pages are allocated to the nearest lower tier. A DP-VOL set to a tier policy is assigned a new page that is based on the tier policy setting. The relative tier for new page allocations can be specified during operations to create and edit LDEVs. If the capacity of all the tiers is insufficient, an error message is sent to the host.

2. Gather I/O load information of each page

Performance monitoring gathers monitoring information of each page in a pool to determine the physical I/O load per page in a pool. I/Os associated with page relocation, however, are not counted.

3. Create frequency distribution graph

The frequency distribution graph, which shows the relationship between I/O counts (I/O load) and capacity (total number of pages), is created.

You can use the **View Tier Properties** window to view this graph. The vertical scale of the graph indicates ranges of I/Os per hour and the horizontal scale indicates a capacity that received the I/O level. Note that the horizontal scale is accumulative.



Caution: When the number of I/Os is counted, the number of I/Os satisfied by cache hits are not counted. Therefore, the number of I/Os counted by Performance Monitoring is different from the number of I/Os from the host. The number of I/Os per hour is shown in the graph. If the monitoring time is less than an hour, the number of I/Os shown in the graph might be higher than the actual number of I/Os.

Monitoring mode settings of Period or Continuous influences the values shown on the performance graph. Period mode will report the most recent completed monitor cycle I/O data on the performance graph. Continuous mode will report a weighted average of I/O data that uses recent monitor cycle data, along with historical data on the performance graph.

4. Determine the tier range values

The page is allocated to the appropriate tier according to performance monitoring information. The tier is determined as follows.

a. Determine the tier boundary

The tier range value of a tier is calculated using the frequency distribution graph. This acts as a boundary value that separates tiers.

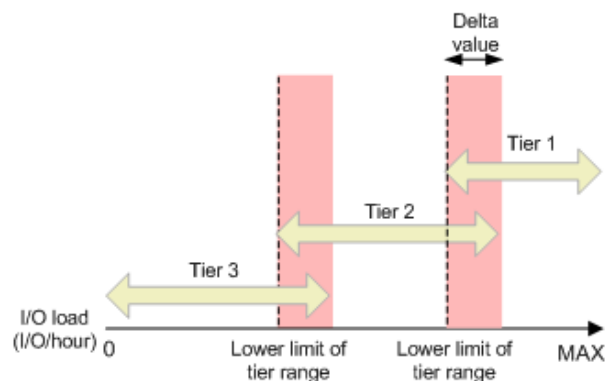
The pages of higher I/O load are allocated to the upper tier in sequence. Tier range is defined as the lowest I/Os per hour (IOPH) value at which the total number of stored pages matches the capacity of the target tier (less some buffer percentage) or the IOPH value that will reach the maximum I/O load that the tier should process. The maximum I/O load that should be targeted to a tier is the limit performance value, and the rate of I/O to the limit performance value of a tier is called the performance utilization percent. A performance utilization of 100% indicates that the target I/O load to a tier is beyond the forecasted limit performance value.



Caution: The limit performance value is proportional to the capacity of the pool volumes used in the tier. The total capacity of the parity group should be used for a pool to further improve the limit performance.

b. Determine the tier delta values

The tier range values are set as the lower limit boundary of each tier. The delta values are set above and below the tier boundaries (+10 to 20%) to prevent pages from being migrated unnecessarily. If all pages subject to tier relocation can be contained in the upper tier, both the tier range value (lower limit) and the delta value will be zero.



- c. Determine the target tier of a page for relocation.

The IOPH recorded for the page is compared against the tier range value to determine the tier to which the page moves.

5. Migrate the pages

The pages are moved to the appropriate tier. After migration, the page usage rates are averaged out in all tiers. I/Os that occur in the page migration are not monitored.

Tier monitoring and relocation cycles

Performance monitoring and tier relocation can be set to execute in one of two execution modes: Auto and Manual. You can set up execution modes, or switch between modes by using either Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface.

In Auto execution mode, monitoring and relocation are continuous and automatically scheduled. In Manual execution mode, the following operations are initiated manually.

- Start monitoring
- Stop monitoring and recalculate tier range values
- Start relocation
- Stop relocation

In both execution modes, relocation of data is automatically determined based on monitoring results. The settings for these execution modes can be changed nondisruptively while the pool is in use.

Auto execution mode

Auto execution mode performs monitoring and tier relocation based on information collected by monitoring at a specified constant frequency: every 0.5, 1, 2, 4, or 8 hours. All auto execution mode cycle frequencies have a starting point at midnight (00:00). For example, if you select a 1 hour monitoring period, the starting times would be 00:00, 01:00, 02:00, 03:00, and so on.

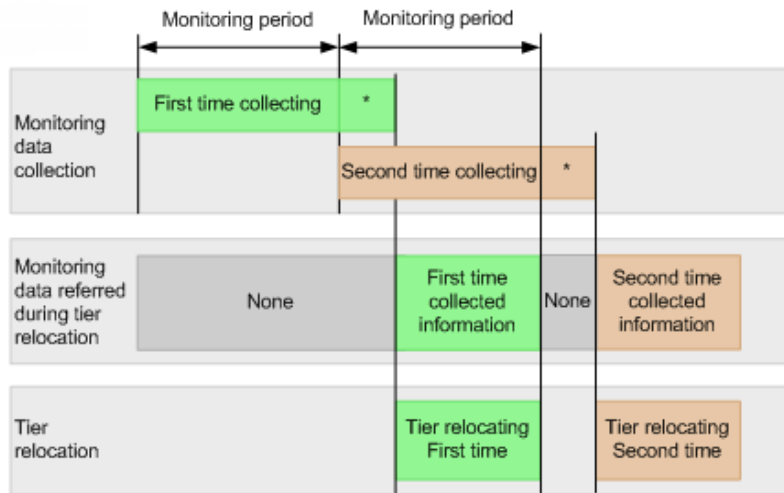
As shown in the following table, the 24-hour monitoring cycle allows you to specify the times of day to start and stop performance monitoring. The 24-hour monitoring cycle does not have to start at midnight. Tier relocation begins at the end of each cycle.

Monitoring cycle (hours)	Start Times	Finish Times
0.5	0.5 hours from 00:00 AM. For example 00:00, 00:30, and 01:00	0.5 hours after the start time
1	1 hour from 00:00 AM. For example 00:00, 01:00, and 02:00	1 hour after the start time
2	2 hours from 00:00 AM. For example 00:00, 02:00, and 04:00	2 hours after the start time
4	4 hours from 00:00 AM. For example 00:00, 04:00, and 08:00	4 hours after the start time
8	8 hours from 00:00 AM. For example 00:00, 08:00, and 16:00	8 hours after the start time
24 (monitoring time period can be specified)	Specified time	Specified time

If the setting of the monitoring cycle is changed, performance monitoring begins at the new start time. The collection of monitoring information and tier relocation operations already in progress are not interrupted when the setting is changed.

Example 1: If the monitoring cycle is changed from 1 hour to 4 hours at 01:30 AM, the collection of monitoring information and tier relocation in progress at 01:30 AM continues. At 02:00 AM and 03:00 AM, however, monitoring information is not collected and tier relocation is not performed. From 04:00 AM, the collection of monitoring information and tier relocation operations are started again. These operations are then performed at 4-hour intervals.

Example 2: If the monitoring cycle is changed from 4 hours to 1 hour at 01:30 AM, the collection of monitoring information and tier relocation in progress at 01:30 AM continues. From 04:00 AM, the collection of monitoring information and tier relocation operations are started again. These operations are then performed at 1-hour intervals.



- * Tier determination processing which are as follows:
- Summarization of monitoring data
 - Calculation of tier ranges

In auto execution mode, the collection of monitoring data and tier relocation operations are performed in parallel in the next cycle. Data from these parallel processes are stored in two separate fields.

- Data while monitoring is in progress in the next cycle.
- Fixed monitoring information used in the tier relocation.

Manual execution mode

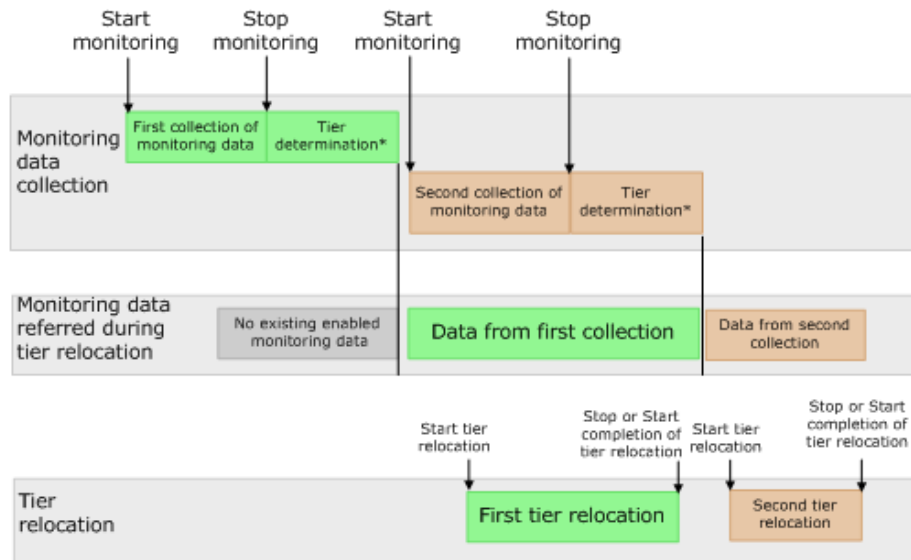
You can start and stop performance monitoring and tier relocation at any time. You should keep the duration of performance monitoring to less than 7 days (168 hours). If performance monitoring exceeds 7 days, then monitoring stops automatically.

Manual execution mode starts and ends monitoring and relocation at the time the command is issued. You can use scripts, which provide flexibility to control monitoring and relocation tasks based on a schedule for each day of the week.

In manual execution mode, the next monitoring cycle can be started with the collection of monitoring data and tier relocation operations performed in parallel. Data from these parallel processes are stored in two separate fields.

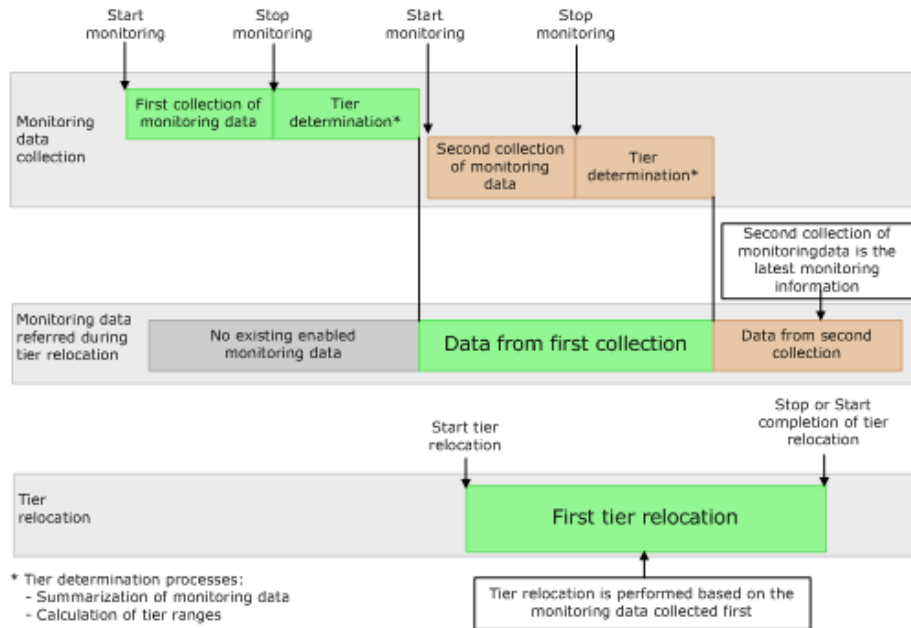
- Data while monitoring is in progress in the next cycle.
- Fixed monitoring information used in the tier relocation.

The following figure illustrates the collection of monitoring data to tier relocation workflow in manual execution mode.



* Tier determination processes:
 - Summarization of monitoring data
 - Calculation of tier ranges

Case 1: If the second collection of the monitoring information is finished during the first tier relocation, the latest monitoring information is the second collection. In that case, the first collection of monitoring information is referred only after the first tier relocation has completed.



* Tier determination processes:
 - Summarization of monitoring data
 - Calculation of tier ranges

Case 2: When tier relocation is performed with the first collection of monitoring information, the second collection of monitoring information can be performed. However, the third collection cannot be started. Because only two fields are used store collected monitoring information, the third collection cannot be overwritten.

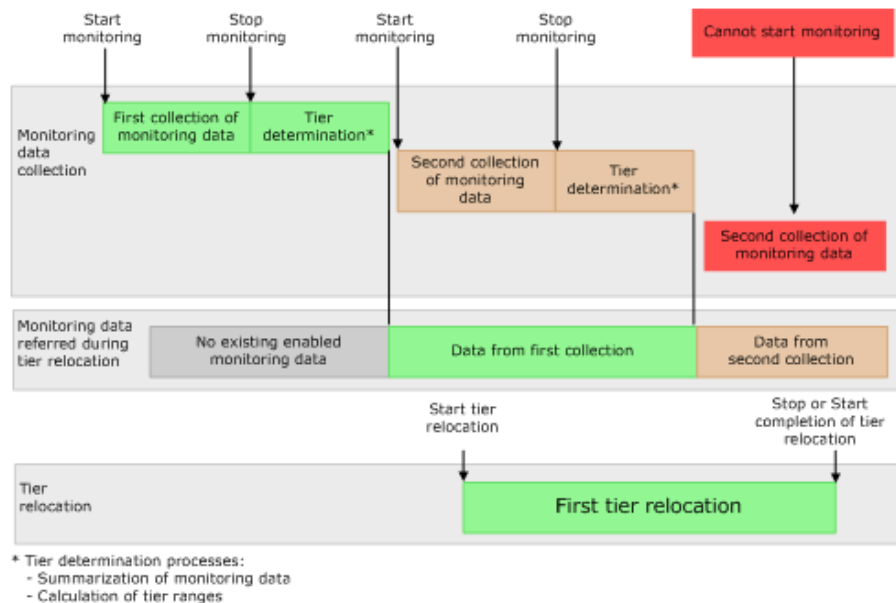
In that case, the third collection of the monitoring information is started after the first tier relocation is stopped or tier relocation has completed.

The collection of the monitoring information is not started under these conditions as well:

- When the second tier relocation is performed, the fourth collection of monitoring information cannot be started.
- When the third tier relocation is performed, the fifth collection of monitoring information cannot be started.

If such conditions exist, two cycles of monitoring information cannot be collected continuously while tier relocation is performed.

The following figure illustrates the third collection of monitoring information while tier relocation is performed.



Tier relocation rules, restrictions, and guidelines

Rules

- Performance monitoring, using both Auto and Manual execution modes, observes the pages that were allocated to DP-VOLs prior to the start of the monitoring cycle and the new pages allocated during the monitoring cycle. Pages that are not allocated during performance monitoring are not candidates for tier relocation.
- Tier relocation can be performed concurrently on up to eight pools. If more than eight pools are specified, relocation of the ninth pool starts after relocation of any of the first eight pools has completed.
- If Auto execution mode is specified, performance monitoring may stop about one minute before to one minute after the beginning of the next monitor cycle start time.
- The amount of relocation varies per cycle. In some cases, the cycle may end before all relocation can be handled. If tier relocation does not finish completely within the cycle, relocation to appropriate pages is executed in the next cycle.
- Calculating the tier range values will be influenced by the capacity allocated to DP-VOLs with relocation disabled and the buffer reserve percentages.

- While a pool-VOL is being deleted, tier relocation is not performed. After the pool-VOL deletion is completed, tier relocation starts.
- Frequency distribution is unavailable when there is no data provided by performance monitoring.
- While the frequency distribution graph is being created or the tier range values are being calculated, the frequency distribution graph is not available. The time required for determining the tier range values varies depending on the number of DP-VOLs and total capacity. The maximum time is about 20 minutes.
- To balance the usage levels of all parity groups, rebalancing may be performed after several tier relocation operations. If rebalancing is in progress, the next cycle of tier relocation might be delayed.

Performance monitoring or tier relocation conditions

The following table lists monitoring and execution conditions and specifies the data collection status, fixed monitoring status, and tier relocation operations for each condition. The latest fixed monitoring information is referenced when tiers are relocated.

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
Unallocated pages.	Pages are not monitored.	No monitoring information about pages.	Tiers of the pages are not relocated.	Unnecessary. After the pages are allocated, monitoring and relocation are performed automatically.
Zero data is discarded during data monitoring.	Monitoring on pages is reset.	Only monitoring information about pages is invalid.	Tiers of the pages are not relocated.	Unnecessary. After the pages are allocated, monitoring and relocation are performed automatically.

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
V-VOL settings do not allow tier relocation.	Volume is monitored.	Monitoring information about the volume is valid.	If the tier relocation setting is being disabled at the performance monitoring finish time, tiers of the volume are not relocated.	N/A
When V-VOLs are deleted.	Volume is not monitored.	Only monitoring information about the volume is invalid.	Tier relocation of the volume is suspended.	N/A
When execution mode is changed to <code>Manual</code> from <code>Auto</code> or vice versa.	Suspended.	Monitoring information collected before suspension is valid.	Suspended.	Collect the monitoring information again if necessary. ¹
When the power switch is power ON or OFF.	Monitoring is suspended by powering OFF and is not resumed even after powering ON. ¹	Monitoring information collected during the previous cycle is continuously valid.	Tier relocation is suspended by powering OFF and is resumed after powering ON.	Collect the monitoring information again if necessary. ¹

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When Volume Migration is performed. ▪ When Quick Restore of ShadowImage is performed. 	The monitoring information of the volume is not collected at the present moment. In the next monitoring period, the monitoring information will be collected.	Monitoring information is invalid and the volumes need to be monitored.	Tier relocation to volumes is suspended.	Collect the monitoring information again if necessary. ¹
<p>S-VOL of the following products when the initial copy operation is performed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TrueCopy ▪ Global-active device ▪ Universal Replicator 	Monitoring information is collected continuously, but the monitoring of the volumes is reset. ²	No effect on the fixed monitoring information. The monitoring information collected during the previous cycle continues to be valid.	Tier relocation to volumes is suspended.	Collect the monitoring information again if necessary. ¹

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When the number of tiers increases by adding pool-VOLs. ▪ When the pool-VOLs of the tiers are switched by adding pool-VOLs.³ ▪ When tier rank of the external LDEV is changed. 	Continued.	Fixed monitoring information is invalid because the monitoring information was discarded. If monitoring is set to the continuous mode, weighted data calculated by using the monitoring information in past periods is also discarded.	Suspended.	Relocate tiers again. ¹
When pool-VOLs are deleted.	Continued.	Monitoring information is invalid temporarily. The monitoring information is calculated again after deleting of pool-VOLs. ⁴	Deleting the pool-VOL stops the tier relocation. The process resumes after the pool-VOL is deleted.	N/A
When cache is blocked.	Continued.	No effect on the fixed monitoring information. The monitoring information collected during the previous cycle continues to be valid.	Suspended. ⁵	After recovering the faulty area, relocate tiers again. ¹

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
When an LDEV is blocked (pool-VOL or V-VOL).	Continued.	No effect on the fixed monitoring information. The monitoring information collected during the previous cycle continues to be valid.	Suspended. ⁵	After recovering the faulty area, relocate tiers again. ¹
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When the used capacity exceeds 99% of the pool capacity during relocation in a pool for which capacity saving is disabled. 	Continued.	No effect on the fixed monitoring information. The monitoring information collected during the previous cycle continues to be valid.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Temporary suspended⁵. The relocation continues if the used capacity decreases to less than 98%. ▪ Temporary suspended⁵. The relocation continues if the used capacity decreases to less than [Depletion threshold(%) - 2(%)]. 	Add pool-VOLs, then collect monitoring information and relocate tiers again. ¹
When execution mode is <code>Auto</code> and the execution cycle ends during tier relocation.	At the end time of execution cycle, data monitoring stops.	The monitoring information collected before monitoring performance stops is valid.	Suspended. ⁵	Unnecessary. The relocation is performed automatically in the next cycle.

Monitoring information or execution conditions	Status of data collection in progress	Status of fixed monitoring information used in tier relocation	Tier relocation operations	Solutions
When execution mode is <code>Manual</code> and 7 days elapse after monitoring starts.	Suspended.	The monitoring information collected before suspension is valid.	Continued.	Collect the monitoring information again if necessary. ¹
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The execution mode is <code>Auto</code> or the script is written in manual execution mode, information is monitored again, and tiers are relocated automatically. All pages of the S-VOLs are not allocated, and the monitoring information of the volume is reset. After the page is allocated to the new page, the monitoring information is collected. Example: Pool-VOLs of SAS15K are added to the following Configuration 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configuration 1 (before change): Tier 1 is SSD or FMD, Tier 2 is SAS10K, and Tier 3 is SAS7.2K. Configuration 2 (after change): Tier 1 is SSD or FMD, Tier 2 is SAS15K, and Tier 3 is SAS10K and SAS7.2K. The monitoring information status is changed from invalid or FMD (INV) to calculating (PND). After completion of calculating, the monitor information status changes from calculating (PND) to valid (VAL). The SIM code 641xxx is displayed if "Notify an alert when tier relocation is suspended by system" is enabled on the "Edit Advanced System Settings" window. 				

Buffer area of a tier

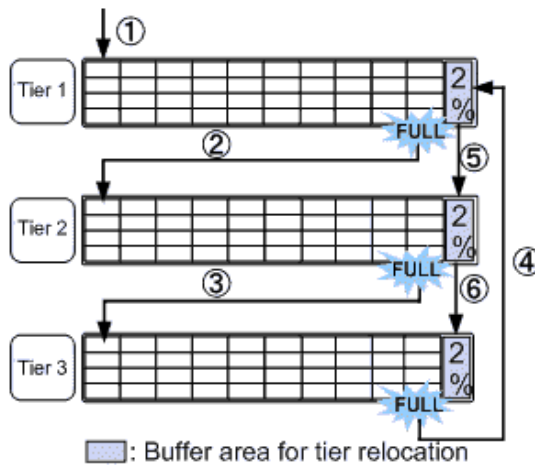
Dynamic Tiering uses buffer percentages to reserve pages for new page assignments and allow the tier relocation process. Areas necessary for processing these operations are distributed corresponding to settings used by Dynamic Tiering. The following describes how processing takes place to handle the buffer percentages.

Buffer space: The following table shows the default rates (rate to capacity of a tier) of buffer space used for tier relocation and new page assignments, listed by drive type.

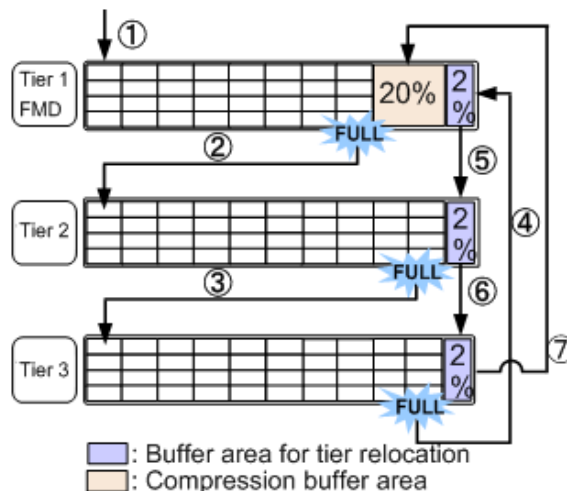
Drive type	buffer area for tier relocation	buffer area for new page assignment	Total
SSD or FMD	2%	0%	2%
Non-SSD	2%	8%	10%

New page assignment: New pages are assigned based on a number of optional settings. Pages are then assigned to the next lower tier, leaving a buffer area (2% per tier by default) for tier relocation. After 98% of capacity of all tiers is assigned, the remaining 2% of the buffer space is assigned from the upper tier. The buffer space for tier relocation is 2% in all tiers.

The following illustrates the workflow of a new page assignment.



For a pool comprised of pool volumes from parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, the capacity of the parity group equivalent to 20% of the FMD tier is used as the compression buffer area. When free space other than the FMD tier is not available, pages are assigned to this buffer area just before the capacity depletes.



Setting external volumes for each tier

If you use external volumes as pool-VOLs, you can put the external volumes in tiers by setting the External LDEV Tier Rank for the external volumes. The External LDEV Tier Rank consists of the following three types: High, Middle, and Low. The following examples describe how tiers may be configured:

Example 1: Configuring tiers by using external volumes only

Tier 1: External volumes (High)

Tier 2: External volumes (Middle)

Tier 3: External volumes (Low)

Example 2: Configuring tiers by combining internal volumes and external volumes

Tier 1: Internal volumes (SSD)

Tier 2: External volumes (High)

Tier 3: External volumes (Low)

You can set the External LDEV Tier Rank when creating the pool, changing the pool capacity, or setting the **Edit External LDEV Tier Rank** window. The following table explains the performance priority (from the top) of data drives.

Priority	Data drive type
1	SSD or FMD
2	SAS 15K rpm
3	SAS 10K rpm
4	SAS 7.2K rpm
5	External volume* (High)
6	External volume* (Middle)
7	External volume* (Low)
*Displays as External Storage in the Drive Type/RPM.	

Reserved pages for relocation operation: A small percentage of pages, normally 2, are reserved per tier to allow relocation to operate. These are the buffer spaces for tier relocation.

Tier relocation workflow: Tier relocation is performed taking advantage of the buffer space allocated for tier relocation, as mentioned previously. Tier relocation is also performed to secure the space reserved in each tier for new page assignment. The area is called the buffer space for new page assignments. When tier relocation is performed, Dynamic Tiering reserves buffer spaces for relocation and new page assignment.

During relocation, a tier may temporarily be assigned over 98% of capacity, or well under the allowance for the buffer areas.

Execution modes for tier relocation

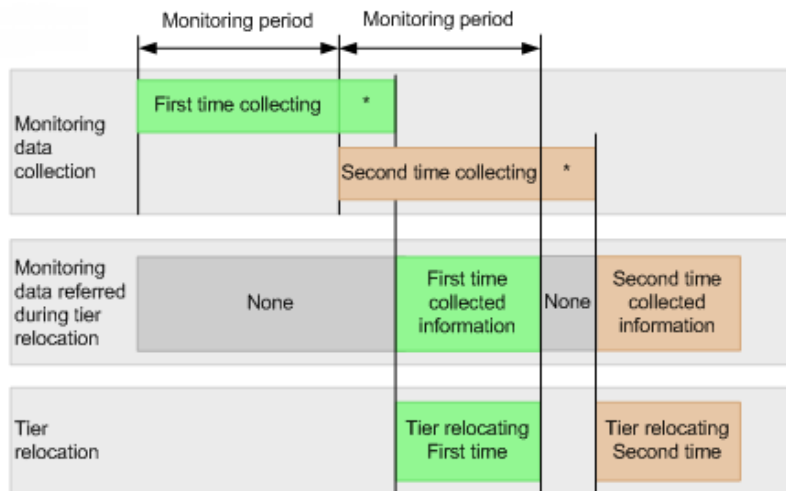
Execution modes when using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator

Dynamic Tiering performs tier relocations using one of two execution modes: Auto and Manual. You can switch between modes by using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

Auto execution mode

In Auto execution mode, the system automatically and periodically collects monitoring data and performs tier relocation. You can select an Auto execution cycle of 0.5, 1, 2, 4, or 8 hours, or a specified time.

The following illustrates tier relocation processing in a 2-hour Auto execution mode:



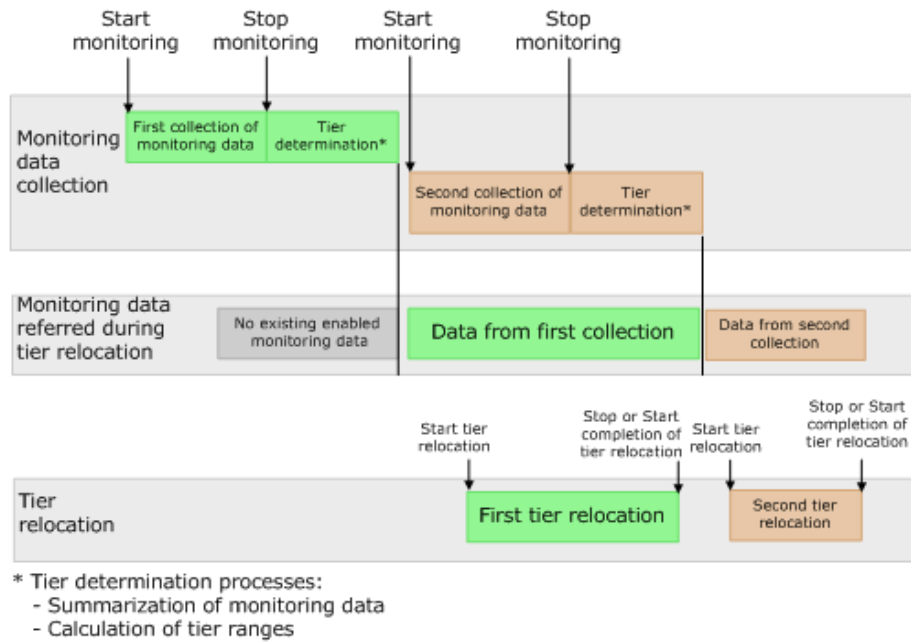
* Tier determination processing which are as follows:
 - Summarization of monitoring data
 - Calculation of tier ranges

Manual execution mode

In Manual execution mode, you can manually collect monitoring data and relocate a tier. You can issue commands to manually:

1. Start monitoring.
2. Stop monitoring.
3. Perform tier relocation.

The following illustrates tier relocation processing in Manual execution mode:



Notes on performing monitoring

- You can collect the monitoring data even while performing the relocation.
- After stopping the monitoring, the tier range is automatically calculated.
- The latest available monitoring information, which is collected just before the relocation is performed, is used for the relocation processing.
- When the relocation is performed, the status of the monitor information must be valid.

Viewing monitor and tier relocation information in HDvM - SN

Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator (HDvM - SN) displays the following information about monitor and tier relocation.

Field	Windows	Details
Monitoring Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pools window ▪ Pool Volumes tab ▪ View Pool Management Status window 	<p>Displays the status of pool monitoring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ In Progress: The monitoring is being performed. ▪ During Computation: The calculating is being processed. <p>Other than these cases, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Field	Windows	Details
Recent Monitor Data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pools window ▪ Pool Volumes tab 	<p>Displays the latest monitoring data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the monitoring data exists, the monitoring period of time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - 2010/11/15 23:59 ▪ If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - ▪ If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Pool Management Task	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pools window ▪ Pool Volumes tab 	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is waiting. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. <p>For details about the relocation progress rate, check the tier relocation log.</p>
Pool Management Task (Status/Progress)	<p>View Pool Management Status window</p>	<p>Displays the status of the pool management task being performed, each V-VOL progress ratio in the pool and its average.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is waiting. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. <p>For details about the relocation progress rate, check the tier relocation log.</p>

Field	Windows	Details
Relocation Result	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pools window ▪ Pool Volumes tab ▪ View Pool Management Status window 	<p>Displays the status of the tier relocation processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ In Progress: The status of Pool Management Task is <code>Waiting for Relocation</code> or <code>Relocating</code>. ▪ Completed: The tier relocation operation is not in progress, or the tier relocation is complete. ▪ Uncompleted (n% relocated): The tier relocation is suspended at the indicated percentage progression. ▪ - (hyphen): The pool is not a Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool.
Relocation Speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pools window ▪ View Pool Management Status window ▪ Create Pools window ▪ Edit Pools window ▪ Start Tier Relocation window ▪ Stop Tier Relocation window 	<p>Displays the tier relocation speed settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1(Slowest) ▪ 2(Slower) ▪ 3(Standard) ▪ 4(Faster) ▪ 5(Fastest)
Relocation Priority	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pool Volumes tab ▪ View Pool Management Status window 	<p>Displays the relocation priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prioritized: The priority is set to V-VOL. ▪ Blank: The priority is not set to V-VOL. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not a Dynamic Tiering V-VOL, or the tier relocation function is disabled.

Field	Windows	Details
Performance Graph	View Tier Properties window	The performance graph for the available monitor information is displayed in the View Tier Properties window.

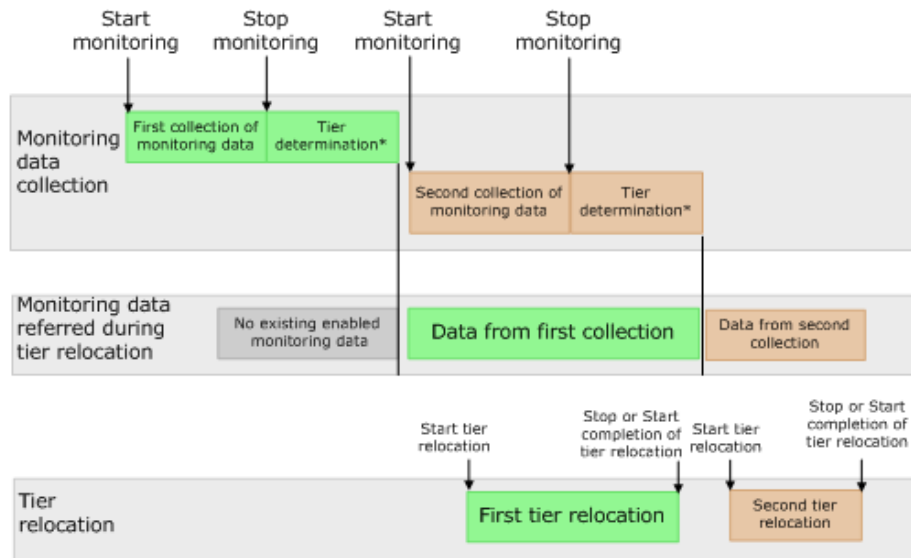
Execution modes when using Command Control Interface

Manual execution mode

In Manual execution mode, you can manually collect monitoring data and relocate a tier. You can execute commands to do the following:

1. Start monitoring.
2. Stop monitoring.
3. Perform tier relocation.

The following illustrates tier relocation processing when in Manual execution mode:



* Tier determination processes:
 - Summarization of monitoring data
 - Calculation of tier ranges

Notes on performing monitoring

- You can collect the monitoring data even while performing the relocation.
- After stopping the monitoring, the tier range is automatically calculated.
- The latest available monitoring information, which is collected just before the relocation is performed, is used for the relocation processing.
- When the relocation is performed, the status of the monitor information must be valid.

Viewing monitor and tier relocation information using CCI

To view the monitoring information and tier relocation information, execute the `raidcom get dp_pool` command with the `-key opt` option specified. For details, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference*.

The following items are displayed:

- STS

This item displays the operational status of the performance monitor and the tier relocation.

- STP: The performance monitor and the tier relocation are stopped.
- RLC: The performance monitor is stopped. The tier relocation is operating.
- MON: The performance monitor is operating. The tier relocation is stopped.
- RLM: The performance monitor and the tier relocation are operating.

- DAT

This item displays the status of the monitor information.

- VAL: Valid.
- INV: Invalid.
- PND: Being calculated.

- R(%)

This item displays the progress percentage of tier relocation.

0 to 99: Shows one of the following statuses.

- When the value of STS is RLC or RLM: Relocation is in progress.
- When the value of STS is STP or MON: Relocation is suspended at the indicated percentage progression.

100: Shows if the relocation operation is not in progress, or the relocation is complete.

Relocation speed

Relocation speed: The page relocation speed can be set to 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), and 5(Fastest). The default is 3(Standard). If you want to perform tier relocation at high speed, use the 5(Fastest) setting. If you set a speed that is slower than 3(Standard), the load to data drives is low when tier relocation is performed.

Based on the number of the parity groups that constitute a pool, this function adjusts the number of V-VOLs for which tier relocation can be performed at one time. Tier relocation can be performed on as many as 32 V-VOLs in a storage system at once.

After changing the setting, the relocation speed does not change and the data drive load may not change in the following cases:

- The number of parity groups is very few.
- The number of V-VOLs associated with the pool is very few.
- Tier relocations are being performed on the multiple pools.

Monitoring modes

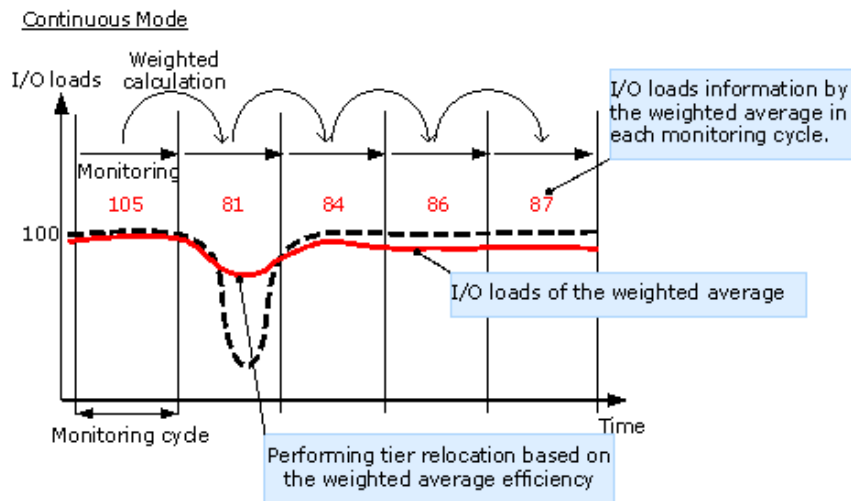
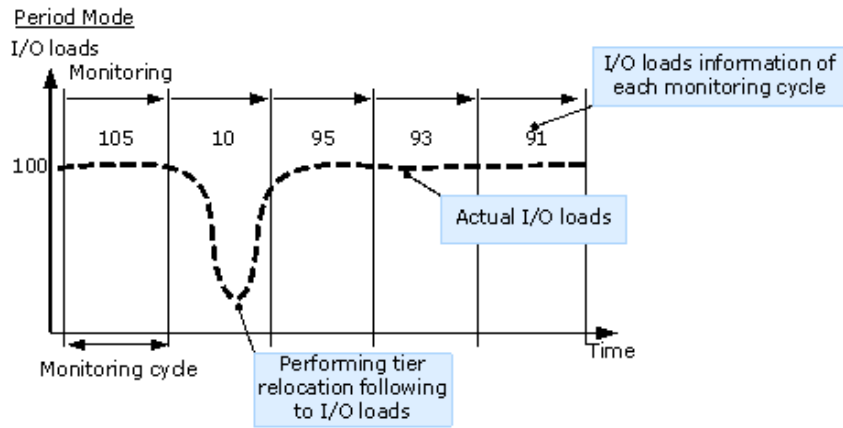
When you create or edit a pool, you set the Dynamic Tiering monitoring mode: period mode, or continuous mode. When you change the monitoring mode, the new monitoring setting becomes effective when the next monitoring period starts.

Period mode

When Period mode is enabled, tier range values and page relocations are determined based solely on the monitoring data from the last complete cycle. Relocation is performed according to any changes in I/O loads. However, if the I/O loads vary greatly, relocation might not finish in one cycle.

Continuous mode (default)

When Continuous mode is enabled, the weighted average efficiency is calculated by weighting the latest monitoring information and the collected monitoring information in the past cycles. By performing the tier relocation based on the weighted average efficiency, even if a temporary decrease or an increase of the I/O load occurs, unnecessary relocation can be avoided.



Cautions when using monitoring modes

- When Continuous monitoring mode is used, best practice is to collect monitoring information using the following execution modes:
 - Auto execution mode
 - Manual execution mode with collecting the periodic monitoring information by defining a script using CCI

If Manual execution mode is used without scripts, Continuous monitoring mode can be set. However, in this case, unexpected results might be calculated because the weighted average efficiency is calculated based on very different duration (short and long) periods information obtained in the past cycles.

- When Continuous monitoring mode is used, the frequency distributions are displayed for each pool and V-VOL calculated by using the monitor value on which the weighted calculation is done.

These calculated values are the predictive values for the next cycle after successfully relocating all pages. Therefore, these values might differ from an actual monitoring result when they appear.

In Performance Utilization of each tier, regardless of the type of the monitoring mode setting, the monitor values that were already collected in the current cycle are displayed.

If you switch the monitoring mode from Period to Continuous or from Continuous to Period, the current cycle's monitoring data that is being collected is not discarded. However, the data calculated by using past monitor cycle information on which the weighted calculation is done will be reset.

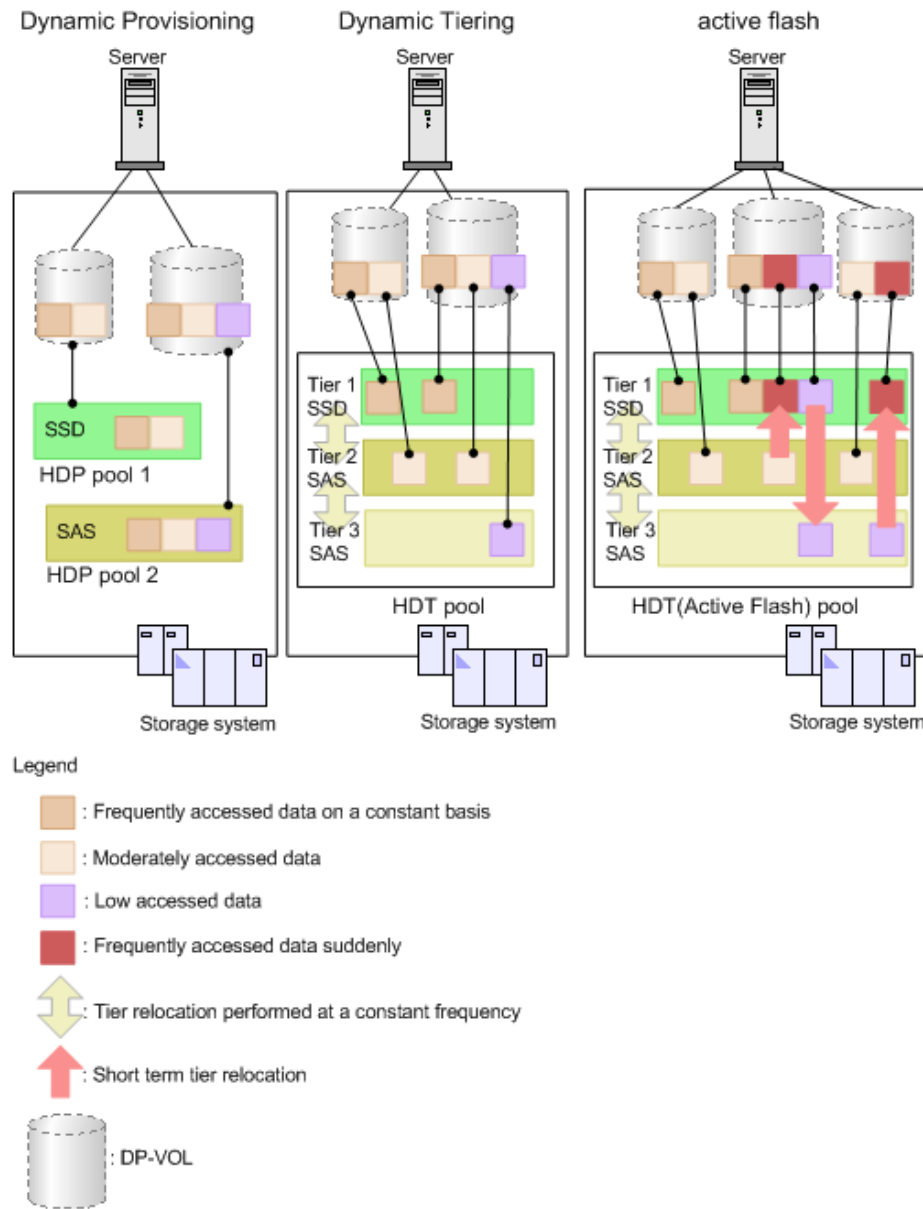
Functions overview for active flash and Dynamic Tiering

Tier management is performed by both active flash and Dynamic Tiering. The differences in supported functionality are included in the table below.

Category	Functions	active flash	Dynamic Tiering
Initial page allocation	Assigning new pages to the write data of the host	Supported	Supported
Monitoring of performance	Monitoring tiers based on the specified cycle time	Supported	N/A
Tier relocation	Promoting pages to the tier which is determined by the scheduled performance monitoring	Supported	Supported

Category	Functions	active flash	Dynamic Tiering
	Promoting pages from the tier 2 or 3 to tier 1, the pages where the latest access frequency is suddenly high	Supported	N/A
	To maintain capacity in the tier 1, demoting pages from the tier 1 to tier 2 or 3, the pages where the latest access frequency is low	Supported	N/A

The following diagram shows the differences between the functions of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and active flash.



Downloading the tier relocation log file

Use this procedure to download the log file that contains the results of past tier relocations. For information about the contents of the log file, see [Tier relocation log file contents \(on page 172\)](#).

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. From the **Actions** menu, select **Pool > Export Tier Relocation Log**.

2. In the dialog box, specify a folder for the log file, and then click **Save**.
If you change the file name from the default, make sure the file name is appended with the `.tsv` extension before saving the file.

Tier relocation log file contents

In every cycle in which tier relocation is performed, information about each pool and V-VOL is exported to the tier relocation log. The time required to incorporate the latest tier relocation results may be approximately 30 minutes. The tier relocation log file is tab-delimited and contains the following information.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
Cycle ID	Yes	Yes	Common	ID of each cycle of a tier relocation. A common ID is allocated to pool logs and V-VOL logs that are collected in one cycle.
Log Format Version	Yes	Yes	Common	Version number of the tier relocation log format.
DKC Serial Number	Yes	Yes	Common	Serial number of the storage system.
Log Type	Yes	Yes	Common	Following log types are displayed. POOL: Log information of each pool. V-VOL: Log information of each V-VOL.
LDEV ID	No	Yes	Common	LDEV ID of a V-VOL exported to a log.
Pool ID	Yes	Yes	Common	Pool ID of a pool exported to a log.
Num of V-VOLs	Yes	No	Common	The number of V-VOLs to be processed when tier relocation is performed.
Tiering Policy	No	Yes	Tier relocation result	Value of the tiering policy. Values from All(0) to Level31(31) can be displayed.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
				From Level6(6) to Level31(31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.
Tier1 Total	Yes	No	Capacity information	Total pages of tier 1.
Tier2 Total	Yes	No	Capacity information	Total pages of tier 2.
Tier3 Total	Yes	No	Capacity information	Total pages of tier 3.
Tier1 Used	Yes	Yes	Capacity information	Pages assigned to tier 1 at the start of tier relocation.
Tier2 Used	Yes	Yes	Capacity information	Pages assigned to tier 2 at the start of tier relocation.
Tier3 Used	Yes	Yes	Capacity information	Pages assigned to tier 3 at the start of tier relocation.
Start Relocation Date	Yes	Yes ¹	Common	Starting date of the tier relocation.
Start Relocation Time	Yes	Yes ¹	Common	Starting time of the tier relocation.
End Relocation Date	Yes	Yes ¹	Common	Ending date of the tier relocation.
End Relocation Time	Yes	Yes ¹	Common	Ending time of the tier relocation.
Result Status	Yes	Yes ¹	Tier relocation result	<p>Statuses of a tier relocation.</p> <p>Normal End: Tier relocation and optimization ended normally.</p> <p>Normal End (Optimization remains): Tier relocation ended normally, but tier optimization terminated in the middle of processing.²</p>

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
				Suspend: Tier relocation suspended.
Detail Status	Yes	Yes ¹	Tier relocation result	<p>If the Result Status is Suspend, one of following reasons is displayed.</p> <p>Monitor discarded: Suspended due to the discard of monitoring data.³</p> <p>End of cycle: Suspended due to incomplete tier relocation during a monitoring cycle.</p> <p>Requested by user: Suspended due to request by a user².</p> <p>Threshold exceeded: Suspended because the used capacity of pools reaches a threshold due to a tier relocation. When the used capacity of a pool reaches the depletion threshold, this reason is logged.</p> <p>FMC threshold exceeded: Suspended because the used capacity of the physical capacity in the accelerated compression-enabled parity group pool reached its full capacity.</p> <p>Cache blocked: Suspended because a cache memory is blocked.</p> <p>Volume blocked: Suspended because an LDEV which is pool-VOL or V-VOL is blocked.</p> <p>The tier management changed (Auto/Manual): Suspended because the tier management mode is changed from Auto to Manual, or Manual to Auto.</p>

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
				<p>Other reasons: Suspended for reasons other than the above, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A V-VOL was specified as the secondary volume of the TrueCopy pair and an initial copy operation was performed. ▪ A V-VOL was specified as the secondary volume of the global-active device device pair and an initial copy operation was performed ▪ A V-VOL was specified as the secondary volume of the Universal Replicator pair, and an initial copy operation was performed.
Completed Rate (%)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation result	Progress percentage rate at the time tier relocation ends or is suspended.
Remediation Rate (%)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation result	<p>IOPH (I/O per hour) remediation rate at the time tier relocation ends or is suspended.</p> <p>The remediation rate = ((Total IOPH of pages after the promotion¹) / (Total IOPH of all pages to be performed of promotion¹)) * 100</p> <p>1: Promotion is the page migration from a lower to higher tier.</p>
Planned Tier1->Tier2	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 1 to tier 2.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
Planned Tier1->Tier3	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 1 to tier 3.
Planned Tier2->Tier1	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 2 to tier 1.
Planned Tier2->Tier3	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 2 to tier 3.
Planned Tier3->Tier1	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 3 to tier 1.
Planned Tier3->Tier2	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are planned to move from the tier 3 to tier 2.
Moved Tier1->Tier2	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 1 to tier 2.
Moved Tier1->Tier3	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 1 to tier 3.
Moved Tier2->Tier1	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 2 to tier 1.
Moved Tier2->Tier3	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 2 to tier 3.
Moved Tier3->Tier1	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 3 to tier 1.
Moved Tier3->Tier2	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages that are moved from the tier 3 to tier 2.
IOPH	Yes	Yes	Monitoring result	IOPHs of all pools or V-VOLs.
IOPH Tier1 (%)	Yes	Yes	Monitoring result	Percentage of IOPH for tier 1.
IOPH Tier2 (%)	Yes	Yes	Monitoring result	Percentage of IOPH for tier 2.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
IOPH Tier3 (%)	Yes	Yes	Monitoring result	Percentage of IOPH for tier 3.
Performance Util Tier1 (%)	Yes	No	Monitoring result	Performance utilization of tier 1. The performance utilization is the current I/O percentage based on the maximum performance of tier 1.
Performance Util Tier2 (%)	Yes	No	Monitoring result	Performance utilization of tier 2. The performance utilization is the current I/O percentage based on the maximum performance of tier 2.
Performance Util Tier3 (%)	Yes	No	Monitoring result	Performance utilization of tier 3. The performance utilization is the current I/O percentage based on the maximum performance of tier 3.
Tier1 Low Range	No	Yes	Monitoring result	Lower limit in a range for tier 1.
Tier2 High Range	No	Yes	Monitoring result	Higher limit in a range for tier 2.
Tier2 Low Range	No	Yes	Monitoring result	Lower limit in a range for tier 2.
Tier3 High Range	No	Yes	Monitoring result	Higher limit in a range for tier 3.
Reclaim Zero Page Num	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages processed in an operation to reclaim zero pages.
Non Compliant Tiering Policy Number	Yes	No	Monitoring result	Number of a tiering policy that does not conform to the current tier configuration. A non-compliant policy prevents tier relocation.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
Realtime Moved Tier2->Tier1 (Unplanned)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 2 to tier 1 by active flash while performing the tier relocation by Dynamic Tiering. However, the pages migration is not planned by Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier3->Tier1 (Unplanned)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 3 to tier 1 by active flash while performing the tier relocation by Dynamic Tiering. However, the pages migration is not planned by Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier2->Tier1 (Planned)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 2 to tier 1 by active flash while performing the tier relocation by Dynamic Tiering. The pages migration is planned by Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier3->Tier1 (Planned)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 3 to tier 1 by active flash while performing the tier relocation by Dynamic Tiering. The pages migration is planned by Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier1->Tier2	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 1 to tier 2 by active flash while performing the tier relocation for Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier1->Tier3	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	Number of pages moved from tier 1 to tier 3 by active flash while performing the tier relocation for Dynamic Tiering.
Realtime Moved Tier2->Tier1 (Non Compliant)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	In the total pages moved from tier 2 to tier 1 by active flash, the number of migrated pages that do not conform to the plan of Dynamic Tiering page migration.

Item	Does each pool output the log information?	Does each V-VOL output the log information?	Type of information	Description
Realtime Moved Tier3->Tier1 (Non Compliant)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	In the total pages moved from tier 3 to tier 1 by active flash, the number of migrated pages that do not conform to the plan of Dynamic Tiering page migration.
Realtime Moved Tier1->Tier2 (Non Compliant)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	In the total pages moved from tier 1 to tier 2 by active flash, the number of migrated pages that do not conform to the plan of Dynamic Tiering page migration.
Realtime Moved Tier1->Tier3 (Non Compliant)	Yes	Yes	Tier relocation	In the total pages moved from tier 1 to tier 3 by active flash, the number of migrated pages that do not conform to the plan of Dynamic Tiering page migration.
Notes				
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the log file is lfv2 (Log Format Version 2) or later, the log file information of each V-VOL appears. If the log file is lfv 1, a hyphen appears. 2. If the log file is lfv5 (Log Format Version 5) or later, this information appears. 3. When deleting pool-VOLs, ex-valid monitor information are discarded, so that the tier relocation is interrupted. After completion of the pool-VOLs deleting, the tier determination calculation performs again and completes. Processed by this way, the valid monitor information are re-created. 				

Tiering policy

The tiering policy function is used to assign a specific storage tier to a specific DP-VOL. A tiering policy specifies subset of tiers that is available to a given set of DP-VOLs.

Tier relocation changes the location of previously stored data. It is performed in conformance to the tiering policy. If a DP-VOL is initially allocated to a low-speed tier and the tiering policy is changed to a high-speed tier, relocation is performed in the next cycle.

For example, if you set the tiering policy level on a V-VOL (DP-VOL) to a tier with a high I/O speed, the data is always stored on the high-speed tier when relocating tiers. When you use that V-VOL (DP-VOL), regardless of the actual size of the I/O load, you can always get high-speed responses. See [Tiering policy levels \(on page 182\)](#).

When you create the DP-VOL, you can designate one of six existing tiering policies and define up to 26 new tiering policies. See [Tiering policy levels \(on page 182\)](#) and [Setting tiering policy on a DP-VOL \(on page 182\)](#).

Use the **Edit LDEVs** window to change the tiering policy settings. When tier relocation occurs, the related tiering policy set for the DP-VOL is used to relocate data to the desired tier or tiers.

The tiering policy does not own pool capacity. Rather, pool capacity is shared among tiers. Pages are allocated in order of priority from upper to lower tiers in a tiering policy. When you specify a new allocation tier, pages are allocated starting from the tier that you specify.

The tier range, frequency distribution, and used capacity are displayed per tiering policy: existing tier level All(0), Level1(1) through Level5(5), and Level6(6) to Level31(31).

Custom policies

The settings of the tiering policy can be changed and these tiering policies changed by a user are called custom policies. Custom policies can be defined for IDs of tiering policies from 6 to 31 (from Level6(6) to Level31(31)). The following items can be set in the custom policy:

- Rename custom policy
- Change allocation threshold

Custom policy name

A custom policy name can be changed arbitrarily. You can change the names of custom policies from Level6(6) to Level31(31). For example, if you change the name of Level6(6) to Policy06, Policy06(6) will then be displayed.

Allocation threshold

You can define allocation thresholds in new policies from Level6(6) to Level31(31).

For all DP-VOLs that have the tiering policy in a pool, Dynamic Tiering performs the relocation of pages to each tier based on the tiering policy setting.

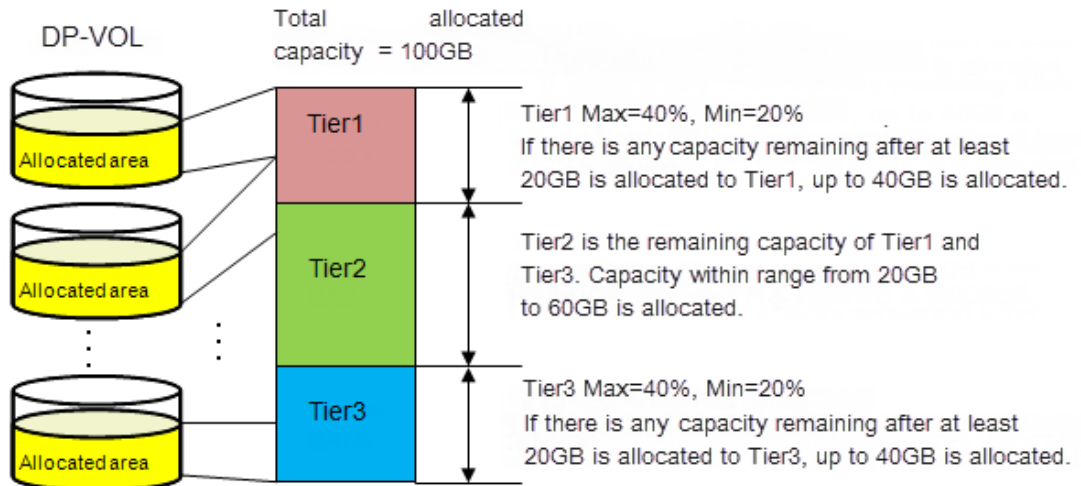
Max(%) and Min(%) parameters: When a tiering policy is created, 4 types of parameters can be set: Tier1 Max and Tier 1 Min, Tier 3 Max and Tier 3 Min. Each parameter setting is a ratio that corresponds to the total capacity of the allocated area of DP-VOLs that have the same tiering policy set for a pool.

Tier1 and Tier3 parameter settings can also limit the capacity for all volumes in a configuration that contain multiple DP-VOLs that have the same intended use. These settings can prevent conditions such as the following from occurring:

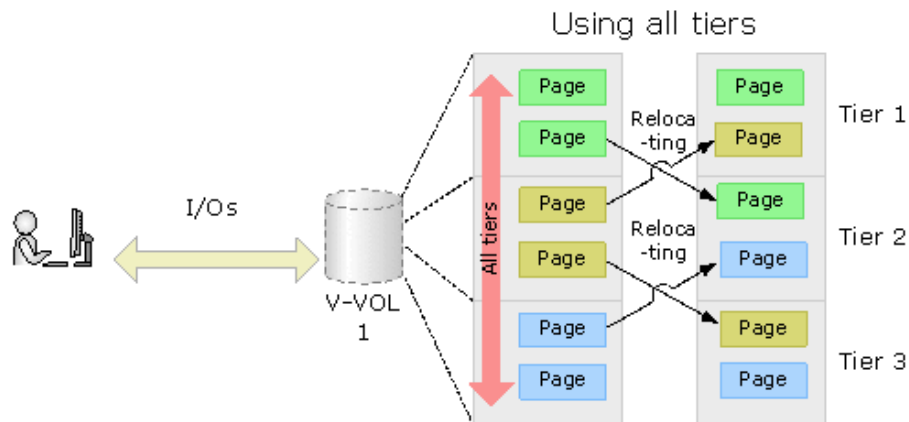
- Excess allocation of SSD capacity for unimportant applications.
- Degradation in average response time for high performance operations.

Tiering policy examples

The following figure shows the allocation threshold settings Tier1 Max=40%, Tier1 Min=20%, Tier3 Max=40%, and Tier3 Min=20% for a DP-VOL with a Level6(6) setting when the initial mapped capacity is 100GB.



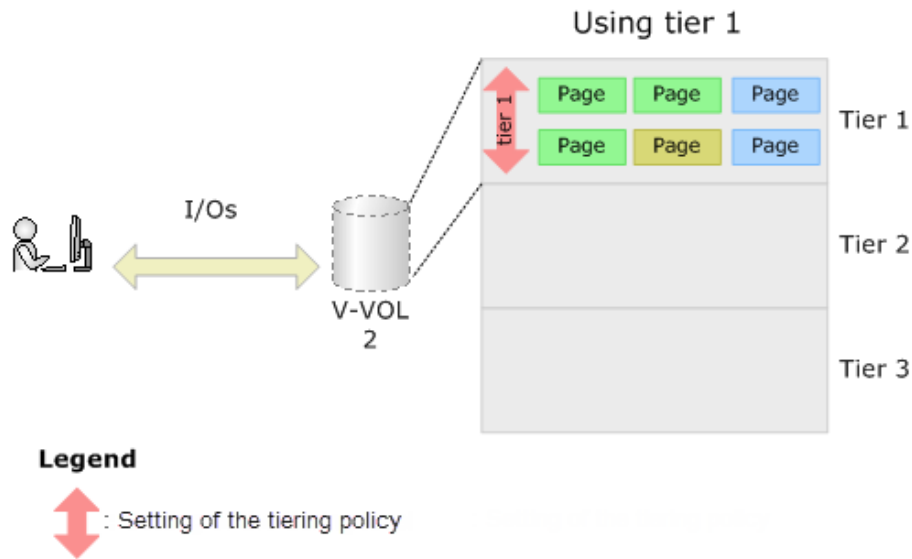
The following figure shows an example of data allocation when the default tiering policy level All(0) is specified. Pages in the DP-VOL are relocated to any tier.



Legend

↕ : Setting of the tiering level

The following figure shows an example of data allocation when setting the tiering policy to Level1(1) (see Level1(1) in [Tiering policy levels \(on page 182\)](#)). In this case, pages in the DP-VOL are relocated to tier 1, and are not relocated to other tiers.



Setting tiering policy on a DP-VOL

The setting of a tiering policy for a DP-VOL is optional. If one is not selected, the default is the All(0) tiering policy level. The available levels are listed in [Tiering policy levels \(on page 182\)](#). DP-VOLs of different tiering policies can coexist in one pool. If you specify the level of the tiering policy, DP-VOLs with the policy are grouped together.

- All(0) is the default policy. In this case, data is stored to all of the tiers.
- When a tier is added to the pool after setting the tiering policy on a DP-VOL, the DP-VOL is relocated according to the new tier lineup.

For example, if you set the tiering policy to level 5, the data is always allocated to the tier of the low I/O speed. If the pool has two tiers, data is stored in tier 2. If a new tier is added, the number of tiers becomes three and if the new tier is the lowest tier, relocation will be performed to move data into tier 3.

For more information about tiering policy and groups, see [Tiering policy levels \(on page 182\)](#).

Tiering policy levels

Tiering policy	1 tier pool	2 tier pool	3 tier pool	Note
All(0)	Single Tier	Both tiers	All 3 tiers	Default Tiering Policy
Level1(1)	Same as All(0)	Tier 1	Tier 1	Data is located to the Top Tier. Any overflow moves to the next lower tier.

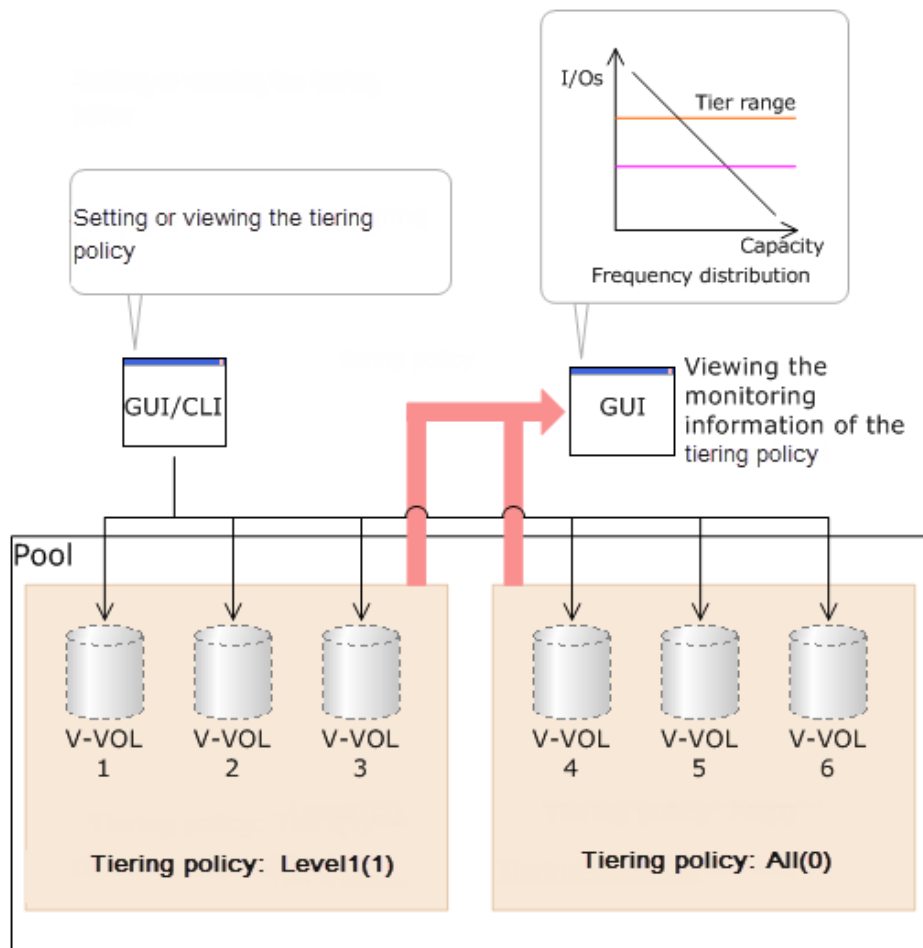
Tiering policy	1 tier pool	2 tier pool	3 tier pool	Note
Level2(2)	Same as All(0)	Same as All(0)	Tier 1 and Tier 2 See note	Data is located to the Top Tier after Level1(1) assignments are processed. Any overflow moves to the next lower tier.
Level3(3)	Same as All(0)	Same as All(0)	Tier 2 See note	Data is located to the Middle Tier. Any overflow moves to the top tier.
Level4(4)	Same as All(0)	Same as All(0)	Tier 2 and Tier 3 See note	Data is located to the Middle Tier after Level3(3) assignments are processed. Any overflow moves to the next lower tier.
Level5(5)	Same as All(0)	Tier 2	Tier 3 See note	Data is located to the bottom tier. Any overflow moves to the next higher tier.
From Level6(6) to Level31(31) ¹	Same as All(0)	Depend s on user setting	Depend s on user setting	
<p>For example:</p> <p>If additional capacity is added to the pool and the capacity defines a new Tier 1 or new Tier 2, the DP-VOLs with a Level 5(5) assignment will not physically move but Level 5(5) will be associated with Tier 3.</p> <p>If additional capacity is added to the pool and the capacity defines a new Tier 3, the DP-VOLs with a Level 5(5) assignment will physically move to the new Tier 3 and Level 5(5) will be associated with Tier 3.</p> <p>Note 1: If these names have changed, the new names appear instead.</p>				

Viewing the tiering policy in the performance graph

You can view the frequency distribution graph of the pool by selecting either the level of the tiering policy or the entire pool on the performance graph in the **View Tier Properties** window.

The following table shows how tiering policy is shown in the performance graph. How the graph appears depends on the number of tiers set in a pool and tiering policy level selected when viewing the performance graph.

Tiering policy selected with performance graph	V-VOL displayed in the performance graph
All(0)	In the performance graph, you can display a frequency distribution of a DP-VOL, set to all tiers.
Level 1(1)	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to level 1.
Level 2(2)	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to level 2.
Level 3(3)	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to level 3.
Level 4(4)	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to level 4.
Level 5(5)	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to level 5.
From Level6(6) to Level31(31) ¹	In the performance graph, you can display the frequency distribution of a DP-VOL set to custom policy.
Note 1: If these names have changed, the new names appear instead.	

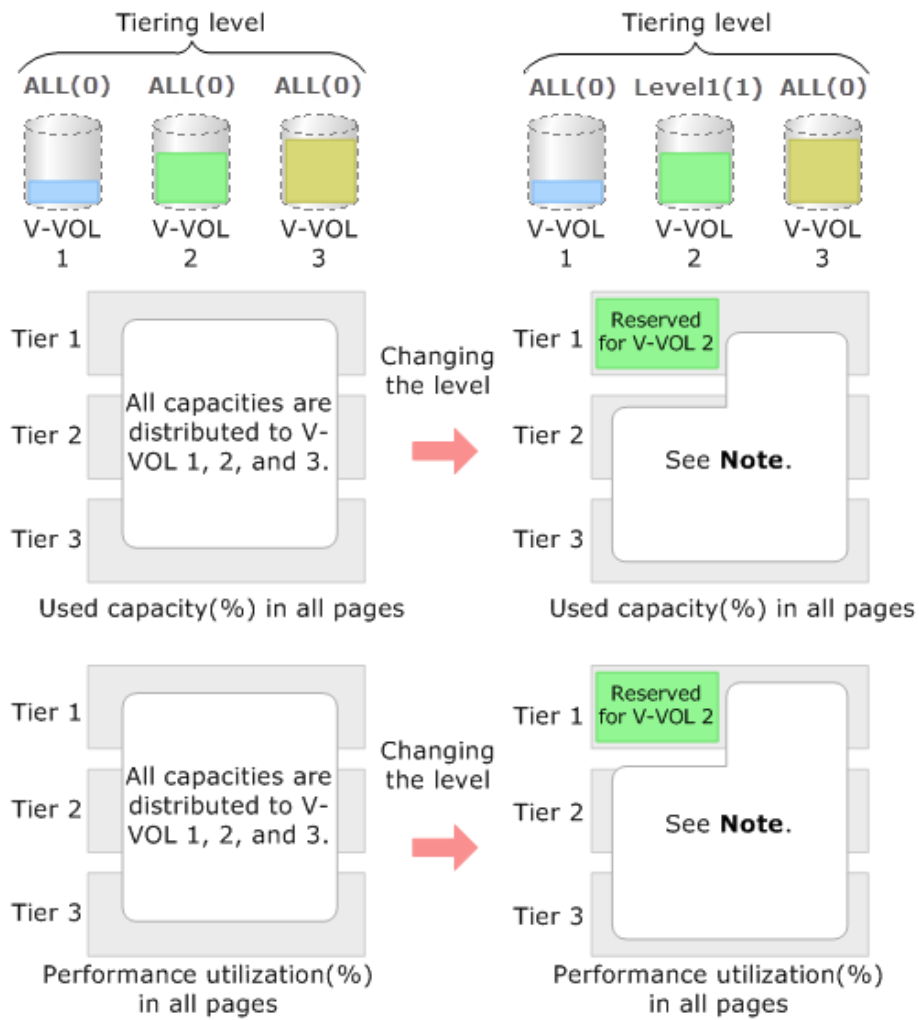


Reserving tier capacity when setting a tiering policy

If you set the tiering policy of a DP-VOL, the DP-VOL used capacity and the I/O performance limitation are reserved from the tier. The reserved limit performance per page is calculated as follows:

The reserved limit performance per page = $(\text{The performance limit of the tier}) \div (\text{The number of pages in the tier})$.

A DP-VOL without a tiering policy setting uses the unreserved area in the pool.

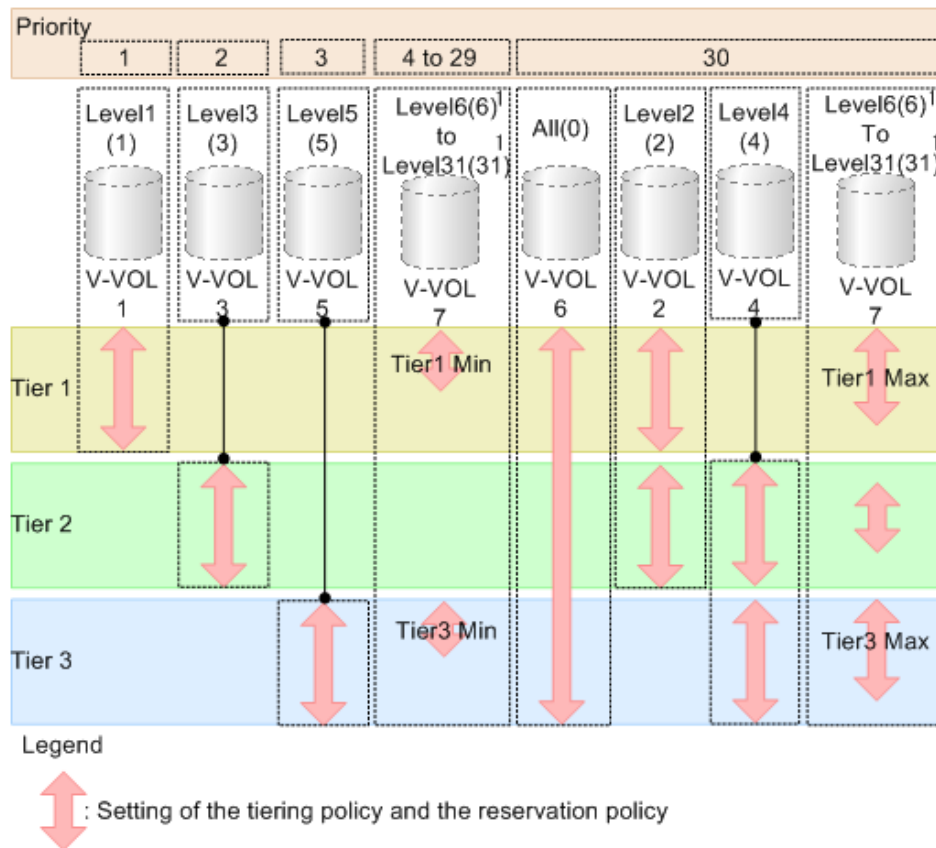


Note: The remaining capacity to which the reserved capacity is deducted is distributed to V-VOL 1 and 3.

Example of reserving tier capacity

The reservation priority depends on the level of tiering policy. The following figure illustrates the reservation priority. Tiers are reserved in order of priority from (1) to (7) in the figure. If the pool-VOL capacity is deficient when you reserve a tier, the nearest tier of your specified tier is allocated. If you specify two tiers like level 2 or level 4 of the tiering policy, first of all the upper tier is reserved. At this time, if the capacity of the pool-VOL assigned to the upper tier is deficient, the lower tier defined by the tiering policy is reserved automatically. For example, in case of level 2 in the diagram below, tier 1 is reserved first. If the capacity of tier 1 is deficient at this point, tier 2 is reserved automatically. For details, see [Notes on tiering policy settings \(on page 188\)](#).

Tier reservation priority	Tiering policy	Reserved tier
1	Level1(1)	Tier 1
2	Level3(3)	Tier 2
3	Level5(5)	Tier 3
From 4 to 29	From Level6(6) to Level31(31) ¹	<p>The custom policy whose number is small is prioritized.</p> <p>Tier 1: From Level6(6) to Level31(31)¹, each of the Tier1 Min values are reserved.</p> <p>Tier 2: From Level6(6) to Level31(31)¹, each of values that deducted the total value of Tier1 Max and Tier3 Max from 100(%) are reserved.</p> <p>Tier 3: From Level6(6) to Level31(31)¹, each of the Tier3 Min values are reserved.</p>
30	All(0)	All tiers
	Level2(2)	Tier 1 and Tier 2
	Level4(4)	Tier 2 and Tier 3
	From Level6(6) to Level31(31) ¹	<p>Tier 1: From Level6(6) to Level31(31)¹, each of the Tier1 Max values are reserved.</p> <p>Tier 3: From Level6(6) to Level31(31)¹, each of the Tier3 Max values are reserved.</p>
Note 1: If these names have changed, the new names appear instead.		



Notes on tiering policy settings

- If Auto is set as the execution mode, tier relocation is performed based on the monitoring cycle. Therefore, when the tiering policy setting is changed, tier relocation will automatically implement the tiering policy at the end of the current monitoring cycle. See Example 1 in [Execution mode settings and tiering policy \(on page 190\)](#).
- If Manual is set as the execution mode, you must manually perform monitoring, issue a monitor stop, and then start relocation (see Example 2, Case 1, in [Execution mode settings and tiering policy \(on page 190\)](#)). If you change the tiering policy settings while obtaining monitoring data, the monitoring data is used for the next tier relocation (see Example 2, Case 2, in [Execution mode settings and tiering policy \(on page 190\)](#)). Therefore, you do not need to perform new monitoring.

- If a capacity shortage exists in the tier being set, a message may appear in the **View Tier Property** window that the page allocation cannot be completed according to the tiering policy specified for the V-VOL. Should that occur, the page allocation in the entire pool, including the tier that defines the tiering policy might not be optimized.



Note: The message that page allocation cannot be completed according to the tiering policy does not appear when these tiering policies are set:

- All(0)
- In a 2-tier configuration, Level2(2), Level3(3), or Level4(4) which is equivalent to All(0)

When a capacity shortage exists in a tier, you can revise the setting of the tiering policy or the configuration of tiers. If the capacity of one tier is fully exhausted, the migrating pages are assigned to the next tier according to the tiering policy.

- Level1(1): When tier 1 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 2. If tier 2 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 3.
 - Level3(3): When tier 2 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 1. If tier 1 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 3.
 - Level5(5): When tier 3 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 2. If tier 2 is full, the remaining pages are allocated to tier 1.
 - Level2(2), Level4(4), and from Level6(6) to Level31(31): When the specified tier is full, the unallocated pages are kept in the prior tier or they are allocated to the tier that has free space. From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.
- If a performance shortage exists in the tier being set, pages may not be allocated in conformance to the tiering policy specified for the V-VOL. In that case, pages are allocated according to the performance ratio of each tier.

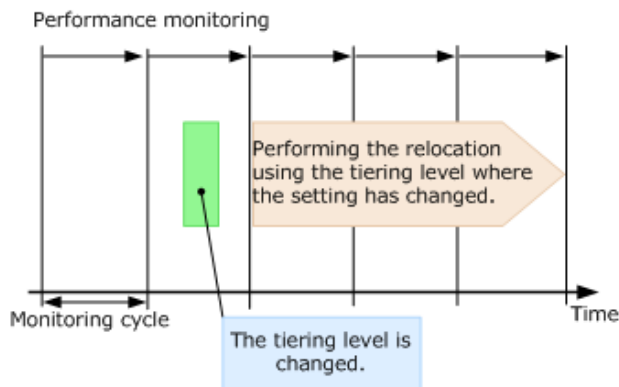
As shown in the following table, allocation capacity considerations are based on the tiering policy.

Tiering Policy	Allocation capacity considerations
All(0), Level2(2), or Level4(4)	Tier range and I/O performance
Level1(1), Level3(3), or Level5(5)	Tier range
From Level6(6) to Level31(31) ¹	First phase: Tier range.

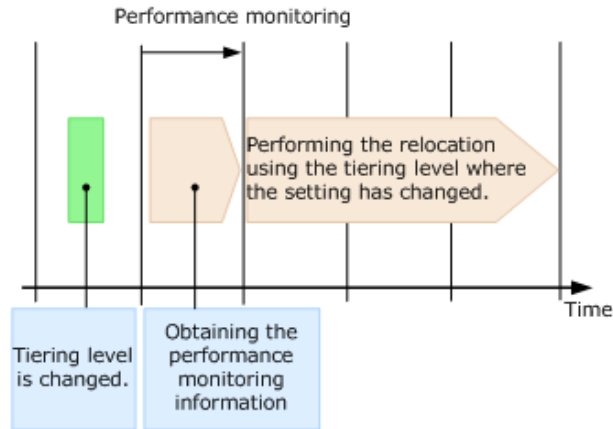
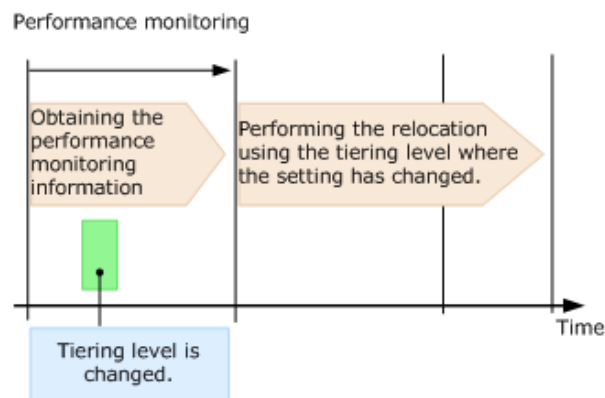
Tiering Policy	Allocation capacity considerations
	Allocation capacities in each tier. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tier1: The setting value(%) in Tier1 Min. ▪ Tier2: The value deducted Tier1 Max(%) and Tier3 Max(%) from 100(%) ▪ Tier3: The setting value(%) in Tier3 Min.
	Second phase: Tier range and I/O performance. Capacities deducted from the mapped capacities of the first phase from the total used capacity, are mapped to each tier.
Note: 1. If these names have changed, the new names appear instead.	

Execution mode settings and tiering policy

The following figure depicts how tier relocation is performed after changing the tiering policy setting while Auto execution mode is used.



The following figure depicts two cases of how tier relocation is performed after changing the tiering policy setting while Manual execution mode is used.

Case 1**Case 2****New page assignment tier**

If you set the new page assignment tier value, when a new page is needed by a DP-VOL, the page is taken from the specified tier aligned with the new page assignment tier value.

You can initially set this function only by using Device Manager - Storage Navigator when creating a DP-VOL. To change the setting, you can use either Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface. The function takes effect immediately.

The following table describes the setting values.

Setting value	Description
High	The new page is assigned from the higher tier of tiers set in the tiering policy.
Middle	The new page is assigned from the middle tier of tiers set in the tiering policy.
Low	The new page is assigned from the lower tier of tiers set in the tiering policy.

The following tables show the tiers to which new pages are preferentially assigned.

Tiering Policy	When specifying High	When specifying Middle	When specifying Low	Note
All	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 2 to 1	If you set Low, tier 2 is given a priority over tier 1.
Level 1	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	Assignment sequences when High, Middle, and Low are same.
Level 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 2 to 1	Every assignment sequence is the same as when All is specified as the tiering policy.
Level 3	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 2 to 1	Every assignment sequence is the same as when All is specified as the tiering policy.
Level 4	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 1 to 2	From tier 2 to 1	Every assignment sequence is the same as when All is specified as the tiering policy.
Level 5	From tier 2 to 1	From tier 2 to 1	From tier 2 to 1	Assignment sequences when High, Middle, and Low are same.

Number	Condition	Order of new page allocation
1	T1 MIN = 100%	Same as Level1(1)
2	T1 MAX = 0%	Same as Level5(5)
3	T1 MAX > 0%	Same as All(0)

Tiering policy	When specifying High	When specifying Middle	When specifying Low	Note
All	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	From tier 2, 3, to 1.	From tier 3, 2, to 1.	Specifying High, Middle or Low to the assignment sequence is effective.
Level 1	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	Assignment sequences when High, Middle, and Low are same.
Level 2	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	From tier 1, 2, to 3.	From tier 2, 1, to 3.	If you set Low, tier 2 is given a priority over tier 1.
Level 3	From tier 2, 3, to 1	From tier 2, 3, to 1	From the 2, 3, to 1	Assignment sequences when High, Middle, and Low are same.
Level 4	From tier 2, 3, to 1	From tier 2, 3, to 1	From tier 3, 2, to 1	If you set Low, tier 3 is given priority over tier 2.
Level 5	From tier 3, 2, to 1	From tier 3, 2, to 1	From tier 3, 2, to 1	Assignment sequences when High, Middle, and Low are same.

Number	Condition	Order of new page allocation
1	T1 MIN = 100%	Same as Level1(1)
2	T3 MIN = 100%	Same as Level5(5)
3	T1 MAX > 0% and T3 MAX = 0%	Same as Level2(2)
4	T1 MAX = 0% and T3 MAX = 0%	Same as Level3(3)
5	T1 MAX = 0% and T3 MAX > 0%	Same as Level4(4)
6	T1 MAX > 0% and T3 MAX > 0%	Same as All(0)

Relocation priority

If you use the relocation priority function, you can set the selection priority of a DP-VOL when performing relocation. With this setting, a prioritized DP-VOL can be relocated earlier during a relocation cycle. You can set this function by using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator. The function is activated after the monitoring data is collected.

- If no relocation priority is set for all DP-VOLs, the general order of DP-VOL selection is to select the next DP-VOL in LDEV number order after the last DP-VOL that fully performed relocation. This selection order persists across relocation cycles.
- If one or more DP-VOLs is assigned a relocation priority, the prioritized DP-VOLs are operated upon in the early portion of the relocation cycle, before others in the general order of DP-VOL selection.
- If V-VOL is not given priority for relocation:

For example, if LDEVs of LDEV IDs with LDEV#1, LDEV#2, LDEV#3, LDEV#4, and LDEV#5 are not given priority for relocation, LDEVs are relocated with the following sequences. In this example, three LDEVs are relocated in each period, but the number of LDEVs to relocate may change by the relocation cycle or the data size.

Relocating cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#1 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#2 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#3 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#4 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#5 in each cycle
T1	1st	2nd	3rd	Unperformed	Unperformed
T2	3rd	Unperformed	Unperformed	1st	2nd
T3	Unperformed	1st	2nd	3rd	Unperformed
T4	2nd	3rd	Unperformed	Unperformed	1st

- If V-VOL is given priority for relocation:

For example, if LDEVs of LDEV IDs with LDEV#3 and LDEV#4 are set priority for relocation from LDEV#1 to LDEV#5, LDEVs are relocated with the following sequences. In this example, three LDEVs are relocated in each period, but the number of LDEVs to relocate may change by the relocation cycle or data size.

Relocating cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#1 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#2 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#3 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#4 in each cycle	Relocating sequence of LDEV#5 in each cycle
T1	3rd	Unperformed	1st	2nd	Unperformed
T2	Unperformed	3rd	1st	2nd	Unperformed
T3	Unperformed	Unperformed	1st	2nd	3rd
T4	3rd	Unperformed	1st	2nd	Unperformed

Assignment tier when pool-VOLs are deleted

When you delete pool-VOLs, the pages allocated to the pool-VOLs are moved to other pool-VOLs. The following table shows the tier numbers to which pages are allocated before and after pool-VOLs are deleted. This operation does not depend on the tiering policy or the settings of newly assigned tiers. Relocate tiers after deleting pool-VOLs.

The following table describes page allocation in a 3-tier configuration.

Tier of deleted pool-VOLs	Order in which pages are allocated to tiers	Description
Tier 1	Tier 1, Tier 2, and Tier 3	If there is free space in Tier 1, pages are allocated to Tier 1. If there is no free space in Tier 1, pages are allocated to Tier 2. If there is no free space in Tier 1 and Tier 2, pages are allocated to Tier 3.
Tier 2	Tier 2, Tier 1, and Tier 3	If there is free space in Tier 2, the pages are allocated to Tier 2.

Tier of deleted pool-VOLs	Order in which pages are allocated to tiers	Description
		<p>If there is no free space in Tier 2, pages are allocated to Tier 1.</p> <p>If there is no free space in Tier 1 and Tier 2, pages are allocated to Tier 3.</p>
Tier 3	Tier 3, Tier 2, and Tier 1	<p>If there is free space in Tier 3, pages are allocated to Tier 3.</p> <p>If there is no free space in Tier 3, pages are allocated to Tier 2.</p> <p>If there is no free space in Tier 2 and Tier 3, pages are allocated to Tier 1.</p>

The following table describes page allocation in a 2-tier configuration.

Tier of deleted pool-VOLs	Order in which pages are allocated to tiers	Description
Tier 1	Tier 1 and Tier 2	<p>If there is free space in Tier 1, pages are allocated to Tier 1.</p> <p>If there is no free space in Tier 1, pages are allocated to Tier 2.</p>
Tier 2	Tier 2 and Tier 1	<p>If there is free space in Tier 2, pages are allocated to Tier 2.</p> <p>If there is no free space in Tier 2, pages are allocated to Tier 1.</p>

Formatted pool capacity

The formatted pool capacity equals the capacity of the initialized free space and the reserved capacity of a pool, but not the capacity of all free space and reserved capacity of the pool. The free space of the pool is monitored by a storage system. Space is formatted automatically if needed. You can confirm the formatted pool capacity in the **View Pool Management Status** window. Dependent on the load of the storage system, the format speed of free space and reserved capacity of the pool is adjusted.

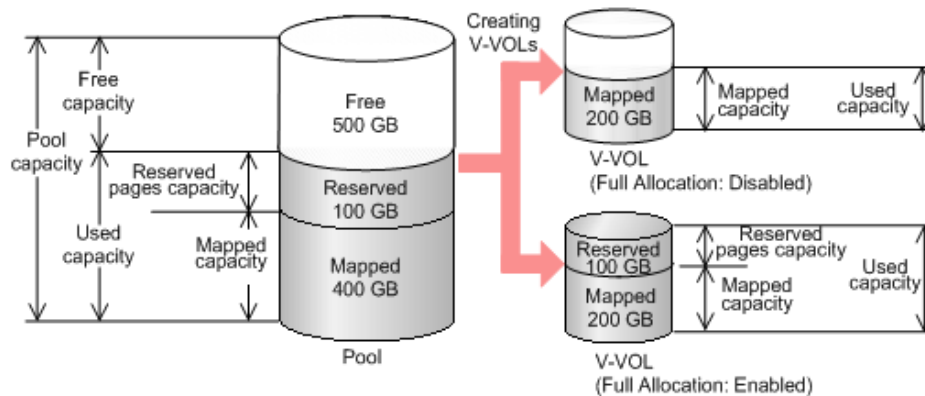
For a pool with pool-VOLs that have accelerated compression enabled, the formatted pool capacity is not the parity group capacity. Instead, it is the pool capacity.

New pages are allocated, then initialized, during data write operations to the V-VOL. If a significant number of new pages are allocated, initialization might be delayed as a result of conflicts between data write and new page initialization processes. Such conflicts could occur, for example, when you create a file system of new DP-VOLs from the host. You can initialize the free space of a pool in advance to prevent delays in data write operations.

If you want to change the method of performing the function to format the free space of a pool, contact customer support.

Used capacity, mapped capacity, and reserved capacity

The used capacity is the total capacity of pages that are assigned and reserved for each V-VOL. The mapped capacity is the total of pages which contain user data and control information of each V-VOL. The reserved capacity is the total of pages reserved in each V-VOL for which the full allocation function is enabled.



Rebalancing the usage level among parity groups

If multiple parity groups that contain LDEVs used as pool volumes exist, rebalancing can improve biased usage rates in parity groups. Rebalancing is performed as if each parity group were a single pool volume. After rebalancing, the usage rates of LDEVs in a parity group may not be balanced, but the usage rate in the entire pool is balanced.

The usage level among parity groups is automatically rebalanced when these operations are in progress:



Note: In pools comprised of pool volumes assigned by parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, the rebalancing operation is performed with consideration of the parity group's used capacity. Therefore, after performing the rebalancing operation, the capacity of the pool volume may not be reduced.

- Expanding pool capacity
- Reclaiming zero pages
- Reclaiming zero pages in a page release request issued by the host with the Write Same command, for example.
- Performing tier relocations

If you expand the pool capacity, Dynamic Provisioning moves data to the added space on a per-page basis. When the data is moved, the usage rate among parity groups of the pool volumes is rebalanced.

Host I/O performance may decrease when data is moved. If you do not want to have the usage level of parity groups automatically balanced, call the customer support.

You can see the rebalancing progress of the usage level among parity groups in the **View Pool Management Status** window. Dynamic Provisioning automatically stops balancing the usage levels among parity groups if the cache memory is not redundant.

Changing the tiering policy level of a DP-VOL

Use this procedure to change the tiering policy level of a DP-VOL.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane of the **Logical Devices** window, select the **LDEV ID** of the LDEV with the tiering policy you want to change.
4. Click **Edit LDEVs**.
5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, click **Tiering Policy**, and then select a tiering policy.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing new page assignment tier of a V-VOL

Use this procedure to change the new page assignment tier of a V-VOL.



Caution: This operation cannot be performed on the following types of DP-VOLs:

- Deduplication system data volume
- DP-VOL with Compression or Deduplication and Compression enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane of the **Logical Devices** window, select an **LDEV ID**.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit LDEVs**.
5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, select **New Page Assignment Tier**, and select the new page assignment tier you want to use.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing a tiering policy name

Use this procedure to change a tiering policy name.

From Level6(6) to Level31(31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. However, for tiering policies from All(0) to Level5(5), names cannot be changed.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** window, click **Edit Tiering Policies**.
4. In the **Edit Tiering Policies** window, select the tiering policy that you want to change, and then click **Change**.
The **Change Tiering Policy** window appears.
5. Select the **Change Tiering Policy** check box.
6. Enter the name of the tiering policy.
You can enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Return to the **Edit Tiering Policies** window.
9. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
10. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

11. Click Apply.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing an allocation threshold

Use this procedure to change an allocation threshold.

From Level6(6) to Level31(31), allocation thresholds can be changed. However, for tiering policies from All(0) to Level5(5), allocation thresholds cannot be changed.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** window, click **Edit Tiering Policies**.
4. In the **Edit Tiering Policies** window, select the tiering policy that you want to change and click **Change**. The **Change Tiering Policy** window appears.
5. Select the **Allocation Threshold** checkbox.
6. Change thresholds, and click **OK**.
7. Return to the **Edit Tiering Policies** window.

Each allocation threshold value is needed in order to meet the conditions described in the following table.

8. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
10. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Item	Explanation
Tier1 Max	Satisfy either one of following: Equal to Tier1 Min Bigger than Tier1 Min
Tier1 Min*	Satisfy either one of following: Equal to Tier1 Max Smaller than Tier1 Max

Item	Explanation
Tier3 Max	Satisfy either one of following: Equal to Tier3 Min Bigger than Tier3 Min
Tier3 Min*	Satisfy either one of following: Equal to Tier3 Max Smaller than Tier3 Max
* The sum of Tier1 Min and Tier3 Min must be 100 (%) or less.	

Changing relocation priority setting of a V-VOL

Use this procedure to change the relocation priority setting of a V-VOL.



Caution: This operation cannot be performed on the following types of DP-VOLs:

- Deduplication system data volume
- DP-VOL with Compression or Deduplication and Compression enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role is required to perform this task.

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **Logical Devices** window, select the **LDEV ID** of the volume with the relocation priority you want to change.
4. Click **Edit LDEVs**.
5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, select the **Relocation Priority** and click **Default** or **Prioritize**.
If you choose **Prioritize**, the LDEV is relocated preferentially.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

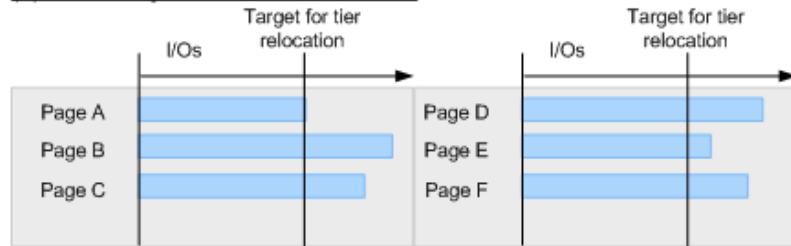
8. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

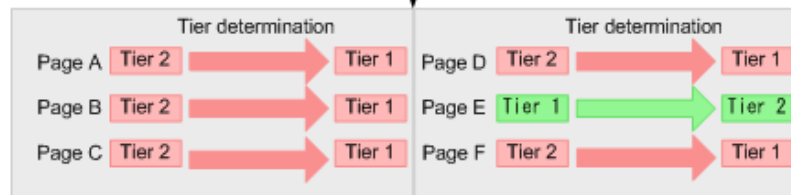
Page relocation by active flash

The active flash feature identifies the frequently accessed pages by counting the number of I/Os to specific pages. As shown in the following figure, pages that are accessed frequently are promoted to tier 1, and pages whose latest access frequency is low are allocated to lower tiers.

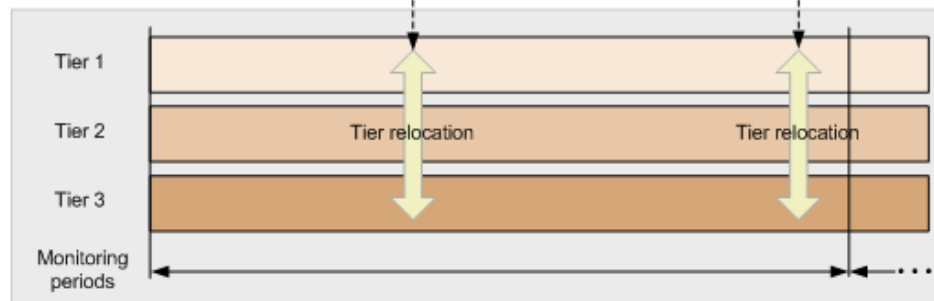
(1) Monitoring of the current host I/Os



(2) Determination of tier to be relocated of pages



(3) Performing of tier relocation



Dynamic Tiering workflow

The following illustration shows the workflow for setting up Dynamic Tiering on the storage system.

As shown in the illustration, Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator and Command Control Interface (CCI) have different workflows. This document describes how to set up Dynamic Tiering using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator. For details about how to set up Dynamic Tiering using CCI, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference* and *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*. Use Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator to create pools and DP-VOLs.



*Notes:

1. When you create a pool using CCI, you cannot enable the multi-tier pool option or register multiple media as pool-VOLs. Before making tiers, enable the multi-tier pool option.
2. Enabling the multi-tier pool option from CCI automatically sets Tier Management to Manual. You must use Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator to change Tier Management to Auto.



Caution: When you delete a pool, its pool-VOLs (LDEVs) are blocked, and you must format the blocked LDEVs before using them.

Active flash workflow

The active flash feature of Dynamic Tiering can be set up using either Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface.

The following illustration shows the workflow for a Storage Administrator to set up active flash on the storage system. As shown in the illustration, Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator and Command Control Interface have different workflows. The details about how to set up active flash using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator are covered in subsequent topics. For details about how to set up active flash using Command Control Interface, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference* and *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*. Use Hitachi Device Manager -

Storage Navigator to create pools and DP-VOLs.



- In Command Control Interface, when creating a pool, you cannot enable Multi-Tier Pool and cannot register multiple media as pool-VOLs. Before making tiers, enable Multi-Tier Pool.

- Enabling Multi-Tier Pool from Command Control Interface automatically sets Tier Management to Manual. To change Tier Management to Auto, you must do this in Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator.



Note: If you delete a pool, its pool-VOLs (LDEVs) will be blocked. If they are blocked, format them before using them.

User interface specifications for Dynamic Tiering tasks

The following tables list the Dynamic Tiering tasks and indicate whether the tasks can be performed using Device Manager - Storage Navigator or CCI or both.

Table 1 Tasks and parameter settings

Task		GUI	CCI	
DP pool	Create (Setting item)	Create	Yes	Yes
		Pool Name	Yes	Yes
		Threshold	Yes	Yes
		Multi-Tier Pool: Enable/Disable	Yes	No ¹
		active flash: Enable/Disable	Yes	No ¹
		Tier Management: Auto mode	Yes	No
		Tier Management: Manual mode	Yes	No
		Rate of space for new page assignment	Yes ³	No
		Buffer Space for Tier relocation	Yes	No
		Cycle Time	Yes	No
		Monitoring Period	Yes	No
		Monitoring Mode	Yes	No
		External LDEV Tier Rank	Yes	No
		Relocation speed	Yes	No
	Delete	Yes	Yes	
	Change Settings (Setting item)	Change Settings	Yes	Yes
		Pool Name	Yes	Yes ²
		Threshold	Yes	Yes
		Multi-Tier Pool: Enable/Disable	Yes	Yes
		active flash: Enable/Disable	Yes	Yes

Task		GUI	CCI	
	Tier Management: Auto to Manual	Yes	Yes	
	Tier Management: Manual to Auto	Yes	No	
	Buffer Space for New page assignment	Yes ³	Yes ³	
	Buffer Space for Tier relocation	Yes	Yes	
	Cycle Time	Yes	No	
	Monitoring Period	Yes	No	
	Monitoring Mode	Yes	Yes	
	External LDEV Tier Rank	Yes	No	
	Relocation speed	Yes	No	
DP pool	Add pool-VOLs		Yes	Yes
	Delete pool-VOLs		Yes	Yes
	Restore Pools		Yes	Yes
	Monitoring start/end		Yes	Yes
	Tier relocation start/stop		Yes	Yes
DP-VOL	Create (Setting item)	Create	Yes	Yes
		DP-VOL Name	Yes	Yes
		Multi-Tier Pool relocation: Disable	No	No
		Tiering Policy	Yes	No
		New page assignment tier	Yes	No
		Relocation priority	Yes	No
	Expand		Yes	Yes
	Reclaim zero pages		Yes	Yes
	Delete		Yes	Yes
	Change Settings (Setting item)	Change Settings	Yes	Yes
		Tier relocation: Enable/Disable	Yes	Yes

Task		GUI	CCI
	Tiering Policy	Yes	Yes
	New page assignment tier	Yes	Yes
	Relocation priority	Yes	No
Relocation log	Download relocation log	Yes	No
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set to <code>Disable</code> if the pool is created by Command Control Interface. Command Control Interface cannot be used to create Dynamic Tiering pools initially. You can use the <code>raidcom modify pool</code> command to modify Dynamic Provisioning pools for use as Dynamic Tiering or active flash pools. 2. You can rename a pool when adding pool-VOLs to it. 3. Recommendation is to specify 0% for SSD or FMD and 8% for other drives. 			

Table 2 Display items: Setting parameters

No .	Category	Output information	GUI	Command Control Interface
1	DP pool	Multi-Tier Pool: Disable	Yes	Yes
2		active flash: Enable/Disable	Yes	Yes
3		Tier Management mode: Auto/Manual	Yes	Yes
4		Rate of space for new page assignment	Yes	Yes
5		Cycle Time	Yes*	No
6		Monitoring Period	Yes*	No
7		Monitoring Mode	Yes	Yes
8		External LDEV Tier Rank	Yes	No
9		Relocation speed	Yes	No
10	DP-VOL	Tier relocation: Enable/Disable	Yes	Yes
11		Tiering Policy	Yes	Yes
12		New page assignment tier	Yes	Yes
13		Relocation priority	Yes	No

No .	Category	Output information	GUI	Command Control Interface
*You can view this item only in the Auto execution mode.				

Table 3 Display items: Capacity usage for each tier

No .	Category	Output information	GUI	Command Control Interface
1	DP pool	Capacity for each tier (Total)	Yes	Yes
2		Capacity for each tier (Usage)	Yes	Yes
3	DP-VOL	Capacity for each tier (Usage)	Yes	Yes

Table 4 Display items: Performance monitor statistics

No .	Category	Output information	GUI	Command Control Interface
1	DP pool	Frequency distribution	Yes ¹	No
2		Tier range	Yes ¹	Yes ²
3		Performance utilization	Yes	Yes
4		Monitoring Period starting time	Yes	No
5		Monitoring Period ending time	Yes	No
6	DP-VOL	Frequency distribution	Yes	No
7		Tier range	Yes	No
8		Monitoring Period starting time	Yes	No
9		Monitoring Period ending time	Yes	No

Notes:

1. You can select either each level of the tiering policy or the entire pool. If you set other than All(0), the tier range is not displayed when you select the entire pool.
2. The tier range when the tiering policy All(0) is selected is displayed.

Table 5 Display items: Operation status of performance monitor/relocation

No .	Category	Output information	GUI	Command Control Interface
1	DP pool	Monitor operation status: Stopped/Operating	Yes	Yes
2		Performance monitor information: Valid/Invalid/Calculating	Yes	Yes
3		Relocation status: Relocating/ Stopped	Yes	Yes
4		Relocation progress: 0 to 100%	Yes	Yes

Managing Dynamic Tiering and active flash

Changing a Dynamic Provisioning pool to a Dynamic Tiering pool

Use this procedure to change a Dynamic Provisioning pool to a pool for Dynamic Tiering or active flash.



Note: You cannot change a Dynamic Provisioning pool with capacity saving enabled to a Dynamic Tiering pool.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool you want to edit.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions > Pool > Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. Check **Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Select **Enable** from the Multi-Tier Pool field.
7. If active flash is used, select the **Active Flash** check box. If there is no pool volume whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, the check box cannot be selected.
8. Select the **Tier Management** check box.

9. In the **Tier Management** field, select **Auto** or **Manual**.

Normally **Auto** should be set.

When you select **Auto**, monitoring and tier relocation can be automatically executed.

When you select **Manual**, monitoring and tier relocation can be executed with the Command Control Interface commands or the **Pools** window.

When you change the setting of **Auto** to **Manual** while monitoring and tier relocation is executing, it is cancelled.

10. From the **Cycle Time** list, select the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation.



Note:

- When you change the **Cycle Time** while performance monitoring and tier relocation are being executed, the setting becomes effective for the next cycle after the current cycle is complete.

When you select **24 Hours** (default):

Monitoring and tier relocation is performed once a day. In the **Monitoring Period** field, specify the time of starting and ending of monitoring in 00:00 to 23:59 (default value).

- If you specify the starting time later than the ending time, the monitoring continues until the time you specified as the ending time on the next day. Any time that is not in the specified range of the monitor period is not monitored.
- You can view the information gathered by monitoring with Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator and Command Control Interface.
- When you change the time range of performance monitoring, the setting becomes effective from the next cycle after the cycle that is executing is complete.

When you select any of **0.5 Hours**, **1 Hour**, **2 Hours**, **4 Hours** or **8 Hours**:

Performance monitoring is performed every duration you selected starting at 00:00.

You cannot specify the monitoring period.

11. Select the **Monitoring Mode** check box.
12. From the **Monitoring Mode** options, select **Period Mode** or **Continuous Mode**.
If you want to perform tier relocation using the monitor results from the prior cycle, select **Period Mode**. If you want to perform tier relocation weighted to the past period monitoring result, select **Continuous Mode**.

13. Select the speed to use for page relocation in **Relocation speed**. You can set the speed to: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). The default is 3(Standard). If the speed specified is slower than 3(Standard), the data drive load is low when tier relocation is performed.
14. Select the **Buffer Space for New page assignment** check box.
15. In the **Buffer Space for New page assignment** text box, enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for each tier.
16. Select the **Buffer Space for Tier relocation** check box.
17. In the **Buffer Space for Tier relocation** text box, enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for each tier.
18. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
19. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
20. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Viewing pool tier information

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** window, select a pool with the properties you want to view.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **View Tier Properties**.

Changing monitoring and tier relocation settings

You can change the following monitoring and tier relocation settings of Dynamic Tiering pools:

- Automatic or manual execution of monitoring and tier relocation
- Cycle time of monitoring and tier relocation
- Time period of monitoring

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.

3. From the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool you want to change to the Dynamic Tiering or active flash setting.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions** > **Pool** > **Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. Click **Options** for **Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Select the **Tier Management** check box.
7. In **Tier Management**, select **Auto** or **Manual**.

Normally **Auto** should be set to allow relocation to be automatically executed.

When you select **Manual**, monitoring and tier relocation can be executed with the Command Control Interface commands or from the **Pools** window.

When you change the setting from **Auto** to **Manual** during performance monitoring and tier relocation is executing, the operation is cancelled and is no longer performed.

8. If **Auto** is selected from the **Cycle Time** list, select the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation.
9. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
10. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
11. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing monitoring mode settings

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool for which you want to change the HDT setting.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions** > **Pool** > **Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. Click **Options** for **Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Click the **Monitoring Mode** check box.

7. Select **Period Mode** or **Continuous Mode**.
If you want to perform tier relocation using the monitor results from the prior cycle, select **Period Mode**. If you want to perform tier relocation weighted to the past period monitoring result, select **Continuous Mode**.
8. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
10. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing relocation speed

Use this procedure to change the relocation speed.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **DP Pools** table, click the row of a pool you want to change to the HDT or active flash setting.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions** > **Pool** > **Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, expand **Options for Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Use the **Relocation Speed** option to set the speed for page relocation to **1(Slowest)**, **2(Slower)**, **3(Standard)**, **4(Faster)**, and **5(Fastest)**.
The default is **3(Standard)**. If you want to perform tier relocation at high speed, set **5(Fastest)**. If the speed specified is slower than 3(Standard), the data drive load is low when tier relocation is performed.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing buffer space for new page assignment setting

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool you want to change to the HDT or active flash setting.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions** > **Pool** > **Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. Select **Options for Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Select the **Buffer Space for New page assignment** check box.
7. In the **Buffer Space for New page assignment** text box, enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for each tier.
8. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
10. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing buffer space for tier relocation setting

Use this procedure to change the buffer space for tier relocation.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **DP Pools** table, click the row of a pool you want to change to the HDT or active flash setting and click **Edit Pool**.
4. Perform one of the following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - Click **Actions** > **Pool** > **Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, expand **Options for Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Select the **Buffer Space for Tier relocation** check box.

7. In the **Buffer Space for Tier relocation** text box, enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for each tier.
8. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
10. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Enabling active flash on an existing Dynamic Tiering pool

Use this procedure to enable the active flash feature on a Dynamic Tiering pool.



Note: Active flash cannot be enabled in the following cases:

- The pool contains DP-VOLs for which capacity saving is enabled.
- The pool contains a deduplication system data volume.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE must be installed.
- If tier relocation is set to Manual mode, you must change tier relocation to Auto before beginning this procedure.
- If pool-VOLs are being deleted, you must wait until the delete pool-VOL operations are complete before beginning this procedure.
- If zero pages are being reclaimed, you must wait until the reclaim zero page operations are complete before beginning this procedure.

Procedure

1. In the **Storage Systems** tree on the left pane of the main window, select **Pools**.
2. From the **Pools** table, select the pool you want to change, and click **More Actions > Edit Pools**.
3. Check **Active Flash** to ON.
If there is no pool volume whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, the check box cannot be selected.
4. Click **Finish**.
The Confirm window appears.
5. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

6. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing a Dynamic Tiering pool to a pool for Dynamic Provisioning

You can use this procedure to change a Dynamic Tiering pool to a Dynamic Provisioning pool.



Note: You cannot change a Dynamic Tiering pool to a Dynamic Provisioning pool in the following cases:

- Tier relocation is being executed manually.
- Pool-VOLs are being deleted.
- Zero pages are being reclaimed.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** tab, select a pool to be changed from a pool for Dynamic Tiering to a pool for Dynamic Provisioning.
4. Perform one of following to display the **Edit Pools** window.
 - a. Click **More Actions** and select **Edit Pools**.
 - b. Click **Actions > Pool > Edit Pools** to open the window.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, check **Multi-Tier Pool**.
6. Select **Disable** and click **OK** in the warning message.
7. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

8. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Working with pools

About pools

Dynamic Provisioning requires the use of pools. A pool consists of more than one pool-VOL. Pages in the pool are assigned to store user data and control information. Four pages on a DP-VOL are required for the control information.

A storage system supports up to 128 pools, each of which can contain up to 1024 pool-VOLs and 63,232 DP-VOLs per pool. The pool for Dynamic Provisioning cannot be used in conjunction with other pools.

The 128-pool maximum per storage system applies to the total number of Dynamic Provisioning pools and Dynamic Tiering pools. The pool for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering cannot be used in conjunction with other pools.

A pool number must be assigned to a pool. Multiple DP-VOLs can be related to one pool.

The total pool capacity combines the capacity of all the registered Dynamic Provisioning pool-VOLs assigned to the pool. Pool capacity is calculated using the following formulas:

- $capacity\ of\ the\ pool\ (MB) = total\ number\ of\ pages * 42 - 4200$
4200 in the formula is the management area size of the pool-VOL with System Area.
- $total\ number\ of\ pages = \sum(floor(floor(pool-VOL\ number\ of\ blocks \div 512) \div 168))$ for each pool-VOL

where

- floor() means to truncate the part of the formula within the parentheses after the decimal point.

About pool-VOLs

Pool-VOLs are grouped together to create a pool. When a new pool is created, the available pool-VOLs are selected in the **Select Pool VOLs** window and added to the Selected Pool Volumes table. Every pool must have a pool-VOL with System Area.

When adding a volume to the pool for which Multi-Tier Pool is enabled, note the following:

- Up to three different drives types/RPM are allowed between all the pool-VOLs to be added.
- Volumes to be added to the same pool must have the same RAID level across all the same drive type/RPM pool-VOLs.

For example, you cannot add a volume whose drive type/RPM is SAS/15k and whose RAID level is 5 (3D+1P) when a volume whose drive type/RPM is also SAS/15k but whose RAID level is 5 (7D+1P) is already in the pool.

- Up to three values are allowed for Drive Type/RPM for the volume.

If you increase the pool capacity by adding a pool-VOL, a portion of the existing data in the pool automatically migrates from an older pool-VOL to the newly added pool-VOL, balancing the usage levels of all the pool-VOLs. If you do not want to automate balancing of the usage levels of pool-VOLs, call customer support for assistance.

Dynamic Provisioning does not automatically balance the usage levels among pool-VOLs if the cache memory is not redundant or if the pool usage reaches up to the threshold.

The pool-VOLs contained in a pool can be added or deleted. Removing a pool-VOL does not delete the pool or any related DP-VOLs. You must delete all DP-VOLs related to the pool before the pool can be deleted. When the pool is deleted, all data in the pool is also deleted.

Creating pools

When you create a pool, you select the pool volumes (pool-VOLs) for the pool (manually or automatically) and set options such as the subscription limit and the warning and depletion thresholds for the pool. You can also enable options such as V-VOL protection and data deduplication.

The following procedures describe how to create pools for Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering.

- [Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually \(on page 221\)](#)
- [Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs automatically \(on page 225\)](#)
- [Creating Dynamic Tiering or active flash pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually \(on page 228\)](#)
- [Creating a Dynamic Tiering or active flash pool by automatically selecting pool-VOLs \(on page 233\)](#)

Prerequisites for creating pools

- Before you can create pools, the proper amount of shared memory must be installed, and you must have a V-VOL management area in shared memory. When shared memory is added, the V-VOL management area is automatically created. To add shared memory, contact your service representative.
- One pool-VOL with system area is defined for a pool. The priority of the pool-VOL with system area is assigned according to the drive type. The available capacity of the pool-VOL with system area is deducted from the management area capacity. The management area capacity stores the management information of software that uses the pool. If Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image is used on an open system, 4.2 GB is used as the management area in the pool-VOL with system area.

- When a pool is created, a pool-VOL with system area is assigned the priority shown in the following table. If multiple pool-VOLs of the same drive type exist, the priority of each is determined by the internal index of the storage system.

Priority	Drive type
1	SAS 7.2K
2	SAS 10K
3	SAS 15K
4	SSD or FMD
5	External volume

Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually

You can use Storage Navigator to create a Dynamic Provisioning pool with manually selected pool-VOLs.



Note: According to the capacity of the pool to create, you might have to add shared memory. For details about the relation between shared memory and the pool capacity, see [Shared memory requirements \(on page 42\)](#).

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

- Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree, and select **Pools**.
- In the **Pools** window, click **Create Pools**.
- From the **Pool Type** list, select **Dynamic Provisioning**.
- For **System Type**, select **Open**.
- For **Multi-Tier Pool**, select **Disable**.
- If you plan to add external volumes larger than 4 TB to this pool, select **Enable** for **Data Direct Mapping**.
- For **Pool Volume Selection**, select **Manual**.
- Select pool-VOLs as follows:
 - From the **Drive Type/RPM** list, select the desired data drive type and RPM.
 - From the **RAID Level** list, select the desired RAID level.
If you selected **External Storage** for **Drive Type/RPM**, a hyphen (-) is displayed and you cannot select the RAID level.
 - Click **Select Pool VOLs**.
The **Select Pool VOLs** window opens.
 - In the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the pool-VOLs to be associated with the pool, and then click **Add**. You can add up to 1,024 volumes to a pool.

To set another tier rank for an external volume, select the desired tier rank from **External LDEV Tier Rank** and click **Add**.



Note:

- LDEVs that belong to a parity group with accelerated compression enabled can be assigned to only one pool.
- We recommend that LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression enabled and LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression disabled do not coexist in the same pool.



Caution:

For details about adding LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, see [Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled \(on page 407\)](#).



Tip:

- To apply filter conditions to the table, click **Filter**, specify the desired conditions, and then click **Apply**.
- To select all pool-VOLs in the table, click **Select All Pages**. To cancel the selection, click **Select All Pages** again.
- To change the capacity unit or the number of rows to view, click **Options**.

- e. In the **Select Pool VOLs** window, if the selected pool-VOLs have no issues, click **OK**.

The information in the **Selected Pool Volumes** table is applied to **Total Selected Pool Volumes** and **Total Selected Capacity** in the **Create Pools** window.

9. In **Assign Deduplication System Data Volume**, select **Yes** if you want to enable deduplication on the pool, or select **No** if you do not want to enable deduplication on the pool.



Note: You cannot select **Yes** in the following cases:

- **Enable** is selected for **Data Direct Mapping**.
- The dedupe and compression license is not installed.
- **Enable** is selected for Multi-Tier Pool.
- Pool volumes are not selected.
- The number of available LDEV IDs is not enough.
- The number of available cache management devices is not enough.
- **Mainframe** is selected for **System Type**.

10. If you want to change the deduplication system data volume options, click **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options**:

- a. To change **LDEV Name**, specify the prefix characters and the initial number for this LDEV.
 - b. To change **Initial LDEV ID**, specify the number of LDKC, CU, LDEV, and Interval. To confirm used LDEV IDs, click **View LDEV IDs** to confirm the used LDEV IDs in the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 - c. To change **Initial SSID**, specify the 4-digit SSID as a hexadecimal number (0004 to FFFE). To confirm used SSIDs, click **View SSIDs** to confirm the used SSIDs in the **View SSIDs** window.
 - d. Click **OK** to save your changes and return to the **Create Pools** window.
11. In **Pool Name**, enter the desired name for the pool.
 12. Click **Options**.
 13. In **Initial Pool ID**, type the number of the initial pool ID (from 0 to 127).
If you specify a pool ID that is already used, the smallest available ID is displayed by default instead of the ID you specified. If a pool ID is unavailable, no number is displayed.
 14. Select **Enable** or **Disable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**.
 15. In **Subscription Limit**, enter the desired subscription limit (%) for the pool (integer value from 0 to 65534). To set the subscription limit to unlimited, leave this field blank (do not enter a number).

The subscription limit is the ratio (%) of the total DP-VOL capacity that has been configured to the total capacity of the pool. When the subscription limit is set, you cannot configure another DP-VOL if the new DP-VOL capacity would cause the subscription limit to be exceeded.



Note: The subscription limit for a Thin Image pool is unlimited. Therefore, if the pool will contain Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, set unlimited (do not enter a number).



Caution: If you are creating a pool comprised of pool volumes that belong to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, you can create a DP-VOL with a capacity larger than the pool capacity, and writing is assured even if the subscription limit is defined to 100% or less. In this case, the free area of the pool must be monitored.

This is not a requirement for monitoring the free area of the pool, but if you want to specify the pool subscription limit, specify a value lower than the value calculated by the following formula:

$$100\% * (\text{Pool physical capacity} / \text{Pool capacity})$$

If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, do not create a V-VOL exceeding the physical capacity of the pool in order not to monitor the available capacity of the pool.



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, we recommend leaving the **Subscription Limit** field blank (means unlimited).

- 16.** In **Warning Threshold**, enter the desired Warning Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 70%).
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system.
- 17.** In **Depletion Threshold**, enter the desired Depletion Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 80%). Enter a value that is equal to or greater than the **Warning Threshold**.
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Depletion Threshold, a SIM is issued by the storage system. In addition, when the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:
- Pool rebalance
 - Pool relocation
 - Creation of DP-VOLs
 - Creation of HTI pairs
- 18.** In **Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded**, select **Yes** or **No**.
This option enables you to stop the Thin Image pair split process and prioritize the writing process to DP-VOLs when the free capacity of a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data is depleted.
If you select **Yes**, SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold. After this SIM code is output, if you split a Thin Image pair in the depleted pool, the operation fails and the pair is suspended by error (PSUE).
- 19.** In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
This option applies only to DP-VOLs. It does not apply to V-VOLs used by Thin Image pairs.



Caution: If you create a DP pool of which the NAS-Unified-Firmware is to be installed, select **No** in this option.

- 20.** In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
This option applies only to DP-VOLs. It does not apply to V-VOLs used by Thin Image pairs.



Caution: If you create a DP pool of which the NAS-Unified-Firmware is to be installed, select **No** in this option.

21. Click Add.

The specified pool is added to the **Selected Pools** table. If invalid values are set, an error message is displayed.

The **Pool Type**, **Pool Volume Selection**, and **Pool Name** must be set. If these required items are not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.

To view the detailed properties of a pool in the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool and click **Detail**.

To remove a pool from the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool, click **Remove**, and then click **OK**.

22. If you want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click Next to go to the Create LDEVs window. If the Subscription Limit of the specified pool is set to 0%, an error message is displayed and the Create LDEVs window does not open.

If you do not want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Finish** to go to the **Confirmation** window.

23. Click Finish.

24. Check the settings in the Confirmation window, and then enter the task name in Task Name.

To view the detailed properties of a pool, select the pool and then click **Details**.

25. Click Apply.

The create pool task is registered. If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Creating Dynamic Provisioning pools by selecting pool-VOLs automatically

Use this procedure to create a Dynamic Provisioning pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.



Note: According to the capacity of the pool to create, you must add shared memory. For details about the relation between shared memory to add and the pool capacity, see [Shared memory requirements \(on page 42\)](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree, and click **Pools**.
2. Click **Create Pools**.
3. In the **Create Pools** window, select **Dynamic Provisioning** for the **Pool Type**.
4. For **System Type**, select **Open**.
5. For **Multi-Tier Pool**, select **Disable**.
6. For **Pool Volume Selection**, select **Auto**.
7. Select pool-VOLs as follows:
 - a. For **Resource Group**, select the resource group name of the pool-VOL.
 - b. For **Performance**, select the performance of the pool.

- c. In **Total Capacity**, specify the capacity of the pool.
Values are displayed in **Total Pool Volumes** and **Total Capacity**. These values are greater than the specified value of the pool capacity.
- d. If you want to change the pool configuration that is automatically selected, click **Change Pool Configuration** to open the **Change Pool Configuration Pattern** window.

In the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table, select the desired pool configuration, click **Select**, and then click **OK**.



Note:

- You can select the pool configuration on a parity group basis.
- The priority of the pool configuration is determined by these conditions:

Priority 1: There is no free space in the parity group and one LDEV exists in the group.

Priority 2: There is no free space in the parity group and multiple LDEVs exist in the group.

Priority 3: There is free space in the parity group and multiple LDEVs exist in the group.
- The following items are not displayed in the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table:

Parity groups with LDEVs that cannot be used as pool-VOLs.

Pool configuration patterns that contain more than 1,024 LDEVs.

The information in the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table is applied to **Total Pool Volumes** and **Total Capacity** in the **Create Pools** window.

8. In **Pool Name**, enter the desired name for the pool.
9. Click **Options**.
10. In **Initial Pool ID**, type the number of the initial pool ID (from 0 to 127).
If you specify a pool ID that is already used, the smallest available ID is displayed by default instead of the ID you specified. If a pool ID is unavailable, no number is displayed.
11. Select **Enable** or **Disable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**.
12. In **Subscription Limit**, enter the desired subscription limit (%) for the pool (integer value from 0 to 65534). To set the subscription limit to unlimited, leave this field blank (do not enter a number).

The subscription limit is the ratio (%) of the total DP-VOL capacity that has been configured to the total capacity of the pool. When the subscription limit is set, you cannot configure another DP-VOL if the new DP-VOL capacity would cause the subscription limit to be exceeded.



Note: The subscription limit for a Thin Image pool is unlimited. Therefore, if the pool will contain Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, set unlimited (do not enter a number).



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, we recommend leaving the **Subscription Limit** field blank (means unlimited).

13. In **Warning Threshold**, enter the desired Warning Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 70%).
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system.
14. In **Depletion Threshold**, enter the desired Depletion Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 80%). Enter a value that is equal to or greater than the **Warning Threshold**.
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Depletion Threshold, a SIM is issued by the storage system. In addition, when the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:
 - Pool rebalance
 - Pool relocation
 - Creation of DP-VOLs
 - Creation of HTI pairs
15. In **Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded**, select **Yes** or **No**.
This option enables you to stop the Thin Image pair split process and prioritize the writing process to DP-VOLs when the free capacity of a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data is depleted.
If you select **Yes**, SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold. After this SIM code is output, if you attempt to split a Thin Image pair, the operation fails and the pair is suspended by error (PSUE).
16. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. At the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
This option applies only to DP-VOLs. It does not apply to V-VOLs used by Thin Image pairs.



Caution: If you create a DP pool of which the NAS-Unified-Firmware is to be installed, select **No** in this option.

17. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. At the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
This option applies only to DP-VOLs. It does not apply to V-VOLs used by Thin Image pairs.



Caution: If you create a DP pool of which the NAS-Unified-Firmware is to be installed, select **No** in this option.

18. Click Add.

The specified pool is added to the **Selected Pools** table. If invalid values are set, an error message appears.

If an item that must be set is not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.

The **Pool Type**, **Pool Volume Selection**, and **Pool Name** must be set. If these required items are not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.

To view the detailed properties of a pool in the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool and click **Detail**.

To remove a pool from the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool, click **Remove**, and then click **OK**.

19. If you want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click Next to go to the Create LDEVs window.

If you do not want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Finish** to go to the **Confirmation** window.

20. Check the settings in the Confirmation window, and then enter the task name in Task Name.

To view the detailed properties of a pool, select the pool and then click **Details**.

21. Click Apply.

The create pools task is registered. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Creating Dynamic Tiering or active flash pools by selecting pool-VOLs manually

Use this procedure to create pool-VOLs manually. These pools can be used by Dynamic Tiering and by active flash.



Note: According to the capacity of the pool to create, you must add shared memory. For details about the relation between shared memory to add and the pool capacity, see [Shared memory requirements \(on page 42\)](#).

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- If you are creating a pool for active flash, LDEVs for which the drive type is SSD or FMD-HDE must be created in advance.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree, and select **Pools**.
2. In the **Pools** window, click **Create Pools**.
3. In the **Create Pools** window, select **Dynamic Provisioning** from the **Pool Type** list.
4. From the **System Type** list, select **Open**.
5. From the **Multi-Tier Pool** field, select **Enable**.
If the storage system has only external volumes with the **Cache Mode** set to **Disable**, you cannot select **Enable**.
6. If the pool is to be used by active flash, select **Active Flash**.



Note:

To use active flash, pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2 , or FMD-HDE must be installed in advance. If there are no pool volumes available with these drive types, this check box cannot be selected.

7. From the **Pool Volume Selection** field, select **Manual**.
8. Select pool-VOLs as follows:
 - a. In the **Drive Type/RPM** list, select **Mixable**.
 - b. In the **RAID Level** list, select **Mixable**.
 - c. Click **Select Pool VOLs**.
The **Select Pool VOLs** window opens.
 - d. In the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the pool-VOLs to be associated with the pool, and then click **Add**. You can add up to 1,024 volumes to a pool.

You can add volumes with the same drive type/RPM and different RAID levels to the pool. For example, you can add volumes from a SAS/15K RAID5(3D+1P) parity group and volumes from a SAS/15K RAID5(7D+1P) parity group to the same pool.

To set another tier rank for an external volume, select the desired tier rank from **External LDEV Tier Rank** and click **Add**.



Note:

- LDEVs that belong to a parity group with accelerated compression enabled can be assigned to only one pool.
- We recommend that LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression enabled and LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression disabled do not coexist in the same pool.



Caution:

For details about adding LDEVs that belong to parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, see [Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled \(on page 407\)](#).



Tip:

- To apply filter conditions to the table, click **Filter**, specify the desired conditions, and then click **Apply**.
- To select all pool-VOLs in the table, click **Select All Pages**. To cancel the selection, click **Select All Pages** again.
- To change the capacity unit or the number of rows to view, click **Options**.

- e. In the **Select Pool VOLs** window, if the selected pool-VOLs have no issues, click **OK**.

The information in the **Selected Pool Volumes** table is applied to **Total Selected Pool Volumes** and **Total Selected Capacity** in the **Create Pools** window.

9. In **Assign Deduplication System Data Volume**, select **Yes** if you want to enable deduplication on the pool, or select **No** if you do not want to enable deduplication on the pool.



Note: You cannot select **Yes** in the following cases:

- **Enable** is selected for **Data Direct Mapping**.
- The dedupe and compression license is not installed.
- Pool volumes are not selected.
- The number of available LDEV IDs is not enough.
- The number of available cache management devices is not enough.
- **Mainframe** is selected for **System Type**.

10. If you want to change the deduplication system data volume options, click **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options**:
 - a. To change **LDEV Name**, specify the prefix characters and the initial number for this LDEV.
 - b. To change **Initial LDEV ID**, specify the number of LDKC, CU, LDEV, and Interval. To confirm used LDEV IDs, click **View LDEV IDs** to confirm the used LDEV IDs in the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 - c. To change **Initial SSID**, specify the 4-digit SSID as a hexadecimal number (0004 to FFFE). To confirm used SSIDs, click **View SSIDs** to confirm the used SSIDs in the **View SSIDs** window.
 - d. Click **OK** to save your changes and return to the **Create Pools** window.
11. In **Pool Name**, enter the desired name for the pool.
12. Click **Options**.
13. In **Initial Pool ID**, type the number of the initial pool ID (from 0 to 127).

If you specify a pool ID that is already used, the smallest available ID is displayed by default instead of the ID you specified. If a pool ID is unavailable, no number is displayed.
14. Select **Enable** or **Disable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**.
15. In **Subscription Limit**, enter the desired subscription limit (%) for the pool (integer value from 0 to 65534). To set the subscription limit to unlimited, leave this field blank (do not enter a number).

The subscription limit is the ratio (%) of the total DP-VOL capacity that has been configured to the total capacity of the pool. When the subscription limit is set, you cannot configure another DP-VOL if the new DP-VOL capacity would cause the subscription limit to be exceeded.



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, we recommend leaving the **Subscription Limit** field blank (means unlimited).

16. In **Warning Threshold**, enter the desired Warning Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 70%).
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system.
17. In **Depletion Threshold**, enter the desired Depletion Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 80%). Enter a value that is equal to or greater than the **Warning Threshold**.
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Depletion Threshold, a SIM is issued by the storage system. In addition, when the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:
 - Pool rebalance
 - Pool relocation
 - Creation of DP-VOLs
 - Creation of HTI pairs
18. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
19. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
20. Configure Dynamic Tiering as follows:
 - a. For **Tier Management**, select **Auto** or **Manual**. The selection is usually **Auto** which allows performance monitoring and tier relocation to be performed automatically.
If you select **Manual**, use the Command Control Interface or Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator to manually perform performance monitoring and tier relocation.
 - b. For **Cycle Time**, select the cycle for performance monitoring and tier relocation.

When you select **24 Hours** (default), performance monitoring and tier relocation is performed once a day. In **Monitoring Period**, set the times to start and end performance monitoring (default is 00:00 to 23:59). Set one or more hours between the starting and ending times. If you specify a starting time that is later than the ending time, the performance monitoring continues until the ending time on the next day.

When you select **0.5 Hours**, **1 Hour**, **2 Hours**, **4 Hours**, **8 Hours**, performance monitoring is performed every hour that is selected, starting at 00:00. You cannot set a specific time to start performance monitoring.



Caution: When **Auto** is set, all of the V-VOL pages might not be completely migrated in one cycle. In the next cycle, migration starts by updating information for the last processed V-VOL. At that point, the collection of performance monitoring information is switched to the current cycle.

21. For **Monitoring Mode**, select **Period Mode** or **Continuous Mode**.
If you perform tier relocation in a specified cycle, Continuous Mode is selected by default. If you perform tier relocation weighted to the monitoring result of the past period, select **Continuous Mode**.
22. For **Relocation Speed**, select the desired page relocation speed for the pool: **1(Slowest)**, **2(Slower)**, **3(Standard)** (default), **4(Faster)**, or **5(Fastest)**.
 - If you want tier relocation to be performed at high speed, select **5(Fastest)**.
 - If you want to minimize the data drive load when tier relocation is performed, select **1(Slowest)** or **2(Slower)**.
23. In **Buffer Space for New page assignment**, enter the percentage (%) for each tier (integer value from 0 to 50).
The default value depends on the data drive type of the pool-VOLs in each tier: default for SSD or FMD = 0%, the other types of drives = 8%.
24. In **Buffer Space for Tier relocation**, enter the percentage (%) to set for each tier (integer value from 2 to 40, default = 2%).
25. Click **Add**.
The specified pool is added to the **Selected Pools** table. If invalid values are set, an error message is displayed.

The **Pool Type**, **Multi-Tier Pool**, **Pool Volume Selection**, and **Pool Name** must be set. If the required items are not registered, you cannot click **Add**.

To view the detailed properties of a pool in the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool and click **Detail**.

To remove a pool from the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool, click **Remove**, and then click **OK**.
26. If you want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Next** to go to the **Create LDEVs** window.
If you do not want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Finish** to go to the **Confirmation** window.
27. Check the settings in the **Confirmation** window, and then enter the task name in **Task Name**.
To view the detailed properties of a pool, select the pool and then click **Details**.
28. Click **Apply**.
The create pools task is registered. If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Creating a Dynamic Tiering or active flash pool by automatically selecting pool-VOLs

Use this procedure to create pool-VOLs automatically. These pools can be used by Dynamic Tiering and by active flash.



Note: According to the capacity of the pool to create, you must add shared memory. For details about the relation between shared memory to add and the pool capacity, see [Shared memory requirements \(on page 42\)](#).

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- If you are creating a pool for active flash, LDEVs whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, must be created in advance.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree, and click **Pools**.
2. Click **Create Pools**.
3. From the **Pool Type** list, select **Dynamic Provisioning**.
4. From the **System Type** list, select **Open**.
5. For **Multi-Tier Pool**, select **Enable**.
6. If the pool will be used by active flash, select **Active Flash**.
If there are no pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE, **Active Flash** cannot be selected.
7. For **Pool Volume Selection**, select **Auto**.



Note: If you are creating a pool that will contain LDEVs in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled, you must select **Manual**.

8. Select pool-VOLs as follows:
 - a. For **Resource Group**, select the resource group name of the pool.
 - b. For **Performance**, select the performance of the pool.
 - c. In **Total Capacity**, specify the capacity of the pool.
Values are displayed in **Total Pool Volumes** and **Total Capacity**. These values are greater than the specified value of the pool capacity.
 - d. If you want to change the pool configuration that is automatically selected, click **Change Pool Configuration** to open the **Change Pool Configuration Pattern** window.
In the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table, select the desired pool configuration, click **Select**, and then click **OK**.



Note:

- You can select the pool configuration on a parity group basis.
- The priority of the pool configuration is determined by these conditions:
 - Priority 1: There is no free space in the parity group and one LDEV exists in the group.
 - Priority 2: There is no free space in the parity group and multiple LDEVs exist in the group.
 - Priority 3: There is free space in the parity group and multiple LDEVs exist in the group.
- If **Active Flash** is selected, only the pool configurations that contain LDEVs created by SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE are displayed.
- The following items are not displayed in the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table:
 - Parity groups with LDEVs that cannot be used as pool-VOLs.
 - Pool configuration patterns that contain more than 1,024 LDEVs.

The information in the **Pool Configuration Patterns** table is applied to **Total Pool Volumes** and **Total Capacity** in the **Create Pools** window.

9. In **Assign Deduplication System Data Volume**, select **Yes** if you want to enable deduplication on the pool, or select **No** if you do not want to enable deduplication on the pool.



Note: You cannot select **Yes** in the following cases:

- **Enable** is selected for **Data Direct Mapping**.
- The dedupe and compression license is not installed.
- **Mainframe** is selected for **System Type**.
- The number of available LDEV IDs is not enough.
- The number of available cache management devices is not enough.

10. If you want to change the deduplication system data volume options, click **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options**:
 - a. To change **LDEV Name**, specify the prefix characters and the initial number for this LDEV.
 - b. To change **Initial LDEV ID**, specify the number of LDKC, CU, LDEV, and Interval. To confirm used LDEV IDs, click **View LDEV IDs** to confirm the used LDEV IDs in the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 - c. To change **Initial SSID**, specify the 4-digit SSID as a hexadecimal number (0004 to FFFE). To confirm used SSIDs, click **View SSIDs** to confirm the used SSIDs in the **View SSIDs** window.
 - d. Click **OK** to save your changes and return to the **Create Pools** window.

11. In **Pool Name**, enter the desired name for the pool.
12. Click **Options**.
13. In **Initial Pool ID**, type the number of the initial pool ID (from 0 to 127).
If you specify a pool ID that is already used, the smallest available ID is displayed by default instead of the ID you specified. If a pool ID is unavailable, no number is displayed.
14. Select **Enable** or **Disable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**.
15. In **Subscription Limit**, enter the desired subscription limit (%) for the pool (integer value from 0 to 65534). To set the subscription limit to unlimited, leave this field blank (do not enter a number).

The subscription limit is the ratio (%) of the total DP-VOL capacity that has been configured to the total capacity of the pool. When the subscription limit is set, you cannot configure another DP-VOL if the new DP-VOL capacity would cause the subscription limit to be exceeded.



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, we recommend leaving the **Subscription Limit** field blank (means unlimited).

16. In **Warning Threshold**, enter the desired Warning Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 70%).
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system.
17. In **Depletion Threshold**, enter the desired Depletion Threshold (%) for the pool (integer value from 1 to 100, default = 80%). Enter a value that is equal to or greater than the **Warning Threshold**.
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Depletion Threshold, a SIM is issued by the storage system. In addition, when the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:
 - Pool rebalance
 - Pool relocation
 - Creation of DP-VOLs
 - Creation of HTI pairs
18. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
19. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
20. Configure Dynamic Tiering as follows:

- a. For **Tier Management**, select **Auto** or **Manual**. The selection is usually **Auto** which allows performance monitoring and tier relocation to be performed automatically.

If you select **Manual**, use the Command Control Interface or Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator to manually perform performance monitoring and tier relocation.

- b. For **Cycle Time**, select the cycle for performance monitoring and tier relocation.

When you select **24 Hours** (default), performance monitoring and tier relocation is performed once a day. In **Monitoring Period**, set the times to start and end performance monitoring (default is 00:00 to 23:59). Set one or more hours between the starting and ending times. If you specify a starting time that is later than the ending time, the performance monitoring continues until the ending time on the next day.

When you select **0.5 Hours**, **1 Hour**, **2 Hours**, **4 Hours**, **8 Hours**, performance monitoring is performed every hour that is selected, starting at 00:00. You cannot set a specific time to start performance monitoring.



Caution: When **Auto** is set, all of the V-VOL pages might not be completely migrated in one cycle. In the next cycle, migration starts by updating information for the last processed V-VOL. At that point, the collection of performance monitoring information is switched to the current cycle.

21. For **Monitoring Mode**, select **Period Mode** or **Continuous Mode**.

If you perform tier relocation in a specified cycle or you do not need to specify the **Monitoring Mode** option, select **Continuous Mode**. If you perform tier relocation weighted to the monitoring result of the past period, select **Continuous Mode**.

22. For **Relocation Speed**, select the desired page relocation speed for the pool: **1(Slowest)**, **2(Slower)**, **3(Standard)** (default), **4(Faster)**, or **5(Fastest)**.

- If you want tier relocation to be performed at high speed, select **5(Fastest)**.
- If you want to minimize the data drive load when tier relocation is performed, select **1(Slowest)** or **2(Slower)**.

23. In **Buffer Space for New page assignment**, enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) for each tier.

The default value depends on the data drive type of the pool-VOL in each tier. The default value of SSD or FMD is 0%. The default value of drives other than SSD or FMD is 8%.

24. In the **Buffer Space for Tier relocation** text box, enter the percentage (%) to set for each tier (integer value from 2 to 40, default = 2%).

- 25. Click **Add**.**
The specified pool is added to the **Selected Pools** table. If invalid values are set, an error message is displayed.
- If an item that must be set is not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.
- The **Pool Type**, **Multi-Tier Pool**, **Pool Volume Selection**, and **Pool Name** must be set. If these required items are not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.
- To view the detailed properties of a pool in the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool and click **Detail**.
- To remove a pool from the **Selected Pools** table, select the pool, click **Remove**, and then click **OK**.
- 26. If you want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Next** to go to the **Create LDEVs** window.**
If you do not want to create DP-VOLs in the new pool at this time, click **Finish** to go to the **Confirmation** window.
- 27. Check the settings in the **Confirmation** window, and then enter the task name in **Task Name**.**
To view the detailed properties of a pool, select the pool and then click **Details**.
- 28. Click **Apply**.**
The create pools task is registered. If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Working with DP-VOLs

About DP-VOLs

Dynamic Provisioning requires the use of DP-VOLs, which are virtual volumes with no physical memory space. In Dynamic Provisioning, multiple DP-VOLs can be created.

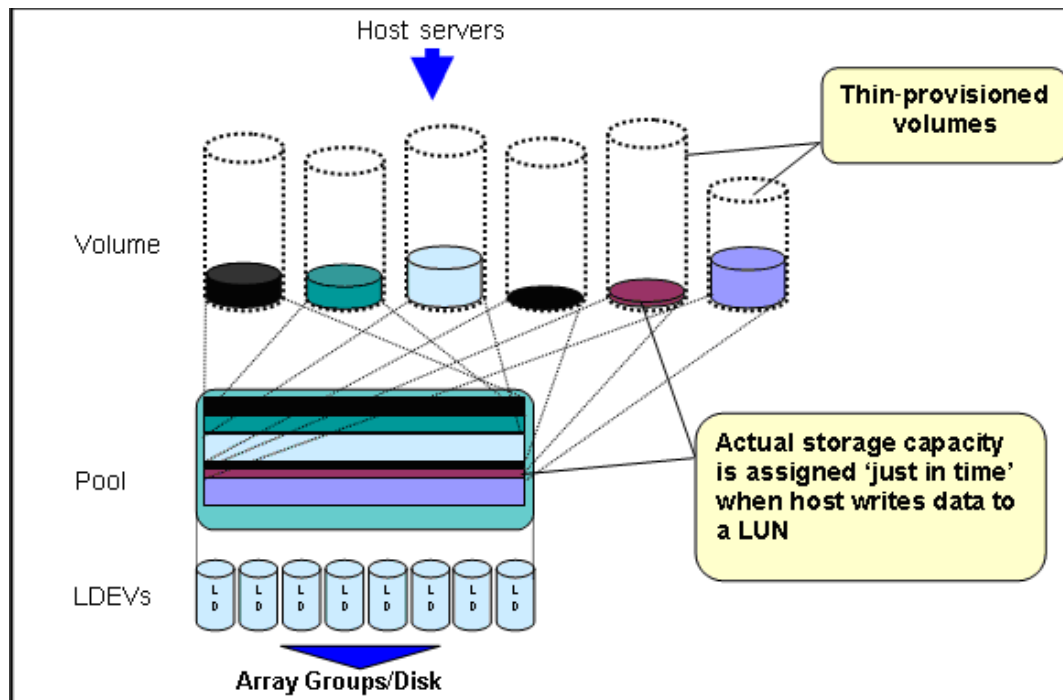
A DP-VOL is a volume in a thin provisioning storage system. It is the virtual volume from a DP pool. Data in the DP pool is used via a DP-VOL. A DP-VOL is a virtual LU to some hosts.

On open systems, OPEN-V is the only supported emulation type on a DP-VOL. You can define multiple DP-VOLs and assign them to a Dynamic Provisioning pool.

Relationship between a pool and DP-VOLs

Before you can use Dynamic Provisioning, a DP-VOL and a pool are required. Dynamic Provisioning uses the pool volumes in a pool through the DP-VOLs.

The following figure shows the relationship between a pool and DP-VOLs.



DP-VOL protection function

The DP-VOL protection function enables you to protect the DP-VOLs in a pool from read and write requests when a pool is full or pool volumes are blocked.

You can use the **Create Pools** window or the **Edit Pools** window to set the following DP-VOL protection options:

- **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool:** Enable this option to protect the DP-VOLs using the pool from read and write requests when the pool usage reaches the full size.
- **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL:** Enable this option to protect the DP-VOLs using the pool from read and write requests when the pool-VOL is blocked.

The requirements for using the DP-VOL protection function are:

- Data Retention Utility (DRU) must be installed.
- The pool type must be Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering. The DP-VOL protection function cannot be set for Thin Image pools.

The behavior of the DP-VOL protection function depends on the settings of system option modes (SOMs) 729 and 803, as specified in the following tables.

SOM 729	Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	Behavior
OFF	Disabled	DRU Protect attribute is not set
OFF	Enabled	DRU Protect attribute is set
ON	Disabled	DRU Protect attribute is not set
ON	Enabled	DRU Protect attribute is set

SOM 803	Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	Behavior
OFF	Disabled	DRU Protect attribute is not set
OFF	Enabled	DRU Protect attribute is set
ON	Disabled	DRU Protect attribute is not set
ON	Enabled	DRU Protect attribute is set

When the access attribute of a V-VOL was changed to Protect, if you change the access attribute to other than Protect, use the **Data Retention** window. The setting by the DP-VOL protection function has no connection to the access attribute status of DP-VOL. For example, even if you disabled the DP-VOL protection function to the pool while the Protect attribute was being enabled on the DP-VOL, the Protect attribute would still be enabled on the DP-VOL.

If you remove the Data Retention Utility feature, the V-VOL protection function settings remain set in the pool but are no longer active. In this case, if you reinstall Data Retention Utility, the protection function settings made before Data Retention Utility was removed are reactivated in the pool.



Caution: If you use the DP-VOL protection function, you cannot simultaneously use the following host mode options. You cannot use the DP-VOL protection function for V-VOLs associated with the host group for which one or both of the following host mode options are enabled:

- Host mode option 63 ((VAAI) Support Option for vStorage APIs based on T10 standards)
- Host mode option 73 (Support Option for Windows Server 2012)

Configuring the DP-VOL protection function options

Use this procedure to configure (enable or disable) the DP-VOL protection function options on an existing pool.

The DP-VOL protection function options are:

- **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool:** Enable this option to protect the DP-VOLs using the pool from read and write requests when the pool usage reaches the full size.
- **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL:** Enable this option to protect the DP-VOLs using the pool from read and write requests when the pool-VOL is blocked.



Note: When either of these options is enabled for a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, if pool VOLs are blocked or the pool is full, only DP-VOLs are protected.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The pool must meet all of the following conditions:
 - Data Retention Utility is installed.
 - The pool type is Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering with Multi-Tier Pool enabled, or Active Flash.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** table, select the pool for which you want to enable or disable the DP-VOL protection function options.
4. Click **More Actions**, and select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, select the desired options for **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL** and **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**.
6. Click **Finish** on the **Edit Pools** window.
The **Confirm** window opens.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Creating DP-VOLs

You can create a DP-VOL from any of the following tabs:

- The LDEVs tab, which appears when Logical Devices is selected.
- The Pools tab, which appears when Pools is selected.
- The Virtual Volumes tab, which appears when a pool in Pools is selected.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- If you are creating DP-VOLs for active flash, pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE must be installed in advance.
- If you want to create DP-VOLs for which the capacity saving setting is Deduplication and Compression, the pool must meet the following conditions:
 - LDEV status is normal for Deduplication System Data Volume.

Procedure

1. Click **Create LDEVs**.
The **Create LDEVs** window appears.
2. From the **Provisioning Type** list, confirm **Dynamic Provisioning** is selected.
If not, select **Dynamic Provisioning** from the list.
3. In the **System Type** option, select a system type.
To create open system volumes, select **Open**.
4. From the **Emulation Type** list, confirm that **OPEN-V** is selected.
5. To use the capacity saving function, in **Capacity Saving**, select **Compression** or **Deduplication and Compression**. If you select **Deduplication and Compression**, you will not be able to change the setting to **Compression** later.
If the LDEV status of the deduplication system data volume in the selected pool is other than Normal, **Deduplication and Compression** cannot be selected.

Capacity Saving is set to **Disabled** in the following cases:

- **Data Direct Mapping** is set to **Enable**.
- The dedupe and compression license is not installed.



Caution: If a pool has LDEVs in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled, select **Deduplication and Compression** if you want to enable capacity saving. Selecting **Compression** might result in lower I/O performance than using accelerated compression only.

If the first DP-VOLs of which the capacity saving setting is Deduplication and Compression are created in a pool, the deduplication system data volumes are automatically created.

6. If you want to create a V-VOL for Dynamic Tiering, select **Enable** from the **Multi-Tier Pool** field. If not, select **Disable**.
If no pool is set to **Enable** in Dynamic Tiering, **Disable** is fixed.



Note: You cannot specify the **TSE Attribute** option when selecting **Open** in the **System Type** option.

7. If the pool is to be used by active flash, select **Active Flash**.

**Note:**

To use active flash, pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE must already be installed. If there are no pool volumes available using these drive types, this checkbox cannot be selected.

8. Select the pool as follows:
 - a. From the **Drive Type/RPM** list in **Pool Selection**, select the data drive type and RPM.
 - b. From the **RAID level** list, select the RAID level.
 - c. Click **Select Pool**.
The **Select Pool** window appears.
 - d. In the **Available Pools** table, select a pool.

**Note:**

You can specify a pool when creating DP-VOLs if the pool status is one of the following:

- Normal
- Exceeded Threshold
- In progress of pool capacity shrinking

You can select only one pool. When **Enable** is selected in step 6, the Dynamic Tiering pools appear, and when **Disable** is selected, only the non-Dynamic Tiering pools appear.

Perform the following if necessary:

- Click **Filter** to open the menu, specify the filtering, and then **Apply**.
- Click **Options** to specify the units of pools or the number of rows to be displayed.

- e. Click **OK**.
The **Select Pool** window closes. The selected pool name appears in **Selected Pool Name (ID)**, and the total capacity of the selected pool appears in **Selected Pool Capacity**.

9. If you want to offset the specified LDEV capacity by boundary, change the default **Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)** from **OFF** to **ON**.
If block is specified as the unit of the LDEV capacity, this option is disabled.
10. In the **LDEV Capacity** text box, enter the DP-VOL capacity to be created.
You can enter the capacity within the range of figures displayed below the text box. You can enter the number with 2 digits after the decimal point. You can change the capacity unit from the list.
11. In the **Number of LDEVs** text box, enter the number of LDEVs to be created.
You can enter the number of LDEVs within a range of the figures displayed below the text box.

12. In the **LDEV Name** text box, enter the DP-VOL name.
 In the **Prefix** text box, enter the alphanumeric characters, which are fixed characters of the head of the DP-VOL name. The characters are case-sensitive.
 In the **Initial Number** text box, type the initial number following the prefix name, which can be up to 9 digits.
 You can enter up to the 32 characters including the initial number.
13. Click **Option**.
14. In the **Initial LDEV ID** field, make sure that LDEV ID is set.
 To confirm the used number and unavailable number, click **View LDEV IDs** to display the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 In the table, used LDEV numbers appear in blue, unavailable numbers appear in gray, and unused numbers appear in white. LDEV numbers that are unavailable may already be in use or already assigned to another emulation group (group by 32 LDEV numbers).
15. In the **Initial SSID** text box, type the 4-digit SSID of a hexadecimal number (0004 to FFFE).
 To confirm the created SSID, click **View SSID** to display the **View SSID** windows.
16. From the **Cache Partition** list, select CLPR.
17. From the **MP Blade** list, select an MP blade.
 Select a MP blade to be used by the LDEVs. If you assign a specific MP blade, select the ID of the MP blade. If you can assign any MP blade, click **Auto**.
18. From the **Full Allocation** field, select **Enable** or **Disable**. To reserve pages in the pool that are the same size as the LDEV capacity, select **Enable**.
 If **Compression** or **Deduplication and Compression** is set for **Capacity Saving**, **Disable** is set for **Full Allocation**.
19. From the **Tiering Policy** field, select the tiering policy to be used by the LDEVs.
 If you assign a specific tiering policy, select any policy. All(0) is selected by default. You can change a level from Level1(1) to Level5(5) or from Level6(6) to Level31(31). You can specify the function when the **Multi-Tier Pool** is enabled.
 From Level6(6) to Level31(31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.
 For a DP-VOL with capacity saving enabled, you can select All(0) or Level1(1) through Level5(5).
20. From the **New Page Assignment Tier** list, select a new page assignment tier. You can select from levels **High**, **Middle**, and **Low**.
 You can specify the function when the **Multi-Tier Pool** is enabled.
21. In the **Relocation Priority** option, select a priority.
 To relocate the LDEV preferentially, set **Prioritize**. You can select **Default** or **Prioritize**. You can specify this function when the **Multi-Tier Pool** is enabled.
22. In **T10 PI**, select **Enable** or **Disable**.



Caution: The T10 PI attribute can only be defined during the initial creation of LDEVs. The defined attribute cannot be removed from LDEVs on which it is already set.

23. If necessary, change the settings of the V-VOLs.
 - Click **Edit SSIDs** to open the **Edit SSIDs** window.
 - Click **Change LDEV Settings** to open the **Change LDEV Settings** window.
24. If necessary, delete a row from the **Selected LDEVs** table.
Select a row to be deleted, then click **Remove**.
25. Click **Add**.
The created V-VOLs are added to the right **Selected LDEVs** table. If invalid values are set, an error message appears.

The **Provisioning Type**, **System Type**, **Emulation Type**, **Pool Selection**, **Drive Type/RPM**, **RAID Level**, **LDEV Capacity**, and **Number of LDEVs** fields must be set. If these required items are not registered, you cannot click **Add**.
26. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.

To continue the operation for setting the LU path and define LUN, click **Next**.
27. In the **Task Name** in the text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . "yymmdd-window name" is entered as a default.
28. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Editing the SSID of a DP-VOL

Before registering a DP-VOL, you might need to use this procedure to edit the SSID of the DP-VOL. The SSID is a hexadecimal value.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, click **Create LDEVs**.
4. In the **Selected LDEVs** table of the **Create LDEVs** window, click **Edit SSIDs**.
The **Edit SSIDs** window opens. The **SSIDs** table shows the SSID existing and to be added.
5. If you want to change the SSID, select the appropriate LDEV, and then click **Change SSIDs**.

6. In the **Change SSIDs** window, type the new SSID in hexadecimal format, and then click **OK**.
7. In the **Edit SSIDs** window, click **OK**.
8. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
10. In the **Confirm** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Workflow for migrating V-VOL data

Use this workflow to migrate V-VOL data.

When you migrate V-VOL data through the host, unallocated areas of the volume might be copied as well. The used capacity of the pool increases after the data migration because the areas that were unallocated before the data migration have become allocated areas due to the migration.

To migrate the V-VOL data

1. Copy all data of V-VOLs from the source to the target.
2. Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages for each V-VOL.

When data migration is done on a file-by-file basis, perform the operation to reclaim zero pages only if necessary.

To restore the backup data

1. Restore the V-VOL data.
2. Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages for each V-VOL.

Monitoring capacity and performance

Monitoring pool capacity

The storage system monitors the pool's free capacity in accordance with threshold values defined when you create pools. If the pool capacity reaches the threshold values, the storage system issues service information messages (SIMs) and SNMP traps.

You can provision a larger virtual capacity beyond the pool capacity by using DP-VOLs of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Tiering. However, when the pool's free capacity is depleted, you can lose access to DP-VOLs that require more pool capacity. For example, if the pool usage rate is 100% due to increased write operations, then I/O is not accepted and I/O will be stopped for a DP-VOL that failed to receive needed pool capacity. Therefore, you should carefully monitor the pool usage or pool free capacity as well as the level of provisioned virtual capacity.



Note: The pool usage rate values displayed on the GUI are truncated after the decimal point. For example, when the actual pool usage rate is 50.4%, the GUI displays 50%. If the threshold is set to 50%, a SIM and an SNMP trap are reported, even though the pool usage rate displayed on the GUI does not indicate that the threshold is exceeded.

Protecting data during pool shortages

To protect data from reading and writing to the DP-VOL when the pool is full, you can apply access attributes to a volume. To do this, you need to enable the Hitachi Data Retention Utility by ensuring the license is installed and by using system option mode 729. This protection method applies the Protect attribute to the DP-VOL to protect volumes against write operations when the pool is full.

The Protect attribute is applied to the DP-VOL and is used in conjunction with other software products. When the Protect attribute is applied to the DP-VOL, Permitted appears in the S-VOL field and 0 day appears in the Validation field of the Hitachi Data Retention Utility window. However, when the Protect attribute is added to the DP-VOL with the S-VOL unacceptable attribute available in the Hitachi Data Retention Utility, Not Permitted appears in the S-VOL field in the **Data Retention** window.

Monitoring pools and DP-VOLs

The following activities help you to monitor and control performance of DP-VOLs. Collecting monitor information and subsequent tuning may increase throughput and the operating rates.

- **Collecting monitor information:**

Collecting the following monitor information helps you determine the pool load (including the access frequency, and the access load upon data drives) and DP-VOL load (including the access frequency). You can then use this monitor information to tune the appropriate allocation.

- Access frequency of DP-VOL, read hit rates, and write hit rates (using Performance Monitor)
- Usage rates of parity groups of pools (using Performance Monitor)
- Pool usage (using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator)
- DP-VOL usage (using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator)
- Dynamic Tiering performance monitoring of pool storage

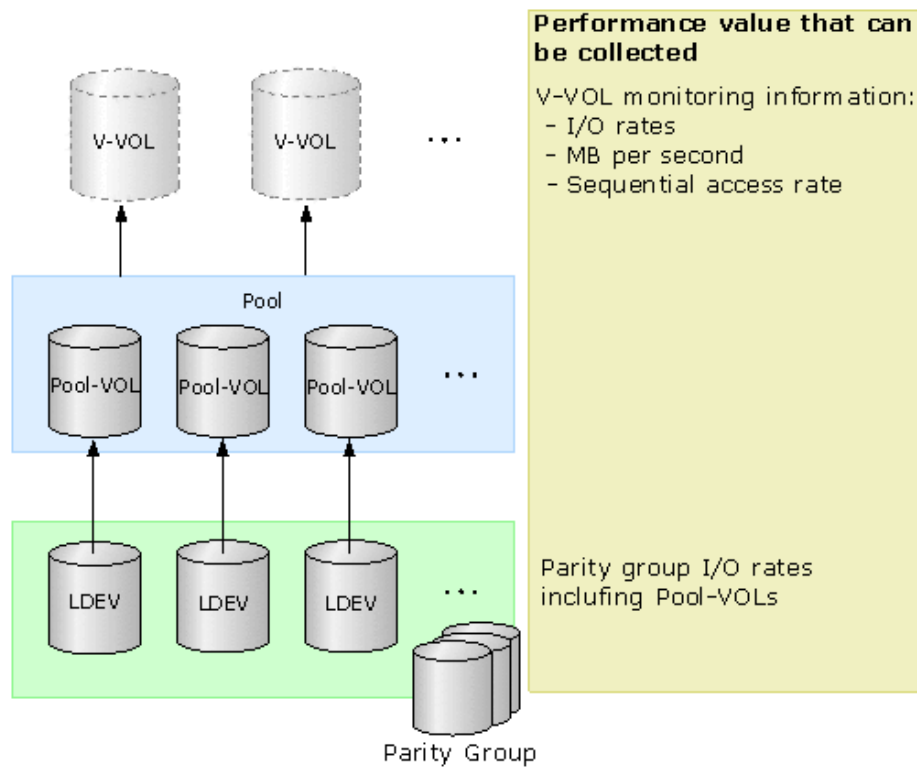
- **Possible tuning actions (without Dynamic Tiering):**

The following techniques using ShadowImage or Hitachi Tiered Storage Manager will move a DP-VOL:

- The DP-VOL is copied using ShadowImage from a pool with an I/O bottleneck. For more information, see the *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*.
- When normal volumes exist in the same parity group as the pool-VOL, Hitachi Tiered Storage Manager can be used to move the normal volume to another parity group that is not shared with a pool-VOL. For more information, see the *Hitachi Command Suite User Guide (MK-90HC172)*.
- ShadowImage copies a DP-VOL with a high I/O load to a pool with a lower access level to adjust the pool load.

Managing I/O usage rates example

The following figure illustrates an example of managing I/O usage rates.



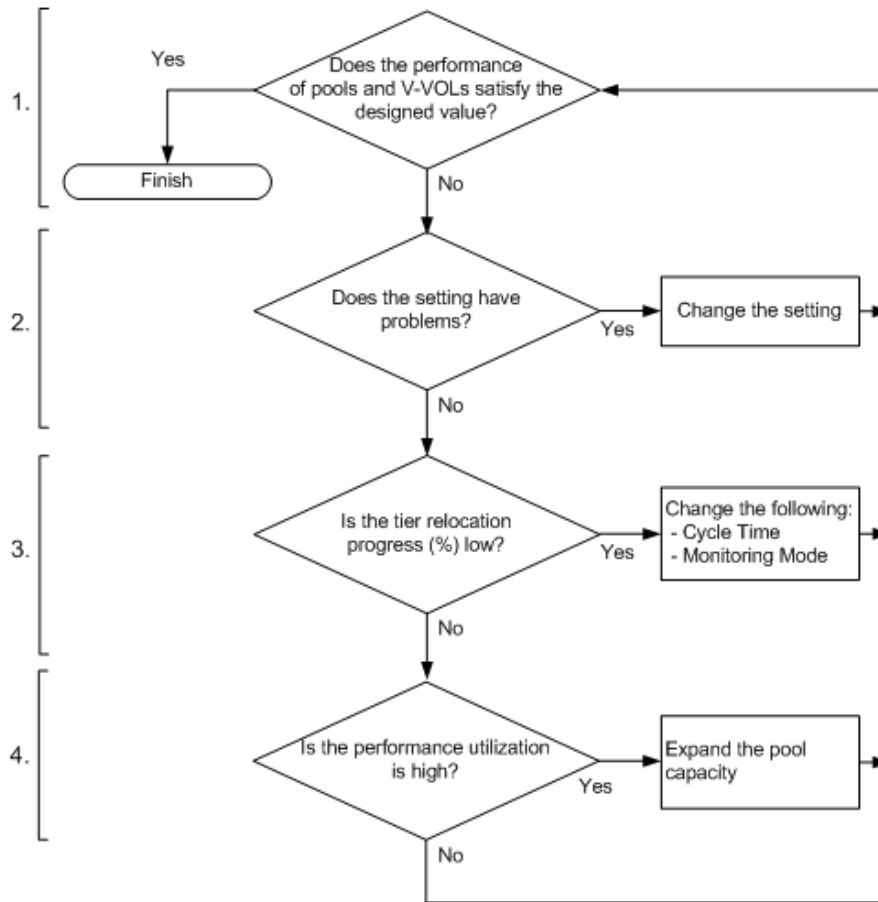
Tuning with Dynamic Tiering

If Dynamic Tiering is active on your storage system, you can monitor access frequency and performance while Dynamic Tiering automatically relocates data to the most suitable data drive (tier). You can configure monitoring to be automatic or manual. In both cases, relocation of the data is automatically determined based on monitoring.

For details, see [Dynamic Tiering and active flash \(on page 144\)](#)

Improving performance by monitoring pools

When the multi-tier pool is enabled, and the performance of the pools and DP-VOLs is not as expected, use the workflow below to detect problems and improve the performance.



1. Confirm the performance of pools and DP-VOLs

Using Performance Monitor, confirm the performance of pools and DP-VOLs. If the performance of pools and DP-VOLs is poor, go to Step 2.

2. Confirm the Dynamic Tiering setting

Using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface, confirm the Dynamic Tiering setting. If the values are set but do not conform to the design of pools or LDEVs, change the settings. If the values are set and conform to the design of pools or LDEVs, go to Step 3.

3. Confirm and improve the progress of tier relocation processing

Confirm the progress of tier relocation processing in Completed Rate (%) in the tier relocation log file. If the progress of the tier relocation process is low, there might be many pages where the page allocation is not optimized. In this case, change the Monitoring Mode or Cycle Time setting. The recommended values are as follows:

Monitoring Mode: If Period Mode is set, change to Continuous Mode.

Cycle Time: Set a longer period than the current setting.

If the recommended values are already set or if the progress of tier relocation processing is still low even after the settings are changed, go to Step 4.

4. Confirm Performance Utilization of each tier

You can confirm the performance utilization of each tier in the **View Tier Properties** window or with the `raidcom get dp_pool` command. The performance utilization is the ratio (%) of the number of I/Os against the performance potential of the tier. For example, if the performance utilization is 90% or more, a workload greater than the processing capacity of the tier is being applied to the tier.

If Performance Utilization is 90% or more on one or more of the tiers, or if Performance Utilization is 60% on all tiers, add drives and expand the pool capacity.

1. In the case that Performance Utilization is 90% or more on a tier:

Add drives to the tier where Performance Utilization is 90% or more and confirm the usage ratio of the capacity. The recommended drives to be added are as follows:

Drives to be added to the tier where Performance Utilization is 90% or more	Recommended pool volumes to be added
SSD or FMD	Add SSD or FMD pool volumes.
SAS10K or SAS15K	If the performance is given greater priority than the bit-cost: Add SSD or FMD pool volumes. If the bit-cost is given greater priority than the performance: Add SAS10K or SAS15K pool volumes. However, add SSD or FMD pool volumes if the capacity utilization of the SAS tier (SAS10K or SAS15K) is low.
SAS7.2K	If the performance is given greater priority than the bit-cost: Add SAS (SAS10K or SAS15K) pool volumes. If the bit-cost is given greater priority than the performance: Add SAS7.2K pool volumes. However, add SAS (SAS10K or SAS15K) pool volumes if the capacity utilization of the SAS 7.2K tier is low.

2. In the case that Performance Utilization is 90% or more on two or more tiers:

- a. Collect the frequency distribution on the **View Tier Properties** window.
- b. From the frequency distribution and the performance limit of each tier, seek the ratio of the most suitable tier capacity.

The performance limit of tier 2 is the maximum average IOPH on one page that the drive related to tier 2 can process. The performance limit of tier 3 is the maximum average IOPH on one page that the tier 3 drive can process. Based on these values, calculate the most suitable tier capacity for the tier 1, tier 2, and tier 3.

The most suitable tier capacity for tier 1: The capacity from 0 GB to the capacity related to the performance limit of tier 2

The most suitable tier capacity for tier 2: The capacity from the performance limit of tier 2 to tier 3 of that capacity.

The most suitable tier capacity for tier 3: The capacity from the performance limit of tier 3 to the maximum capacity of tier 3

Then, based on the most suitable tier capacity for each tier, calculate the most suitable capacity ratio of tier 1, tier 2, and tier 3 as follows:

The most suitable tier capacity for tier 1 : The most suitable tier capacity for tier 2 : The most suitable tier capacity for tier 3

c. Compare the ratio of the real tier capacity to the ratio of the most suitable tier capacity.

Comparing the ratio of tier capacity	Pool volumes suggested to be added
The ratios of the most suitable tier capacity and real tier capacity are different.	Add pool volumes to the tier that is lacking capacity.
The ratios of the most suitable tier capacity and real tier capacity are the same.	<p>If the performance is given greater priority than the bit-cost: Add SSD, FMD, or SAS (SAS10K or SAS15K) pool volumes.</p> <p>If the bit-cost is given greater priority than the performance: Add SAS (SAS10K or SAS15K) pool volumes. However, add SSD or FMD pool volumes if the capacity utilization of the SAS tier (SAS10K or SAS15K) is low.</p>

d. Add drives and expand the pool capacity.

3. In the case that Performance Utilization is 60% on all tiers:

Add drives in the upper tier and expand the pool capacity.

Thresholds for monitoring pools

Dynamic Provisioning monitors pool capacity using thresholds. A threshold is the proportion (%) of the used capacity of the pool to the total capacity of the pool, or the proportion (%) of the physical used capacity of the pool to the total capacity reserved for writing of the pool.

Pool utilization thresholds

When the used capacity of a pool reaches or exceeds the utilization thresholds set for the pool, you will be alerted so that you can take the appropriate action.

You can set the following threshold values for each pool:

- Warning Threshold: Range = 1% to 100%, in 1% increments. Default = 70%.
- Depletion Threshold: Range = 1% and 100%, in 1% increments. Default = 80%. The Depletion Threshold must be higher than the Warning Threshold.

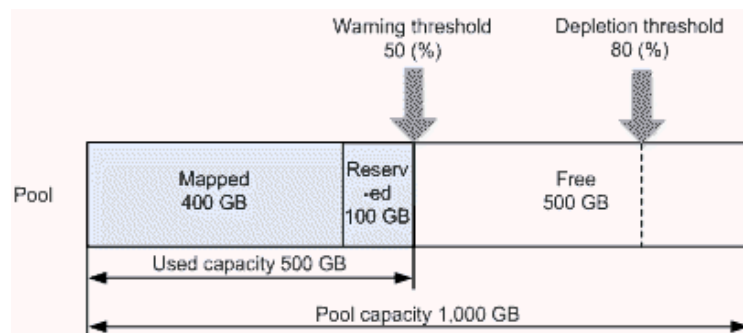
If the pool used-capacity is equal to or greater than the Warning or Depletion Threshold, a service information message (SIM) is issued by the storage system. SIMs are displayed by Device Manager - Storage Navigator and other management software and reported to the open-system hosts as SNMP traps.

The following figure shows a pool with a total pool capacity of 1,000 GB that has a Warning Threshold of 50% and a Depletion Threshold of 80%. If the used capacity of this pool is equal to or greater than 50% (500 GB) of the total pool capacity (the Warning Threshold), a SIM and an SNMP trap are reported. If the used capacity of this pool increases further and is equal to or greater than the Depletion Threshold (80%), another SIM and SNMP trap are reported.



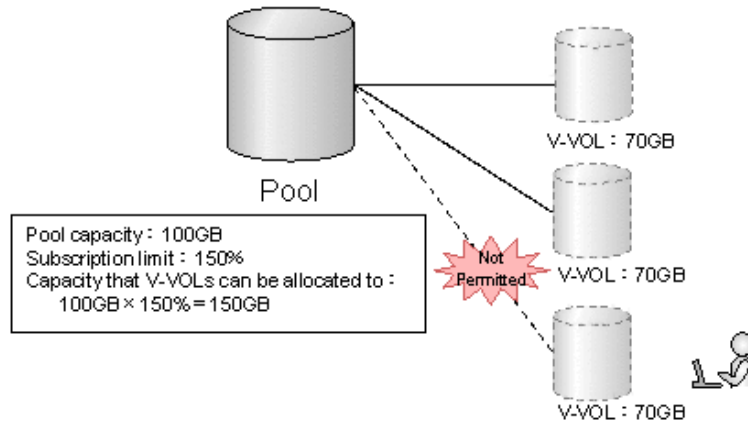
Note: When the Depletion Threshold is reached, the following functions will no longer work:

- Pool rebalance
- Pool relocation
- Creation of DP-VOLs
- Creation of HTI pairs



Pool subscription limit

The following figure depicts setting the subscription limit of pool capacity.



Cannot set V-VOL because the capacity exceeds 150%.

The value of using a subscription limit is to manage the maximum amount of over-provisioning that is acceptable for a pool. By managing the pool subscription limit, you can control the potential demand for storing data that might exceed the pool capacity.

The subscription limit is the ratio (%) of the total DP-VOL capacity that has been configured to the total capacity of the pool. When the subscription limit is set, you cannot configure another DP-VOL if the new DP-VOL capacity would cause the subscription limit to be exceeded.

The subscription limit includes pages required to store user data and control information. The total capacity of DP-VOLs that are created from the pool is smaller than the subscription limit capacity. The formula used to calculate the required pages for one DP-VOL includes the control information. To determine the total pages required in a pool, multiply the number of calculated pages by the number of DP-VOLs. The value enclosed in ceiling () must be rounded up to the nearest whole number. The number of pages for the DP-VOL including the control information equals:

Number of pages for the DP-VOL including the control information = ceiling((one-DP-VOL-capacity (MB) + ceiling(one-DP-VOL-capacity (MB) / 3,145,548 (MB)) * 4 (pages) * 42 (MB)) / 42 (MB))

For example, if the pool capacity is 100 GB and the subscription limit is 150%, you can configure up to a total of 150 GB of capacity to the DP-VOLs related to the pool.

**Note:**

If you are using a pool comprised of pool-VOLs assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the pool subscription limit is defined with respect to the pool capacity not reserved for writing. In this case, the free area of the pool must be monitored even if the subscription limit is defined to 100%.

If you do not want to monitor the free area of the pool, specify the subscription limit conforming to the following formula:

$$\text{pool-capacity} / \text{pool-capacity-reserved-for-data-writing} * \text{subscription-limit} = 100\%$$

For example, if 100 TB of the pool capacity and 80 TB of the pool capacity reserved for writing exist, specify 80% as the subscription limit.

If you select Enable for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group, do not create a V-VOL exceeding the physical capacity of the pool in order not to monitor the available capacity of the pool.

**Note:**

- For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, the pool subscription limit should be defined as unlimited because in most cases the pool used capacity by the snapshot data is smaller than the used capacity permitted by the pool subscription limit.
- For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, the required pool capacity as a subscription limit is the total capacity of all DP-VOLs and Thin Image pairs. For details about calculating the Thin Image pair capacity for Dynamic Provisioning pools, see the *Hitachi Thin Image User Guide*.

Monitoring total DP-VOL subscription for a pool

You can configure the subscription limit of total DP-VOL capacity to pool capacity. This prevents a new DP-VOL capacity that exceeds the configured subscription limit from being allocated and is associated with the pool. If you specify more than 100% as the subscription limit or the subscription limit is not set, you must monitor the free capacity of the pool because it is possible that writes to the DP-VOLs may exceed pool capacity.

The used value displayed in the cell for Current in the Subscription (%) is truncated after the decimal point of the calculated value. Therefore, the actual percentage of DP-VOL assigned to the pool may be larger than the value displayed in the window. If you create a new DP-VOL of the same size as the existing DP-VOL, the larger capacity which is displayed in the Current cell is necessary.

For example, if 3 GB V-VOL is related to an 11.89 GB pool, the capacity (%) is calculated as follows:

$$((\text{ceiling}(3,072 \text{ (MB)} / 3,145,548 \text{ (MB)}) * 4 \text{ (Pages)} * 42 \text{ (MB)}) + 3,072 \text{ (MB)}) / 12,175.36 \text{ (MB)} * 100 = 26.61\dots(\%)$$

In this case, 26% is displayed in the cell for Current in the Subscription (%). If you create a new V-VOL of the same size as the existing V-VOL, 27% or more remaining capacity is necessary.

Changing pool thresholds

Use this procedure to change the threshold of a pool.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool with the threshold you want to change.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, check **Warning Threshold** and **Depletion Threshold**.
6. Type the threshold values in the text box.
The threshold value can be within the range of values indicated below the text box (default 70%). The **Depletion Threshold** value must be equal to or greater than the **Warning Threshold** (default 80%).
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing the pool subscription limit

Use this procedure to change the subscription limit of a pool.



Note: If the pool contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, you should set the pool subscription limit to unlimited because the setting of the Subscription Limit for a Thin Image pool is unlimited.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool with the threshold you want to change.

4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, check **Subscription Limit**, and then type the subscription limit percentage.
If the subscription limit is blank, then it is disabled, and any number of DP-VOLs can be created regardless of the pool free capacity.



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, we recommend leaving the Subscription Limit field blank (means unlimited).

6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.



Caution: If you are using a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, you can create a DP-VOL with a capacity larger than the pool capacity and writing is assured even if the subscription limit is defined to 100% or less. In this case, the free area of the pool must be monitored.

The pool subscription limit is not a requirement for monitoring the free area of the pool, but if you want to specify the pool subscription limit, specify a value lower than the value calculated by the following formula:

$$100\% \times (\text{Pool physical capacity} \div \text{Pool capacity})$$

If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, do not create a V-VOL exceeding the physical capacity of the pool in order not to monitor the available capacity of the pool.

7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Controlling Thin Image pair behavior in a Dynamic Provisioning pool

Use this procedure to control whether Thin Image pairs are suspended when the free capacity of a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data is depleted.

The Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded option enables you to stop Thin Image pair copy operations in a Dynamic Provisioning pool and prioritize the writing process to DP-VOLs when the free capacity of the pool is depleted. When this option is enabled and the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output. After this SIM code is output, if you split a Thin Image pair in the depleted pool, the operation fails and the pair is suspended by error (PSUE). You can restore the suspended Thin Image pairs when the pool used capacity has decreased below the depletion threshold and the SIM code has been cleared.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The target pool must be a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** table, select the pool you want to edit, click **More Actions**, and select **Edit Pools**.
4. In the **Edit Pools** window, expand **Options**, and then select **Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded**.
5. Select **Yes** to enable the option, or select **No** to disable the option.
6. Click **Finish**.
7. Check the settings in the **Confirmation** window, and then enter the task name in **Task Name**.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
The task is registered. If you selected **Go to tasks window for status**, the **Tasks** window appears.

Working with SIMs

About SIMs

Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering provide service information messages (SIMs) to report the status of the DP-VOLs and pools. If an event associated with a pool occurs, a SIM and an SNMP trap are reported.

An example of a SIM condition is when the used capacity of a pool reaches or exceeds the Warning Threshold set for the pool. For example, if the Warning Threshold is set to 50% and the used capacity of the pool reaches or exceeds 50%, a SIM and an SNMP trap are reported.

SIMs for HDP/HDT

The following table lists and describes the SIM reference codes associated with Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering operations and provides solutions for the conditions.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
620xxx* (Moderate)	Dynamic Provisioning pool usage level (Used (1%)) exceeded the Warning Threshold	1% to 100% (in 1% increments) Default: 70%	Yes	No	Solutions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool. ▪ Reclaim zero pages to release pages in which zero data are stored.
622xxx (Moderate)	Dynamic Provisioning pool is full	100%	Yes	No	Solutions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool. ▪ Reclaim zero pages to release pages in which zero data are stored. ▪ Remove all unnecessary Thin Image pairs that are associated with the primary volume.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
					The Protect attribute of Data Retention Utility might have been set to the DP-VOLs. After performing above solutions, release the Protect attribute of the DP-VOLs.
623xxx (Moderate)	Error occurred in the Dynamic Provisioning pool	Not applicable	Yes	Yes	Contact customer support.
624000 (Moderate)	No space in the shared memory	Not applicable	Yes	Yes	Solutions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remove pools that are not used. ▪ Remove DP-VOLs that are not used. ▪ Remove all unnecessary Thin Image pairs that are associated with the primary volume. ▪ Shrink the pool capacities.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
625000 (Moderate)	Dynamic Provisioning pool usage level (Used (1%)) continues to exceed the highest pool threshold. SOM 734 must be enabled.	Highest pool threshold of Dynamic Provisioning	Yes	No	<p>Solutions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool. ▪ Reclaim zero pages to release pages in which zero data are stored. ▪ Remove all unnecessary Thin Image pairs that are associated with the primary volume.
626xxx (Moderate)	Dynamic Provisioning Pool usage level (Used (1%)) exceeded the Depletion Threshold	1% to 100% (in 1% increments) Default: 80%	Yes	No	<p>Solutions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool. ▪ Reclaim zero pages to release pages in which zero data are stored. ▪ Remove all unnecessary Thin Image pairs that are associated with the primary volume.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
627xxx (Moderate)	Pool-VOL is blocked	Not applicable	Yes	Yes	Contact customer support.
628000 (Service)	Protect attribute of Data Retention Utility is set	Not applicable	Yes	Yes	<p>Solutions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add pool-VOLs to the pool to increase the free space in the pool. ▪ Reclaim zero pages to release pages in which zero data are stored. ▪ Contact customer support to restore the pool-VOL. ▪ If the blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, verify the status of the path blockade and the external storage system. <p>After performing the above solutions, release the Protect attribute (Data Retention Utility) of the DP-VOL.</p>

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
629xxx (Moderate)	In the Dynamic Provisioning pool, the used capacity reserved for writing exceeded the Warning Threshold. This SIM is reported if the Dynamic Provisioning pool contains one or more LDEVs in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.	1% to 100% (in 1% increments) Default: 70%	Yes	No	Take corrective actions for this SIM. For details, see Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output (on page 269) .
62Axxx (Moderate)	In the Dynamic Provisioning pool, the capacity reserved for writing is full. This SIM is reported if the Dynamic Provisioning pool contains one or more LDEVs in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.	100%	Yes	No	Take corrective actions for this SIM. For details, see Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output (on page 269) .

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
62B000 (Moderate)	In the Dynamic Provisioning pool, the used capacity reserved for writing continues to exceed the highest pool threshold. SOM 734 must be enabled. This SIM is reported if the Dynamic Provisioning pool contains one or more LDEVs in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.	Highest pool threshold of Dynamic Provisioning	Yes	No	Take corrective actions for this SIM. For details, see Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output (on page 269) .
62Cxxx (Moderate)	In the Dynamic Provisioning pool, the used capacity reserved for writing exceeded the Depletion Threshold.	1% to 100% (in 1% increments) Default: 80%	Yes	No	Take corrective actions for this SIM. For details, see Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output (on page 269) .

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
	This SIM is reported if the Dynamic Provisioning pool contains one or more LDEVs in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.				
62Dxxx (Moderate)	<p>In the Dynamic Provisioning pool, the used capacity reserved for writing exceeded the Prefixed Depletion Threshold.</p> <p>This SIM is reported if the Dynamic Provisioning pool contains one or more LDEVs in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.</p>	90%	Yes	No	Take corrective actions for this SIM. For details, see Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output (on page 269) .

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
62Exxx	Dynamic Provisioning pool usage level exceeded the depletion threshold. This SIM is output when the pool option "Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded" is enabled.	Depletion threshold	Yes	No	Solution: Resolve the cause of SIM 626xxx (depletion threshold exceeded), and then delete snapshot data and create the pair again for the Thin Image pair whose pair status is PSUE.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
631001 (Moderate)	Pool-VOLs cannot be added automatically to a pool because the maximum number of cache management devices are created.	No	Yes	No	<p>Verify LDEV IDs that are not used, and then perform the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If no more LDEV IDs are available, delete LDEVs that are not being used. Alternatively, perform the corrective action for when the pool auto-expansion function for an accelerated compression-enabled parity group does not operate (see Troubleshooting Dynamic Provisioning (on page 386)). 2. After performing step 1, if this SIM is reported, contact customer support.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
631002 (Moderate)	Pool-VOLs cannot be added to a pool because the maintenance work is underway for a while.	No	Yes	No	Verify that this SIM is not reported after performing the maintenance work. Or if this SIM is reported even though the maintenance work is not performed, contact customer support.
632xxx (Moderate) xxx = hexadecimal pool number	The automatic pool volume adding processing does not perform. The pool might be in the status that the automatic pool volume adding processing cannot be performed. This SIM appears for a DP pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups.	None	Yes	Yes	Contact customer support.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
634xxx (Moderate) xxx = hexadecimal pool number	The automatic pool volume adding processing does not perform because the maximum number of LDEV IDs are used. This SIM appears when the DP pool contains an LDEV belonging to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group.	None	Yes	No	Add an LDEV ID to the resource group of the pool volume in the pool for which this SIM was reported. You can check resource groups of pool volumes in the Pools: Volume tabs.
641xxx (Service)	In the Dynamic Tiering pool, the tier relocation operation is suspended by the system. This SIM can be displayed if "Notify an alert when tier relocation is suspended by system" is enabled on the "Edit Advanced System Settings" window.	Not applicable	Yes	No	Determine why the tier relocation was suspended.

SIM code (SIM level)	Event	Thresholds or values	Types of reports		Solutions
			Sent to host?	Sent to maintenance personnel ?	
* xxx = hexadecimal pool number					

Actions to take when SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx is output

When certain SIM codes are output for Dynamic Provisioning pools, check FMD parity group and accelerated compression settings.

For Dynamic Provisioning pools for which SIM code 629xxx, 62Axxx, 62B000, 62Cxxx, or 62Dxxx was output, verify the following:

- Settings for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group
- Accelerated compression settings of the parity groups used for a Dynamic Provisioning pool

When both the above settings are enabled:

1. Check if other SIMs are output that require intervention of service personnel.
If they are output, contact customer support.
2. Check if SIM code 631xxx or 634xxx is output.
If it is output, take the corrective actions for the SIM.
3. Check the used pool capacity.
 - a. If the used pool capacity is less than the warning or depletion threshold, the corrective action was taken correctly.
 - b. If the used pool capacity does not go below the warning or depletion threshold in 30 minutes after you take the corrective actions, estimate the pool capacity you need to add, and then purchase the FMD capacity.

When either or both of the above settings are disabled:

Estimate the pool capacity you need to add, and then purchase the FMD capacity.

Automatic completion of a SIM

Some SIMs are completed automatically when you resolve the problem that caused the SIM. SOM 734 must be enabled for automatic completion of a SIM. Automatic completion of a SIM removes it from the system with no additional manual intervention. After the SIM is automatically completed, the status of the SIM changes to Completed.

The following SIMs are automatically completed when you resolve the problem causing the SIM:

- SIMs 620xxx, 625000, 626xxx, 629xxx, 62B000, 62Dxxx, and 641xxx are automatically completed if you increase pool capacity by adding pool-VOLs because increasing pool capacity removes the condition that caused the SIM.
- The following SIMs are automatically completed in the following cases:
 - SIM 620xxx
If the usage level (Used (%)) of DP pool number xxx falls below the warning threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 625000
If the usage level (Used (%)) of each DP pool in all pools of the storage system falls below the depletion threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 626xxx
If the usage level (Used (%)) of DP pool number xxx falls below the warning threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 629xxx
If the physical capacity (Used (%)) of DP pool number xxx falls below the warning threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 62B000
If the physical capacity (Used (%)) of each DP pool in all pools of the storage system falls below the depletion threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 62Cxxx
If the physical capacity (Used (%)) of each DP pool in all pools of the storage system falls below the depletion threshold, SIM is automatically completed.
 - SIM 62Dxxx
If the physical capacity (Used (%)) of DP pool number xxx falls below the prefixed depletion threshold which is fixed with 90 %, SIM is automatically completed.

Manually completing a SIM

Some SIMs associated with pools must be manually completed to clear them from the system. After the condition that caused the SIM is resolved, you can manually complete the SIM. After manually completing a SIM, the status of the SIM changes to Completed. If you complete the SIM before the cause is resolved, the SIM may reoccur.

Before you begin

- Perform the troubleshooting associated with the issued SIM to resolve the condition that caused the SIM.
- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, click **More Actions > Complete SIMs**.
4. In **Task Name**, you can enter a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
5. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.
To check whether a SIM completed successfully, click **Alert** in the Device Manager - Storage Navigator main window.

Managing pools and DP-VOLs

Observe the following cautions when working with pools.



Caution:

- In one pool, if you need to perform two or more operations to edit several items, wait until the first task has been applied before performing the next task. If the next task is performed while the first task is being applied, the first task is canceled and the next task is applied to the storage system.
- If you modified pool parameters by using Command Control Interface and then use Device Manager - Storage Navigator, click File > Refresh All to display the latest pool information before performing the next operation by using Device Manager - Storage Navigator. If you use Device Manager - Storage Navigator without refreshing the windows, the information updated by Command Control Interface might not yet be displayed on the Device Manager - Storage Navigator windows, so if you perform an operation the result might be different from what you expect.

Viewing pool information

Use this procedure to view pool information.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
The **Pools** window displays information about all of the pools in the storage system.

Pools Last Updated : 2015/01/09 11:30

Storage[S/N:1] > Pools

Edit Tiering Policies

		DP	Mainframe DP	TI
Pool Capacity	Used/Total	0.00 MB / 49.25 GB [0 %]	0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]	0.00 MB / 105.86 GB [0 %]
	Estimated Configurable	56.36 TB	1023.80 TB	1126.24 TB
V-VOL Capacity	Allocated/Total	0.00 MB / 1.05 GB [0 %]	0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]	-
	Estimated Configurable	56.41 TB	1023.80 TB	-
Licensed Capacity (Used/Licensed)		0.00 MB / Unlimited	0.00 MB / Unlimited	0.00 MB / Unlimited
Number of Pools		6 (Max Allowed: 128)		

Pools

Create Pools Create LDEVs Expand Pool More Actions Selected: 0 of 6

Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings Options 1 / 1

Pool Name	Status	Number of Pool VOLS	Number of V-VOLs	Number of Root VOLS	RAID Level	Capacity			
						Total	Reserved	Used	Used (%)
HDP	Normal	1	0	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
HDT	Normal	1	2	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
HISQL	Normal	1	0	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
TI	Normal	2	-	0	5(3D+1P)	105.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
sigokak...	Normal	2	0	-	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
sigokak...	Normal	2	0	-	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0

- To view details about a specific pool, expand **Pools**, and then select the desired pool.

TestPool9_Yes(9) Last Updated : 2017/02/27 16:30

VSP G1000/G1500 and VSP F1500(S/N:2... > Pools > TestPool9_Yes(9)

Status	Normal	Tier Management	-
Pool Name (ID)	TestPool9_Yes(9)	Cycle Time	-
Pool VOL with System Area (N...	00:00:11()	Monitoring Period	-
Pool Type	DP	Monitoring Mode	-
RAID Level	5(3D+1P)	Monitoring Status	-
Drive Type/RPM	SAS/10k	Recent Monitor Data	-
Encryption	Disabled	Pool Management Task	-
Cache Mode	-	Relocation Result	-
Deduplication	Not Available	Relocation Speed	-
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	No		
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	No		
Number of Pool VOLS	1 (Max Allowed: 1024)		
Number of V-VOLs	0 (Max Allowed: 63232)		
Number of Root VOLS	0		
Pool Capacity (Used/Total)	0.00 MB / 5.86 GB [0 %]		
Physical Pool Capacity (Used/Total)	- / - [- %]		
Saving Effect	0 % (0.00 MB)		
V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)	0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]		
Snapshot Used Capacity	0.00 MB [0 %]		
Subpartition (Current/Limit)	0 % / Unlimited		

Pool Volumes Virtual Volumes TI Root Volumes

Expand Pool Shrink Pool Stop Shrinking Pools More Actions Selected: 0 of 1

Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings Options 1 / 1

	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Status	Parity Group ID	Capacity		RAID Level	Emulation Type
					Usable	Mapped		
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:11		Normal	1-4	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V CVS

Viewing the capacity information for a pool

Use this procedure to view the capacity information for a specific pool.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.

For details about the capacity information displayed in the Pools window, see [Pools window \(on page 517\)](#).

Viewing formatted percentages for pool capacity

Use this procedure to view the formatted pool capacity.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool with the free pool capacity you want to check.
4. Click **More Actions** to select **View Pool Management Status**.
The **View Pool Management Status** window appears.

Reasons to check pool capacity

The following are cases in which the free space of the pool is not formatted. In these cases, the free space of the pool may not increase:

- Pools other than the selected pool are being formatted.
- The pool usage level reaches the warning threshold or the depletion threshold.
- The selected pool is blocked.
- I/O loads to the storage system are high.
- The cache memory is blocked.
- Pool-VOLs in the selected pool are blocked.
- Pool-VOLs that are external volumes in the selected pool are blocked.
- Correction access executes to the pool-VOL in the selected pool.



Note: The following are cases in which the formatted percentages for pool capacity may decrease:

- New pages are being allocated.
- LDEV format is being performed on the pool-VOL.
- Correction copy is being executed.

Viewing the progress of rebalancing the usage level among parity groups

Use this procedure to view the progress of rebalancing the usage level among parity groups of a pool.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool with you want to check the progress of rebalancing the usage level among parity groups.
4. Click **More Actions** to select **View Pool Management Status**.

The **View Pool Management Status** window appears.



Note: The following are cases in which the progress ratio may not increase:

- The usage level is being rebalanced among the parity groups in pools other than the selected pool.
- Tier relocation is performed.

Estimating the required capacity of pool-VOLs with system area in a pool with data direct mapping enabled

If you want to expand a pool for which data direct mapping is enabled, you must free up space in the pool. Make sure that the estimated capacity of free space is available before expanding the pool.

Use the following mathematical formulas to estimate the capacity of free space required in the pool:

- Formula 1:

```
Required-free-space-for-a-pool-to-be-added-of-one-external-volume-of-the-  
data-direct-mapping-attribute [in MB] = (ceiling (pool-VOL-capacity [in  
MB] / 3,145,548 MB) * 4 pages * 42 MB) + ( ceiling (pool-VOL-capacity  
[in MB] / 42 MB) - floor (pool-VOL-capacity [in MB] / 42 MB) ) * 42MB
```

- Formula 2:

```
Required-capacity-of-pool-VOL-with-system-area-in-one-pool-of-a-data-  
direct-mapping-attribute [in MB] = Total-of-calculated-values-by-the-  
Formula-1-for-each-volume + Management area (4200) [in MB] + 42 [in MB]
```

where

- ceiling: The value enclosed in ceiling() must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.
- floor: The value enclosed in floor() must be rounded down to the nearest whole number.



Note:

A DP-VOL with data direct mapping attribute uses the following capacities:

- Mapped capacity uses multiple of 42 MB in the capacity of the pool volume as well as the capacity for one page (the area of the capacity other than multiples of 42 MB).
- Control information (168 MB is used per 3,145,548 MB)

The pool-VOL with the system area contains the one page capacity and control information.

Expanding a pool

To expand a pool (that is, increase the capacity of the pool), you add pool-VOLs to the pool.

**Note:**

- You cannot expand a pool while the pool is being shrunk.
- When you add pool volumes to a Dynamic Tiering pool, tier relocation activities that are in process are stopped.
- When you add pool volumes with available monitoring information to a Dynamic Tiering pool, tier relocation is performed. When you add pool volumes without available monitoring information to a pool, the page usage rate is averaged in the tier.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool you want to expand. You can expand only one pool at a time.
4. Click **Expand Pool**.
5. In the **Expand Pool** window, select the pool-VOL.
 - a. Click **Select Pool VOLs**.
 - b. In the **Select Pool VOLs** window, from the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the pool-VOLs you want to assign, and then click **Add**.

The selected pool-VOLs are registered in the **Selected Pool Volumes** table.

Up to 1024 volumes can be added including the volumes already in the pool. You can use the **Filter option** to choose volumes by parameter.



Caution: For details about adding of LDEVs carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, see [Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled \(on page 407\)](#).



Note: If necessary, perform the following steps:

- From **Filter option**, select **ON** to filter the rows.
- Click **Select All Pages** to select pool-VOLs in the table. To cancel the selection, click **Select All Pages** again.
- Click **Options** to specify the unit of volumes or the number of rows to be viewed.
- To set the tier rank of an external volume to a value other than **Middle**, select a tier rank from **External LDEV Tier Rank**, then click **Add**.
- For a pool, you can add volumes whose **Drive Type/RPM** settings are the same and whose RAID Levels are different. For example, you can add the following volumes to the same pool:
 Volume whose **Drive Type/RPM** is SAS/15K and whose **RAID Level** is 5 (3D+1P)
 Volume whose **Drive Type/RPM** is SAS/15K and whose **RAID Level** is 5 (7D+1P)
- When assigning a pool with DP-VOL enabled with full allocation, LDEVs cannot be added in the parity group with accelerated compression enabled.

c. Click **OK**.

The **Select Pool VOLs** window closes. The number of the selected pool volumes appears in **Total Selected Pool Volumes**, and the total capacity of the selected pool-VOL appears in **Total Selected Capacity**.

6. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

8. Click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing a pool name

Use this procedure to change a pool name.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool with the name you want to change.

4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, in **Pool Name**, specify a name for this pool.
 - a. In **Prefix**, type the characters that will become the fixed characters for the beginning of the pool name. The characters are case-sensitive.
 - b. In **Initial Number**, type the initial number that will follow the prefix name.
6. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Setting the pool auto expansion function

When the pool auto expansion function (also called the automatically adding pool volumes function) is enabled on a pool, pool volumes are automatically added to the pool when the available space in the pool becomes insufficient. In addition, pool volumes are created automatically as needed. The pool auto expansion function can be enabled only on pools comprised of pool volumes from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Verify that the pool type is one of the following:
 - Dynamic Provisioning
 - Dynamic Tiering (Enable is selected for Multi-Tier Pool)
 - active flash (active flash is selected)
 - Thin Image

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, select the pool for which you want to change the pool auto expansion setting.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit Pools**.
- 5.
6. Select the **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group** checkbox, and then select **Enable** or **Disable**.



Note: If you select **Enable** for **Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group**, you should leave the **Subscription Limit** field blank (means unlimited).

7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window is displayed.
8. In **Task Name**, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Enabling deduplication on an existing pool

When you enable deduplication on a pool, the deduplication system data volume (DSD volume) for the pool is created. You must enable deduplication on a pool before you can enable deduplication on DP-VOLs assigned to the pool.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The dedupe and compression license must be installed.
- A sufficient number of cache management devices must be available to create the deduplication system data volume. Each deduplication system data volume uses 14 cache management devices.
- The status of the pool must be Normal.
- Data Direct Mapping must be disabled.
- A sufficient number of LDEV IDs must be available.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** table, select the pool for which you want to change the deduplication setting.
4. Click **More Actions**, and select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, click **Assign Deduplication System Data Volume** and then select **Yes**.
6. If you want to edit the assigned deduplication system data volume, click **Edit Deduplication System Data Volume**.
The **Edit Deduplication System Data Volume** window opens.
7. If you want to change the deduplication system data volume options, click **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options**. In the **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options** window:

- a. If you want to change the LDEV name or LDEV ID of a deduplication system data volume, select the volume, and then click **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options**.
 To change the LDEV name, specify the prefix characters and the initial number for the selected LDEV, and then click **OK**.
 To change the Initial LDEV ID, specify the number of LDKC, CU, LDEV, and Interval, and then click **OK**. To confirm the used LDEV IDs, click **View LDEV IDs**.
 - b. If you want to change the SSID of a deduplication system data volume, select the volume, and then click **Edit SSID**. The **Edit SSIDs** window opens and displays the defined SSIDs and SSIDs to be added.
 To change an SSID, select the SSID, click **Change SSIDs**, specify the initial SSID, and then click **OK**.
 - c. When you are done changing the deduplication system data volume options, click **OK** in the **Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options** window.
8. Click **Finish** in the **Edit Pools** window.
 The **Confirm** window opens.
 9. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
 You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
 10. Click **Apply**.
 If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Disabling deduplication on a pool

Use this procedure to disable the deduplication function on a pool.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- DP-VOLs with Deduplication and Compression enabled must not be assigned to the target pool.
- For the target pool, the value of Saving Effect > Deduplication (%) must be 0%.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** table, select the pool for which you want to change the deduplication setting.
4. Click **More Actions**, and select **Edit Pools**.
5. In the **Edit Pools** window, click **Assign Deduplication System Data Volume** and then select **No**.
6. Click **Finish**.
 The **Confirm** window appears.

7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Recovering a blocked pool

You can perform failure recovery of a blocked pool. Ordinarily, you should not need to use this procedure. A recovered pool can be used, but the former data is lost.

The recovery time for pools varies depending on pool usage or DP-VOL usage. Allow roughly 20 minutes of recovery time for every 100 TB of pool or DP-VOL usage. Recovery time may vary depending on the workload of the storage system at the time of recovery.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, select the pool to be recovered.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Restore Pools**.
5. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings.
6. Enter a unique **Task Name** or accept the default.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Decreasing pool capacity

When you want to decrease the capacity of, or shrink, a pool, you delete one or more pool volumes (pool-VOLs) from the pool.

About decreasing pool capacity

When you want to decrease the capacity of, or shrink, a pool, you delete one or more pool volumes (pool-VOLs) from the pool. When a pool-VOL is removed from a pool, all of the used pages in the pool-VOL are moved to other pool-VOLs in the pool. If you delete the pool-VOL with the pool's system area, the used capacity and the management area are moved to other pool-VOLs in the pool. A pool must include one or more pool-VOLs.

For a pool to which a DP-VOL with the data direct mapping attribute disabled belongs, if a pool-VOL is released after the pool shrinking, the released pool-VOLs (LDEVs) are blocked. If the pool-VOLs (LDEVs) are blocked, format them before using them. If the blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, use Normal Format when formatting the volume. If the pool-VOL being deleted is an external volume and is disconnected during deletion, reconnect the external volume and then retry deleting the pool-VOL.



Note: You cannot perform the following operations on a pool while the shrink pool operation is in process. Wait until shrinking completes, or stop the shrinking process.

- Expand Pool
- Shrink Pools
- Edit Pools
- Restore Pools

If you delete the pool-VOL with system area, a different system area pool-VOL will be assigned automatically according to the priority shown in the following table. If multiple pool-VOLs of the same drive type exist, the priority of each is determined by internal index of the storage system.

Priority	Data drive type
1	SAS7.2K
2	SAS10K
3	SAS15K
4	SSD or FMD
5	External volume

Notes on shrinking a Dynamic Provisioning pool

You cannot delete a pool-VOL from a Dynamic Provisioning pool under the following conditions:

- If the pool-VOL is deleted, the total of the used pool capacity will exceed the pool depletion threshold.
- If the pool-VOL with system area is deleted, the free space in the pool will be less than 4.2 GB.

- For an active flash pool, when there will be no remaining pool-VOLs from a parity group of SSDs or FMDs.
- In the case that pool-VOLs assigned to the accelerated compression-enabled parity group are deleted, the pool-VOLs cannot be deleted if the used capacity reserved for writing (after the deletion of pool-VOLs) exceeds the threshold due to deleting pool-VOLs.

The used capacity reserved for writing (after deleting pool-VOLs) is calculated as follows:

```
Used capacity reserved for writing (after deleting pool-VOLs) = Used capacity reserved for writing (before deleting pool-VOLs) + Total used capacity of pool-VOLs to be deleted × FMD Compression ratio
```

The used capacity reserved for writing (after deleting pool-VOLs) is larger than the used capacity reserved for writing (before deleting pool-VOLs). Because data stored in pool-VOLs belonging to the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is migrated in the following parity groups due to the shrinking of pool:

- Parity group with accelerated compression is not supported (for example, SAS drives)
- Parity group with accelerated compression is disabled

Notes on shrinking a Dynamic Tiering pool

- You cannot delete a pool-VOL from a Dynamic Tiering pool under the following conditions:
 - If the pool-VOL is deleted, the total of the used pool capacity will exceed the pool depletion threshold.
 - If the pool-VOL with system area is deleted, the free space in the pool will be less than 4.2 GB.
 - For active flash pools, when there will be no pool volume remaining with SSD or FMD drive types if you delete the pool volume.
- When the pool-VOL is deleted, the pages contained in the deleted pool-VOL transfer to another pool-VOL in the same tier. If the used capacity in the tier exceeds Rate of Free Space Newly Allocated to, the overflowing pages transfer to another tier.
- When pool-VOLs in the tier are empty, the appropriate tier is deleted.
- Deleting the pool-VOL stops the tier relocation. The process resumes after the pool-VOL is deleted.

Notes on shrinking a Thin Image pool

You cannot delete a pool-VOL from a Thin Image pool under the following conditions:

- If the pool-VOL is deleted, the used capacity of the pool will exceed the pool threshold.
- If the pool-VOL with system area is deleted, the free space in the pool will be less than 4.2 GB.

Shrinking a pool

Use this procedure to shrink (decrease the capacity of) a pool. To shrink a pool, you remove the specified pool volumes from the pool. You can shrink up to eight pools at the same time.

**Note:**

- You cannot shrink a pool when any of the following operations is in process in the target pool:
 - When the pool is being created or deleted
 - When the pool capacity is being increased or decreased
 - When the pool is being recovered
 - When the Shrink Pool operation is being stopped
 - When the threshold is being changed
 - When zero pages are being reclaimed
 - When DP-VOLs are being created
 - When DP-VOL capacity is being increased
- If you shrink a pool soon after creating or expanding the pool, the shrink pool operation might take a while to complete.
- If the shrink pool operation is already in progress on a pool, do not issue a CCI command to the same pool to decrease the capacity of the pool.
- If the pool volumes being removed belong to a parity group that supports accelerated compression, the shrink pool operation takes more time because the unallocated area is formatted and the pages are reclaimed.
- If you shrink a pool by removing a pool volume assigned to a parity group for which accelerated compression is enabled (using HDvM - SN or CCI), the pool auto expansion function is disabled for the parity group containing the pool volume that was removed.
- When you remove a pool volume belonging to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group from a pool, the Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group setting for the parity group to which the specified pool volume belongs is set to Disable. In this case, while the pool is shrinking, the pool auto expansion function stops. When all pool volumes belonging to this parity group have been removed by the shrink pool operation, the pool auto expansion function resumes automatically.

After the shrink pool operation is complete, if you want to enable the pool auto expansion function in the parity group that contains the pool volumes that were removed, first disable accelerated compression on the pool and then re-enable accelerated compression on the pool.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**, and then select the pool that you want to shrink.
3. On the **Pool volumes** tab, select the pool-VOL to be removed.
You can delete the pool-VOL when **Yes** is displayed in the **Shrinkable** column.
4. Click **Shrink Pool**.
5. In **Task Name**, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
6. In **Estimated Result of Shrinking**, review the details of **Before Shrinking** and **After Shrinking**, including the total pool capacity, the used pool capacity, and the free pool capacity.
7. If the estimated result of shrinking is acceptable, click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Stopping the decrease of pool capacity

Use this procedure to stop the decrease of pool capacity.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools**, select the pool with the capacity you want to stop decreasing.
4. Click **Stop Shrinking Pools**.
5. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Deleting a tier in a pool

You must delete all the pool-VOLs in the tier to be deleted. When pool-VOLs in the tier are empty, the appropriate tier is deleted.

If you delete a pool, its pool-VOLs (LDEVs) will be blocked. If they are blocked, format them before using them.

You cannot delete the pool-VOL when:

- Creating the pool.
- Deleting the pool.
- Increasing the pool capacity.
- Decreasing the pool capacity.
- Restoring the pool.
- Stopping decreasing the pool capacity.
- Changing the threshold.
- Initializing the pool capacity.
- Changing the external LDEV tier rank.

Notes on deleting a tier in a pool

You cannot delete a pool-VOL under these conditions.

- The used capacity of the pool-VOL would exceed the pool threshold if the pool-VOL were deleted.
- The subscription rate of the total V-VOL capacity including the control information would exceed the subscription limit if the pool-VOL were deleted. For details about the formula used to calculate the required pages for one DP-VOL including the control information, see [Pool subscription limit \(on page 253\)](#).
- The pool-VOL with system area has less than 4.2 GB of free space. There must be 4.2 GB of free space in the pool in order to delete the pool-VOL with system area.

Deleting the pool-VOL stops the tier relocation. The process resumes after the pool-VOL is deleted.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. Select the pool that contains the pool-VOLs to be deleted.
4. Select the **Pool volumes** tab and select all the pool-VOLs contained in the tier to be deleted.

You cannot delete a pool-VOL unless **Shrinkable** has been applied.

5. Click **Shrink Pool**.
6. In the **Shrink Pool** window, verify the changes.
The details of **Before Shrinking** and **After Shrinking**, including the pool capacity, the used pool capacity and the free pool capacity, appears in **Prediction of Shrinking**.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.

8. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Deleting a pool

Use this procedure to delete a pool.

For a pool that contains a DP-VOL with a disabled data direct mapping attribute, if pool-VOLs are released after the pool shrinking, the released pool-VOLs (LDEVs) will be blocked.

You can delete a pool only after all of the DP-VOLs have been deleted.



Caution: When you delete a pool, its pool-VOLs (LDEVs) are blocked. Blocked volumes must be formatted before use. If a blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, select Normal Format when formatting the volume.

If you use Storage Navigator to decrease the pool capacity of a pool that is comprised of pool volumes that are assigned by parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, then you must delete any pool volumes that do not comprise the pool.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- No DP-VOLs must be associated with the target pool.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, select the pool to be deleted.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Delete Pools**.
The **Delete Pools** window opens.
5. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window opens.
To continue with the shredding operation and delete volume data, click **Next**. For details about the shredding operation, see the *Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide*.
If the pool is blocked, you might not be able to perform shredding operations.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing the tier rank of an external pool-VOL

Use this procedure to change the tier rank of an external pool-VOL.



Note: When the pool-VOLs of a pool are empty, the appropriate tier is deleted.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Expand **Pools**, and then select the pool that contains the external pool-VOL whose tier rank you want to change.
3. In the **Pool volumes** table, select the external pool-VOL whose tier rank you want to change.

External pool-VOLs are indicated by **External Volume** in the **Drive Type/RPM** column.

4. Click **More Actions** > **Edit External LDEV Tier Rank**.
5. In the **Edit External LDEV Tier Rank**, select the external pool-VOL.
6. Click **Change**, and then select the desired tier rank (High, Middle, or Low).
7. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

8. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Requirements for increasing DP-VOL capacity

You can increase the capacity of a DP-VOL up to 256 TB.

To notify the host that the DP-VOL capacity has been increased, make sure host mode option 40 is enabled. Processing differs as follows, depending on the value of host mode option 40:

- When host mode option 40 is not enabled, the host will not be notified that the DP-VOL capacity has been increased. Therefore, the DP-VOL data has to be read again by the host after the capacity is increased.
- When host mode option 40 is enabled, the host is notified that the DP-VOL capacity has increased. If the operating system cannot recognize the value of capacity that was increased, the DP-VOL data has to be read again by your storage system.

The following requirements are important when increasing the DP-VOL capacity:

- The DP-VOL to be increased is not shared with a software product that does not allow increasing the volume capacity (see [Increasing DP-VOL capacity \(on page 290\)](#)).
- The DP-VOL is not undergoing LDEV formatting.
- The DP-VOL does not have data direct mapping enabled.
- The DP-VOL is not a deduplication system data volume.
- The capacity to be added to the DP-VOL must be specified within the range indicated below LDEV Capacity in the **Expand V-VOLs** window.
- The pool related to the DP-VOLs to be increased is in any one of the following statuses:
 - Normal
 - Exceeding the subscription limit threshold
 - In progress of pool capacity shrinking



Caution: When increasing DP-VOL capacity, do not perform the following operations. When you perform these operations, do not increase DP-VOL capacity.

- Operations using Virtual LUN
- Operations using Cache Residency Manager
- Creating DP-VOLs
- Restoring pools
- Deleting DP-VOLs
- Operations to increase the DP-VOL capacity in another instance of CCI
- Maintenance of your storage system

After increasing DP-VOL capacity, refresh the display and confirm that the DP-VOL is increased. If the DP-VOL capacity is not increased, wait a while, refresh the display again, and confirm that the DP-VOL is increased. If you perform an operation without making sure that the DP-VOL is increased, operations from Device Manager - Storage Navigator may fail.

If one of the following operations is being performed, the DP-VOL capacity might not be increased:

- Volume Migration
- Configuration change of journal used by Universal Replicator
- Quick Restore by ShadowImage

Increasing DP-VOL capacity

Use this procedure to increase the capacity of a DP-VOL.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. Select the pool associated with the DP-VOL that has the capacity that you want to increase.
4. Select the **Virtual Volumes** tab.
5. From the table, select the DP-VOL with the capacity you want to increase.
6. Click **Expand V-VOLs**.
The **Expand V-VOLs** window opens. If the DP-VOL is selected from the **LDEV** table in the **Logical Devices** window, click **More Actions**, and then click **Expand V-VOLs**.
7. Select **Specify total capacity** or **Specify additional capacity**.
8. If you want to offset the specified LDEV capacity by boundary, change the default **Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)** from **OFF** to **ON**.
9. In **Capacity**, type the capacity amount.
Enter the LDEV capacity to two decimal places within the range of values indicated below the text box.
10. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
11. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
12. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing the name of a DP-VOL

Use this procedure to change the name of a DP-VOL.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. In the **Pools** window, click the link of the **Pool Name** associated with the DP-VOL you want to rename.
4. Select the **Virtual Volumes** tab, click **More Actions**, and then **Edit LDEVs**.
5. Check **LDEV Name** and change the LDEV name, if necessary.

- a. In **Prefix**, type the characters that will become the fixed characters for the beginning of the LDEV name. The characters are case-sensitive.
 - b. In **Initial Number**, type the initial number that will follow the prefix name.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
 7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
 8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

About releasing pages in a DP-VOL

Releasing pages in a DP-VOL frees up pool capacity. When a page in the DP-VOL contains zero data, the free capacity of a pool increases after the pages are released. You can reclaim zero pages on each V-VOL and then monitor the progress on the View Pool Management Status window. If you stop the reclaim zero pages operation, the zero pages that have already been reclaimed cannot be restored.

Logically, there is no difference between a page with zero data and the area of a DP-VOL without a page allotted. Both are effectively identical. However, a page with zero data uses pool capacity, whereas a DP-VOL without a page allotted does not use pool capacity.

Zero pages can be reclaimed when all the following conditions are satisfied:

- The DP-VOL is not used in conjunction with another storage system software product that does not support reclaiming zero pages.

See [Using Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering with other software products \(on page 132\)](#).

- LDEV formatting is not being performed on the DP-VOL.
- The DP-VOL is not blocked.
- The DP-VOL does not have the data direct mapping attribute enabled.
- The DP-VOL is not a deduplication system data volume.
- The DP-VOL is associated with a pool.
- The pool associated with the DP-VOL is not blocked, or is full and blocked.
- The LUN path is not defined between DP-VOL and the host group enabled with host mode option 97.

Pages that include control cylinders are not processed when releasing pages in a DP-VOL.

Pages that include file system metadata cannot be reclaimed. Refer to [Operating system and file system capacity \(on page 130\)](#) for a table of the Pool Capacity Consumed by the file system.

While releasing pages from a DP-VOL, performance of the host I/O to the DP-VOL may temporarily decrease due to scanning for non-zero data.

If you stop an operation to reclaim zero pages in mid-stream, the pages that have been released will remain as free pool capacity.

After an operation to reclaim zero pages, Dynamic Provisioning automatically balances usage levels among parity groups in the pool. This rebalancing is performed on parity groups related to the pool. If you do not want automatic balancing of the usage levels of parity groups, call the customer support to change your configuration.



Note: If an operation to reclaim zero pages performs on pools comprised of pool volumes assigned by parity groups with accelerated compression enabled, the used capacity of pool may not be reduced in comparison with the reduced DP-VOLs capacity.

Dynamic Provisioning does not automatically balance the usage levels among parity groups if the cache memory is not redundant or if the pool usage reaches the threshold.

If all the tracks that belong to a page assigned to a DP-VOL have no records written, you can reclaim the page and return it to the pool's available capacity.



Caution:

In the following cases, an operation of the reclaim zero pages stops and DP-VOL pages might not be released.

- The pool-VOL accessed by the target DP-VOL is blocked.
- The pool associated with the target DP-VOL is blocked while the operation to reclaim zero pages is in progress.
- Cache memory failure occurs while the operation to reclaim zero pages is in progress.
- While the operation to reclaim zero pages is in progress, the initial copy operation of the TrueCopy pair, the Universal Replicator pair, the global-active device pair, or the ShadowImage pair is performed on the DP-VOL.
- The LUN path is defined between DP-VOL and the host group enabled with host mode option 97 while the operation to reclaim zero pages is in progress.

Releasing pages in a DP-VOL

You can reclaim pages in a DP-VOL to free pool capacity. If a page assigned to a DP-VOL contains only zero binary data, you can reclaim the page by performing the operation to release zero pages. Reclaiming the page decreases the used capacity of the pool. Before releasing pages in a DP-VOL, see [About releasing pages in a DP-VOL \(on page 292\)](#). If the operation to release zero pages is performed on V-VOLs enabled for full allocation, the used capacity of the pool is not changed before the operation to release zero pages is performed.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the table, select the **LDEV ID** of the volume with the pages you want to release.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Reclaim Zero Pages**.

The **Reclaim Zero Pages** window opens.

You cannot release pages in a DP-VOL when the DP-VOL is not in a normal status or the DP-VOL is in the process of reclaiming zero pages.

5. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

After the operation to reclaim zero pages is complete, refresh the display to update the **Page Status**. If the **Page Status** is not immediately updated, wait a while, then refresh the display again.



Note: Completed is displayed as the **Page Status** even when no pages can be reclaimed.

If you have started the reclaiming zero pages operation, and the storage system is powered off the reclaiming zero pages operation will not automatically continue after the storage system restarts.

In any of the following cases, the reclaiming zero pages will stop, and DP-VOL pages will not be released:

- LDEV formatting was performed while reclaiming zero pages.
- The pool-VOL that is being accessed by the target DP-VOL was blocked.
- The pool associated with the target DP-VOL was blocked while reclaiming zero pages.
- Cache memory failure occurred while reclaiming zero pages.
- The DP-VOL was deleted when zero pages were reclaimed.
- The initial copy operation between the TrueCopy pair or the Universal Replicator pair was performed on the DP-VOL in which zero pages were being reclaimed.

Stopping the release of pages in a DP-VOL

Use this procedure to stop the release of pages in a DP-VOL.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. Select the pool associated with the DP-VOL with pages you want to stop from being released.
4. Select the **Virtual Volumes** tab.
5. From the table, select the DP-VOL with pages you want to stop from being released.
6. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages**.

The **Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages** window opens.

You cannot stop releasing the pages in a DP-VOL in which zero pages are not being reclaimed.

7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

9. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing full allocation settings in DP-VOLs

Use the following procedure to change full allocation settings in DP-VOLs.



Caution: This operation cannot be performed on the following types of DP-VOLs:

- Deduplication system data volumes
- DP-VOLs with a capacity saving function enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, click the link of the **Pool Name** associated with the volume that has settings that you want to change.
4. Select the **Virtual Volumes** tab, click **More Actions**, then **Edit LDEVs**.

The **Edit LDEVs** window opens.

5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, check **Full Allocation** and select **Enable** or **Disable**.
 - **Enable:** All pages of a DP-VOL are allocated to the current pool.
 - **Disable:** All pages of a DP-VOL might not be allocated to the current pool.



Tip: If the pool of DP-VOL contains an LDEV enabled with accelerated compression in the parity group, the item of **Enable** is inactive.

6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Enabling or disabling tier relocation of a DP-VOL

You can enable or disable tier relocation of individual DP-VOLs or on all DP-VOLs.

DP-VOLs on which tier relocation is disabled are excluded from the targets for the tier range calculation, and are not reflected in the performance information of pools. If tier relocation is disabled on all DP-VOLs in a pool, performance information of a pool is unavailable in the **View Tier Properties** window.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, click the link of the **Pool Name** associated with the DP-VOL you want to rename.
4. Click the **Virtual Volumes** tab, select an LDEV ID, click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit LDEVs**.
5. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, check **tier relocation** and select **Enable** or **Disable**.
Enable allows tier relocation to be performed to the DP-VOL.
Disable does not allow tier relocation to be performed on the DP-VOL in the case of both automatic and manual tier relocation.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

8. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Enabling capacity saving on DP-VOLs

Use this procedure to enable the capacity saving function (compression, or deduplication and compression) on an existing DP-VOL. If the DP-VOL is in a Dynamic Tiering pool, you cannot enable the capacity saving function.

Requirements for enabling deduplication on a DP-VOL:

- The dedupe and compression license must be installed.
- The deduplication function must be enabled on the pool.
- The pool must not be blocked.
- A sufficient number of cache management devices must be available.
- The LDEV status of the DP-VOL must be Normal.
- The capacity saving status of the pool must not be Deleting Volume, Failed, or Rehydrating.
- Data Direct Mapping must be disabled.
- Full Allocation must be disabled.
- The DP-VOL must not be used as a Universal Replicator journal volume.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane, select an LDEV ID, and click **Edit LDEVs**.
4. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, click **Capacity Saving**, and then select either **Compression** or **Deduplication and Compression**.



Caution: If you enable **Deduplication and Compression** on a DP-VOL, you will not be able to change the setting from **Deduplication and Compression** to **Compression** later.



Note: If the LDEV status of a deduplication system data volume in the pool is other than Normal, **Deduplication and Compression** cannot be selected. If the first DP-VOLs of which the capacity saving setting is **Deduplication and Compression are created in a pool**, then the deduplication system data volumes are automatically created.

5. Click **Finish**. The **Confirm** window appears.

6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Disabling the capacity saving functions on DP-VOLs

When you disable the capacity saving setting, the used capacity of the pool increases due to the process of expanding the data (rehydration). Do not disable the capacity saving function on DP-VOLs when the pool capacity is depleted.

Use the following formulas to calculate what the used capacity of the pool will be after the expanding process completes:

$$\text{pool-used-capacity-size-after-expanding} = \text{used-pool-capacity-size} + (\text{used-DP-VOL-capacity} \times \text{saving-ratio-of-the-pool-}[\%])$$

Device Manager - Storage Navigator displays this information as follows:

- *used-pool-capacity-size*: Displayed as Capacity - Used on the Pools window.
- *saving-ratio-of-the-pool-[%]*: Displayed as Pool Saving (Post Process Data) - Saving (%) on the Pools window.
- *used-DP-VOL-capacity*: Displayed as Capacity - Used on the Virtual Volumes tab of each pool window.



Caution:

- The expanding process is suspended when the size of the used capacity of a pool reaches the depletion threshold. If this occurs, you must resolve the causes of the SIM message. When enough pool capacity is ensured, the expanding process will start again.
- If the SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode while the rehydration processing of the capacity-saving-enabled DP-VOLs is in progress, a conflict occurs and the rehydration processing does not complete (Capacity Saving Status remains Rehydrating). In this case, change the SVP or secondary window to View mode.



Note: Disabling the capacity saving setting for DP-VOLs with deduplication and compression enabled might take a while to complete. After the processing to disable the setting has started, it cannot be stopped. I/Os can be received during rehydration (Rehydrating status).

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The status of the pool must be other than Blocked by pool failure.
- The Capacity Saving status must be other than Deleting Volume or Failed.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane, select the desired LDEV ID, and click **Edit LDEVs**.
4. In the **Edit LDEVs** window, click **Capacity Saving**, and select **Disabled**.



Note: If the LDEV status of the deduplication system data volume in the pool is other than Normal, you cannot change the setting from **Deduplication and Compression** to **Disabled**.

5. Click **Finish**. The **Confirm** window appears.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens automatically.

Deleting a DP-VOL

Use this procedure to delete a DP-VOL.

- You cannot delete a deduplication system data volume (DSD volume). The deduplication system data volume for a pool is deleted automatically in either of the following cases:
 - If you delete all DP-VOLs for which the capacity saving setting is Deduplication and Compression in the pool, or if you delete the pool.
 - If you change the capacity saving setting from Deduplication and Compression to Disable for all DP-VOLs in the pool by using the **Edit LDEVs** window.
- You cannot delete a DP-VOL if the status is online.
- If you are deleting a DP-VOL with Deduplication and Compression enabled, you must first disable Deduplication and Compression on the DP-VOL before beginning this procedure.
- If you are deleting DP-VOLs for which capacity saving is set to **Compression**, you can delete the DP-VOLs, or you can block and format the DP-VOLs and then delete them. The total time to delete DP-VOLs for each method is approximately the same.
- Deleting DP-VOLs with deduplication and compression enabled might take a while to complete. Also, the pool usage might increase by the deleting processing. Once the deletion processing starts, it cannot be stopped.
- If you want to delete all DP-VOLs in a pool that have the capacity saving setting enabled, first block all DP-VOLs with the capacity saving enabled and the deduplication system data volume, and then format the deduplication system data volume. This procedure can reduce the DP-VOL format processing time and prevent the increase in pool usage.
- After you delete a DP-VOL for which capacity saving is enabled, if you perform other operations during or just after the DP-VOL deleting processing, those operations might fail. If this occurs, wait for a while, and then retry those operations.
- The LDEV deleting process is suspended when the size of the used capacity of a pool reaches the depletion threshold. If this occurs, you must resolve the causes of the SIM message. When enough pool capacity is ensured, the deleting process will start again.



Caution: If the SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode while the rehydration processing of the capacity-saving-enabled DP-VOLs is in progress, a conflict occurs and the rehydration processing does not complete (Capacity Saving Status remains Rehydrating). In this case, change the SVP or secondary window to View mode.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.

3. Select the associated row with the DP-VOL to be deleted.
4. Select the **Virtual Volumes** tab.
5. From the table, select the DP-VOL to be deleted.
Do the following, if necessary.
 - In the **Filter** option, select **ON** to filter the rows.
 - Click **Select All Pages** to select all DP-VOLs in the list.
 - Click **Options** to specify the unit of volumes or the number of rows to view.
6. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Delete LDEVs**.
The **Delete LDEVs** window opens.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Deleting all capacity saving-enabled DP-VOLs in a pool

When a deduplication system data volume is assigned to a pool, use this workflow to delete all of the capacity saving-enabled DP-VOLs in the pool. If the pool does not have a deduplication system data volume, you must use the delete DP-VOL procedure.

This operation formats DP-VOLs. Its execution time is increased by one minute per total capacity 40 TB of all DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled.

Execution time = 5 [min.] + ceiling(total capacity [TB] / 40 [TB])

For example, when the total capacity is 100 TB, the execution time is calculated as follows:

$5 + \text{ceiling}(100 / 40) = 5 + \text{ceiling}(2.5) = 8$ [min.]

1. Block all of the following volumes that are allocated to the target pool using the **Block LDEVs** window. For instructions, see [Blocking LDEVs \(on page 108\)](#).
 - All of the DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled.
 - The deduplication system data volume for the pool.
2. Format the (blocked) deduplication system data volume using the **Format LDEVs** window. Make sure to specify only the single deduplication system data volume for the target pool. For instructions, see [Formatting a specific LDEV \(on page 112\)](#).
3. Format all of the (blocked) DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled in the pool using the **Format LDEVs** window. For instructions, see [Formatting a specific LDEV \(on page 112\)](#).



Note: The formatting operations for DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled might take a lot of time.

4. Delete all of the (formatted) DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled in the pool.

You cannot delete a deduplication system data volume (DSD volume). The deduplication system data volume for a pool is deleted automatically when you disable the Capacity Saving setting for the pool or delete the pool.

Starting pool monitoring manually

Use this procedure to start pool monitoring manually.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. On the **Pools** tab, click the row of a pool you want to start monitoring.
4. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Monitor Pools**.
5. In the **Task Name** text box of the **Monitor Pools** window, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "date-window name" is entered by default.
6. Click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Stopping pool monitoring manually

Use this procedure to stop pool monitoring manually.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. From the **Pools** table, click the row of a pool you want to stop monitoring.
4. Click **More Actions** to select **Stop Monitoring Pools**.
5. In the **Task Name** text box of the **Stop Monitoring Pools** window, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "date-window name" is entered by default.

- Click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Starting tier relocation manually

Use this procedure to start tier relocation manually.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

- Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
- Click **Pools**.
- On the **Pools** tab, click the row of a pool you want to start monitoring.
- Click **More Actions** and select **Start Tier Relocation**.
- In the **Task Name** text box of the **Start Tier Relocation** window, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "date-window name" is entered by default.
- In the **Start Tier Relocation** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window opens.

Stopping tier relocation manually

Use this procedure to stop tier relocation manually.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

- Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
- Click **Pools**.
- From the **Pools**, click the row of a pool you want to start monitoring.
- Click **More Actions** to select **Stop Tier Relocation**.
The **Stop Tier Relocation** window appears.
- In the **Task Name** text box of the **Stop Tier Relocation** window, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "date-window name" is entered by default.

6. In the **Stop Tier Relocation** window, click **Apply** to register the setting in the task. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Enabling data direct mapping for external volumes, pools, and DP-VOLs

Creating external volumes with data direct mapping enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane of the **Logical Devices** window, click **Create LDEVs**.
4. In the **Create LDEVs** window, from the **Provisioning Type** list, select **External** as a provisioning type for the LDEV to be created.
5. In **System Type**, select **Open** to create open system volumes
6. In **Data Direct Mapping**, select **Enable**.
7. From the **Emulation Type** list, confirm that **OPEN-V** is being selected.
8. Click **Select Free Spaces**.
9. In the **Select Free Spaces** window, in the **Available Free Spaces** table, select the free space to be assigned to the volumes. Do the following, if necessary:
 - To specify the conditions and show the free space, click **Filter**, specify the conditions, and then click **Apply**.
 - To specify the unit for capacity and the number of rows to view, click **Options**.
10. Click **View Physical Location**.
11. In the **View Physical Location** window, confirm where the selected free space is physically located, and then click **Close**.
12. In the **Select Free Spaces** window, if the selected free spaces have no issues, click **OK**.
13. In the **Number of LDEVs per External Volume**, confirm that 1 is displayed.
14. In **LDEV Name**, specify a name for this LDEV.
 - a. In **Prefix**, type the characters that will become the fixed characters for the beginning of the LDEV name. The characters are case-sensitive.
 - b. In **Initial Number**, type the initial number that will follow the prefix name.

15. In **Format Type**, select the format type for the LDEV from the list.
For an external volume, if you create the LDEV whose emulation type is the open system, select **Normal Format** or **No Format**.
If the external volume can be used as it is, select **No Format**. The created LDEV can be used without formatting.
If the external volume needs to be formatted, select **No Format** and then format the volume with the external storage system, or select **Normal Format**.
16. Click **Options** to show more options.
17. In **Initial LDEV ID**, make sure that an LDEV ID is set. To confirm the used number and unavailable number, click **View LDEV IDs** to open the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 - a. In **Initial LDEV ID** in the **Create LDEVs** window, click **View LDEV IDs**. In the **View LDEV IDs** window, the matrix vertical scale represents the second-to-last digit of the LDEV number, and the horizontal scale represents the last digit of the LDEV number. The LDEV IDs table shows the available, used, and disabled LDEV IDs. In the table, used LDEV numbers appear in blue, unavailable numbers appear in gray, and unused numbers appear in white. LDEV numbers that are unavailable may be already in use, or already assigned to another emulation group (group by 32 LDEV numbers).
 - b. Click **Close**.
18. In the **Create LDEVs** window, in **SSID**, type four digits, in hexadecimal format (0004 to FEFF), for the SSID.
19. To confirm the created SSID, click **View SSIDs** to open the **View SSIDs** dialog box.
 - a. In the **Create LDEVs** window, in **Initial SSID**, click **View SSIDs**. In the **SSIDs** window, the **SSIDs** table shows the used SSIDs.
 - b. Click **Close**.
20. In the **Create LDEVs** window, from the **MP Blade** list, select a MP blade to be used by the LDEVs.
 - If you assign a specific MP blade, select the ID of the MP blade.
 - If you can assign any MP blade, click **Auto**.
21. Click **Add**.
The created LDEVs are added to the **Selected LDEVs** table.
If these required items are not registered, you cannot click **Add**.
22. If necessary, change the following LDEV settings:
 - a. Click **Edit SSIDs** to open the **SSIDs** window. If the new LDEV is to be created in the CU, change SSID to be allocated to the LDEV.
 - b. Click **Change LDEV Settings** to open the **Change LDEV Settings** window.
23. If necessary, delete an LDEV from the **Selected LDEVs** table. Select an LDEV to delete, and then click **Remove**.
24. Click **Finish**. The **Confirm** window appears.
To continue the operation for setting the LU path and defining a logical unit, click **Next**.

25. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
26. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Creating pools with data direct mapping enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. Click **Create Pools**.
4. From the **Pool Type** list, select **Dynamic Provisioning**.
5. From the **System Type** list, select **Open**.
6. From the **Multi-Tier Pool** field, select **Disable**.
You cannot select **Enable** if the storage system has only external volumes with the **Cache Mode** set to **Disable**.
7. From the **Data Direct Mapping** field, select **Enable**.
8. Follow the steps below to select pool-VOLs.
 - a. From the **Drive Type/RPM** list, select a data drive type and RPM.
 - b. From the **RAID Level** list, select RAID level.
If you select **External Storage** from the **Drive Type/RPM** list, a hyphen (-) appears and you cannot select the RAID level.
 - c. Click **Select Pool VOLs**.
The **Select Pool VOLs** window appears.
 - d. In the **Available Pool Volumes** table, select the pool-VOL row to be associated with a pool, then click **Add**.

Select one or more volumes to use as pool-VOLs with system area. For the attribute of the volume, which can be used as the pool-VOLs with system area, a hyphen(-) appears in the **Attribute** column. In addition, the external volume of the data direct mapping attribute can be selected as an option. For the attribute of the external volume of the data direct mapping attribute, **Data Direct Mapping** appears in the **Attribute** column. After creating the pool, you can also add the external volume of the data direct mapping attribute.

You can select a value other than **Middle** from **External LDEV Tier Rank** and click **Add** to set another tier rank for an external volume.

The selected pool-VOL is registered in the **Selected Pool Volumes** table. Up to 1,024 volumes can be added to a pool.

If LDEVs in an accelerated compression enabled parity group are used as pool-VOLs, these LDEVs can be assigned to only one pool. LDEVs in an accelerated compression enabled parity group cannot be assigned to multiple pools as pool-VOLs.



Tip: Perform the following steps if necessary:

- Click **Filter** to open the menu, specify the filtering conditions, and click **Apply**.
- Click **Select All Pages** to select all pool-VOLs in the table. To cancel the selection, click **Select All Pages** again.
- Click **Options** to specify the volumes or the number of rows to be displayed.

e. Click **OK**.

The information in the **Selected Pool Volumes** table is applied to **Total Selected Pool Volumes** and **Total Selected Capacity**.

9. Enter the name in the **Pool Name** text box.
10. Click **Options**.
11. In the **Initial Pool ID** text box, type the number of the initial pool ID, from 0 to 127. When you specify a pool ID that was previously registered, the smallest available ID is displayed by default instead of the value you entered. If a pool ID unavailable, no number is displayed.
12. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
13. In **Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool**, select **Yes** or **No**. If **Yes** is selected, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.
14. Click **Add**.

The created pool is added to the **Selected Pools** table. If invalid values are set, an error message appears.

The **Pool Type**, **Pool Volume Selection**, and **Pool Name** must be set. If the required items are not entered or selected, you cannot click **Add**.

If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **Pool Properties** window appears. If you select a row and click **Remove**, the message appears asking whether you want to remove the selected row or rows. If you want to remove the row, click **OK**.

15. Click **Next**.
The **Create LDEVs** window appears.
16. Click **Finish** and the **Confirmation** window appears.
17. Check the settings in the **Confirmation** window, and then enter the task name in **Task Name**. Select the pool radio button and then click **Details**. The Pool Properties window appears.

18. Click Apply

The tasks are registered. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Creating DP-VOLs with data direct mapping enabled

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane of the **Logical Devices** window, click **Create LDEVs**.
4. In the **Create LDEVs** window, from the **Provisioning Type** list, select **Dynamic Provisioning**.
5. In the **System Type** option, select **Open**.
6. From the **Data Direct Mapping** field, select **Enable**.
7. From the **Emulation Type** list, confirm **OPEN-V** is selected.
8. From the **Multi-Tier Pool** field, select **Disable**.
9. From the **Available Volumes** table, select **LDEV**.
10. In the **LDEV Name** text box, enter the DP-VOL name.
 In the **Prefix** text box, enter the alphanumeric characters, which are fixed characters of the head of the DP-VOL name. The characters are case-sensitive.
 In the **Initial Number** text box, type the initial number following the prefix name, which can be up to 9 digits.
 You can enter up to the 32 characters including the initial number.
11. Click **Option**.
12. In the **Initial LDEV ID** field, make sure that LDEV ID is set.
 To confirm the used number and unavailable number, click **View LDEV IDs** to display the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 In the table, used LDEV numbers appear in blue, unavailable numbers appear in gray, and unused numbers appear in white. LDEV numbers that are unavailable may be already in use, or already assigned to another emulation group (group by 32 LDEV numbers).
13. In the **Initial SSID** text box, type the 4-digit SSID of a hexadecimal number (0004 to FFFE).
 To confirm the created SSID, click **View SSID** to display the **View SSID** windows.
14. From the **Cache Partition** list, select **CLPR**.
15. From the **MP Blade** list, select an MP blade.
 Select an MP blade to be used by the LDEVs. If you assign a specific MP blade, select the ID of the MP blade. If you can assign any MP blade, click **Auto**.

16. If necessary, change the settings of the V-VOLs.
 - Click **Edit SSIDs** to open the **Edit SSIDs** window.
 - Click **Change LDEV Settings** to open the **Change LDEV Settings** window.
17. If necessary, delete a row from the **Selected LDEVs** table.
Select a row to be deleted, then click **Remove**.
18. Click **Add**.
The created V-VOLs are added to the correct **Selected LDEVs** table. If invalid values are set, an error message appears: The **Provisioning Type, System Type, Emulation Type, Pool Selection, Drive Type/RPM, RAID Level, LDEV Capacity,** and **Number of LDEVs** fields must be set. If these required items are not registered, you cannot click **Add**.
19. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears. To continue the operation for setting the LU path and define LUN, click **Next**.
20. In the **Task Name** in the text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols in all, except for \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. "yymmdd-window name" is entered as a default.
21. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Enabling and disabling the data direct mapping attribute for a pool

Use this procedure to enable or disable data direct mapping on an existing pool.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Pools**.
3. If you are enabling data direct mapping on a Dynamic Tiering or active flash pool, first enable the **Multi-Tier Pool** option on the pool and apply the setting to the storage system, and then continue with this procedure.
4. From the **Pools** table, select the pool for which you want to change the data direct mapping attribute.
5. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit Pools**.
6. Select **Data Direct Mapping**, and then select **Enable** or **Disable**.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window opens.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

Chapter 6: Protecting volumes using Data Retention Utility

After provisioning your system, you can assign access attributes to open-system volumes to protect the volumes against read, write, and copy operations and to prevent users from configuring LU paths and command devices. Data Retention Utility software is required to assign access attributes to volumes.

About access attributes

Open-systems volumes, by default, are subject to read and write operations by open-systems hosts. With open-system volumes in this default condition, data might be damaged or lost if an open-systems host performs erroneous write operations. In addition, confidential data on open-systems volumes might be stolen if a malicious operator performs read operations on open-systems hosts.

Therefore, it is recommended that you change the default read and write conditions by assigning an access attribute to each logical volume. Access attributes can be set to read/write, read-only, or protect.

By assigning access attributes, you can:

- Protect a volume against both read and write operations of all hosts.
- Protect a volume against write operations of all hosts, but allow read operations.
- Protect a volume against erroneous copy operations, but allow other write operations.
- Prevent other users from configuring LU paths and command devices.

One of the following access attributes can be assigned to each logical volume:

- Read/write

If a logical volume has the read/write attribute, open-systems hosts can perform both read and write operations on the logical volume.

You can use replication software to copy data to logical volumes that have read/write attribute. However, if necessary, you can prevent copying data to logical volumes that have read/write attribute.

All open-systems volumes have the read/write attribute by default.

- Read-only

If a logical volume has the read-only access attribute, open-systems hosts can perform read operations but cannot perform write operations on the logical volume.

- Protect

If a logical volume has the protect access attribute, open-systems hosts cannot access the logical volume. Open-systems hosts cannot perform either read nor write operations on the logical volume.

Access attribute requirements

To assign access attributes, the Hitachi Data Retention Utility software must be installed.

The Hitachi Data Retention Utility software performs on the secondary window of Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator. For details about the setting for the secondary window, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Access attributes and permitted operations

Access Attribute	Read Operations from Hosts	Write Operations from Hosts	Specified as P-VOL	Specified as S-VOL
Read/Write	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Read-only	Yes	No	Depends on the replication software	No
Protect	No	No	Depends on the replication software	No
Read/Write and S-VOL disable	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Access attribute restrictions

Some restrictions apply when you use products or functions on a volume that has an access attribute assigned to it.

Virtual LUN

- You cannot convert into spaces volumes that do not have the read/write attribute.
- You cannot initialize customized volumes that do not have the read/write attribute.

Command Control Interface

- You can use Command Control Interface to make some Data Retention Utility settings. You can view some of the Command Control Interface settings in the Data Retention Utility user interface.
- When viewing the **Data Retention** window, another user might be using CCI to change an access attribute of a volume. If the CCI user changes an access attribute of a volume when you are viewing the **Data Retention** window, you will be unable to change the access attribute of the volume by using Data Retention Utility. If you attempt to change the access attribute of the volume by using the Data Retention Utility, an error occurs. If the error occurs, refresh the display, then retry changing the access attribute of the volume.

Automatically started software

If any software that can start automatically is enabled, you must do one of the following:

- Perform Data Retention Utility operations when the program is not running.
- Cancel the setting of the program start time.

Some software is likely to start automatically at the time specified by the user. For example, if a Volume Migration user or a Performance Monitoring user specifies the time for starting the monitor, the monitor will automatically start at the specified time.

Assigning an access attribute to a volume

If you want to protect volumes against both read and write operations from hosts, change the access attribute to protect. To protect volumes against write operations from hosts and allow read operations, change the access attribute to read-only. In both ways, if you set the attribute to a volume using the GUI, S-VOL Disable is automatically set to prevent data in a volume from being overwritten by replication software. If you use Command Control Interface to set the attribute to a volume, you can select whether the S-VOL Disable is set or not. If you set the Protect attribute to the volume when the Dynamic Provisioning pool is full, the S-VOL Disable is not set to the volume.

After you change an access attribute to read-only or protect, the access attribute cannot be changed to read/write for a certain period of time. You can specify the length of this period (called Retention Term) when changing the access attribute to read-only or protect. The retention term can be extended but cannot be shortened.

During the retention term

- Read-only access can be changed to protect or protect can be changed to read-only.
- If you need to change an access attribute to read/write, you must ask the maintenance personnel to do so.

After the retention term is over

- The access attribute can be changed to read/write.
- The access attribute remains read-only or protect until changed back to read/write.

Changing an access attribute to read-only or protect

When changing an access attribute to read-only or protect, observe the following:


- Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. Select Modify from the **Data Retention** secondary window to set access attributes and prevent other users or programs from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, Modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and Modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide*.
- Do not assign an access attribute to a volume if any job is manipulating data on the volume. If you assign an access attribute to such a volume, the job will possibly end abnormally.
- The emulation type of the volume must be one of the following:
OPEN-3, OPEN-8, OPEN-9, OPEN-E, OPEN-K, OPEN-L, OPEN-V
- The volume must not be one of the following:
 - Volumes that do not exist
 - Volumes that are configured as command devices
 - TrueCopy secondary volumes*
 - Universal Replicator secondary volumes* or journal volumes
 - ShadowImage secondary volumes*
 - Thin Image secondary volumes*
 - Pool volume
 - Thin Image virtual volume
 - Volume assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity group
 - Deduplication system data volumes

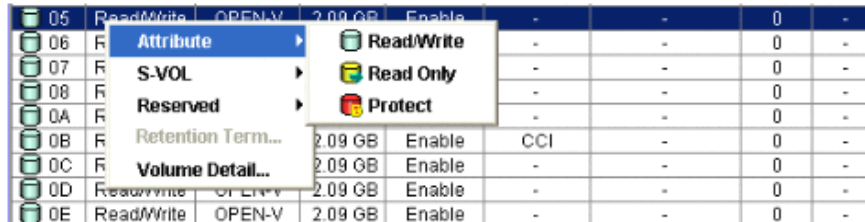
*Note: The access attribute of secondary volumes may be changed depending on the pair status.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Actions > Other Function > Data Retention**.
2. Click  to change to **Modify** mode.
3. Select an LDKC number in the **LDKC** list, select a group that the CU belongs in the **CU Group** list, then click a CU in the tree.
4. Right-click a volume whose access attribute you want to change. You may select multiple volumes.
5. Click **Attribute**, and then select **Read Only** or **Protect**.



LDKC	Access	Group	Volume	Capacity	Enable	CCI	Days	Years
05	Read/Write	OPEN-V	2.09 GB	Enable	-	-	0	-
06	R						0	-
07	R						0	-
08	R						0	-
0A	R						0	-
0B	R		2.09 GB	Enable	CCI	-	0	-
0C	R		2.09 GB	Enable	-	-	0	-
0D	Read/Write	OPEN-V	2.09 GB	Enable	-	-	0	-
0E	Read/Write	OPEN-V	2.09 GB	Enable	-	-	0	-

6. In the **Term Setting** dialog box, specify the retention term. During this period, the access attribute cannot be changed to read/write. You can enter the number of years and days, or select **Unlimited**. The retention term can be extended but cannot be shortened.
 - years: Specify the number of years within the range of 0 to 60. One year is counted as 365 days, whether the year is a leap year.
 - days: Specify the number of days within the range of 0 to 21900.

For example, if 10 years 5 days or 0 years 3655 days is specified, the access attribute of the volume cannot be changed to read/write in the next 3,655 days.
7. Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
8. In the **Data Retention** window, click **Apply** to apply the setting.
To extend the retention term later, open the **Data Retention** window, right-click the volume, and then select **Retention Term**.

Changing an access attribute to read/write

Before changing the access attribute from read-only or protect to read/write, considering the following:


- Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. Select **Modify** from the **Data Retention** secondary window to set access attributes and prevent other users or programs from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, **Modify** mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and **Modify** mode, see the *System Administrator Guide*.
- Do not assign an access attribute to a volume if any job is manipulating data on the volume. If you assign an access attribute to such a volume, the job will possibly end abnormally.

- Make sure that the retention term is expired. If expired, the Retention Term column in the **Data Retention** window shows 0. To change the access attribute to read/write within the retention term, contact customer support.
- Make sure that Expiration Lock indicates Disable > Enable. If it indicates Enable > Disable, changing to read/write is restricted by an administrator for some reason. Contact the administrator of your system to ask if you can change the access attribute. For details, see the *Provisioning Guide* for your storage system.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Actions > Other Function > Data Retention**.
2. Click  to change to **Modify** mode.
3. Select an LDKC number in the **LDKC** list, select a group in which the CU belongs in the **CU Group** list, then click a CU in the tree.
4. Right-click a volume for which you want to change access attributes. You may select multiple volumes, select **Attribute**, then click **Read/Write**.
5. Click **Apply** to apply the setting.

Enabling or disabling the expiration lock


The expiration lock provides enhanced volume protection. Enabling the expiration lock ensures that read-only volumes and protect volumes cannot be changed to read/write volumes, even after the retention term ends. Disabling the expiration lock changes the access attribute to read/write after the retention term ends. This setting applies to all volumes in the storage system with the read-only and protect attribute.

Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. When you select Modify from the **Data Retention** secondary window to enable or disable the expiration lock, other users or programs are prevented from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, Modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and Modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Actions > Other Function > Data Retention**.
2. Click  to change to **Modify** mode.

3. In the **Data Retention** window, verify which button appears beside **Expiration Lock**.
 - If **Disable > Enable** appears, go to the next step.
 - If **Enable > Disable** appears, expiration lock is already enabled. You do not need to follow the rest of this procedure because attempts to change access attribute to read/write are already prohibited.
4. Click **Disable > Enable**. A confirmation message appears.
5. Click **OK**. The button changes to **Enable > Disable**, and the expiration lock is enabled.

When the expiration lock is enabled, the access attributes of volumes cannot be changed to read/write even after the retention term ends.

To disable the expiration lock, click **Enable > Disable**. The access attribute can then be changed to read/write after the retention term ends.

Disabling an S-VOL

Assigning a read-only or protect attribute is one of the ways to prevent data in a volume from being overwritten by replication software. Volumes having the read-only or protect attribute are not only protected against these copy operations, but are also protected against any other form of write operations.


To protect a volume only from copy operations, you must ensure that the volume has the read/write attribute then assign the S-VOL Disable attribute to the volume. This setting prohibits the volume from being used as a secondary volume for copy operations.

Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. When you select Modify from the **Data Retention** secondary window to disable an S-VOL, other users or programs are prevented from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, Modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and Modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The volume is other than the volume assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity group

Procedure

1. Click **Actions > Other Function > Data Retention**.
2. Click  to change to **Modify** mode.
3. Select an LDKC number in the **LDKC** list, select a group that the CU belongs in the **CU Group** list, and then click a CU in the tree.

4. Right-click a volume for which the **S-VOL** column shows **Enable**. You may select multiple volumes.
5. Select **S-VOL > Disable**.
6. Click **Apply** to apply the setting.

To use a volume as an S-VOL, ensure that the volume has the read/write attribute then assign the S-VOL Enable attribute to the volume.

Reserving volumes


By default, all Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator users with proper permissions can make LU path settings and command device settings. If you perform the following procedure in Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator, all users, including yourself, will not be allowed to make LU path settings and command device settings on the specified volume. Command Control Interface users can still make LU path settings and command device settings on the volume.

Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. When you select Modify from the **Data Retention** secondary window to disable an S-VOL, other users or programs are prevented from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, Modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and Modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The volume is not assigned to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group

Procedure

1. Click **Actions > Other Function > Data Retention**.
2. Click  to change to **Modify** mode.
3. In the **Data Retention** window, select an LDKC number in the **LDKC** list, select a group that the CU belongs in the **CU Group** list, and then click a CU in the tree.
4. Select a volume where the **Reserved** column contains a hyphen. You may select multiple volumes.
5. Right-click the selected volume or volumes, and then select **Reserved > Set**.
6. Click **Apply** to apply the setting.

To permit users to make LU path settings and command device settings on a volume, follow the steps above and select **Reserved > Release**. Then call customer support to ask for SVP settings.

Troubleshooting for Data Retention Utility

The following table provides troubleshooting information for Data Retention Utility.

Problems	Probable cause and solution
<p>The Disable/ Enable or the Enable/Disable button on the Data Retention window is unavailable. Nothing happens when you click the button.</p>	<p>You have been making changes in the Data Retention window, but the changes have not been applied to the storage system. Apply the changes first, and then perform the extension lock operation.</p> <p>You can find the changes by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Scrolling the current list up and down. ▪ Selecting another CU from the tree and then scrolling the list up and down.
<p>Open-systems hosts cannot read from or write to a volume.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The volume is protected by the read-only attribute. Write failure is reported as an error message. ▪ The volume is protected by the Protect attribute. Read (or write) failure is reported as an error message.
<p>Mainframe hosts cannot read from or write to a volume.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The volume is protected by the read-only attribute. Write failure is reported as a Write Inhibit condition. ▪ The volume is protected by the Protect attribute. Read (or write) failure is reported as a cc=3 condition.
<p>The number of days in Retention Term does not decrease</p>	<p>The number of days in Retention Term is calculated based on the operating time of the storage system. Therefore, the number of days in Retention Term might not decrease.</p>

Chapter 7: Managing logical volumes

After provisioning your system, you can begin to manage open-system logical volumes. Managing logical volumes includes tasks such as configuring hosts and ports, configuring LU paths, setting LUN security on ports, and setting up Fibre Channel authentication. LUN Manager is required to manage logical volumes.

LUN Manager overview

LUN Manager operations

Your storage system can be connected to open-system server hosts of different platforms (for example, UNIX servers and PC servers). To configure your storage system for operation with open-system hosts, use LUN Manager to configure logical volumes and ports.

One of the important tasks when configuring logical volumes is to define I/O paths from hosts to logical volumes. When paths are defined, the hosts can send commands and data to the logical volumes and can receive data from the logical volumes.

After the system begins operating, you might need to modify the system configuration. For example, if hosts or drives are added, you will need to add new I/O paths. You can modify the system configuration using LUN Manager when the system is running. You do not need to restart the system after modifying the system configuration.

Fibre Channel and iSCSI functions

The Fibre Channel functions include the Fibre security control function and the host group function:

- The Fibre security control function controls the access from specific hosts or specific commands.
- The host group function also enables the storage system to make a suitable response to each host connected, even within the same port, by grouping connected hosts within a port and setting the logical unit mapping and the host connection mode for each host group. You can set up to 255 host groups per port.

The iSCSI functions include the iSCSI security control function and the iSCSI target function.

- The iSCSI security control function controls the access from specific hosts or specific commands.
- The iSCSI target function enables the storage system to respond to each connected host, even within the same port, by grouping the connected hosts within a port and setting LUs and host mode options for each group. You can set up to 255 iSCSI targets per port. Authentication can be performed for each target by using the CHAP authentication concurrently.



Note: The iSCSI ports do not support fragment processing (dividing a packet). When the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a switch is smaller than that of an iSCSI port, packets might be lost, and data cannot be transferred correctly. The MTU value for the switch must be the same as or greater than the MTU value for the iSCSI port. For details about the MTU setting and value, see the user documentation for the switch.

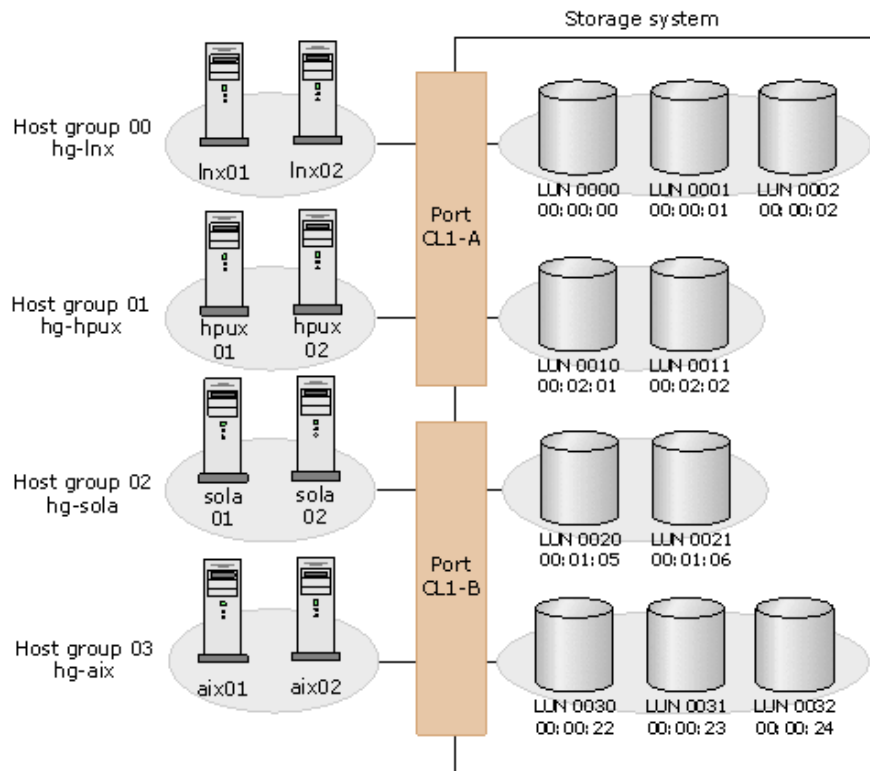
Host groups and LU path configuration (Fibre Channel)

After open-system hosts and the storage system are physically connected by cables, hubs, and so on, you can establish I/O paths between the hosts and the logical volumes. This defines which host can access which logical volume. Logical volumes that can be accessed by open-system hosts are referred to as logical units (LUs). The paths between the open-system hosts and the LUs are referred to as LU paths.

Before defining LU paths, you must classify server hosts by host groups. For example, if Linux hosts and Windows hosts are connected to the storage system, you must create one host group for the Linux hosts and another host group for the Windows hosts. Then, you must register the host bus adapters of the Linux hosts in the Linux host group, and you must also register the host bus adapters of the Windows hosts in the Windows host group.

A host group can contain only hosts that are connected to the same port. For example, if two Windows hosts are connected to port 1A and three Windows hosts are connected to port 1B, you cannot register all five Windows hosts in one host group. You must register the two Windows hosts on port 1A in one host group, and then register the three Windows hosts on port 1B in another host group.

After server hosts are classified into host groups, you associate the host groups with logical volumes. The following figure illustrates LU path configuration in a Fibre Channel environment. The figure shows host group `hg-1nx` associated with three logical volumes (00:00:00, 00:00:01, and 00:00:02). LU paths are defined between the two hosts in the `hg-1nx` group and the three logical volumes.



You can define paths between a single server host and multiple LUs. The figure shows that each of the two hosts in the host group `hg-lnx` can access the three LUs.

You can also define paths between multiple server hosts and a single LU. The figure shows that the LU identified by the LDKC:CU:LDEV number `00:00:00` is accessible from the two hosts that belong to the `hg-lnx` host group.

The figure also shows that the LUs associated with the `hg-lnx` host group are addressed by numbers `0000` to `0002`. The address number of an LU is referred to as a LUN (logical unit number). When software manipulates LUs, the software use LUNs to specify the LUs to be manipulated.

You can add, change, and delete LU paths when the system is in operation. For example, if new disks or server hosts are added to your storage system, you can add new LU paths. If an existing server host is to be replaced, you can delete the LU paths that correspond to the host before replacing the host. You do not need to restart the system when you add, change, or delete LU paths.

If a hardware failure (for example, CHA failure) occurs, there is a chance that some LU paths are disabled and some I/O operations are stopped. To avoid such a situation, you can define alternate LU paths; if one LU path fails, the alternate path takes over the host I/O.

Workflow for configuring logical units (Fibre Channel)

Use the following workflow to configure LUs in a Fibre Channel environment.

1. Configure the ports.
2. Configure the hosts.

3. Configure the LU paths.
4. Enable LUN security.
5. Set Fibre Channel authentication.
6. Manage the hosts.

Rules, restrictions, and guidelines for managing LUs

Rules

- In a Fibre Channel environment, up to 2,048 LU paths can be defined for one host group, and up to 2,048 LU paths can be defined for one port.
- In an iSCSI environment, up to 2,048 LU paths can be defined for one iSCSI target, and up to 2,048 LU paths can be defined for one port.
- Up to 255 host groups can be created for one Fibre Channel port.
- Up to 255 iSCSI targets can be created for one iSCSI port.
- For an LDEV with the ALU attribute, you can define the LU path to only one host group.
- For an LDEV with the ALU attribute, you can define the LU path to only one iSCSI target.

Restrictions

- You cannot define an LU path to the following types of volumes:
 - Journal volumes
 - Pool volumes
 - External volumes with the data direct mapping attribute
 - LDEVs created from an accelerated compression-enabled parity group
 - Deduplication system data volumes
- When using iSCSI, you cannot define an LU path to multi-platform volumes.
- When defining LU paths, you must not use Command Control Interface and Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator at the same time. If both programs are used simultaneously, operations might not be performed in the expected order, and the storage configuration might be defined incorrectly.
- If an LDEV of the ALU attribute is binding to LDEVs with the SLU attribute, the LU path cannot be removed.
- To define an LU path between a port and an LDEV that has the T10 PI attribute enabled, the port must have T10 PI mode enabled.

Guidelines

- Queue depth: To ensure smooth processing at the ports and best average performance, the recommended queue depth setting (max tag count) for VSP G1000, G1500, and VSP F1500 is 2,048 per port and 32 per LDEV. Other queue depth settings, higher or lower than these recommended values, can provide improved performance for certain workload conditions.



Caution: Higher queue depth settings (greater than 2,048 per port) can impact host response times or cause failures such as job abend. Caution must be exercised in modifying the recommended queue depth settings.

- Hitachi multipathing best practice is Single-Initiator Single-Targets configuration in which each HBA has only one path to the same LU. For example, you can provide four paths to each LU if you have four HBAs. For details, contact customer support.
- If you attempt to apply many settings in the LUN Manager windows, the SVP might be unable to continue processing. Therefore, you should make no more than approximately 1,000 settings. Note that many settings are likely to be made when defining alternate paths, even though only two commands are required for defining alternate paths.
- Do not perform the following when host I/O is in progress and hosts are in reserved status (mounted):
 - Remove LU paths
 - Disable LUN security on a port
 - Change the data transfer speed for Fibre Channel ports
 - Change AL-PAs or loop IDs
 - Change settings of fabric switches
 - Change the topology
 - Change the host modes
 - Remove host groups
 - Remove iSCSI targets
 - Setting command devices
- When a port has a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute and you need to configure the port (delete a host group, set a command device, or change the host mode, topology, AL-PA, or transfer speed), the operation might fail if you configure more than one port at a time. For ports that have a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute, perform these operations on one port at a time.

Configuring hosts and Fibre Channel ports

When provisioning your system, configure hosts and Fibre Channel ports using LUN Manager. You can manage hosts, modify the host configuration, and modify the port configuration when the system is in operation.

- [Configuring Fibre Channel ports \(on page 324\)](#)
- [Configuring hosts \(on page 330\)](#)

Configuring Fibre Channel ports

Setting the data transfer speed on a Fibre Channel port

As system operations continue, you might notice that a large amount of data is transferred at some ports, but a small amount of data is transferred at other ports. You can optimize system performance on a Fibre Channel port by setting a faster data transfer speed on ports where a large amount of data is transferred, and setting a slower data transfer speed on ports where a smaller amount of data is transferred.



Note: In Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) networks, the port speed is fixed at 10 Gbps and cannot be changed.



Caution: When a port has a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute and you need to change the transfer speed, the operation might fail if you configure more than one port at a time. For ports that have a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute, perform this operation on one port at a time.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. In the **Edit Ports** window, select the **Port Speed** check box, and then select the desired port speed.

Select the speed of the Fibre Channel port in the unit of Gbps (Gigabit per second). If **Auto** is selected, the storage system automatically sets the speed to 4, 8, 16 or 32 Gbps.



Caution: Observe the following cautions when setting speed on a Fibre Channel port:

- If they support 4, 8, 16 or 32 Gbps, use 4, 8, 16 or 32 Gbps for the CHF port speed, respectively.
- If the Auto Negotiation setting is required, some links might not be up when the server is restarted. Check the channel lamp. If it is flashing, disconnect the cable, and then reconnect it to recover from the link-down state.
- If the CHF port speed is set to **Auto**, some equipment might not be able to transfer data at the maximum speed.
- When you start a storage system, HBA, or switch, check the host speed appearing in the Port list. If the transfer speed is different from the maximum speed, select the maximum speed from the list on the right, or disconnect, and then reconnect the cable.
- The available port speed which is specified in **Port Speed** is limited due to the combination of the type of the Fibre Channel port and the topology which is specified in **Connection Type**.

6. Click Finish.

The **Confirm** window appears.

7. In the Task Name text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value <date>-<window name> is entered by default.

8. Click Apply.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Available data-transfer speeds for FC ports

The available data-transfer speeds for the Fibre Channel ports depend on the port type and the connection type.

Connection type	Data transfer speeds for 8-Gbps ports				
	2 Gbps	4 Gbps	8 Gbps	16 Gbps	Auto
FC-AL	Available	Available	Available	Not available	Available (default)
P-to-P	Available	Available	Available	Not available	Available
Fabric	Available	Available	Available	Not available	Available

The following table shows the available data-transfer speeds for 16-Gbps Fibre Channel ports .

Connection type	Data transfer speeds for 16-Gbps ports				
	2 Gbps	4 Gbps	8 Gbps	16 Gbps	Auto
FC-AL	Not available	Available	Available	Not available	Available ¹
P-to-P	Not available	Available	Available	Available	Available (default ²)
Fabric	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available

Notes:

1. If this combination is specified, the maximum transfer speed that is automatically specified is 8 Gbps.
2. If this default value is set, Fabric is set to ON automatically.

Setting the Fibre Channel port address

When configuring your storage system, set addresses for Fibre Channel ports. When addressing Fibre Channel ports, use AL-PA (arbitrated-loop physical address) or loop IDs as the addresses.



Note: In FCoE networks, you do not need to set the address of a Fibre Channel port.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. In the **Edit Ports** window, select the **Address (Loop ID)** check box, and then select the address.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

8. Click Apply.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Addresses for Fibre Channel ports

The following addresses are available for setting Fibre Channel ports.

AL-PA	Loop ID (0~29)	AL-PA	Loop ID (30~59)	AL-PA	Loop ID (60~89)	AL-PA	Loop ID (90~119)	AL-PA	Loop ID (120~125)
EF	0	B4	30	76	60	49	90	10	120
E8	1	B3	31	75	61	47	91	0F	121
E4	2	B2	32	74	62	46	92	08	122
E2	3	B1	33	73	63	45	93	04	123
E1	4	AE	34	72	64	43	94	02	124
E0	5	AD	35	71	65	3C	95	01	125
DC	6	AC	36	6E	66	3A	96	-	-
DA	7	AB	37	6D	67	39	97	-	-
D9	8	AA	38	6C	68	36	98	-	-
D6	9	A9	39	6B	69	35	99	-	-
D5	10	A7	40	6A	70	34	100	-	-
D4	11	A6	41	69	71	33	101	-	-
D3	12	A5	42	67	72	32	102	-	-
D2	13	A3	43	66	73	31	103	-	-
D1	14	9F	44	65	74	2E	104	-	-
CE	15	9E	45	63	75	2D	105	-	-
CD	16	9D	46	5C	76	2C	106	-	-
CC	17	9B	47	5A	77	2B	107	-	-
CB	18	98	48	59	78	2A	108	-	-
CA	19	97	49	56	79	29	109	-	-
C9	20	90	50	55	80	27	110	-	-
C7	21	8F	51	54	81	26	111	-	-

AL-PA	Loop ID (0~29)	AL-PA	Loop ID (30~59)	AL-PA	Loop ID (60~89)	AL-PA	Loop ID (90~119)	AL-PA	Loop ID (120~125)
C6	22	88	52	53	82	25	112	-	-
C5	23	84	53	52	83	23	113	-	-
C3	24	82	54	51	84	1F	114	-	-
BC	25	81	55	4E	85	1E	115	-	-
BA	26	80	56	4D	86	1D	116	-	-
B9	27	7C	57	4C	87	1B	117	-	-
B6	28	7A	58	4B	88	18	118	-	-
B5	29	79	59	4A	89	17	119	-	-

Setting the fabric switch

When you configure your storage system, specify whether the hosts and the storage system are connected via a fabric switch.



Note: In FCoE networks, Fabric is fixed to ON. Therefore, you do not need to set Fabric.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. Select a check box of **Fabric**, and select **ON** if you set the fabric switch. If you do not set the fabric switch, select **OFF**.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Fibre Channel topology

The term Fibre Channel topology indicates how devices are connected to each other. Fibre channel provides the following types of topology:

- Fabric: Uses a fabric switch to connect a large number of devices (up to 16 million) together.
- FC-AL (Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop): A shared interface that can connect up to 126 devices (AL-ports) together.
- Point-to-point: The simplest fibre topology connects two devices directly together.

When configuring your storage system, use the LUN Manager window to specify whether the hosts and the storage system are connected using a fabric switch.

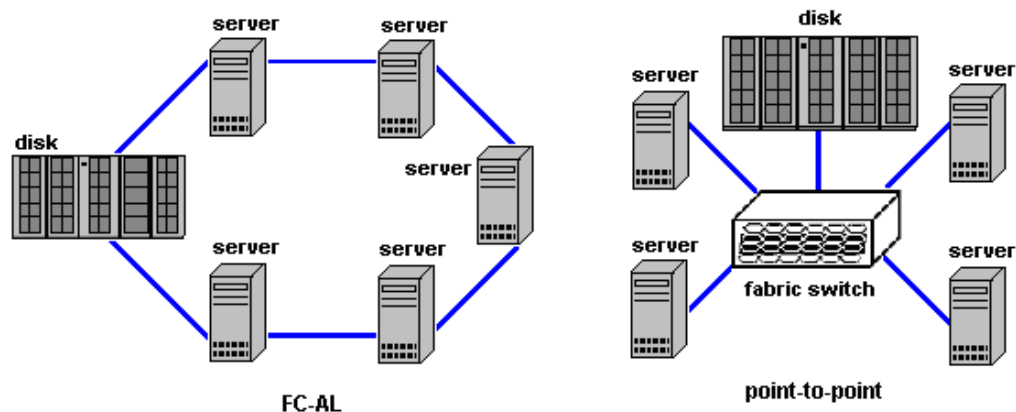
If a fabric switch is used, specify FC-AL or point-to-point in the LUN Manager window. If a fabric switch is used, consult the documentation for the fabric switch to learn whether FC-AL or point-to-point should be used. Some fabric switches require you to specify point-to-point to get the system running.

If no fabric switch is used, specify FC-AL.

The combination of the topology which is specified in Connection Type and the port speed which is specified in Port Speed is restricted. For details, see [Available data-transfer speeds for FC ports \(on page 325\)](#).

In FCoE networks, Connection Type is fixed to P-to-P. Therefore, you do not need to set Connection Type.

Example of FC-AL and point-to-point topology



Setting the Fibre Channel topology

Use this procedure to set the topology (FC-AL or P-to-P) of a Fibre Channel port. If you do not use a fabric switch, specify either FC-AL or P-to-P according to the settings of the server host.



Caution: When a port has a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute and you need to change the topology, the operation might fail if you configure more than one port at a time. For ports that have a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute, perform this operation on one port at a time.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. Under **Connection Type**, select **FC-AL** or **P-to-P**.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window opens.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value `<date>-<window name>` is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Configuring hosts

You can configure hosts in your storage system. You can also modify the host configuration with LUN Manager when the system is in operation.

Read the following topics concerning host modes before configuring hosts:

- [Host modes for host groups \(on page 331\)](#)
- [Host mode options \(on page 332\)](#)

Configuring hosts includes the following tasks:

- [How to find the WWN of a host bus adapter \(on page 338\)](#)
- [Creating a host group and registering hosts in the host group \(Fibre Channel\) \(on page 342.\)](#)

Configure hosts workflow

1. Determine the host modes and host mode options you will use.
2. Determine the WWN of the host bus adapters that you will use.
3. Create host groups.
4. Register host groups.


Host modes for host groups

The following table lists the host modes that are available for use on your storage system. Carefully review and determine which host modes you will need to use when configuring your system and observe the cautions concerning using certain host modes. Host modes and host mode options must be set on the port before the host is connected. If you change host modes or host mode options after the host is connected, the host (server) will not recognize it.

Host mode	When to select this mode
00 Standard	When registering Red Hat Linux server hosts or IRIX server hosts in the host group ¹
01 (Deprecated) VMware	When registering VMware server hosts in the host group ^{1, 2}
03 HP	When registering HP-UX server hosts in the host group
05 OpenVMS	When registering OpenVMS server hosts in the host group
07 Tru64	When registering Tru64 server hosts in the host group
09 Solaris	When registering Solaris server hosts in the host group
0A NetWare	When registering NetWare server hosts in the host group
0C (Deprecated) Windows	When registering Windows server hosts in the host group ^{2, 3}
0F AIX	When registering AIX server hosts in the host group ⁴
21 VMware Extension	When registering VMware server hosts in the host group. If the virtual host on VMware recognizes LUs by the Raw Device Mapping (RDM) method, set the host mode related to OS of the virtual host. ¹
2C Windows Extension	When registering Windows server hosts in the host group. ¹

Notes:

- You can add the following types of server hosts to one host group:
 - VMware server host, which includes the case that the (Linux based OS or Windows) virtual host recognizes LUs by RDM (Raw Device Mapping), and also includes the case that the Linux based OS or Windows virtual hosts are being operated on VMFS of VMware.
 - Linux based OS (such as Red Hat Linux) server host.
 - Windows server host

Host mode	When to select this mode
	<p>If you want to add these sever hosts to one host groups, you must set following host mode and host mode options for the host group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Host mode: 21 VMware Extension ▪ Host mode options: 2, 22, 25, 40, 54, 63, 68, and 110 <p>Restrictions for the VMWare server host added to the host group. If the OS of the virtual host on VMware is Windows, the following functions that are supported by Windows cannot be used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Thin Provisioning ▪ Offload Data Transfer (ODX) <p>Restrictions for the Windows server host which added to the host group In this environment, the thin provisioning function which is supported by the Windows server host cannot be used. Therefore, you must not set the host mode option 73. If you set the host mode option 73, the thin provisioning function for the Linux server host does not work. If you want to use the thin provisioning function supported by the Windows server host, add only windows server host to the host group to which the following options are set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Host mode: 2C Windows Extension ▪ Host mode options: 73 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. There are no functional differences between host mode 01 and 21. When you first connect a host, it is recommended that you set host mode 21. 3. There are no functional differences between host mode 0C and 2C. When you first connect a host, it is recommended that you set host mode 2C. 4. When host mode 0F for AIX is set, NACA is enabled automatically. Take the following steps to ensure that the host responds correctly to a port with host mode 0F enabled: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Shut down the host to be connected to the port. b. Set the host mode on the port to 0F. c. Connect the cables from the host to the port. d. Boot the host. <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Caution: If the host mode of a port is changed to 0F and the host already recognized the Inquiry response for an LDEV on the port with host mode other than 0F, the host might experience loss of device (LDEV or LUN) access. The host must be rebooted after host mode 0F is set to recognize the change in the response of the standard inquiry.</p> </div>

Host mode options

The following table lists the host mode options (HMOs) that are available to use for configuring hosts on your storage system.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
2	VERITAS Database Edition/ Advanced Cluster Oracle Solaris Cluster (Sun Cluster)	When VERITAS Database Edition/Advanced Cluster for Oracle Real Application Clusters or VERITAS Cluster Server 4.0 or later (I/O fencing function) is used. When Oracle Solaris Cluster (Sun Cluster) is used.
6	TPRLO	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 0C (Deprecated) Windows or 2C Windows Extension is used. ▪ The Emulex host bus adapter is used. ▪ The mini-port driver is used. ▪ TPRLO=2 is specified for the mini-port driver parameter of the host bus adapter.
7	Automatic recognition function of LUN	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 00 Standard or 09 Solaris is used. ▪ SUN StorEdge SAN Foundation Software Version 4.2 or later is used. ▪ You want to automate recognition of increase and decrease of devices when genuine SUN HBA is connected.
12	No display for ghost LUN	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 03 HP is used. ▪ You want to suppress creation of device files for devices to which paths are not defined.
13	SIM report at link failure ¹	When you want to be informed by SIM (service information message) that the number of link failures detected between ports exceeds the threshold.
14	HP TruCluster with TrueCopy function	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 07 Tru64 is used. ▪ You want to use TruCluster to set a cluster to each of primary volume and secondary volume for TrueCopy or Universal Replicator.
15	HACMP/PowerHA®	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 0F AIX is used. ▪ HACMP* or PowerHA® is used.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
		* HACMP 4.5 version 4.5.0.13 or later, HACMP 5.1 version 5.1.0.4 or later, or HACMP 5.2 or later.
22	Veritas Cluster Server Oracle Solaris Cluster (Sun Cluster)	When Veritas Cluster Server is used. When Oracle Solaris Cluster (Sun Cluster) is used.
25	Support SPC-3 behavior on Persistent Reservation	When one of the following conditions is satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Using Windows Server Failover Clustering (WSFC) ▪ Using Microsoft Failover Cluster (MSFC) ▪ Using Symantec Cluster Server, also known as Veritas Cluster Server (VCS) ▪ Using a configuration other than above with the PERSISTENT RESERVE OUT (Service Action=REGISTER AND IGNORE EXISTING KEY) command, change the status response from Reservation-Conflict to Good-Status when there is not a registered key to be deleted
33	Set/Report Device Identifier enable	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Host mode 03 HP or 05 OpenVMS¹ is used. ▪ You want to enable commands to assign a nickname of the device. ▪ You want to set UUID to identify a logical volume from the host.
39	Change the nexus specified in the SCSI Target Reset	When you want to control the following ranges per host group when receiving Target Reset: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Range of job resetting. ▪ Range of UAs (Unit Attentions) defined.
40	V-VOL expansion	When all of the following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 0C (Deprecated) Windows or 2C Windows Extension is used. ▪ You want to automate recognition of the DP-VOL capacity after increasing the DP-VOL capacity.
43	Queue Full Response	When the command queue is full in your storage system connecting with the HP-UX host, and if you want to respond Queue Full, instead of Busy, from the storage system to the host.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
51	Round Trip Set Up Option ³	If you want to adjust the response time of the host I/O, for example when the distance between MCU and RCU of the TrueCopy (or global-active device) pair is long (approximately 100 kilometers) and Point-to-Point topology is used.
54	(VAAI) Support Option for the EXTENDED COPY command	When the VAAI (vStorage API for Array Integration) function of VMware ESX/ESXi 4.1 or later is used.
63	(VAAI) Support Option for vStorage APIs based on T10 standards	When you connect the storage system to VMware ESXi 5.0 or later and use the VAAI function for T10. Use a combination of this host mode option and host mode option 54.
68	Support Page Reclamation for Linux	When using the Page Reclamation function from the environment which is being connected to the Linux host.
71	Change the Unit Attention for Blocked Pool-VOLs	When you want to change the unit attention (UA) from <code>NOT_READY</code> to <code>MEDIUM_ERROR</code> during the pool-VOLs blockade.
73	Support Option for WS2012	<p>When using following functions provided by Windows Server 2012 (WS2012) or later from the environment which is being connected to the WS2012 or later.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning function ▪ Offload Data Transfer (ODX) function
78	The non-preferred path option	<p>When all of following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Global-active device is used in the configuration with the data centers (Metro configuration). ▪ Hitachi Dynamic Link Manager is used as the alternative path software. ▪ The host group is on the non-optimized path of Hitachi Dynamic Link Manager. ▪ The performance deterioration of I/O responses can be avoided without I/O using the non-optimized path of Hitachi Dynamic Link Manager.
80	Multi Text OFF	By using the iSCSI interface, if the storage system connects with the host of which OS is not supported of the Multi Text function. For instance, connecting the storage system and the host of RHEL5.0 which does not support the Multi Text-function.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
81	NOP-In Suppress Mode	<p>In the environment by iSCSI connection, the delay replying of the Delayed Acknowledgment function which is located on the upper layer is restrained by sending NOP-IN of executing of sense commands such as Inquiry, Test unit ready, or Mode sense. However, select this option when connecting the storage system and the host which is not necessary of the NOP-IN sending. However, when connecting the storage system and the host which does not need of the NOP-IN sending, select this option.</p> <p>For instance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When connecting the storage system and the Open Enterprise Server of Novell Co., Ltd. ▪ When connecting the storage system and winBoot/i of emBoot Co., Ltd..
82	Discovery CHAP Mode	<p>Select this option when the CHAP authentication is performed at the time of the discovery login In the iSCSI connection environment.</p> <p>For instance: When the CHAP authentication is performed at the time of the discovery login in the iSCSI environment of the VMware host and storage system</p>
83	Report iSCSI Full Portal List Mode	<p>When configuring alternate paths in the environment of connecting the VMware host and storage system: If waiting of replying of the target information from the host option mode 83 enabled port other than ports of discovery login, select this host mode option.</p> <p>Apply this host mode option when all of the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Configuring alternate paths in the environment of connecting the VMware host and storage system. ▪ Waiting for replying of the target information from the ports other than ports of discovery login.
88	Nondisruptive migration with HP-UX hosts	<p>When converging multiple host-target ports used in the migration source storage system on the migration target storage system, and enable LUN path definition from a host group belonging to a virtual storage machine to an LDEV defined in a different virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ ON: LUN path definition is enabled. ▪ OFF: LUN path definition is disabled.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
		<p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Apply this host mode option when all the following conditions are met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - You are using the nondisruptive migration function to migrate volumes in multiple old storage models that use the same server. - You need to reduce the number of Target ports used on the migration target storage system. - The host is an HP-UX server. 2. Applying this option to a server other than HP-UX can cause the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Path addition from the server to the migration target storage system might fail. - Display of devices that the server recognizes might be invalid. 3. If a LUN path is defined to an LDEV defined in a virtual storage machine different from the one to which the host group belongs, this option cannot be set to OFF.
91	Disable I/O wait for OpenStack Option	When manually creating host groups (for Fibre Channel) or iSCSI targets (for iSCSI) that are used as the I/O data paths for OpenStack.
96	Change the nexus specified in the SCSI Logical Unit Reset	<p>When you want to control the following ranges per host group when receiving LU Reset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Range of job resetting. ▪ Range of UAs (Unit Attentions) defined.
102	(GAD) Standard Inquiry Expansion for Hitachi Command Suite	<p>When all of the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The OS of the host is Windows (host mode 0C (Deprecated) Windows or 2C Windows Extension) or AIX (host mode 0F AIX), and the MPIO function is used. ▪ Global-active device (GAD) or nondisruptive migration (NDM) is used. ▪ Hitachi Device Manager (HDvM) agent is used.

No.	Host mode option	When to select this option
105	Task Set Full response in the event of I/O overload	When all of following conditions are satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The host mode 0C Windows or 2C Windows Extension is used. ▪ You want to return Task Set Full response from the storage system to the host when an overload of I/Os occurs on the storage system.
110	ODX support for WS2012	When ODX (Offload Data Transfer) provided by Windows Server 2012 or later is used, in the environment with which the WS2012 or later host connects.
113	iSCSI CHAP Authentication Log ⁴	When the result of the CHAP authentication is output to the audit log (DKC).
114	The automatic asynchronous reclamation on ESXi 6.5 or later	When connecting to VMware ESXi 6.5 or later, and when using the zero data page reclamation function which is performed automatically if files on the VMFS (Virtual Machine File System) are deleted. Use a combination of this host mode option and host mode option 63.
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set the UUID when you set host mode option 33 and host mode 05 <code>openvms</code> is used. 2. Set the host mode option 51 for both ports on the local and remote storage systems. 3. This host mode option does not support channel packages for 8FC16 and 16FE10. If these channel packages are used, do not set the host mode option 51. The setting of this host mode option is effective on a basis of a port. Set this host mode option in the iSCSI target 00 of the port. 		

How to find the WWN of a host bus adapter

Before physically attaching the storage system to hosts, some preparation work needs to be performed. After you verify that the Fibre Channel adapters and device drivers are installed on the open-system hosts, you must find the World Wide Name (WWN) of each host bus adapter that will be connected to the storage system.

The WWN is a unique identifier (16 hexadecimal digits) for a host bus adapter in an open-systems host. The method for finding the WWN of a host adapter depends on the operating system of the host. Make sure to record the WWNs of the host adapters, because you will need to enter these WWNs in Device Manager - Storage Navigator windows when you specify the hosts connected to your storage system.

- [Finding a WWN on a Windows host \(on page 339\)](#)
- [Finding a WWN on a Solaris host \(on page 339\)](#)

- [Finding a WWN on an AIX, IRIX, or Sequent host \(on page 340\)](#)
- [Finding a WWN on an HP-UX host \(on page 340\)](#)

Finding a WWN on a Windows host

Emulex Fibre Channel adapters are supported in a Windows environment. For further information about Fibre Channel adapter support, or when using a Fibre Channel adapter other than Emulex, contact customer support for instructions on finding the WWN.

Before attempting to acquire the WWN of an Emulex adapter, confirm whether the driver installed in the Windows 2000 or Windows Server 2003 environment is an Emulex port driver or an Emulex mini-port driver, and then follow the driver instructions.

Procedure

1. Verify that the Fibre Channel adapters and device drivers are installed.
2. Log on to the Windows host with administrator access.
3. Go to the **LightPulse Utility** to open the **LightPulse Utility** window. If you do not have a shortcut to the utility:
 - a. Go to the **Start** menu, select **Find** and choose the **Files and Folders** option.
 - b. On the **Find** dialog box, in **Named** type `lputilnt.exe`, and from the **Look in** list, choose the data drive that contains the Emulex mini-port driver.
 - c. Choose **Find Now** to search for the LightPulse utility.
If you still cannot find the LightPulse utility, contact Emulex technical support.
 - d. Select `lputilnt.exe` from the **Find: Files named** list, and then press **Enter**.
4. On the **LightPulse Utility** window, verify that any installed adapters appear in the tree.
5. In the **Category** list, choose the **Configuration Data** option.
6. In the **Region** list, choose the **16 World-Wide Name** option. The WWN of the selected adapter appears in the list on the right of the window.

Finding a WWN on a Solaris host

JNI Fibre Channel adapters are supported in a Solaris environment. For further information about Fibre Channel adapter support, or if using a Fibre Channel adapter other than JNI, contact customer support for instructions for finding the WWN.

Procedure

1. Verify that the Fibre Channel adapters and device drivers are installed.
2. Log on to the Solaris host with root access.
3. Use the `dmesg |grep Fibre` command to list the installed Fibre Channel devices and their WWNs.
4. Verify that the Fibre Channel adapters listed are correct, and record the listed WWNs.
Example:

```
# dmesg |grep Fibre          <- Enter the dmesg command.
:
fcaw1: JNI Fibre Channel Adapter model FCW
fcaw1: Fibre Channel WWN: 200000e0694011a4      <- Record the WWN.
fcaw2: JNI Fibre Channel Adapter model FCW
fcaw2: Fibre Channel WWN: 200000e06940121e      <- Record the WWN.
#
```

Finding a WWN on an AIX, IRIX, or Sequent host

To find the WWN in an IBM AIX, SGI Irix, or Sequent environment, use the fabric switch that is connected to the host. The method of finding the WWN of the connected server on each port using the fabric switch depends on the type of switch. For instructions on finding the WWN, see the manual of the corresponding switch.

Finding a WWN on an HP-UX host

You can find the WWN in an HP-UX environment.

Procedure

1. Verify that the Fibre Channel adapters and the Fibre Channel device drivers are installed.
2. Log in to the HP-UX host with root access.
3. At the command line prompt, type:

```
/usr/sbin/ioscan -fnC lan
```

This will list the attached Fibre Channel devices and their device file names. Record the Fibre Channel device file name (for example, `/dev/fcms0`).



Note: When the A5158 Fibre Channel adapter is used, at the command line prompt, enter `/usr/sbin/ioscan -fnC fc` for the device name.

4. Use the `fcmsutil` command along with the Fibre Channel device name to list the WWN for that Fibre Channel device. For example, to list the WWN for the device with the device file name `/dev/fcms0`, type:

```
/opt/fcms/bin/fcmsutil /dev/fcms0
```

Record the Fibre Channel device file name (for example, `/dev/td0`).



Note: When using the A5158 Fibre Channel adapter, list the WWN for the device with the device file name as follows:

```
/opt/fcms/bin/fcmsutil <device file name>
```

5. Record the WWN and repeat the above steps for each Fibre Channel device that you want to use.

Result

```

# /usr/sbin/ioscan -fnC lan <- 1
Class      I  H/W Path  Driver      S/W State  H/W Type
Description
=====
lan        0  8/0.5    fcTl_cntl   CLAIMED    INTERFACE  HP
Fibre Channel Mass Storage Cntl
                        /dev/fcms0 <-2
lan        4  8/4.5    fcTl_cntl   CLAIMED    INTERFACE  HP
Fibre Channel Mass Storage Cntl
                        /dev/fcms4 <-2
lan        5  8/8.5    fcTl_cntl   CLAIMED    INTERFACE  HP
Fibre Channel Mass Storage Cntl
                        /dev/fcms5 <-2
lan        6  8/12.5   fcTl_cntl   CLAIMED    INTERFACE  HP
Fibre Channel Mass Storage Cntl
                        /dev/fcms6 <-2
lan        1  10/8/1/0 btlan4      CLAIMED    INTERFACE
PCI(10110009) -- Built-in #1
lan        2  10/8/2/0 btlan4      CLAIMED    INTERFACE
PCI(10110009) -- Built-in #2
lan        3  10/12/6  lan2        CLAIMED    INTERFACE
Built-in LAN
                        /dev/diag/lan3 /dev/ether3 /dev
/lan3
#
# fcmsutil /dev/fcms0 <-3
      Local N_Port_ID is = 0x000001
      N_Port Node World Wide Name = 0x10000060B0C08294
      N_Port Port World Wide Name = 0x10000060B0C08294 <- 4
      Topology = IN_LOOP
      Speed = 1062500000 (bps)
      HPA of card = 0xFFB40000
      EIM of card = 0xFFFA000D
      Driver state = READY
      Number of EDB's in use = 0
      Number of OIB's in use = 0
Number of Active Outbound Exchanges = 1
Number of Active Login Sessions = 2
#
1: Enter the ioscan.
2: Device name
3: Enter the fcmsutil command.
4: Record the WWN.

```

Creating a host group and registering hosts in the host group (Fibre Channel)

After discovering the WWNs of the host bus adapters in a Fibre Channel environment, use this procedure to create a host group and register the hosts in the host group.

You can connect multiple server hosts of different platforms to each port of your storage system. When configuring your storage system, you should group server hosts connected to the storage system by host groups. For example, if HP-UX hosts and Windows hosts are connected to a port, create one host group for HP-UX hosts and another host group for Windows hosts, and then register the HP-UX hosts to the HP-UX host group and register the Windows hosts to the Windows host group.



Note: This example applies to configurations in which all HP-UX hosts are on the same cluster.


Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Before you can set LU paths, you must register the hosts in host groups. For example, if HP-UX hosts and Windows hosts are connected to a port, register HP-UX hosts and Windows hosts separately in two different host groups.
- When registering a host, you must also specify the WWN of the host bus adapters.
- When registering hosts in multiple host groups, set the security switch (LUN security) to enabled, and then specify the WWN of the host bus adapter.
- When registering a host, you can assign a nickname to the host bus adapter. If you assign a nickname, you can easily identify each host bus adapter in the LUN Manager window. Although WWNs are also used to identify each host bus adapter, the nickname that you assign will be more helpful because you can name host bus adapters after the host installation site or for the host owners.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click **Create Host Groups**.
4. In the **Create Host Groups** window, enter the host group name in the **Host Group Name** box.
 - It is convenient if you name each host group after the host platform.
 - A host group name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). However, you cannot use the following symbols for host group names: \ / : ; * ? " < > |
 - You cannot use space characters for the first and the last characters in host group names.
 - Host group names are case-sensitive. For example, the host group names `wnt` and `Wnt` represent different host groups.

5. Select the resource group in which a host group is created.
If you select **Any**, ports to which you may add host groups within all ports assigned to a user are displayed in the **Available Ports** list. If you select other than **Any**, ports to which you may add host groups within the ports assigned to the selected resource group are displayed in the **Available Ports** list.
6. Select a host mode from the **Host Mode** list. When selecting a host mode, you must consider the platform and some other factors.
7. Select hosts to be registered in a host group.
If the desired host has ever been connected with a cable to another port in the storage system, select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list.
If there is no host to be registered, skip this step and move to the next step.
Otherwise, a host group with no host would be created.
If the desired host has never been connected via a cable to any port in the storage system, perform the following steps:
 - a. Click **Add New Host** under the **Available Hosts** list.
The **Add New Host** dialog box opens.
 - b. Enter the desired WWN in the **HBA WWN** box.
 - c. If necessary, enter a nickname for the host bus adapter in the **Host Name** box.
 - d. Click **OK** to close the **Add New Host** dialog box.
 - e. Select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list.
8. Select the port to which you want to add the host group. For details about host modes, see [Host modes for host groups \(on page 331\)](#).
If you select multiple ports, you may add the same host group to multiple ports by one operation.
9. If necessary, click **Option** and select host mode options. For details about host mode options, see [Host mode options \(on page 332\)](#).

 **Note:** When you click **Option**, the dialog box expands to display the list of host mode options. The **Mode No.** column indicates option numbers. Select an option you want to specify and click **Enable**.
10. Click **Add** to add the host group.
By repeating steps from 2 to 8, you can create multiple host groups.
If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **Host Group Properties** window appears. If you select a row and click **Remove**, the message appears asking whether you want to remove the selected row or rows. If you want to remove the row, click **OK**.
11. Click **Finish** to display the **Confirm** window.
To continue to add LUN paths, click **Next**.
12. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box.
A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **Host Group Properties** window appears.

13. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Setting a command device

Use this procedure to set a command device for Command Control Interface (CCI) in-band operations.

If you plan to execute CCI commands from an open-systems host (in-band method), you must set at least one logical device as a CCI command device. The command device functions as the interface to the CCI software on the host. The command device is dedicated to CCI operations and cannot be used by any other applications. You can configure more than one command device (primary and alternate command devices) to ensure continued operations in the event the primary command device is blocked.

A command device can be any OPEN-V volume that is accessible to the host on which CCI is installed. A volume as small as 36 MB can be used as a command device. Make sure the volume to be used as a command device does not contain any user data. The command device will be inaccessible to host applications.

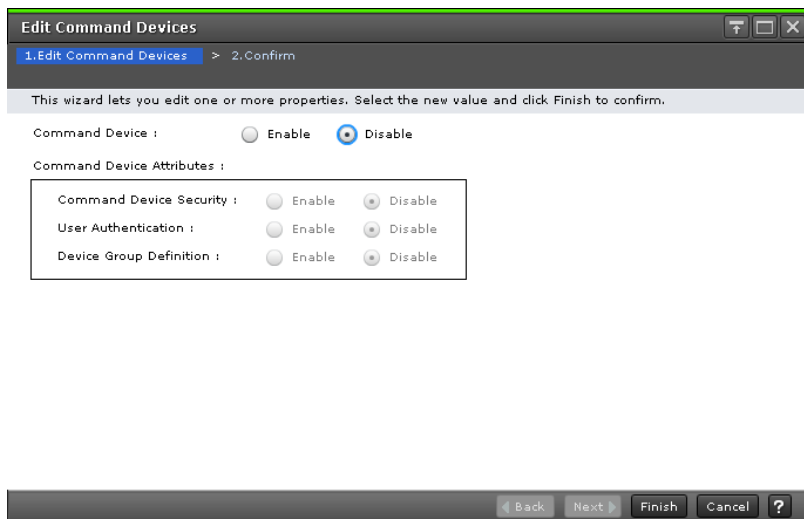


Note: The following volumes cannot be specified as a command device:

- Volume whose access attribute is other than read/write.
- TrueCopy pair volume.
- Global-active device pair volume.
- ShadowImage pair volume.
- Universal Replicator pair volume.
- Virtual volume (V-VOL) for Thin Image.
- Volume reserved by Data Retention Utility.
- Journal volume.
- Pool volume that includes a DP-VOL with the direct mapping attribute enabled.
- Remote command device.
- LDEV with the ALU attribute.
- Quorum disk for global-active device.
- LDEV with ALUA mode enabled.
- LDEV with the T10 PI attribute enabled.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, expand the **Storage Systems** tree, and click **Logical Devices**.
2. On the **LDEVs** tab, select the volume, and then click **More Actions** > **Edit Command Devices**.



3. For **Command Device**, select **Enable**.
4. In **Command Device Attributes**, enable the desired attributes.

Option	Description
Command Device Security	Enable this attribute if you plan to use the CCI Data Protection Facility.
User Authentication	Enable this attribute if you plan to execute provisioning commands (raidcom) on the storage system.
Device Group Definition	Enable this attribute if you plan to use device groups.

For details about these functions, see the *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*.

5. Click **Finish**.
6. In the **Confirm** window, verify the settings, and enter the task name.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

7. Click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Next steps

After you set the command devices on the storage system, you must define the command devices in the CCI configuration definition file. For details, see the CCI documentation.

Configuring LU paths

When provisioning your storage system, and after configuring ports, hosts, and host groups, you must configure Fibre Channel or iSCSI target LU paths. LUN Manager is required for these tasks. You can also modify the LU paths configuration when the system is in operation.

Configure LU paths workflow

- Define LU paths.
- Set a UUID, if desired.
- Define alternate LU paths.

Defining LU paths

In a Fibre Channel or iSCSI environment, you must define LU paths and associate host groups or iSCSI targets with logical volumes. For example, if you associate a host group or an iSCSI target consisting of three hosts with logical volumes, LU paths are defined between the three hosts and the logical volumes.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**, and select the target host group or iSCSI target.
3. Click **Add LUN Paths**.
4. In the **Add LUN Paths** window, select the desired LDEVs from the **Available LDEVs** table, and then click **Add**.
Selected LDEVs are listed in the **Selected LDEVs** table.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Select the desired host groups or iSCSI targets from the **Available Host Groups** or **Available iSCSI Targets** table, and then click **Add**.
Selected host groups or iSCSI targets are listed in the **Selected Host Groups** or **Available iSCSI Targets** table.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Confirm the defined LU paths.
If the LDEV name or the LUN ID is edited, perform the following:
 - a. Select the checkboxes of LDEV IDs that you want to change.
 - b. Click **Change LDEV Settings**.
 - c. In the **Change LDEV Settings** window, specify values in **Prefix** and **Initial Number**.

- d. Click **OK**.

To change the LUN ID, perform the following:

- a. In the LUN ID column (Any number Sets of Paths), select the host groups (iSCSI Targets) checkboxes.
 - b. Select the checkbox of the LDEV ID that you want to change.
 - c. Click **Change LUN IDs**.
 - d. In the **Change LUN IDs** window, specify the value in **Initial LUN ID**.
 - e. Click **OK**.
9. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
 10. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
 11. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Setting a UUID

You can set an arbitrary ID to identify a logical volume from the host when host mode option 33 is set to on. The ID is referred to as the UUID (universally unique identifier) and is typically composed of a Prefix and an Initial Number.

Note the following when setting a UUID:

- If host mode 05 OpenVMS is used with host mode option 33 set to ON, LUs that do not have UUID settings are inaccessible.
- If host mode 05 OpenVMS is used with host mode option 33 set to OFF, LUs that have UUID settings are inaccessible.

The following rules apply to setting a UUID:

- These characters cannot be used for UUID: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |
- A space character cannot be used as the first or the last character of a UUID.
- UUID is case-sensitive. For example, Abc and abc are different UUIDs.

To keep track of device information, create a correspondence table similar to the example in [Correspondence table for defining devices \(on page 349\)](#).

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Before editing UUID settings, review the information about [UUID requirements \(on page 348\)](#).

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.

2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab, click the link of the **Port ID** of the host group.
4. Click the link of a **Host Group Name**.
5. Click the **LUNs** tab.
6. Select one or more logical units to which volumes are assigned (if a volume is assigned to an LU, the columns on the right of the LUN column are not empty).
When multiple LUs are selected, the same UUID is set to all selected LUs.
7. Click **More Actions**, and then select **Edit UUIDs**.
8. In the **Edit UUIDs** window, in **Prefix**, type the UUID.
If a UUID is already specified, you can change it. The UUID before changing appears in **UUID** in the **Edit UUIDs** window. However, if multiple LUs, or **N/As** are selected, the **Prefix** box is blank.

For an OpenVMS server host, enter a UUID composed of a **Prefix** and an **Initial Number**. The **Prefix** may include up to 5 digits, from 1 to 32767, and the **Initial Number** may include up to 5 digits, from 0 to 32767.

For a server host other than OpenVMS, enter a UUID composed of a **Prefix** and an **Initial Number**. The **Prefix** may include up to 64 ASCII characters (letters, numerals and symbols) and the **Initial Number** may include up to 9 digits.

When changing the server host OS from HP-UX to OpenVMS, or from OpenVMS to HP-UX, the same UUID cannot be used continuously. Clear the UUID setting (see [Clearing a UUID setting \(on page 353\)](#)), and then set the proper UUID for a server host.

9. To sequentially number the UUIDs, type the first digit in the **Initial Number** box. The following rules apply to the Initial Number:

```
1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3, ... 9).
08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10, ... 99).
If the host mode is set to OpenVMS, the numbers are as follows:
8, 9, 10, ... 99
23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25, ... 99).
```

10. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
11. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
12. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

UUID requirements

A UUID (user-definable LUN identifier) is typically composed of a Prefix and an Initial Number.

The following rules apply to defining a UUID:

- These characters cannot be used for a UUID: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |
- A space character cannot be used as the first or the last character of a UUID.
- UUIDs are case-sensitive. For example, *Abc* and *abc* are different UUIDs.

Also note the following when defining a UUID:

- If host mode 05 *OpenVMS* is used with host mode option 33 set to *ON*, LUs that do not have UUID settings are inaccessible.
- If host mode 05 *OpenVMS* is used with host mode option 33 set to *OFF*, LUs that have UUID settings are inaccessible.
- For an *OpenVMS* server host, the Prefix can include up to 5 digits, from 1 to 32767, and the Initial Number can include up to 5 digits, from 0 to 32767.
- For a server host other than *OpenVMS*, the Prefix can include up to 64 ASCII characters (letters, numerals and symbols) and the Initial Number can include up to 9 digits.

Correspondence table for defining devices

When configuring the storage system, you will need definition information about devices set by LUN Manager, for example, LUs, LDKC:CU:LDEV, or UUID. A correspondence table similar to the example below is useful and recommended when collecting this information.

Port	LU	LDKC:CU:LDEV	UUID	OpenVMS device file name
BR	0000	00:00:30	148	\$1\$dga148
BR	0001	00:00:31	149	\$1\$dga149
.
.
.

Defining alternate LU paths

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

You may want to define alternate LU paths so that if one LU path fails, you will be able to switch to its alternate path.

To create an alternate LU path, copy the original LU path from one port to another. For example, if you want to define an alternate for the LU path from the CL1-A port to logical volume 00:00:01, copy the LU path from the CL1-A port to another port.

Use one of these methods to copy LU paths:

- Copy all the LU paths defined in a host group or an iSCSI target
- Copy one or more (but not all) LU paths defined in a host group or an iSCSI target

Before taking the following steps:

- See [Rules, restrictions, and guidelines for managing LUs \(on page 322\)](#) for important information.
- To define alternate paths when LUN security is disabled, you must redefine the LU path.

Copying all LU paths defined in a host group

Use this procedure to copy all LU paths defined in a host group.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Expand the target host group and click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Host Groups** pane, select the **Port ID** of a host group.
4. Click **More Actions** and select **Create Alternative LUN Paths**.
5. In the **Create Alternative LUN Paths** window, select the copy destination port from the **Available Ports** table, and then click **Add**.

The selected ports appear in the **Selected Ports** table.

6. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

8. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Copying all LU paths defined in an iSCSI target

Use this procedure to copy all LU paths defined in a host group.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Expand the target host group, and click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.

3. In the **iSCSI Targets** pane, select the **Port ID** of a iSCSI target.
4. Click **More Actions** and select **Create Alternative LUN Paths**.
5. In the **Create Alternative LUN Paths** window, select the copy destination port from the **Selected Ports** table, and then click **Add**.
The selected ports appear in the **Selected Ports** table.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Copying selected (but not all) LU paths defined in a host group

You can use this procedure to copy the LU paths associated with a selected host group.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab, click the link of the **Port ID** of the host group.
4. Click the link of a **Host Group Name**.
5. Click **LUNs** tab.
6. Select one or more logical units to which volumes are assigned (if a volume is assigned to a logical unit, the columns on the right of the LUN column are not empty).
7. Select **Copy LUN Paths**.
8. In the **Copy LUN Paths** window, select the host group to which you want to paste paths from the **Available Host Groups** table, and then click **Add**.
The selected host groups appear in the **Selected Host Groups** table.
9. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
10. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
11. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Copying selected (but not all) LU paths defined in an iSCSI target

You can use this procedure to copy the LU paths associated with a selected host group.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab, click the link of the **Port ID** of the iSCSI target.
4. Click the link of a **iSCSI target**.
5. Click **LUNs** tab.
6. Select one or more logical units to which volumes are assigned (if a volume is assigned to a logical unit, the columns on the right of the LUN column are not empty).
7. Select **Copy LUN Paths**.
8. In the **Copy LUN Paths** window, select the iSCSI target to which you want to paste paths from the **Available iSCSI Targets** table, and then click **Add**.
The selected host groups appear in the **Selected iSCSI Targets** table.
9. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
10. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
11. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Managing LU paths

You can modify the LU paths configuration with LUN Manager when the system is in operation, but not when host I/O is in progress. Managing LU paths includes the following tasks:

- [Deleting LU paths \(on page 352\)](#)
- [Clearing a UUID setting \(on page 353\)](#)
- [Viewing LU path settings \(on page 354\)](#)

Deleting LU paths

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.



Caution: Do not delete LU paths when host I/O is in progress.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click the link of a host group.

4. Select the **LUNs** tab.
5. Select the LU path you want to delete.



Caution: When an LDEV is selected and **Delete LUN Paths** is performed, all LUN paths of the selected LDEV are deleted by default.

6. Click **More Actions** and select **Delete LUN Paths**.
7. In the **Delete LUN Paths** window, confirm that the LU paths that you want to delete are listed in **Selected LUN Paths**.

If LU paths that you do not want to delete are listed, select the LU path you do not want to delete, and then click **Remove from Delete process**.



Caution: When an LDEV is selected and **Delete LUN Paths** is performed, all LUN paths of the selected LDEV are deleted by default.

8. If necessary, check the **Delete all defined LUN paths to above LDEVs** check box. When checked, all additional LU paths on the selected LDEVs will be deleted.
9. Click **Finish** to open the **Confirm** window.
If you want to start shredding operations to delete the data of the volume, click **Next**. For detailed information about shredding operations, see the *Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide*.
10. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
11. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
12. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.
If you delete many paths at one time, the deletion process may take time and the dialog box may seem to hang temporarily.

Clearing a UUID setting

You can clear the UUID setting that has been set to identify a logical volume from the host.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane of the **Logical Devices** window, click **Create LDEVs**.
4. Select the LDEVs with the UUID setting you want to clear.
5. Select **Delete UUIDs**. The **Delete UUIDs** window opens.

6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Viewing LU path settings

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click the link of a host group or iSCSI target.
4. Select the **LUNs** tab.
5. Select a **LUN ID** to open the **LUN Properties** window.

Releasing LUN reservation by host

The following explains how to release forcibly a LUN reservation by a host.

Before you begin

You must have the Storage Administrator (System Resource Management) role to perform this task.



Caution: If you perform the releasing a LUN reservation by a host, the host which is connected to LDEV by LUN path is affected.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click the link of a **Host Group Name**.
4. Select the **LUNs** tab.
5. Click **More Actions**, and then click **View Host-Reserved LUNs**.
6. In the **Host-Reserved LUNs** window, select a LUN, and then click **Release Host-Reserved LUNs**.
7. Confirm the settings and enter a unique **Task Name**.
A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.

- 8. Click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

LUN security on ports

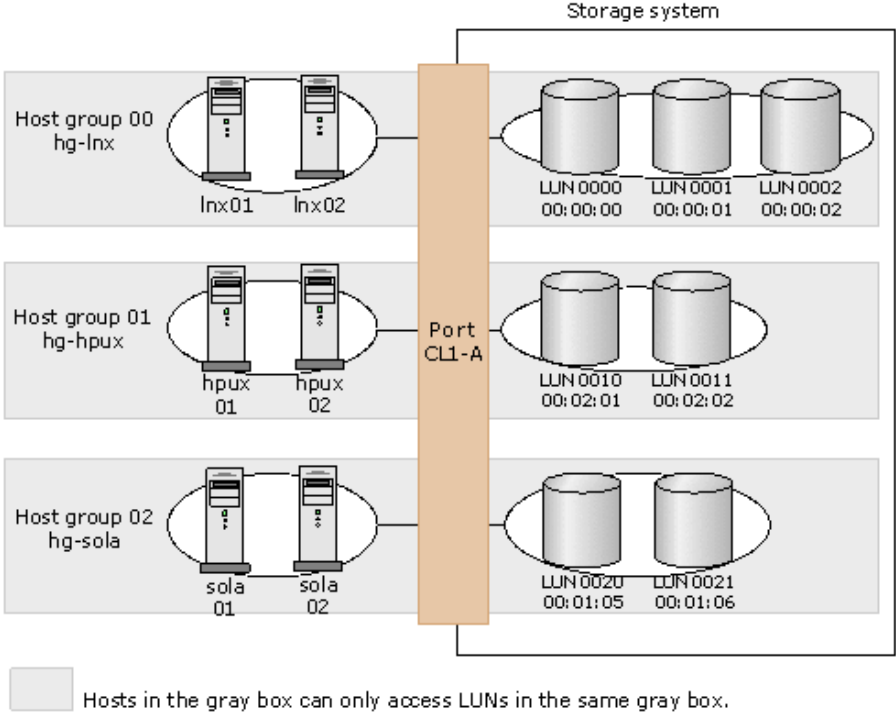
To protect mission-critical data in your storage system from illegal access, apply security policies to logical volumes. Use LUN Manager to enable LUN security on ports to safeguard LUs from illegal access.

If LUN security is enabled on ports, host groups affect which host can access which LUs. Hosts can access only the LUs associated with the host group to which the hosts belong. Hosts cannot access LUs associated with other host groups. For example, hosts in the `hp-ux` host group cannot access LUs associated with the `windows` host group. Also, hosts in the `windows` host group cannot access LUs associated with the `hp-ux` host group.

Examples of enabling and disabling LUN security on ports

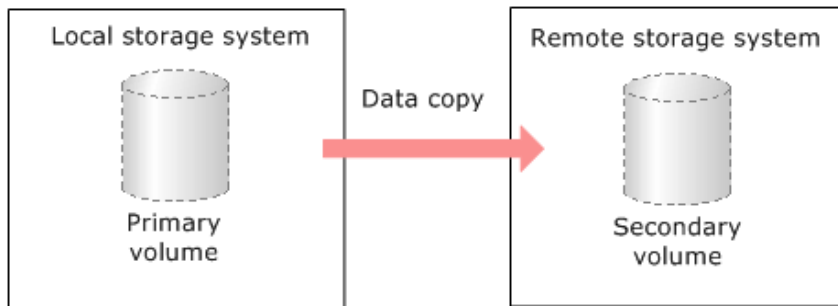
Enabling LUN security

In the following example, LUN security is enabled on port CL1-A. The two hosts in the `hg-lnx` host group can access only three LUs (00:00:00, 00:00:01, and 00:00:02). The two hosts in the `hg-hpux` host group can access only two LUs (00:02:01 and 00:02:02). The two hosts in the `hg-solar` host group can access only two LUs (00:01:05 and 00:01:06).



Disabling LUN security

Typically, you do not need to disable LUN security on ports. For example, if LUN security is disabled on a port, the connected hosts can access only the LUs associated with host group 0, and cannot access LUs associated with any other host group.



Host group 0 is the only host group reserved, by default, for each port. If you use the LUN Manager window to view a list of host groups in a port, host group 0, indicated by the number 00, usually appears at the top of the list.

The default name of host group 0 consists of the port name, a hyphen, and the number 00. For example, the default name of host group 0 for port 1A is 1A-G00. However, you can change the default name of the host group 0.

LUN security is disabled, by default, on each port. When you configure your storage system, you must enable LUN security on each port to which hosts are connected.

Enabling LUN security on a port

Before you begin

One of the following roles is required to perform this task:

- Storage Administrator (System Resource Management)
- Storage Administrator (Provisioning)

To protect mission-critical data in your storage system from illegal access, secure the logical volumes in the storage system. Use LUN Manager to secure LUs from illegal access by enabling LUN security on ports.

By default, LUN security is disabled on each port. When registering hosts in multiple host groups, you must enable LUN security (set the switch to enabled). When you change LUN security from disabled to enabled, you must specify the WWN of the host bus adapter.



Caution: It is best to enable LUN security on each port when configuring your storage system. Although you can enable LUN security on a port when host I/O is in progress, I/O is rejected with a security guard after enabling.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.

4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. Select the **Port Security** check box, and then select **Enable**.
6. Click **Finish**. A message appears, confirming whether to switch the LUN security. Clicking **OK** opens the **Confirm** window.
7. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Disabling LUN security on a port

Before you begin

One of the following roles is required to perform this task:

- Storage Administrator (System Resource Management)
- Storage Administrator (Provisioning)



Caution: Do not disable LUN security on a port when host I/O is in progress.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. In the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window, click the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port, and then click **Edit Ports**.
5. Select the **Port Security** check box, and then select **Disable**.
6. Click **Finish**. If disabling LUN security, a message appears, indicating that only host group 0 (the group whose number is 00) is to be enabled. Clicking **OK** opens the **Confirm** window.
7. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Overview of iSCSI operations

Internet SCSI (iSCSI) is a protocol for sending and receiving SCSI commands through an IP network. iSCSI transfers data in block units. An IP-SAN that uses an existing Ethernet can be constructed by using iSCSI. In a network for iSCSI, LUN Manager manages access paths between hosts and volumes for each port in your storage system.

LUN Manager provides the following features for managing iSCSI-connected volumes:

- Connecting multiple hosts to an iSCSI port

You can connect more than one host to a port on your storage system.

When setting up host connections, for each host you specify the settings for host mode, volume, and iSCSI target. Each host can access a volume simulating a dedicated port to the host even if that host shares the port with other hosts.

- Mapping volumes to hosts

You can map or assign volumes to the hosts on your network. You have complete flexibility to share or restrict volume access among the hosts.

- Network security

You can enable or disable CHAP (Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol), a security protocol that requires users to enter a secret for access.

Network configuration for iSCSI

An iSCSI connection makes it possible to construct an IP-SAN by connecting many hosts and storage systems at a low cost. However, iSCSI greatly increases the I/O workload of the network and the storage system. When using iSCSI, it is very important that you configure the network so that the workload among the network, port, controller, and drive is properly distributed.

Even though the LAN switches and NICs are the same, there are some important differences when you use iSCSI, particularly regarding the LAN connection. You need to focus particular attention to the following:

- The storage system must have 16 GB or more of shared memory.
- iSCSI consumes almost all of the available Ethernet bandwidth, unlike a conventional LAN connection. This can significantly degrade the performance of both the iSCSI traffic and the LAN. Therefore, it is very important that you separate the iSCSI IP-SAN and the office LAN.

When a packet loss of the network occurs in IP-SAN, the iSCSI transfer performance greatly deteriorates due to a congestion control of TCP. Although the packet loss and the congestion control are unavoidable by nature of the network, check the network construction for potential mitigating solutions, such as separating the segments, to minimize the effect of packet loss in the IP-SAN construction.

- Host I/O load affects the iSCSI response time. In general, the greater the I/O traffic is, the lower the iSCSI performance.
- Make sure you have a failover path between host and iSCSI, so that you can update the firmware without stopping the system.
- If the Delayed Ack of the host setting is enabled in the iSCSI connection configuration, the host I/O delaying occurs and it might significantly affect the performance. To avoid the host I/O delaying, disable the Delayed Ack of the host.

- Since network devices are less expensive than FC devices, IP-SAN can be constructed inexpensively, but the system reliability depends on the nature and quality of each device. Be careful of the device selection.
- When setting iSCSI User Name and Secret by CHAP authentication, check that the designation is correct. If the setting is incorrect, the storage system does not operate normally due to the following reasons:
 - Login is impossible for the initiator (user) whose login is allowed.
 - Login is possible for the initiator (user) whose login is not allowed.
- In the environment that CHAP authentication is used, when replacing the HBA of the connected host, it is necessary to change the setting of the CHAP authentication. Be sure to change the CHAP authentication setting after replacing the HBA. However, when using NIC, the CHAP authentication setting change is unnecessary because the iSCSI software initiator setting does not change even if replacing NIC.
- When changing the MTU size from Default, it is necessary to change the port setting of the storage system, switch, and all the devices of the host.
- When CAN is used, both iSCSI Function and NIC Function exist in the setting mode, but only NIC Function is supported.
- **Ping transmission/receipt**

When performing a Ping transmission test from an iSCSI port to an unreachable address*, the I/O processing is delayed or times out. To avoid this, perform the Ping test only when the host I/O processing is not executed. In addition, do not perform the Ping test at the same time from two or more iSCSI ports.

*An unreachable address is an address that cannot reach (is not connected to) the Ping transmission source both physically and logically. The result of the Ping test is a time-out because no response is acquired.

**Note:**

- **Fragmentation**

The iSCSI ports do not support fragment processing (dividing a packet). When the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a switch is smaller than that of an iSCSI port, packets might be lost, and data cannot be transferred correctly. The MTU value for the switch must be the same as or greater than the MTU value for the iSCSI port. For details of the MTU setting and value, see the user documentation for the switch.

The MTU value for the iSCSI port must be greater than 1500. In a WAN environment in which the MTU value is 1500 or smaller, fragmented data cannot be transferred. In this case, lower the maximum segment size (MSS) of the WAN router according to the WAN environment, and then connect to an iSCSI port. Alternatively, use a WAN environment in which the MTU value is greater than 1500.

- **Switch**

Among the physical ports of the network switch, when Spanning Tree is enabled for the port connecting directly to the iSCSI ports of the host and the storage system, the communication might be blocked. Turn OFF the Spanning Tree protocol function (for details, see the manual for the switch).

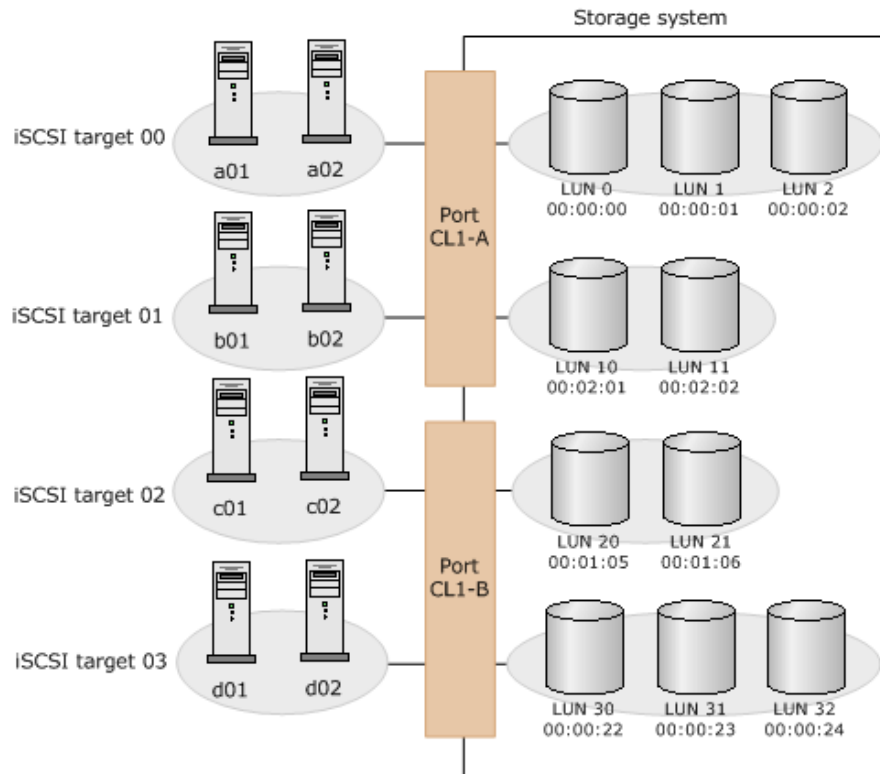
- **Changing iSCSI port settings**

When a setting of an iSCSI port is changed while the host is connected, the connection is temporarily disconnected and reconnected by the host. Wait for one minute or more after changing the iSCSI port settings to verify that the port is reconnected by the host.

- **IPv6 global address**

When the IPv6 Mode is set to Enabled on an iSCSI port and the IPv6 global address is set to automatic, the address is determined by acquiring a prefix from an IPv6 router. If the IPv6 router does not exist in the network, the address cannot be determined and as a result, the iSCSI connection might be delayed. Therefore, when the IPv6 Mode is set to Enabled, confirm that the IPv6 router is connected to the same network, and then set the IPv6 global address automatically.

The following figure shows LU paths configuration in a Fibre Channel environment. The figure shows the iSCSI target 00 associated with three logical volumes (00:00:00, 00:00:01, and 00:00:02). LU paths are defined between the two hosts in the iSCSI target 00 and the three logical volumes.



You can define paths between a single server host and multiple LUs. The figure shows that each of the two hosts in the iSCSI target 00 can access the three LUs.

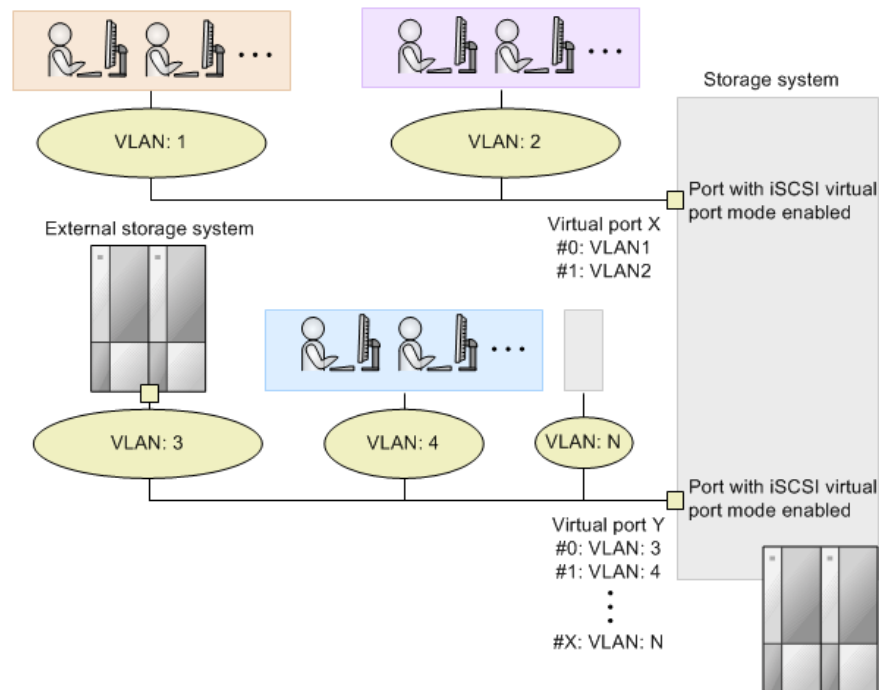
You can also define paths between multiple server hosts and a single LU. The figure shows that the LU identified by the LDKC:CU:LDEV number 00:00:00 is accessible from the two hosts that belong to the iSCSI target 00.

Multi VLAN operations with iSCSI virtual port mode

Multi VLAN operations are supported with the iSCSI virtual port mode. The iSCSI virtual port mode enables you to add up to 16 virtual ports to a single physical iSCSI port. Virtual ports are used to access the storage system using multiple segments that are divided by VLAN, enabling efficient use of ports and network resources.

You can perform the following multi VLAN operations using Command Control Interface. For details about enabling and disabling iSCSI virtual ports, see the *Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide*.

- Enabling and disabling the iSCSI virtual port mode
- Adding and deleting virtual ports



Caution: Observe the following cautions when using the iSCSI virtual port mode:

- The iSNS function cannot be used when the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled.
- If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled, the port information when the virtual port mode is disabled is taken over to the iSCSI virtual port ID (0). If iSCSI port IDs from 1 to 15 are added, specify IPv4 or IPv6.
- If an IPv6 address is used on a virtual port, multiple virtual ports cannot be used in the same network.
- When the setting for the virtual port mode is changed, Link Down/Link Up (temporary disconnecting) occurs on the target iSCSI port. Because this operation temporarily disconnects the iSCSI port (Link Down/Link Up), you should change the mode only when the I/O loads are low.

Managing hosts

Changing WWN or nickname of a host bus adapter

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

In Fibre Channel environments, host bus adapters can be identified by WWNs or nicknames.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Hosts** tab, and then click the **Port ID** of the **HBA WWN** or **Host Name** you want to change.
4. Click **Edit Host**.
 - a. To change the WWN, select the **HBA WWN** check box, and then type a new WWN.
 - b. To change the nickname, select a **Host Name** check box, and then type a new nickname.

If you check **Apply same settings to the HBA WWN in all ports**, new settings affect other ports. For example, if the same host bus adapter (the same WWN) is located below ports CL1-A and CL2-A in the tree, when you select the host bus adapter (or the WWN) from below one of the ports and change the nickname to hba1, the host bus adapter below the other port will also be renamed hba1.

However, new settings will not affect any port if:

- The resulting nickname is already used as the nickname of a host bus adapter connected to the port.
- The resulting WWN exists in the port.

5. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

6. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

7. Click **Apply**.

If **Apply same settings to the HBA WWN in all ports** is checked, a dialog box opens listing the host bus adapter to be changed. Confirm the changes and click **OK**. Otherwise, click **Cancel**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing HBA iSCSI name or nickname of a host bus adapter**Before you begin**

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

In iSCSI environments, host bus adapters can be identified by HBA iSCSI names or nicknames.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.

3. Select the **Hosts** tab, and then click the **Port ID** of the **HBA iSCSI Name** or **Host Name** you want to change.
4. Click **Edit Host**.
 - a. To change the HBA iSCSI name, select the **HBA iSCSI Name** check box, and then type a new iSCSI name.
 - b. To change the nickname, select a **Host Name** check box, and then type a new nickname.

If you check **Apply same settings to the HBA iSCSI Name in all ports**, new settings affect other ports. For example, if the same host bus adapter (the same iSCSI Name) is located below ports CL1-A and CL2-A in the tree, when you select the host bus adapter (or the iSCSI Name) from below one of the ports and change the nickname to hba1, the host bus adapter below the other port will also be renamed hba1.

However, new settings will not affect any port if:

- The resulting nickname is already used as the nickname of a host bus adapter connected to the port.
- The resulting iSCSI name exists in the port.

5. Click **Finish**.

The **Confirm** window appears.

6. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

7. Click **Apply**.

If **Apply same settings to the HBA WWN in all ports** is checked, a dialog box opens listing the host bus adapter to be changed. Confirm the changes and click **OK**. Otherwise, click **Cancel**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing the name, host mode, or host mode options of a host group

Use this procedure to change the name, host mode, or host mode options (HMOs) of a host group.



Note:

- You cannot edit a host group for an external port.
- For an initiator port, you can change only the host mode option of a host group.

**Caution:**

- Before changing the host mode of a host group, you should back up data on the port to which the host group belongs. Changing the host mode should not be destructive, but data integrity cannot be guaranteed without a backup.
- When a port has a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute and you need to change the host mode, the operation might fail if you configure more than one port at a time. For ports that have a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute, perform this operation on one port at a time.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. On the **Host Groups** tab, select the **Port ID** of the host group you want to change.
4. Click **More Actions** and then click **Edit Host Groups**.
 - a. To change the name of the host group, select **Host Group Name**, and then enter the new host group name.
 - b. To change the host mode, select **Host Mode**, and then select the new host mode. For details about host modes, see [Host modes for host groups \(on page 331\)](#).
 - c. To change a host mode option, select the host mode option and click **Enable** or **Disable**. For details about host mode options, see [Host mode options \(on page 332\)](#).
5. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Changing iSCSI target setting

Use LUN Manager to change the name or host mode of a iSCSI target. You can change only the host mode option of the host group for the initiator port. You cannot use this procedure on the host group for the external port.

**Caution:**

- Before changing the host mode of an iSCSI target, you should back up data on the port to which the iSCSI target belongs. Setting host mode should not be destructive, but data integrity cannot be guaranteed without a backup.
- When a secret is changed two times or more for the same iSCSI target successively, perform the next change after waiting for the completion of the task that has been applied. If the secret is changed without waiting for the completion of the task that has been applied, the user name which you expected to be changed can not be incorporated.

Before you begin

To perform this task, following roles are required:

- Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role
- Security Administrator (View and Modify) role

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. On the **iSCSI Targets** tab, select the **Port ID** of the iSCSI target you want to change.
4. Display the **Edit iSCSI Targets** window by performing the following:
 - Click **Edit iSCSI Targets**. Or from the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups, iSCSI**, and then **Edit iSCSI Targets**.
5. In the **Edit iSCSI Targets** window, select **ON** and specify the values. The following values can be modified:
 - **iSCSI Target Alias:** Specifies the alias of the iSCSI target.
 - **iSCSI Target Name:** Selects the format from `iqn` or `eui`, and specifies the name of the iSCSI target.
 - **Host Mode:** Selects the host mode and the host mode option. For detailed information about host mode options, see [Host mode options \(on page 332\)](#).
 - **Authentication Method:** Selects the CHAP authentication mode from `Comply with Host Setting`, `CHAP`, or `None`.
 - **Mutual CHAP:** Selects **Enable** or **Disable**. If **Enable** is selected, the mutual authentication mode is performed. If **Disable** is selected, the unidirectional authentication mode is performed.
 - **User Name:** Specifies the user name. You can use case-sensitive alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols:
 - . - + @ _ = : [] , ~
 - **Secret:** Specifies the password. You can use alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols in a secret:
 - . - + @ _ = : [] , ~

6. Click **Finish**.

If **OK** is clicked, either the **Edit iSCSI Targets** window or the **Confirm** window appears. If the **Confirm** window appears proceed to the next step. If the **Edit iSCSI Targets** window appears, go to step 3 and edit the settings again.

7. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.

You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.

8. Click **Apply**.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Removing hosts from iSCSI targets

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select hosts in the **Hosts** tab.
4. Display the **Remove Hosts** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **Remove Hosts**.
 - Click **Remove Hosts (iSCSI)**.
 - Click **More Actions**, then select **Remove Hosts(iSCSI)**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI**, then **Remove Hosts**.
5. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
6. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > |. The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
7. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Initializing host group 0

Use this procedure to set host group 0 (zero) to its initial state. This removes all the WWNs from host group 0 and also removes all the LU paths related to host group 0. The procedure also changes the host mode of host group 0 to Standard and initializes the host group name. For example, if you initialize host group 0 for the port CL1-A, the name of host group 0 will change to 1A-G00.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click the link of a host group.
4. Select the **Host Groups** tab.
5. Select the host group 0 which is displayed as `host group (00)`.
6. Click **More Actions** and select **Delete Host Groups**.
7. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box.
A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
8. Click **Apply** in the **Delete Host Groups** window.
A message appears, asking whether to delete it.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.
9. Click **OK** to close the message.

Deleting a host bus adapter from a host group

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Click the link of a host group.
4. Select a host bus adapter.
5. Click **More Actions** and **Remove Hosts**.
6. If necessary, check **Remove selected hosts from all host groups containing the hosts in the storage system** in the **Remove Hosts** window.
If the option is checked, the selected hosts are removed from all host groups containing the hosts in the storage system.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
9. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Deleting WWNs from the WWN table

If you disconnect a host that has been connected with a cable to your storage system, the WWN of the host remains listed in the Login WWNs tab. Use this procedure to delete WWNs of a host that is no longer connected to your storage system from the WWN list.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Login WWNs** tab.
To confirm the statuses of WWNs, click **View Login WWN Statuses** window.
4. In the **Login WWNs** tab, select the WWNs you want to delete.
5. Click **Delete Login WWNs**.
6. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
7. In the **Task Name** text box, enter the task name.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : , ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
8. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Deleting a host group

Use this procedure to delete a host group.

If host group 0 (zero) is deleted, all WWNs that belong to host group 0 are deleted and all LU paths that correspond to host group 0 are deleted. The host mode of host group 0 becomes Standard, and the host group name is initialized. To remove all the WWNs and LU paths from host group 0, you must initialize host group 0. For details, see [Initializing host group 0 \(on page 367\)](#).



Caution:

- If you plan to delete a host group that includes paths to LDEVs with the GAD reserve attribute, reduce the number of LDEVs in the host group to 100 or fewer before deleting the host group. Host group deletion might fail if the number of LDEVs in the host group is too large.
- When a port has a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute and you need to configure the port (delete a host group, set a command device, or change the host mode, topology, AL-PA, or transfer speed), the operation might fail if you configure more than one port at a time. For ports that have a path defined for an LDEV with the GAD reserve attribute, perform these operations on one port at a time.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.


Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Host Groups** tab, or select a port from the tree then select the **Host Groups** tab.
4. Select a host group that you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete Host Groups**.
6. In the **Delete Host Groups** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.
7. Click **OK** to close the message.

Deleting an iSCSI target

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

-  **Caution:** This task cannot be performed if corresponding with following:
- Host I/O processing is being performed.
 - Hosts are not reserved (mounted) in the iSCSI target.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the iSCSI target that you want to delete.
4. Display the **Delete iSCSI Targets** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **More Actions**, then select **Delete iSCSI Targets**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI**, then **Delete iSCSI Targets**.
5. In the **Delete iSCSI Targets** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name**, type a unique name for this task or accept the default, then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.
6. Click **OK** to close a message.

Deleting login iSCSI names

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.



Note: If you disconnect a host that has been connected through a cable to your storage system, the iSCSI name for the host will remain in the Login WWNs/iSCSI Names tab. Use the **Delete Login WWNs** window to delete from the Login WWNs/iSCSI Names tab. A login iSCSI name for a host that is no longer connected to your storage system.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Login WWNs/iSCSI Names** tab. To confirm the statuses of iSCSI names, click **View Login iSCSI Name Statuses** window.
4. Select the iSCSI names you want to delete.
5. Display the Delete Login iSCSI Names window by performing one of the following
 - Click **Delete Login iSCSI Names**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI**, then **Delete Login iSCSI Names**.
6. In the **Delete Login iSCSI Names** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name**, type a unique name for this task or accept the default, then click **Apply**.
7. Click **OK** to close a message.

Adding a selected host to a host group

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Hosts** tab, or select a port from the tree then select the **Hosts** tab.
4. Select a host that you want to add.
5. Select **Add to Host groups**.
6. Select the desired host groups from the **Available Host Groups** table, and then click **Add**.

Selected host groups are listed in the **Selected Host Groups** table.

If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **Host Group Properties** window appears.

7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
8. In the **Add to Host groups** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.
9. Click **OK** to close the message.

Adding a host to the selected host group

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab.
4. Select the host groups for the host you want to add.
5. Select **Add to Hosts**.
6. Select the desired host from the **Available Hosts** table, and then click **Add**.

Selected host groups are listed in the **Selected Hosts** table.

If the desired host has never been connected with a cable to any port in the storage system, perform the following steps:

- a. Click **Add New Host** under the **Available Hosts** list.
The **Add New Host** dialog box opens.
 - b. Enter the desired WWN in the **HBA WWN** box.
 - c. If necessary, enter a nickname for the host bus adapter in the **Host Name** box.
 - d. Click **OK** to close the **Add New Host** dialog box.
 - e. Select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
 8. In the **Add to Host groups** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.
 9. Click **OK** to close the message.

Adding a host to the selected iSCSI target

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab.
4. Select the iSCSI targets for the host you want to add.
5. Select **Add to Hosts**.
6. Select the desired host from the **Available Hosts** table, and then click **Add**.

Selected iSCSI targets are listed in the **Selected Hosts** table.

If the desired host has never been connected with a cable to any port in the storage system, perform the following steps:

- a. Click **Add New Host** under the **Available Hosts** list.
The **Add New Host** dialog box opens.
 - b. Select the format from **iqn** or **eui**. Enter the desired HBA iSCSI name in the **HBA iSCSI Name** box.
 - c. If necessary, enter a nickname for the host bus adapter in the **Host Name** box.
 - d. Click **OK** to close the **Add New Host** dialog box.
 - e. Select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list.
7. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window appears.
 8. In the **Add to Host groups** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.
If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.
 9. Click **OK** to close the message.

Confirming communication status

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. From the Storage Navigator, click **Actions, Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI**, and then **Authentication** to open the **Test Communication Statuses** window.
2. Select the port ID from **Local Port ID (From)**.
3. In **IP Address (To)**, select **IPv4** or **IPv6** then specify the IP address.
4. Click **Test**.
5. In the **Communication Statuses** table, confirm the result.
6. Click **Close**.

Setting the T10 PI mode on a port

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- Access to the Fibre Channel board port is required.
- The port speed must be 16 Gbps.

**Caution:**

If you change the T10 PI mode of one port, the T10 PI mode of the other port paired with changed port also needs to be changed. You must verify the mode of each port in the pair before changing the T10 PI mode. Make sure the ports in each pair are the same in the resource group. The following shows pairs of port IDs.

If you change the setting on one of the ports in the pair, the setting on the other port in the pair will also be changed:

- Port IDs 1x, 3x, 5x, and 7x (where x is a letter from A to M) are collectively changed. For example, if 1A of the port ID is changed, 3A, 5A, 7A of port IDs are also changed.
- Port IDs 2x, 4x, 6x, and 8x (where x is a letter from A to M) are collectively changed. For example, if 2B of the port ID is changed, 4B, 6B, 8B of port IDs are also changed.



Note: If the T10 PI mode is enabled between the path of the target port and LDEV, you cannot disable the T10 PI mode of the port.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **Ports** tab.
4. Select the desired port.
To collectively change the T10 PI mode of ports, do not intermix ports with enabled or disabled T10 PI modes.
5. Click **Edit Ports**.
6. Click **OK** on the message window.
7. Select **Enable** or **Disable** on the **Edit T10 PI Mode** window.
8. Click **Finish**. The **Confirm** window appears.
9. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings. In the **Task Name**, type a unique name for this task or accept the default, then click **Apply**. If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Creating iSCSI targets and registering hosts in an iSCSI target

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.
- The installed shared memory capacity must be 16 GB or more. If additional shared memory is required, contact customer support.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Enter the iSCSI alias in the **iSCSI Target Alias** box. If the **Use Default Name** checkbox is selected, the iSCSI target alias is input by default.
4. Enter the iSCSI target name in the **iSCSI Target Name** box. Select the format from **iqn** or **eui**. If the **Use Default Name** check box is selected, the iSCSI target name is input by default.
5. Select the resource group in which an iSCSI target is created. If you select **Any**, ports to which you can add iSCSI targets within all ports assigned to a user are displayed in the **Available Ports** list. If you select other than **Any**, ports to which you can add iSCSI targets within the ports assigned to the selected resource group are displayed in the **Available Ports** list.
6. Select a host mode from the **Host Mode** list. When selecting a host mode, you must consider the platform and some other factors.
7. If necessary, click **Host Mode Options** and select host mode options.

When you click **Host Mode Options**, the dialog box expands to display the list of host mode options. The **Mode No.** column indicates option numbers. Select an option you want to specify and click **Enable**.

8. Select hosts to be registered in an iSCSI target. If the desired host has ever been connected with a cable to another port in the storage system, select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list. If there is no host to be registered, skip this step and move to the next step. Otherwise, an iSCSI target with no host would be created. If the desired host has never been connected through a cable to any port in the storage system, perform the following steps:
 - a. Click **Add New Host** under the **Available Hosts** list. The **Add New Host** dialog box opens.
 - b. Select the format from **iqn** or **eui**.
 - c. Enter the desired HBA iSCSI name in the **HBA iSCSI Name** box.
 - d. If necessary, enter a nickname for the host bus adapter in the **Host Name** box.
 - e. Click **OK** to close the **Add New Host** dialog box.
 - f. Select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available Hosts** list.
9. Select the port to which you want to add the iSCSI target. If you select multiple ports, you can add the same iSCSI target to multiple ports by one operation.

10. Select **CHAP**, **None**, or **Comply with Host Setting** in the **Authentication Method** list. If **CHAP** is selected, specify following:
 - **Mutual CHAP:** Select **Enable** or **Disable**. If **Enable** is selected, the mutual authentication mode is performed. If **Disable** is selected, the unidirectional authentication mode is performed.
 - **User Name:** If **Disable** is selected in **Mutual CHAP**, this item is optionally specified. If **Enable** is selected in **Mutual CHAP**, this item must be specified.
 - **Secret** and **Re-enter Secret:** If **Disable** is selected in **Mutual CHAP**, this item is optionally specified. If **Enable** is selected in **Mutual CHAP**, this item must be specified.
11. Select CHAP users to be registered in an iSCSI target. If the CHAP user has ever been connected with a cable to another port in the storage system, select the desired host bus adapter from the **Available CHAP Users** list. If there is no host to be registered, skip this step and move to the step 11. Otherwise, an iSCSI target with no CHAP user would be created. If the desired CHAP user has never been connected through a cable to any port in the storage system, perform the following steps:
 - a. Click **Add New CHAP User** under the **Available CHAP Users** list. The **Add New CHAP User** dialog box opens.
 - b. Specify an user name, and secret.
 - c. Click **OK** to close the **Add New CHAP User** dialog box.
 - d. Select the desired CHAP user from the **Available CHAP Users** list.
12. Click **Add** to add the iSCSI target. By repeating steps from 2 to 10, you can create multiple iSCSI targets. If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **iSCSI Target Properties** window appears. If you select a row and click **Remove**, a message appears asking whether you want to remove the selected row or rows. To remove the row, click **OK**.
13. Click **Finish** to display the **Confirm** window. To continue to add LUN paths, click **Next**.
14. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box. A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default. If you select a row and click **Detail**, the **iSCSI Target Properties** window appears.
15. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Editing iSCSI port settings

Use this procedure to edit the iSCSI port settings.

When the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for a port, the following items cannot be set using Device Manager - Storage Navigator:

- IPv4 Settings
- IPv6 Mode
- IPv6 Settings
- TCP Port Number
- Selective ACK
- Delayed ACK
- Maximum Window Size
- Ethernet MTU Size
- Keep Alive Timer
- VLAN Tagging Mode
- iSNS Server

To edit iSCSI ports for which the virtual port mode is enabled, use Command Control Interface. For details, see the *Command Control Interface* documentation.

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (System Resource Management and Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**, and select the **Ports** tab.
3. Select the desired port, and click **Edit Ports**.
4. Select the check box to change the option and specify values. Items that can be changed are as follows:
 - **IPv4 Settings**: Specifies **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, or **Default Gateway**.
 - **IPv6 Mode**: Specifies enable or disable of this mode.
 - **IPv6 Settings**: Specifies **Link Local Address**, **Global Address**, **Global Address 2**, or **Default Gateway** if **IPv6 Mode** is selected to **Enable**.
 - **Port Security**: Specifies enable or disable.
 - **Port Speed**: Specifies the data transfer speed.
 - **TCP Port Number**: Specifies the TCP port number.
 - **Selective ACK**: Specifies enable or disable.
 - **Delayed ACK**: Specifies enable or disable.
 - **Maximum Window Size**: Specifies the size of the maximum window.

- **Ethernet MTU Size:** Specifies the MTU size.
 - **Keep Alive Timer:** Specifies the keep alive timer.
 - **VLAN Tagging Mode:** Specifies enable or disable.
 - **iSNS Server:** Specifies enable or disable. If this option is selected to **Enable**, specify **IP Address** or **TCP Port Number**.
 - **CHAP User Name:** Specifies the CHAP user name.
 - **Secret and Re-enter Secret:** Specifies the secret which is used for host authentication.
5. Click **Finish**. A message appears, confirming whether to switch the LUN security. Clicking **OK** opens the **Confirm** window.
 6. In the **Confirm** window, confirm the settings, in **Task Name** type a unique name for this task or accept the default, then click **Apply**. If **Go to tasks window for status** is checked, the **Tasks** window opens.

Adding CHAP users

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the iSCSI target to register CHAP users.
4. Display the **Add CHAP Users** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **More Actions**, select **Add CHAP Users**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI, Authentication**, then **Add CHAP Users**.
5. In the **Available CHAP Users** table, select the CHAP user row. Click **Add**. The selected CHAP user is registered in the **Selected CHAP Users** table. If the CHAP user does not exist, perform the following steps to register a new CHAP user:
 - a. Click **Add New CHAP User** under the **Available CHAP Users** table. The **Add New CHAP User** dialog box opens.
 - b. Specify **User Name** and **Secret**.
 - c. Click **OK** to close the **Add New CHAP User** dialog box.
6. Click **Finish** to display the **Confirm** window.
7. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box. A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.

8. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Editing CHAP users

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **CHAP** users.
4. Display the **Edit CHAP Users** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **Edit CHAP Users**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI, Authentication**, then **Edit CHAP Users**.
5. Specify **User Name** and **Secret**.
6. Click **Finish** to display the **Confirm** window.
7. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box. A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
8. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Removing CHAP users

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **CHAP** users.
4. Display the **Remove CHAP Users** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **Remove CHAP Users**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI, Authentication**, then **Remove CHAP Users**.

5. Specify **User Name** and **Secret**.
6. Click **Finish** to display the **Remove CHAP Users** window.
7. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box. A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
8. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Removing target CHAP users

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the **iSCSI** target.
4. Display the **Remove Target CHAP Users** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **More Actions > Remove Target CHAP Users**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI, Authentication**, then **Remove Target CHAP Users**.
5. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box. A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
6. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window. If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Removing port CHAP users

Before you begin

- The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.
- The Security Administrator (View and Modify) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets**.
3. Select the port CHAP user port name to be removed.

4. Display the **Remove Port CHAP Users** window by performing one of the following:
 - Click **Remove Port CHAP Users**.
 - From the **Actions** menu, select **Ports/Host Groups, iSCSI, Authentication**, then **Remove Port CHAP Users**.
5. Confirm the settings and enter the task name in the **Task Name** box.

A task name can consist of up to 32 ASCII characters (letters, numerals, and symbols). Task names are case-sensitive. (date) - (task name) is input by default.
6. Click **Apply** in the **Confirm** window.

If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Chapter 8: Working with ALUs and SLUs for vSphere VVOL

The storage systems can be integrated with a VMware® ESXi host or VMware® vCenter Server by Storage Provider for VMware vCenter, which provides support for vSphere APIs for Storage Awareness (VASA). Snapshot and replication functions are used in storage systems that are configured with Administrative Logical Units (ALUs) and Subsidiary Logical Units (SLUs).

You can use Device Manager - Storage Navigator to create ALUs, view the ALUs and SLUs on the storage system, and unbind SLUs from ALUs.

Do not perform operations on LDEVs with the SLU or ALU attribute from Device Manager - Storage Navigator or Command Control Interface (CCI). If you must perform operations on LDEVs with the SLU or ALU attribute, contact customer support.



Caution: If you must change the configuration of LDEVs with the SLU or ALU attribute using Device Manager - Storage Navigator or CCI, you must first shut down the associated virtual machines. When the virtual machine is shut down, LDEVs with the SLU or ALU attribute related to the virtual machine are unbound automatically.

If virtual machines cannot be shut down, unbind the LDEVs with the SLU attribute from LDEVs with the ALU attribute related to the virtual machines using Device Manager - Storage Navigator, and then perform the configuration change operation. For instructions, see [Unbinding the SLUs from the ALUs \(on page 385\)](#). If you accidentally change the configuration while the virtual machine is running without first unbinding the LDEVs with the SLU attribute, contact your storage administrator.

For information about setting up and operating VMware virtualization servers, see the *Hitachi Command Suite Administrator Guide*.

For information about installing, deploying, and configuring Storage Provider for VMware vCenter, see the *Hitachi Storage Provider for VMware vCenter Deployment Guide*.

Creating LDEVs with the ALU attribute

Use this procedure to create LDEVs with the ALU attribute.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. In the Device Manager - Storage Navigator **Explorer** pane, click **Storage Systems**, expand the target storage system, and then click **Logical Devices**.
2. In the **LDEVs** tab, click **Create LDEVs**.
3. In the **Create LDEVs** window, from the **Provisioning Type** list, select **ALU**.
4. In **Number of LDEVs**, type the number of LDEVs to be created.
5. In **LDEV Name**, specify a name for this LDEV.
 - a. In **Prefix**, type the characters that will become the fixed characters for the beginning of the LDEV name. The characters are case sensitive.
 - b. In **Initial Number**, type the initial number that will follow the prefix name.
6. Click **Options** to show more options.
7. In **Initial LDEV ID**, make sure that an LDEV ID is set. To confirm the used number and unavailable number, click **View LDEV IDs** to open the **View LDEV IDs** window.
 - a. In **Initial LDEV ID** in the **Create LDEVs** window, click **View LDEV IDs**.

In the **View LDEV IDs** window, the matrix vertical scale represents the second-to-last digit of the LDEV number, and the horizontal scale represents the last digit of the LDEV number. The **LDEV IDs** table shows the available, used, and disabled LDEV IDs.

In the table, used LDEV numbers appear in blue, unavailable numbers appear in gray, and unused numbers appear in white. LDEV numbers that are unavailable may be already in use, or already assigned to another emulation group (group by 32 LDEV numbers).
 - b. Click **Close**
8. In **SSID**, type four digits, in hexadecimal format (0004 to FFFF), for the SSID.
9. To confirm the created SSID, click **View SSIDs** to open the **View SSIDs**.
 - a. In the **Create LDEVs** window, in **Initial SSID**, click **View SSIDs**. In the **SSIDs** window, the **SSIDs** table shows the used SSIDs.
 - b. Click **Close**.

The **Create LDEVs** window appears.
10. In the CLPR list, select the CLPR ID.
11. From the **MP Blade** list, select an MP blade to be used by the LDEVs.
 - If you assign a specific MP blade, select the ID of the MP blade.
 - If you can assign any MP blade, click **Auto**.
12. Click **Add**.

The created LDEVs are added to the **Selected LDEVs** table.

The **Provisioning Type** and **Number of LDEVs** must be set. If these required items are not registered, you cannot click **Add**.

13. If necessary, change the following LDEV settings:
 - Click **Edit SSIDs** to open the **SSIDs** window. If the new LDEV is to be created in the CU, change SSID to be allocated to the LDEV.
 - Click **Change LDEV Settings** to open the **Change LDEV Settings** window.
14. If necessary, delete an LDEV from the **Selected LDEVs** table.
Select an LDEV to delete, and then click **Remove**.
15. Click **Finish**.
The **Confirm** window opens.
To continue setting the LU path and defining a logical unit, click **Next**.
16. In the **Task Name** text box, type a unique name for the task or accept the default.
You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / : ; * ? " < > | . The value "date-window name" is entered by default.
17. Click **Apply**.
If the **Go to tasks window for status** check box is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Viewing the ALUs and SLUs in the storage system

Use this procedure to view the ALUs and SLUs in the storage system. You can also view the ALUs and SLUs on the ESXi host or vCenter Server.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane, click **More Actions > View ALUs/SLUs**.
The **ALUs / SLUs** window displays the ALU or SLU ID, LDEV ID, and LDEV name of each volume with the ALU or SLU attribute. For SLUs the provisioning type of each volume (DP-VOL or Thin Image volume) is also displayed.

ALU ID	LDEV ID	LDEV Name
60060E813000323000320000000093F	00:09:3F	
60060E8130003230003200000000940	00:09:40	
60060E8130003230003200000000941	00:09:41	
60060E8130003230003200000000945	00:09:45	
60060E8130003230003200000000946	00:09:46	
60060E8130003230003200000000947	00:09:47	
60060E8130003230003200000000948	00:09:48	

Unbinding the SLUs from the ALUs

Use this procedure to unbind the SLUs from one or more ALUs. You can also unbind SLUs by using the ESXi host or vCenter Server.

Before you begin

The Storage Administrator (Provisioning) role is required to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. In the **LDEVs** pane, select the ALUs for which you want to unbind the SLUs. The ALUs have the value **ALU** in the **Attribute** column.
4. Click **More Actions > Unbind SLUs**.
5. Enter a task name or accept the default, and then click **Apply**.

If **Go to tasks window for status** is selected, the **Tasks** window appears.

Chapter 9: Troubleshooting for provisioning

Troubleshooting for provisioning operations involves identifying the cause of the error and resolving the problem. For information about the error messages displayed by Device Manager - Storage Navigator, see *Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator Messages*. If you are unable to solve a problem, please contact customer support.

Troubleshooting Dynamic Provisioning

The following table provides troubleshooting information for Dynamic Provisioning.

If you are unable to solve a problem, or if you encounter a problem not listed, please contact customer support.

When an error occurs during operations, the error code and error message are displayed in the error message dialog box. For details about error messages, see *Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator Messages*.

Problem	Causes and solutions
Cannot create a DP-VOL.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ Usage of the pool has reached to 100%.▪ Something in the storage system is blocked.▪ The available capacity of DP-VOL is restricted due to the value of Subscription-Limit set for the pool. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276).▪ Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages in order to release pages in which zero data are stored. See About releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 292).▪ Adjust the value of Subscription Limit for the pool. See Changing the pool subscription limit (on page 255).▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.

Problem	Causes and solutions
Cannot add a pool-VOL.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1,024 pool-VOLs are already defined in the pool. ▪ The pool-VOL does not fill the requirements for a pool-VOL. ▪ Something in the storage system is blocked. <p>Solution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Change the setting of the LDEV to satisfy the requirement of the Pool-VOL. See Pool-VOL requirements (on page 123).
A pool-VOL is blocked. SIM code 627xxx is reported.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A failure occurred in data drives greater than the parity group redundancy. The redundancy of the parity group depends on the number of the blocked PDEVs (data drives). For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the parity group configuration is 3D +1P and failures occur in two or more drives, the failures are considered to have occurred in data drives beyond the parity group redundancy. • When the parity group configuration is 6D+2P and failures occur in three or more drives, the failures are considered to have occurred in data drives beyond the parity group redundancy. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
A pool is blocked.	<p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
A pool cannot be restored.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Processing takes time, because something in the storage system is blocked. ▪ Usage of the pool has reached to 100%.

Problem	Causes and solutions
	<p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ After waiting for a while, click refresh the display, and check the pool status. ▪ Add some pool-VOLs to the pool to increase the capacity of the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276). ▪ Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages in order to release pages in which zero data are stored. See About releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 292). ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
<p>A pool cannot be deleted.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pool usage is not 0. ▪ External volumes are removed from the pool before you delete the pool. ▪ DP-VOLs have not been deleted. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Confirm that the pool usage is 0 after the DP-VOLs are deleted, and that you can delete the pool. ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
<p>A failure occurs to the application for monitoring the volumes installed in a host.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Free space of the pool is insufficient. ▪ Some areas in the storage system are blocked. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Check the free space of the pool and increase the capacity of the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276). ▪ Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages in order to release pages in which zero data are stored. See About releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 292). ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
<p>When the host computer tries to access the port, error occurs and the host cannot access the port.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Free space of the pool is insufficient. ▪ Some areas in the storage system are blocked.


Problem	Causes and solutions
	<p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Check the free space of the pool and increase the capacity of the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276). ▪ Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages in order to release pages in which zero data are stored. See About releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 292). ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.
<p>When you are operating Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator, a timeout occurs frequently.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The load on the Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator computer is too heavy, so that it cannot respond to the SVP. ▪ The period of time until when time-out occurs is set too short. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Wait for a while, then try the operation again. ▪ Verify the setting of the environment parameter of Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator RMI time-out period. For information about how to set the RMI time-out period, see the <i>System Administrator Guide</i>.
<p>DP-VOL capacity cannot be increased.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The total capacity for the DP-VOLs to be expanded exceeds the capacity for the Estimated Configurable V-VOL Capacity in the Pools window. For details, see Pools window (on page 517). ▪ To identify a cause, see Resolving errors when using CCI to perform Data Retention Utility operations (SSB1:2E31/B9BF/B9BD) (on page 400). <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ After refreshing the display, confirm whether the processing for increasing DP-VOL capacity meets the conditions described in Requirements for increasing DP-VOL capacity (on page 289). ▪ Retry the operation after 10 minutes or so. ▪ Ask customer support to solve the problem.

Problem	Causes and solutions
<p>Cannot reclaim zero pages in a DP-VOL.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Zero pages in the DP-VOL cannot be reclaimed from Device Manager - Storage Navigator because the DP-VOL does not meet conditions for releasing pages in a DP-VOL. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Make sure that the DP-VOL meets the conditions described in Releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 293).
<p>The DP-VOL cannot be released if the process to reclaim zero pages in the DP-VOL is interrupted.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pages of the DP-VOL are not released because the process of reclaiming zero pages was interrupted. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Make sure that the DP-VOL meets the conditions described in Releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 293).
<p>Cannot release the Protect attribute of the DP-VOLs.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pool is full. ▪ The pool-VOL is blocked. ▪ The pool-VOL that is an external volume is blocked. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Add pool-VOLs to the pool to increase the free space in the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276). ▪ Perform the reclaiming zero pages operation to release pages in which zero data are stored. See Releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 293). ▪ Contact customer support to restore the pool-VOL. ▪ If the blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, verify the status of the path blockade and the external storage system. ▪ After performing above solutions, release the Protect attribute (Data Retention Utility) of the DP-VOL.

Problem	Causes and solutions
SIM code 624000 was issued.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pools and DP-VOLs configuration, of which the size is more than the supported capacity, is created. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Remove pools that are not used. ▪ Remove DP-VOLs that are not used. ▪ Remove Thin Image pairs that are not used. ▪ Shrink pools capacities.
Formatted pool capacity displayed in the View Pool Management Status window does not increase.	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Another pool is being formatted. ▪ The pool usage level reaches up to the threshold. ▪ The pool is blocked. ▪ I/O loads to the storage system are high. ▪ The cache memory is blocked. ▪ Pool-VOLs are blocked. ▪ Pool-VOLs that are external volumes are blocked. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Confirm the display again after waiting for a while. ▪ Add pool-VOLs to the pool to increase the free space in the pool. See Expanding a pool (on page 276). ▪ Perform the operation to reclaim zero pages in order to release pages in which zero data are stored. See About releasing pages in a DP-VOL (on page 292). ▪ Confirm the display again after decreasing I/O loads of the storage system. ▪ Contact customer support to restore the cache memory. ▪ Contact customer support to restore the pool-VOL. ▪ If the blocked pool-VOL is an external volume, confirm following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Path blockage • Status of the storage system

Problem	Causes and solutions
<p>The shrink pool operation ends abnormally.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cache memory maintenance was performed while the pool capacity was being decreased. ▪ Cache memory errors occurred while the pool capacity was being decreased. ▪ The I/O load to DP-VOLs associated with the pool is too high. ▪ DP-VOLs associated with the pool are being blocked. <p>Solution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Restore the cache memory, and then perform the shrink pool operation again. ▪ Wait until the I/O load to DP-VOLs associated with the pool is lower, and then perform the shrink pool operation again. ▪ Delete or format DP-VOLs associated with the pool, and then perform the shrink pool operation again.
<p>DP-VOLs whose capacity saving setting is Compression or Deduplication and Compression are created, but the capacity saving setting of the DP-VOLs is set to Disabled.</p>	<p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ After creating DP-VOLs, errors occur when the capacity saving setting changes to Compression or Deduplication and Compression, and then the processing aborts. <p>Solution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Resolve the causes of the errors, and then change the capacity saving setting to Compression or Deduplication and Compression by using the Edit LDEVs window.

Problem	Causes and solutions
<p>One of the following problems occurred:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When the capacity saving status of DP-VOLs is Enabling, the initialize processing whereby the capacity saving setting is enabled is stopped. ▪ When the capacity saving status of DP-VOLs is Rehydrating, the processing by which the capacity saving setting changes to disabled is stopped. Also, the progress ratio in the LDEV Properties window does not display. 	<p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Errors occur while the capacity saving status is changing, and then the processing aborts. After recovering from the errors, the resumed status change process fails. <p>Solution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For DP-VOLs, change Capacity Saving to Disabled, and then retry the operation by using the Edit LDEVs window.
<p>A capacity saving status with DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data is Disabled changes to the Failed status.</p>	<p>Cause:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The shared memory is volatilized and the storage system is restarted. ▪ The pool is initialized. ▪ The pool volumes are formatted. ▪ The processing for deleting the DP-VOL failed. <p>Solution:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Format the operation target DP-VOLs.
<p>A capacity saving status with DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data is Enabled changes to the Failed status.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The shared memory is volatilized and the storage system is restarted. ▪ The pool is initialized. ▪ The pool volumes are formatted. ▪ The processing for deleting the DP-VOL failed.

Problem	Causes and solutions
	<p>Solution:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the pool, back up all of the DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled. 2. Block the deduplication system data volume and all of the DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled. 3. If you are using Device Manager - Storage Navigator, select the pool with which the deduplication system data volumes are associated and format the LDEV. If you are using CCI, specify the deduplication system data volume, and execute the raidcom initialize pool command. 4. Perform the Format LDEVs operation for all blocked DP-VOLs whose Deduplication Data status is Enabled. <div style="border: 1px solid black; background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Caution: Do not perform the restore LDEV operation because these DP-VOLs cannot be used again.</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Restore the back-up data, or retry the delete LDEV operation. <p>Note: If you format DP-VOLs for which the capacity saving setting is disabled and Deduplication Data is Enabled, the capacity saving setting for the DP-VOLs might become Compression. If you format the deduplication system data volume for a pool that has DP-VOLs for which the capacity saving setting is disabled and Deduplication Data is Enabled, the capacity saving setting for the DP-VOLs might become Deduplication and Compression. Therefore, verify the capacity saving setting of DP-VOLs after the format operation completes.</p>
<p>When the storage system is restarted, one of following problems occur:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For the DP-VOLs, Capacity Saving Status indicates Deleting Volume, and the progress indicates a hyphen. 2. For the DP-VOLs, Capacity Saving Status indicates Disabled. 	<p>Delete the DP-VOLs corresponding to 1 or 2 again.</p>

Problem	Causes and solutions
<p>For a DP-VOL, the Capacity Saving Status indicates Rehydrating, but the processing progress does not increase.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pool used capacity exceeded the depletion threshold. ▪ The target DP-VOL is being blocked. ▪ The pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked, or the pool volumes are being blocked. ▪ The deduplication system data volume of the pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked. ▪ The SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode. <p>Solutions:</p> <p>If the pool used capacity exceeded the depletion threshold, take the following action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify the free capacity of the pool, and then expand the pool capacity for the capacity shortage. 2. Perform the operation to release pages in DP-VOLs to reclaim zero pages. <p>If the target DP-VOL is being blocked, take the following action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Restore the blocked DP-VOL. <p>If the pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked, or if the pool volumes are being blocked, take the following action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Restore the pool or pool volumes. <p>If the SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode, change to View mode.</p>
<p>For a DP-VOL, the Capacity Saving Status indicates Deleting Volume, however the processing progress does not increase.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pool used capacity exceeded the depletion threshold. ▪ The pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked, or the pool volumes are being blocked. ▪ The deduplication system data volume of the pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked. ▪ The SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode.

Problem	Causes and solutions
	<p>Solutions:</p> <p>If the pool used capacity exceeded the depletion threshold, take the following action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify the free capacity of the pool, and then expand the pool capacity for the capacity shortage. 2. Perform the operation to release pages in DP-VOLs to reclaim zero pages. <p>If the pool with which the target DP-VOL is associated is being blocked, or if the pool volumes are being blocked, take the following action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Restore the pool or pool volumes. <p>If the SVP or a Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary window is in Modify mode, change to View mode.</p>
<p>The pool auto expansion function in an accelerated compression-enabled parity group does not work.</p>	<p>Causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The pool auto expansion function for the pool is disabled. ▪ The pool auto expansion function for the parity group is disabled. ▪ Available LDEV IDs are insufficient. ▪ Available cache management devices are insufficient. ▪ Maintenance work is in process. ▪ Shared memory is insufficient. <p>Solutions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable the pool auto expansion function for the pool. ▪ After a shrink pool operation fails, if the pool auto expansion function for a parity group is disabled, disable accelerated compression for the pool, and then re-enable accelerated compression for the pool. ▪ Delete LDEVs that are not used. ▪ Stop the maintenance work. ▪ Delete pools that are not used. ▪ Delete V-VOLs that are not used. ▪ Delete all TI pairs that contain P-VOLs of unnecessary TI pairs.

Resolving errors when using CCI to perform Dynamic Provisioning operations (SSB1: 0x2e31/0xb96d/0xb980)

If an error occurs while using CCI to perform Dynamic Provisioning operations, you might identify the cause of the error by referring to the log appearing on the CCI window or the CCI operation log file.

The CCI operation log file is stored in the following directory.

```
/HORCM/log*/curlog/horcmlog_HOST/horcm.log
```

where

- * is the instance number.
- HOST is the host name.

The following is an example of a log entry in the CCI window.

It was rejected due to SKEY=0x05, ASC=0x20,SSB=0xB9E1,0xB901 on Serial#(64015)

↓
SSB1

↓
SSB2

The following table provides troubleshooting information for Dynamic Provisioning operations performed using CCI.

Error code (SSB2)	Error contents	Solutions
0x0b27	The command cannot be executed because the virtual LDEV is not defined.	Define the virtual LDEV and then execute the command.
0x2c3a	The operation was rejected because the specified volume was being enabled for the attribute of the data direct mapping.	Specify the volume of which the attribute of the data direct mapping is disabled.
0x2c77	The operation was rejected because the specified DP-VOL was a deduplication system data volume.	Specify a DP-VOL that is not a deduplication system data volume.
0x2c78	The operation failed because the specified DP-VOL is being deleted.	Specify a DP-VOL that is not being deleted.
0x9100	The command cannot be executed because user authentication is not performed.	Perform user authentication.
0xb900/ 0xb901/ 0xaf28	Error occurred when increasing DP-VOL capacity operation.	Ask customer support to solve the problem.

Error code (SSB2)	Error contents	Solutions
0xb902	The operation was rejected because the configuration was being changed by SVP or Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator, or because the DP-VOL capacity was going to be increased by another instance of the CCI.	Increase the DP-VOL capacity after finishing operations on your storage system, such as the Virtual LUN operation or a maintenance operation. See Caution in Requirements for increasing DP-VOL capacity (on page 289) .
0xaf22	The operation was rejected because the specified volume is placed online with the OS which does not support EAV (Extended Address Volume).	Increase the DP-VOL capacity after the specified volume is placed online with the OS which supports EAV.
0xaf25	The operation to increase capacity cannot be performed on the specified DP-VOL.	Check the emulation type of the specified DP-VOL.
0xaf26	The operation was rejected because of lack of cache management devices due to increased capacity.	Specify a capacity so that the maximum number of cache management devices will not be exceeded.
0xaf29	The operation was rejected because the specified volume was not a DP-VOL.	Makes sure that the volume is a DP-VOL.
0xaf2a	The operation was rejected because the specified capacities are invalid or exceeded the value immediately below LDEV Capacity in the Expand Virtual Volumes window.	To increase capacity, specify the correct capacity that does not exceed the value immediately below LDEV Capacity in the Expand Virtual Volumes window. See the conditions for increasing DP-VOL capacity in Requirements for increasing DP-VOL capacity (on page 289) .
0xaf2b	The operation was rejected because the specified volume operation was not finished.	Re-execute the operation after a brief interval.
0xaf2c	The operation was rejected because the shared memory capacity is not enough to increase the specified capacity.	Confirm the value immediately below LDEV Capacity in the Expand Virtual Volumes window.

Error code (SSB2)	Error contents	Solutions
0xaf2e	The operation was rejected because the specified DP-VOL was used by other software or was being formatted.	Wait until formatting of the specified volume is finished, or see Using Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering with other software products (on page 132) and confirm whether the DP-VOL is used with software in which that the DP-VOL capacity cannot be increased.
0xaf2f	The specified DP-VOL capacity cannot be expanded because the configuration of journal volumes is being changed.	Re-execute the operation after the journal volume configuration is changed.
0x0b2b	The operation was rejected because the <code>raidcom extend ldev</code> command was executed with specifying the <code>-cylinder</code> option to the DP-VOL for the open system.	Re-execute the <code>raidcom extend ldev</code> command without specifying the <code>-cylinder</code> option.
0xaf60	The operation was rejected because the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold of the pool if the specified capacity is reserved in the pool.	Expand the pool capacity, and then retry the operation.

Troubleshooting Data Retention Utility

If an error occurs with Data Retention Utility, the **Error Detail** dialog box appears. The **Error Detail** dialog box displays error locations and error messages.

The **Error Detail** dialog box does not display Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator error messages. To find information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator errors and solutions, see the *Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator Messages*.

Troubleshooting for Data Retention Utility

The following table provides troubleshooting information for Data Retention Utility.

Problems	Probable cause and solution
The Disable/ Enable or the Enable/Disable button on the Data Retention window is unavailable. Nothing happens when you click the button.	<p>You have been making changes in the Data Retention window, but the changes have not been applied to the storage system. Apply the changes first, and then perform the extension lock operation.</p> <p>You can find the changes by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Scrolling the current list up and down. ▪ Selecting another CU from the tree and then scrolling the list up and down.
Open-systems hosts cannot read from or write to a volume.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The volume is protected by the read-only attribute. Write failure is reported as an error message. ▪ The volume is protected by the Protect attribute. Read (or write) failure is reported as an error message.
Mainframe hosts cannot read from or write to a volume.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The volume is protected by the read-only attribute. Write failure is reported as a Write Inhibit condition. ▪ The volume is protected by the Protect attribute. Read (or write) failure is reported as a cc=3 condition.
The number of days in Retention Term does not decrease	The number of days in Retention Term is calculated based on the operating time of the storage system. Therefore, the number of days in Retention Term might not decrease.

Resolving errors when using CCI to perform Data Retention Utility operations (SSB1:2E31/B9BF/B9BD)

If an error occurs while using CCI to perform Data Retention Utility operations, you might identify the cause of the error by referring to the log appearing on the CCI window or the CCI operation log file.

The CCI operation log file is stored in the following directory.

```
/HORCM/log*/curlog/horcmlog_HOST/horcm.log
```

where

- * is the instance number.
- HOST is the host name.

The following is an example of a log entry in the CCI window.

It was rejected due to SKEY=0x05, ASC=0x20,SSB=0xB9E1,0xB901 on Serial#(64015)

↓
SSB1

↓
SSB2

The following table provides troubleshooting information for Data Retention Utility operations performed using CCI.

Error code (SSB2)	Description
9100	The command cannot be executed because user authentication is not performed.
B9BD	The setting failed because the specified volume does not exist.
B9C2	The specified volume is a command device.
B9C4	<p>The command was rejected due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The specified volume is a virtual volume. ▪ The specified volume is a pool volume. ▪ The specified volume is an secondary volume of Universal Replicator. ▪ The specified volume is a journal volume. ▪ The specified volume is a primary volume or secondary volume of ShadowImage. ▪ The consumed capacity exceeded the licensed capacity. ▪ The access attribute cannot be changed because the data retention term is set. ▪ The specified volume is a command device. ▪ The specified volume is in the PAIR or COPY status. ▪ The specified volume does not exist. ▪ The S-VOL Disable attribute is set to the specified volume. ▪ The reserve function cannot be canceled using CCI. ▪ The specified volume is a quorum disk for global-active device, so that the requested setting of Data Retention Utility cannot be performed. ▪ The specified volume is in an accelerated compression-enabled parity group. ▪ The specified volume is a deduplication system data volume.
B9C7	Data Retention Utility is not installed.
B9C9	The consumed capacity exceeded the licensed capacity.

Error code (SSB2)	Description
B9CA	<p>The command was rejected due to one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fewer days are set as the data retention term. ▪ More than 60 years are set as the data retention term. ▪ An interface other than Java® updated the settings while Data Retention Utility was in the process of changing them. A conflict occurred between Java and the other interface.
B9CB	<p>The retention term cannot be set because the access attribute is read/write.</p>

Contacting customer support

If you are unable to resolve an error condition in Device Manager - Storage Navigator, contact Hitachi Vantara customer support for assistance.

Before you contact customer support, please gather as much information about the problem as possible, including the following:

- The circumstances surrounding the error or failure.
- The exact content of any error messages displayed on the host systems.
- The exact content of any error messages displayed by Device Manager - Storage Navigator.
- The Device Manager - Storage Navigator configuration information. Use the Device Manager - Storage Navigator Dump Tool to download the dump files and configuration information from the SVP.
- The service information messages (SIMs), including reference codes and severity levels, displayed by Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

The Hitachi Vantara customer support staff is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week. To contact technical support, log on to Hitachi Vantara Support Connect for contact information: https://support.hitachivantara.com/en_us/contact-us.html

Appendix A: CCI command reference for provisioning

Provisioning tasks can be performed using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator and Command Control Interface (CCI).

Provisioning tasks and CCI commands

The following table lists the provisioning tasks that can be performed using Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator (HDvM - SN) and provides the corresponding CCI command for each task.

Item	Task name in HDvM - SN	CCI command
Logical Device	Create LDEVs	raidcom add ldev
	Delete LDEVs	raidcom delete ldev
	Edit LDEVs	raidcom modify ldev
	Format LDEVs	raidcom initialize ldev
	Block LDEVs	raidcom modify ldev
	Restore LDEVs	raidcom modify ldev
	Assign MP Blade	raidcom modify ldev
	Add LUN Paths	raidcom add lun
	Delete LUN Paths	raidcom delete lun
	Expand V-VOLs	raidcom extend ldev
	Reclaim Zero Pages	raidcom modify ldev
	Shredding	raidcom initialize ldev
Port/Host Group/iSCSI Target (Fibre Channel)	Create Host Groups	raidcom add host_grp
	Delete Host Groups	raidcom delete host_grp
	Edit Host Groups	raidcom modify host_grp
	Add Hosts	raidcom add hba_wwn

Item	Task name in HDvM - SN	CCI command
	Add to Host Groups	raidcom add hba_wwn
	Remove Hosts	raidcom delete hba_wwn
	Edit Host	raidcom add hba_wwn
	Create Alternate LUN Paths	raidcom add lun
	Edit Ports	raidcom modify port
Pool	Create Pools	raidcom add dp_pool
	Expand Pool	raidcom add dp_pool
	Shrink pools	raidcom delete pool
	Delete Pools	raidcom delete pool
	Edit Pools	raidcom modify pool
	Monitor Pools	raidcom monitor pool
	Stop Monitoring Pools	raidcom monitor pool
	Start Tier Relocation	raidcom reallocate pool
	Stop Tier Relocation	raidcom reallocate pool
	Restore Pools	raidcom modify pool
	View Tier Properties	raidcom get dp_pool
External Storage	Disconnect External Volumes	raidcom disconnect external_grp
	Reconnect External Volumes	raidcom check_ext_storage
Port/Host Group/iSCSI (iSCSI)	Create iSCSI Targets	raidcom add host_grp
	Delete iSCSI Targets	raidcom delete host_grp
	Edit iSCSI Targets	raidcom modify host_grp
	Add Hosts	raidcom add hba_iscsi
	Remove Hosts	raidcom delete hba_iscsi
	Edit Host	raidcom set hba_iscsi
	Add CHAP Users	raidcom add chap_user
	Remove CHAP Users	raidcom delete chap_user
	Edit CHAP User	raidcom set chap_user

Item	Task name in HDvM - SN	CCI command
	Create Alternate LUN Paths	raidcom add lun
	Edit Ports	raidcom modify port

Parameter ranges for CCI options

The following table lists the valid parameter ranges for CCI options. For details, see the *Command Control Interface Command Reference*.

Parameter	Valid values
Serial number	300000 to 399999
LDEV ID	0 to 65279
Pool ID	0 to 127
Port number	CLx-y x: 1 to G y: A to R (except I and O) when x is 1 to 8.

Parameter	Valid values
	A to D, or J to M, when x is 9 to G.
LU number	0 to 2047
Resource group ID	0 to 1023
Parity group ID	gno: 1 to 52 sgno: 1 to 32
Drive location	0-0 to 157-23 Maximum value when SBX (DKU for 2.5 inch drive) is used. The maximum value varies depending on your operation environment.
iSCSI virtual port ID	0 to 15
SSID	0004 to FEFF
Tiering policy ID	0 to 31
Loop ID for port	0x01 to 0xEF
VLAN ID	1 to 4094
CU #	00 to FE
DB number	0 to 15
LDEV ID used in a virtual storage machine	See the parameter of LDEV ID in this table.
Virtual port number	See the parameter of Port number in this table.
Host group ID or iSCSI target ID	0 to 254
SSID for LDEV in a virtual storage machine	See the parameter of SSID in this table.

Appendix B: Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled

You must follow specific guidelines for sizing, creating, and maintaining a pool that uses LDEVs carved from parity groups with accelerated compression enabled.

Checking whether accelerated compression can be enabled

Before enabling accelerated compression on a parity group, check whether it can be used with the parity group. Accelerated compression cannot be enabled on a parity group if the parity group meets any of the following conditions:

- The LDEVs carved from the parity group are not used as a pool volume.
- The LDEVs carved from the parity group are used as pool volumes in multiple pools.
- The full allocation function is enabled for all or any single DP-VOL associated with the pool containing LDEVs carved from the parity group.

If a DP-VOL that is associated with a pool containing an LDEV created from an FMD parity group is used as a journal volume of a Universal Replicator pair, we do not recommend using accelerated compression on this parity group.

If BED/controller-based encryption is enabled on the parity group, we do not recommend using accelerated compression on this parity group.

Estimating required FMD capacity

To create or expand a pool that uses LDEVs carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, you must first estimate the required FMD capacity. The Hitachi Data Reduction Estimation Tool enables you to estimate the amount of FMD capacity to install for a new pool or when expanding an existing pool.

Hitachi Data Reduction Estimation Tool

The Hitachi Data Reduction Estimation Tool (hidr_estimator.exe) samples existing data and estimates a data saving ratio.

By using the Data Reduction Estimation Tool before storing data to an FMD, you can estimate the saving percent, and the compressibility of your data. The tool samples data that is in a file or volume that you specify and calculates a compression ratio using the same compression algorithm as the storage system and FMD. By calculating a saving percent for the actual data, you can confirm the effect of accelerated compression with high precision. The Data Reduction Estimation Tool must be installed on the server host that has access to the data you want to sample. For details about how to get or use the Data Reduction Estimation Tool, contact customer support.

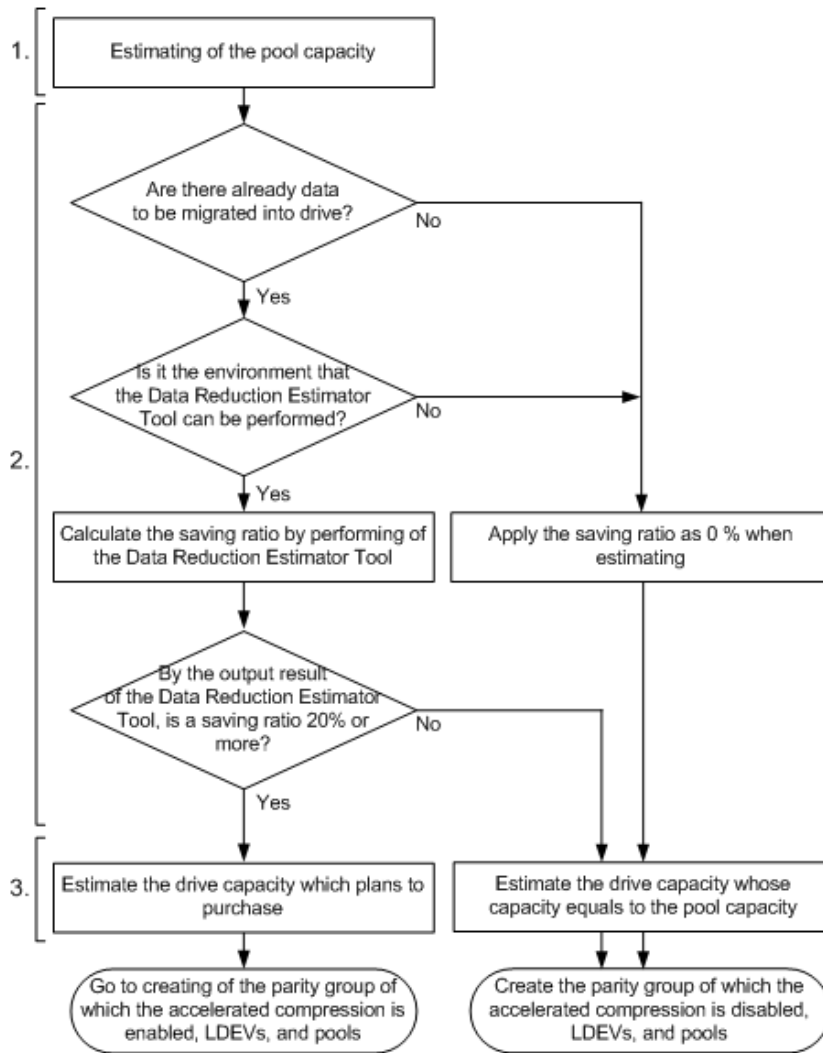
The following is an example of executing the Data Reduction Estimation Tool. Best practice is to use the value of **Saving % (Except Zero data)** in **[HAFDC2 Compression]**.

[HAFDC2 Compression]				
Origin Bytes	Compressed Bytes	Saving %	Saving % (Except Zero data)	Compression Ratio
23.4 MiB	12.3 MiB	47.20 %	47.20 %	1.9 to 1

- **Origin Bytes:** The data size before compression. The value is approximately 23.4 MiB in the example.
- **Compressed Bytes:** The data size after compression. The value is approximately 12.3 MiB in the example.
- **Saving %:** The data-size saving rate after compression. The value is 47.20% in the example.
- **Saving % (Except Zero data):** The data-size saving rate with all zero pages excluded from the data before compression. The value is 47.20% in the example.
- **Compression Ratio:** The ratio of data size compression. In the example, the data size after compression is assumed to be 1, and the ratio of data size compression is 1.9.

Estimating FMD capacity for a new pool

When you need to install FMD drives to create a new pool, use the following workflow to estimate the required capacity.



Note:

To estimate the FMD capacity to be used for an accelerated compression-enabled parity group, estimate a buffer capacity in addition to the main capacity for storing data. Add approximately 20% of the required FMD capacity as buffer capacity. Buffer capacity refers to the total expected increase in FMD capacity, which includes the following:

- Expected increase in capacity used to store management information of the storage system
- Expected increase in capacity to offset degradation of the Saving % compared with estimated values

1. Estimate the required pool capacity.

Estimate the pool capacity required for user data in the same way you estimate capacity when creating a pool. If you are expanding a pool, also estimate the pool capacity required for user data.

2. Estimate the Saving % using one of the following methods:

- If data will be migrated to the FMD, use the Data Reduction Estimation Tool to estimate the Saving %. The tool reports a Saving % that can be used to determine the capacity needed. If the estimate is less than 20%, best practice is to use a parity group with accelerated compression disabled, and to estimate the pool capacity by the conventional method.
- If new data will be stored on the FMD, or if the Data Reduction Estimation Tool cannot be executed in the environment, consider setting the Saving % to 0% and using the conventional method to size capacity. With accelerated compression disabled for the parity group, you can monitor the Saving % through the management software and then decide to enable accelerated compression at a later time.



Note: If the 14-TB FMD is used and the Saving % that is estimated in this step exceeds 75%, apply 75% for "Saving %" in the formula of the next step.

3. Estimate the required FMD capacity to be purchased.

If there is data to migrate to the FMD, use the following formula to calculate the required FMD capacity.

$$\text{Required FMD capacity to be purchased} = \text{required-pool-capacity} * (100\% - (\text{Saving \%} - 10\%)) * 110\%$$

The buffers in the above formula are as follows:

- - 10%: Buffer representing expected increase in capacity because of degradation in Saving %
- * 110%: Buffer representing expected increase in capacity because of additional space required to store management information of the storage system

Then, enable accelerated compression and create parity groups, LDEVs, and pools.



Note:

When using Dynamic Tiering or active flash, if the Tier 1 is configured of FMD drives, use 1.2 times the calculated required pool capacity. Use the following formula to calculate the value:

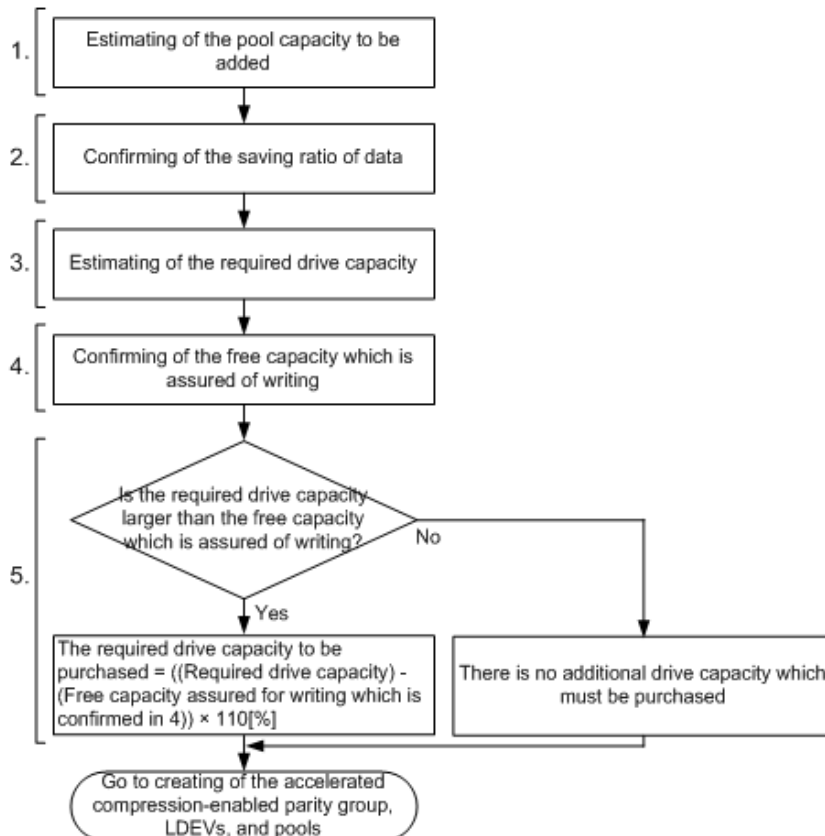
$$\text{Required pool capacity} = \text{required-pool-capacity-estimated-in-Step-1} \times 120\%$$

To prevent the depletion of assured capacity for writing due to the tier relocation, Dynamic Tiering or active flash uses a 20% buffer when calculating the number of pages that can fit in the FMD tier. If accelerated compression is disabled, Dynamic Tiering or active flash do not use the 20% buffer.

Therefore, if the same FMD (Tier 1) capacity is applied, the amount of data that can be stored with accelerated compression enabled is smaller than the amount of data that can be stored with accelerated compression disabled.

Estimating FMD capacity to expand an existing pool

When you need to install additional FMD drives to expand an existing pool, use the following workflow to estimate the required capacity.



1. Estimate the pool capacity to be added.

Estimate the pool capacity required for user data in the same way you estimated capacity when creating a pool. If you are expanding a pool, also estimate the pool capacity required for user data.

2. Check the Saving %.

The Saving % is displayed in the Pools window. View the Saving % by clicking Pools > FMD Pool Volumes Capacity > Saving (%).



Note: If the 14-TB FMD is used and the Saving % confirmed in this step exceeds 75%, apply 75% for "Saving %" in the formula of the next step.

3. Estimate the required FMD capacity.

Use the following formula to calculate the required FMD capacity:

```
Required FMD capacity = Required pool capacity × [100% - (Saving % - 10%) ]
```

The buffer in the above formula is as follows:

- - 10%: Buffer representing expected increase in capacity because of degradation in Saving %

Estimate the additional FMD capacity to be purchased according to the required FMD capacity calculated using the above formula, and the free capacity assured for writing.

4. Check the free capacity assured for writing.

In the Pools tab of the Pools window, check the value of FMD Pool Volumes Capacity. The free capacity reserved for writing is the difference between the Total and Used values.

5. Estimate the additional FMD capacity to be purchased.

If the space calculated in step 4 is sufficient, this step is unnecessary. If the space is insufficient, use the following formula to calculate the required FMD capacity:

```
Required FMD capacity to be purchased = (Required FMD capacity - free capacity assured for writing in step 4) × 110%
```

Creating parity groups, LDEVs, and pools with accelerated compression

After you have confirmed that the Saving % on used pool capacity is sufficient, you can create accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, LDEVs, and pools.

Use the following workflow to create accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, LDEVs, and pools



Caution: When you create LDEVs in an accelerated compression-enabled FMD parity group, you must add all LDEVs you create to the same pool. If you do not add an LDEV to the pool, data recovery for a drive failure might fail. Make sure that you register all LDEVs to the pool.

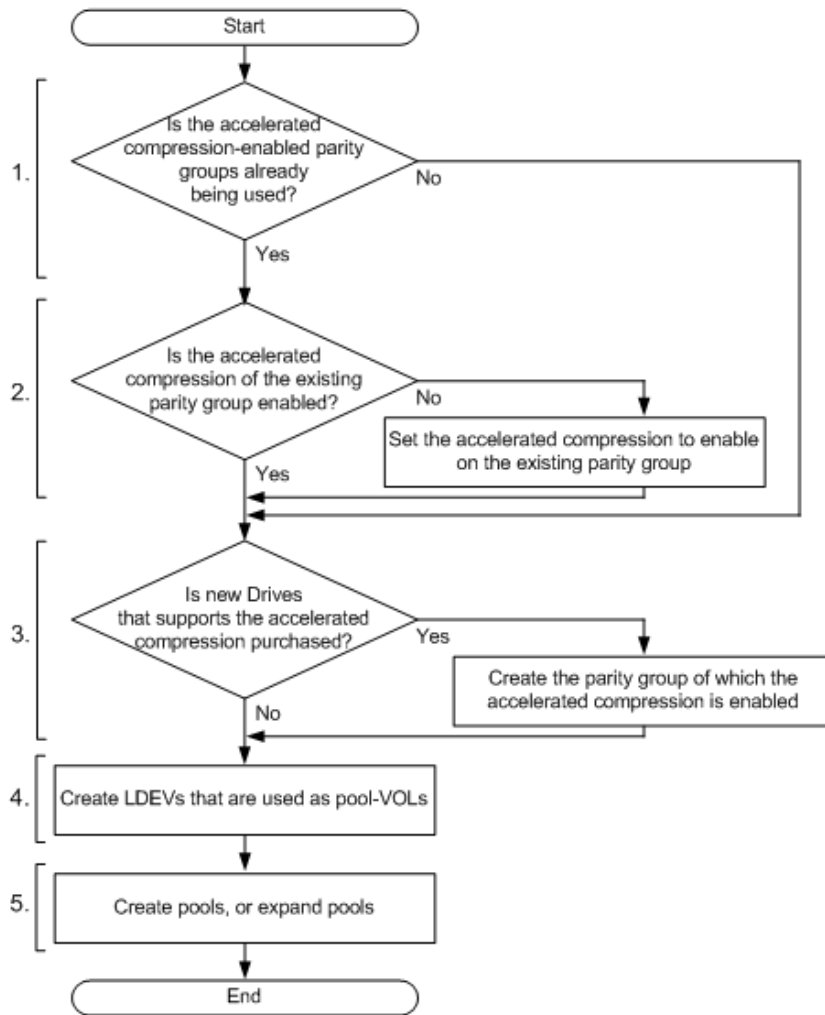
During data recovery, LDEVs that were not added to the pool will be recovered to the FMD drive that was replaced when a failure occurred. In this case, the size of data to be recovered becomes greater than the original size, and the following might occur:

- The pool reduction ratio might become very low.
- The capacity of the FMD drive to which data is copied runs out, and data recovery might fail.
- The FMD drive capacity runs out, the write pending rate of cache remains high, and access to the storage system might be lost.

After data recovery, if you continue operation without formatting the following LDEVs, the FMD drive capacity remains consumed. As a result, the FMD capacity runs out, the write pending ratio of cache remains high, and access to the storage system might be lost:

- LDEVs used as normal volumes before the accelerated compression function is enabled
- LDEVs deleted from the pool because of the reduction of the pool capacity

To use LDEVs that are not registered to a pool, you must format them before the deletion. Quick format cannot be performed.



1. Check whether FMD parity groups are already used.
If yes, go to step 2.
If no, go to step 3.
2. Enable the accelerated compression function for an existing parity group. Use the Edit Parity Groups window to enable accelerated compression.
3. Use the new FMD capacity to create accelerated compression-enabled parity groups. Use the Create Parity Groups window to create parity groups.
4. Create LDEVs to be used as pool-VOLs.

If the pool auto expansion function is enabled, create an LDEV belonging to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group. The recommended LDEV capacity is 2.99 TB, which is the maximum pool volume capacity. Add this LDEV as a pool volume when creating a pool.

If the pool auto expansion function is not enabled, create as many LDEVs belonging to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group as possible.

Best practice is to create 2.99-TB LDEVs because this is the maximum capacity of a pool-VOL. Use the following formula to calculate the recommended value of the total LDEV capacity to be defined for one parity group:

$$\text{Total LDEV capacity} = \text{FMD-capacity-of-the-parity-group} / (100\% - (\text{Saving \%} - 10\%)) / 110\%$$

The buffers in the formula are as follows:

- - 10%: Buffer representing the expected increase in capacity used because of degradation in the Saving %
- / 110%: Buffer representing the expected increase in capacity used to store management information of the storage system



Note:

- If the 14-TB FMD drive is used and the Saving % exceeds 75%, apply 75% for "Saving %" in the formula for total LDEV capacity.
- The total capacity of LDEVs that can be created from a parity group of 14-TB FMD drives is equal to the total capacity of LDEVs that can be created from a parity group of 7-TB FMD drives (for example, up to 8x expansion for the 7-TB parity group but only 4x expansion for the 14-TB parity group). This is because the virtualized total capacity of LDEVs that can be created from a 14-TB FMD parity group exceeds the capacity of the Parity Group table.

For example, when the 3.2-TB FMD is used in a 3D+1P configuration and the estimated Saving % is 40%, the number of required LDEVs is calculated as follows:

- Calculate the total capacity of the LDEVs to be created as follows:

$$\text{Total LDEV capacity} = 9.6 \text{ TB} / (100\% - (40\% - 10\%)) / 110\% = 12.5 \text{ TB}$$

- Calculate the number of LDEVs as follows. The value enclosed in ceiling() must be rounded up to the nearest whole number.

$$\text{ceiling}(12.5 \text{ TB} / 2.99 \text{ TB}) = 5$$

If the capacity of each LDEV is 2.99 TB, 5 LDEVs are required.

If the pool auto expansion function is enabled and you use multiple parity groups, best practice is to configure the same basic usable capacity expansion rate for each parity group. Use the following formula to calculate the basic usable capacity expansion rate of the parity groups:

$$\text{Basic usable capacity expansion rate of the parity groups} = \frac{\text{Total-capacity-of-the-LDEVs-created-from-the-parity-groups}}{\text{FMD-capacity-of-the-parity-groups}}$$

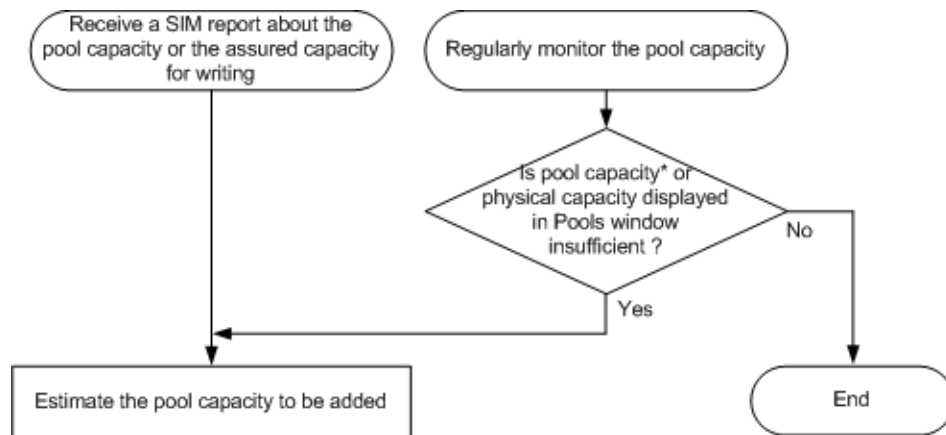
5. Create or expand the pool, and then add all of the created LDEVs to the same pool.



Note: Add all of the LDEVs that were created from a single parity group to the same pool. For each accelerated compression-enabled parity group used to configure a pool, the pool capacity is decreased by 120 GB. The process of decreasing a pool capacity may take an extended period of time.

Monitoring the pool capacity

If you are regularly monitoring pool capacity and notice that a pool has insufficient space, or if insufficient space is reported in a related SIM report, you need to estimate the capacity to be added.



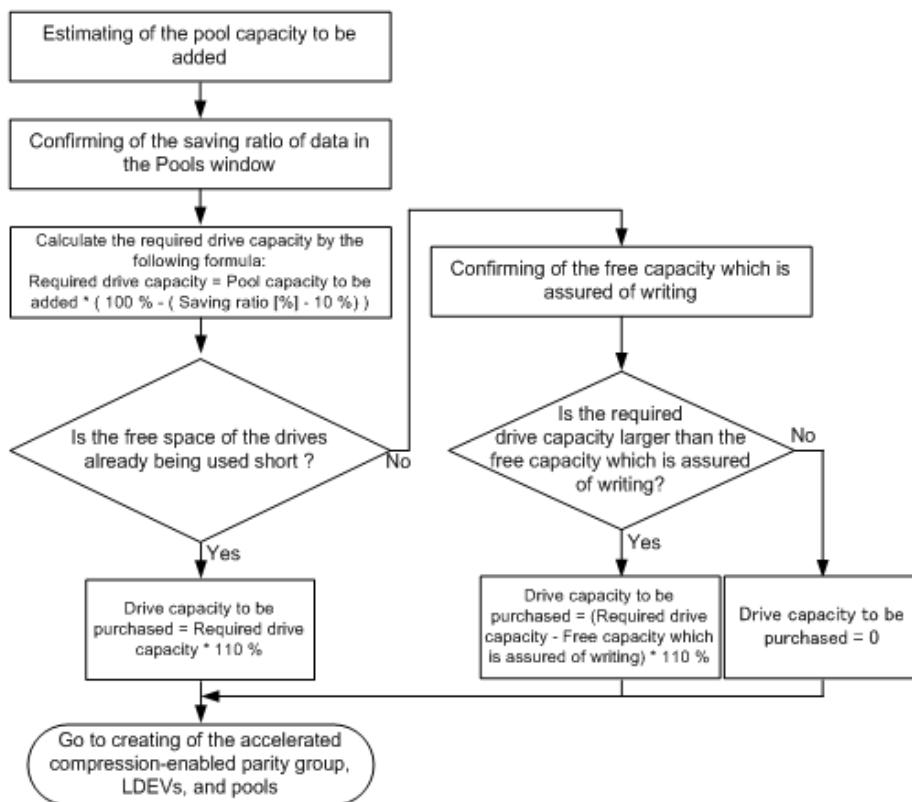
* If the pool auto expansion function is enabled (Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group for the target pool), do not use this information to monitor the pool capacity. View the physical capacity of the pool only.

Estimating FMD capacity when pool capacity is insufficient

If the pool capacity or physical pool capacity is insufficient, use the following workflow to estimate the capacity to be added.

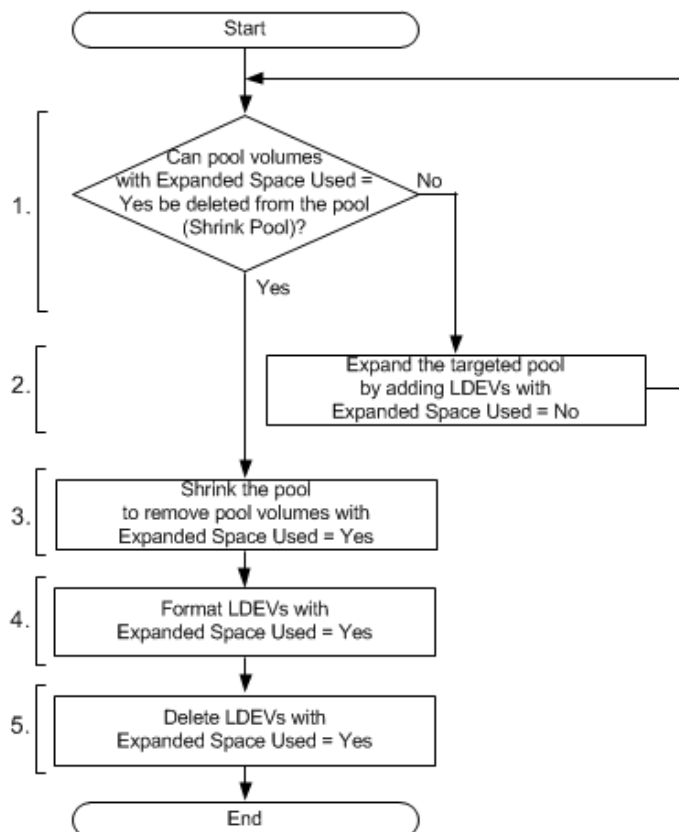


Note: If the 14-TB FMD is used and the Saving % exceeds 75%, apply 75% for "Saving %" when calculating the required FMD capacity (third task in the workflow).



Disabling accelerated compression on a parity group

Use the following workflow to disable accelerated compression on a parity group.



1. For the targeted pool, use the following formulas to determine whether the shrink pool operation can be performed:

- Pool capacity after shrinking =

$$(pool\ capacity\ before\ shrinking) - (total\ capacity\ of\ pool\ VOLs\ with\ Expanded\ Space\ Used = Yes)$$

- Decision formula:

$$(used\ pool\ capacity) < (pool\ capacity\ after\ shrinking) \times (depletion\ threshold)$$

If the condition of the decision formula is met, you can delete pool-VOLs with Expanded Space Used = Yes. Go to step 3.

If the condition of the decision formula is not met, you cannot delete pool-VOLs with Expanded Space Used = Yes. Go to step 2.

2. Expand the pool.

For the LDEVs to be added as pool-VOLs, use LDEVs with Expanded Space Used = No. Add capacity that is larger than the total of pool-VOLs with Expanded Space Used = Yes.

3. Shrink the pool so that all pool-VOLs in the pool are deleted.

4. Format the LDEVs with Expanded Space Used = Yes.
5. Delete the LDEVs with Expanded Space Used = Yes.

Appendix C: LDEV GUI reference

The Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator windows display the logical device (LDEV) information for the storage system and allow you to configure and manage LDEVs.

For general information about the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Parity Groups window

Use this window to view information about parity groups. Only the parity groups assigned to the logged-in user are available.

The screenshot displays the 'Parity Groups' window. At the top, it shows 'VSP_G1000(S/N:12345) > Parity Groups' and 'Last Updated : 2014/01/15 12:41'. Below this is a capacity summary table:

Capacity	Internal	Free	17.76 TB
		Total	18.07 TB
	External	Free	0.00 MB
		Total	0.00 MB

Below the capacity table is a table of Parity Groups. The table has the following columns: Parity Group ID, LDEV Status, RAID Level, Base Emulation Type, Capacity (Free, Total), Number of LDEVs (Unallocated, Total), and Drive Type/RPM. The first four rows show parity groups 1-1, 2-1, 5-1, and 5-2, all with a 'Blocked' status.












Parity Group ID	LDEV Status	RAID Level	Base Emulation Type	Capacity (Free)	Capacity (Total)	Number of LDEVs (Unallocated)	Number of LDEVs (Total)	Drive Type/RPM	Enc
1-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	1530.41...	1610.41...	10	10	SAS/10k	Enc
2-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	3140.83...	3220.83...	10	10	SAS/10k	Dis
5-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	8126.17...	8206.17...	10	10	SAS/7.2k	Dis
5-2	Blocked	1(2D+2D)	OPEN-V	5390.78...	5470.78...	10	10	SAS/7.2k	Dis

Summary

Item	Description
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Internal: Capacity of all of the parity groups in the internal volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Free¹: Free space capacity of which the internal volumes can be created. For the free space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the value of which the total mapped pages capacity of LDEVs (assigned in the physical area and external area) is deducted from the parity group capacity. • Total: The total capacity of the internal volumes and the free space is displayed. In a case for the total space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the physical area capacity. ▪ External: Capacity of all of the parity groups in the external volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Free¹: The total free space of which users can create external volumes. • Total: The total capacity of all external volumes (that are created by users) and free space.
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. The control information used by the storage system, such as control cylinders, is not included in the Free capacity.</p>	

Parity Groups tab

Item	Description
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier of the parity group in the storage system.

Item	Description
LDEV Status	<p>The following icons are used to indicate the status of each LDEV in the parity group:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Normal status. ▪  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume. ▪  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume. ▪  Formatting: Volume is being formatted. ▪  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting. ▪  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted. ▪  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied. ▪  Read Only: Data cannot be written on a read-only volume. ▪  Shredding: Volume is being shredded. ▪  - (hyphen): Any status other than the above.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated). Either RAID level of the parity group appears.
Base Emulation Type	Emulation type of each parity group.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group for the parity group, do not view this information. View the physical capacity only. ▪ Free: Free space capacity of which the internal volumes can be created. For the free space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the value of which the total mapped pages capacity of LDEVs (assigned in the physical area and external area) is deducted from the parity group capacity. The control information used by the storage system, such as control cylinders, is not included in the Free capacity. ▪ Total: The total capacity of the internal volumes and the free space is displayed. In a case for the total space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the physical area capacity.
Physical Capacity ¹	Capacity assured for writing data in the parity group.
Number of LDEVs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unallocated: Number of unallocated LDEVs in each parity group. ▪ Total: Total number of LDEVs in each parity group.
Drive Type/RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Encryption	<p>Encryption information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: encrypted parity group ▪ Disable: non-encrypted parity group ▪ - (hyphen): parity group in which the encryption setting is not defined
Accelerated Compression ¹	<p>Displays information about accelerated compression for the parity group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Accelerated compression for the parity group is enabled. ▪ Disabled: Accelerated compression for the parity group is disabled. ▪ - (hyphen): The parity group does not support accelerated compression.

Item	Description
Expanded Space Used ¹	<p>Displays whether the LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, and then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area. ▪ No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area. <p>This item is displayed whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.</p>
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD ¹	<p>For accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this item displays the setting status of the pool auto expansion function. If the parity group does not support accelerated compression, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Enable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.</p>
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the parity group.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) is displayed for a parity group in which the attribute is not defined.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and ID of which this parity group is a member.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the parity group belongs.
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Edit Encryption	Opens the Edit Encryption window.
Shred LDEVs ²	Opens the Shred LDEVs window.
Edit Parity Groups ²	Opens the Edit Parity Groups window.
Block LDEVs ²	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs ²	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.
Export	Opens the window that enables you to export the configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for purposes such as analysis or reporting.

Item	Description
¹	Does not appear by default. To display this item, click Column Settings.
²	Available when you click More Actions.

Parity Groups tab: Internal or external volume

Use this window to view information about the parity groups for internal or external volumes. Only the parity groups assigned to the logged-in user are displayed.

Internal Last Updated : 2014/01/15 12:42

VSP_G1000(S/N:12345) > Parity_Groups > Internal












Capacity		Free	17.76 TB						
		Total	18.07 TB						
Parity Groups									
Create LDEVs Format LDEVs Edit Encryption More Actions Selected: 0 of 4									
Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings Options 1 / 1									
Parity Group ID	LDEV Status	RAID Level	Base Emulation Type	Capacity		Number of LDEVs		Drive Type/RPM	Enc
				Free	Total	Unallocated	Total		
1-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	1530.41...	1610.41...	10	10	SAS/10k	Ena
2-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	3140.83...	3220.83...	10	10	SAS/10k	Dis
5-1	Blocked	5(3D+1P)	OPEN-V	8126.17...	8206.17...	10	10	SAS/7.2k	Dis
5-2	Blocked	1(2D+2D)	OPEN-V	5390.78...	5470.78...	10	10	SAS/7.2k	Dis

Summary

Item	Description
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Free: The free space capacity of which the internal (or external) volumes can be created is displayed. In a case for the free space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the value of which the total mapped pages capacity of LDEVs (assigned in the physical area and external area) is deducted from the parity group capacity. The control information used by the storage system, such as control cylinders, is not included in the Free capacity. <li>▪ Total: The total capacity of the internal (or external) volumes and the free space is displayed. In a case for the total space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the physical area capacity. The expanded capacity appears when existing parity groups with accelerated compression are enabled.

Parity Groups tab

Item	Description
Parity Group ID	The parity group identifiers of the parity groups in the storage system.

Item	Description
LDEV Status	<p>The following icons are used to indicate the LDEV status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Normal status. ▪  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume. ▪  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume. ▪  Formatting: Volume is being formatted. ▪  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting. ▪  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted. ▪  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied. ▪  Read Only: Data cannot be written on a read-only volume. ▪  Shredding: Volume is being shredded. ▪  Hyphen (-): Any status other than the above.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk (*) indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated). Either RAID level of the parity group is displayed.
Base Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group for the parity group, do not view this information. View the physical capacity only. ▪ Displays information about the pool capacity.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Free: The free space capacity of which the internal volumes can be created is displayed. In a case for the free space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the value of which the total mapped pages capacity of LDEVs (assigned in the physical area and external area) is deducted from the parity group capacity. The control information used by the storage system such as control cylinders is not included in the displayed capacity. ▪ Total: The total capacity of the internal volumes and the free space is displayed. In a case for the total space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the physical area capacity. The expanded capacity appears when existing parity groups with accelerated compression is enabled.
Physical Capacity ¹	Capacity assured for writing data in the parity group.
Number of LDEVs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unallocated: Number of unallocated LDEVs. ▪ Total: Total number of LDEVs.
Drive Type/RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Encryption	<p>Encryption information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: encrypted parity group ▪ Disable: non-encrypted parity group ▪ - (hyphen): parity group in which the encryption setting is not defined
Accelerated Compression ¹	<p>Displays the information about the accelerated compression of the parity group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled. ▪ - (hyphen): The parity group with the accelerated compression is not supported.
Expanded Space Used ¹	<p>Displays whether the LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, and then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area. ▪ No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.







Item	Description
	This item is displayed whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the parity group. - (hyphen): parity group in which the attribute is not defined.
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group ¹	For accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this item displays the setting status of the pool auto expansion function. If the parity group does not support accelerated compression, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Enable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically. Disable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and ID of which this parity group is a member.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model type and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the parity group belongs.
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Edit Encryption	Opens the Edit Encryption window.
Shred LDEVs ²	Opens the Shred LDEVs window.
Edit Parity Groups ²	Opens the Edit Parity Groups window.
Block LDEVs ²	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs ²	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.
Export	Opens the window that enables you to export the configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for purposes such as analysis or reporting.
¹ This item is not displayed by default. To display this item, click Column Settings.	
² This item is available when you click More Actions.	






LDEVs tab: Internal or external volumes

Use this window to view information about the LDEVs assigned to parity groups in an internal or external volume. Only the parity groups assigned to the logged-on user are available.

LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Status	Emulation Type	Capacity	Attribute	Resource Group Name (ID)
00:00:08		Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	Comm...	meta_resource(0)
00:00:08	qe-pool...	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:07:BE	qe-myz...	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	25.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:00		Normal	OPEN-V CVS	100.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:01		Normal	OPEN-V CVS	100.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:02		Normal	OPEN-V CVS	50.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:03		Normal	OPEN-V CVS	100.00 GB	Pool V...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:04	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	Comm...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:05	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	Comm...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:06	cmdforh...	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	Comm...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:07	FCQ-29...	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:08	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	Comm...	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:09	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:0A	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:0B	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:0C	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:0D	bs5203-1	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:0E	hyvm187	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:16	hyvm187	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)
00:0C:17	hyvm187	Normal	OPEN-V CVS	1.00 GB	-	meta_resource(0)









Summary




Item	Description
LDEV Status	<p>Current status of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Normal: Normal status.  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume.  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume.  Formatting: Volume is being formatted.  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting.  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted.

Item	Description
	<p> Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected.</p> <p> Copying: Data in the volume is being copied.</p> <p> Read Only: Data cannot be written on a read-only volume.</p> <p> Shredding: Volume is being shredded.</p> <p> Hyphen (-): Any status other than the above.</p>
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated).
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group for the parity group, do not view this information. View the physical capacity only. ▪ Displays information about the pool capacity. ▪ Free: The free space capacity of which the LDEVs can be created is displayed. In a case for the free space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the value of which the total mapped pages capacity of LDEVs (assigned in the physical area and external area) is deducted from the parity group capacity. The control information used by the storage system, such as control cylinders, is not included in the Free capacity. ▪ Total: The total capacity of the LDEVs and the free space is displayed. In a case for the total space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group, this area displays the physical area capacity. Because LDEVs that are allocated in the virtual capacity area are displayed in this table, the capacity of which "Free" is deducted from "Total" might be larger than the total capacity of LDEVs in this table.
Drive Type/RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Interleaved Parity Groups	Interleaved (concatenated) parity groups.
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group that is created of LDEVs</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>Hyphen (-): The parity group with the accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
Virtualization Space Used	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the virtual area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated in the virtual area.</p> <p>This item displays whether the LDEV area is allocated in the virtual or physical area.</p> <p>Yes: LDEV is allocated in the virtual area.</p> <p>No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.</p>
Number of LDEVs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Unallocated: Number of unallocated LDEVs. ▪ Total: Total number of LDEVs.

LDEVs tab

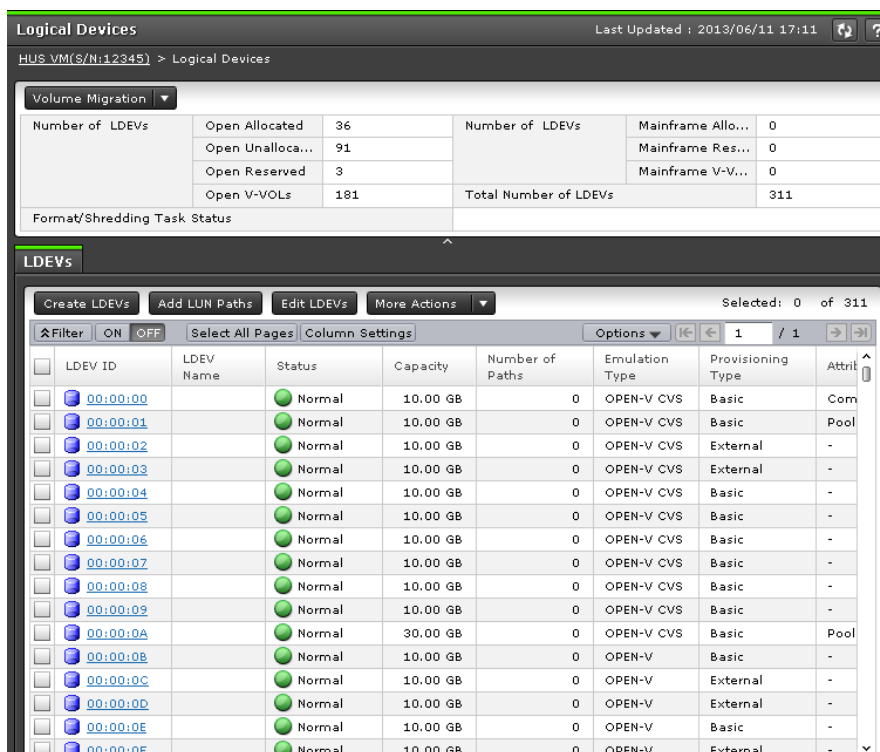
Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name.
Status	<p>LDEV status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Normal: Normal status.  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume.  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume.  Formatting: Volume is being formatted.  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting.  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted.  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected.  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied.

Item	Description
	<p> Read Only: Data cannot be written on a read-only volume.</p> <p> Shredding: Volume is being shredded.</p> <p> Hyphen (-): Any status other than the above.</p>
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	Capacity of the selected LDEV.
Attribute	<p>Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: The volume is a command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: The volume is a remote command device. ▪ JNL VOL: The volume is a journal volume. ▪ Pool VOL: The volume is a pool volume. The number in the parenthesis indicates the pool identifier. ▪ Quorum Disk: Quorum disk for global-active device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the LDEV.
Expanded Space Used ¹	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>This item displays whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.</p> <p>Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.</p>
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to the LDEV, this column is blank.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute¹: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Edit LDEVs	Opens the Edit LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Delete LDEVs ²	Opens the Delete LDEVs window.
Shred LDEVs ²	Opens the Shred LDEVs window.
Block LDEVs ²	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs ²	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Logical Devices window

Use this window to view information about logical devices. Only the LDEVs assigned to the logged-on user are available.













Summary

Item	Description
Volume Migration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> View Migration Plans: Opens the View Migration Plans window. View Histories: Opens the View Histories window.
Number of LDEVs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open Allocated: Number of allocated LDEVs for open system. Open Unallocated: Number of unallocated LDEVs for open system. Open Reserved: Number of reserved LDEVs for the open system. Open V-VOLs: Number of allocated V-VOLs for the open system. Mainframe Allocated: Number of allocated LDEVs for the mainframe system. Mainframe Reserved: Number of reserved LDEVs for the mainframe system. Mainframe V-VOLs: Number of allocated V-VOLs for the mainframe system.
Total Number of LDEVs	Total number of LDEVs.

Item	Description
Format/Shredding Task Status	<p>Formatting n %: Displays the percentage of the progress of formatting processing.</p> <p>Preparing Quick Format n %: Displays the percentage of the progress of the preparing quick format processing.</p> <p>Shredding n %: Displays the percentage of the progress of the shredding processing.</p> <p>Blank: Displays a blank when formatting or shredding does not perform. If the information cannot be obtained, for example being changed of the storage system configuration, a blank is displayed.</p>

LDEVs tab

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name.
Status	<p>LDEV status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Normal status. ▪  Blocked: Hosts cannot access a blocked volume. ▪  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume. ▪  Formatting: Volume is being formatted. ▪  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting. ▪  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted. ▪  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied. ▪  Read Only: Data cannot be written on a read-only volume. ▪  Shredding: Volume is being shredded. ▪ - (hyphen): Any status other than the above.

Item	Description
V-VOL Management Task ¹	Displays the V-VOL management task being performed on a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, or a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Capacity Saving ¹	Capacity saving setting of the LDEV: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used.
Capacity Saving Status ¹	Status of the capacity saving function: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Deleting Volume: The deletion of DP-VOL whose capacity saving function is Enabled is being performed. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Deduplication Data ¹	Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication. <p>If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0.</p> <p>When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.</p>
Number of paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
Emulation Type	Emulation type.

Item	Description
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type to be assigned to the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL ▪ External: External volume. ▪ External MF: Migration volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution.
Attribute	Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Volume is a command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Volume is a remote command device. ▪ JNL VOL: Volume is a journal volume. ▪ Pool VOL: Volume is a pool volume. The number in parentheses shows the pool identifier. ▪ Quorum Disk: Quorum disk for global-active device. ▪ TSE: TSE-VOL ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV of the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ Deduplication System Data: Deduplication System Data volume. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume other than the above.
Access Attribute ¹	Displays the access attribute of the LDEV.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name (pool identifier).
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk (*) indicates that the parity group that the LDEV belong to is interleaved (concatenated).
MP Blade ID ^{1,2}	MP blade identifier.

Item	Description
Encryption ¹	<p>Encryption information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning , the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.
Expanded Space Used ¹	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>This item displays whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area. ▪ No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.
ALUA Mode	<p>Information about the ALUA mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. ▪ Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
T10 PI ¹	<p>The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p>
External Storage System ¹	<p>Information about the external storage system.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>If LDEV is the DP-VOL of the data direct mapping attribute, the information about the external storage system to which LDEV is being mapped appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Vendor/Model/Serial Number: The information about these items of the external storage system is displayed. A hyphen(-) appears if an external storage system is not mapped to LDEV. ▪ Path Group ID: The information about this item of the external storage system is displayed. If the link of the path group id is clicked, the Mapped Volumes tab appears. A hyphen (-) appears if an external storage system is not mapped to LDEV.
Data Direct Mapping ¹	<p>Information about the data direct mapping.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: LDEV ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, or LDEV ID of the DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled. If the link of LDEV ID is clicked, the LDEV Properties window appears. If data direct mapping is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed. If a DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled is not created in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, this field is blank. ▪ Parity Group ID: Parity Group ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If data direct mapping is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID) ¹	Name and ID of the resource group to which this LDEV belongs.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute¹: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

Item	Description
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the LUN Paths window.
Edit LDEVs	Opens the Edit LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs ³	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Delete LDEVs ³	Opens the Delete LDEVs window.
Shred LDEVs ³	Opens the Shred LDEVs window.
Delete LUN Paths ³	Opens the Delete LUN Paths window.
Edit Command Device ³	Opens the Edit Command Devices window
Block LDEVs ³	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs ³	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.
Assign MP Unit	Opens the Assign MP Unit window.
Delete UUIDs ³	Opens the Delete UUIDs window.
Reclaim Zero Pages ³	Opens the Reclaim Zero Pages window.
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages ³	Opens the Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window.
Expand V-VOLs ³	Opens the Expand V-VOLs window.
View Tier Properties ³	Opens the View Tier Properties window.
Migrate Volumes ³	Opens the Migrate Volumes window.
Interrupt LDEV Task	Select Shred to display the Interrupt Shredding Task window.
Force Delete Pairs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TC Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (TC Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ UR Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (UR Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ GAD Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (GAD Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i>.

Item	Description
View Mainframe Fenced Status	Opens the Mainframe Fenced Status window.
ALUs/SLUs ³	Opens the ALUs / SLUs window.
Unbind SLUs ³	Opens the Unbind SLUs window.
Export ³	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings for the table. If an MP unit is blocked due to a failure, the processing to be performed by the MP unit where the failure occurred is taken over by another normal MP unit. See the following two tables. Available when you click More Actions. 	

MP blade priorities after takeover (1)

MP blade blocked by failure	Priority assumed by MP blades after takeover						
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th
MPB 0	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3
MPB 1	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4
MPB 2	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5
MPB 3	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6
MPB 4	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7
MPB 5	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0
MPB 6	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1
MPB 7	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2
MPB 8	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11
MPB 9	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12
MPB 10	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13

MP blade blocked by failure	Priority assumed by MP blades after takeover						
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	7th
MPB 11	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14
MPB 12	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15
MPB 13	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8
MPB 14	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9
MPB 15	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10

MP blade priorities after takeover (2)

MP blade blocked by failure	Priority assumed by MP blades after takeover							
	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	15th
MPB 0	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11
MPB 1	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12
MPB 2	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13
MPB 3	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14
MPB 4	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15
MPB 5	MPB 9	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8
MPB 6	MPB 10	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9
MPB 7	MPB 11	MPB 12	MPB 13	MPB 14	MPB 15	MPB 8	MPB 9	MPB 10
MPB 8	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3
MPB 9	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4
MPB 10	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5
MPB 11	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6
MPB 12	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7
MPB 13	MPB 1	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0
MPB 14	MPB 2	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1

MP blade blocked by failure	Priority assumed by MP blades after takeover							
	8th	9th	10th	11th	12th	13th	14th	15th
MPB 15	MPB 3	MPB 4	MPB 5	MPB 6	MPB 7	MPB 0	MPB 1	MPB 2

Create LDEVs wizard

Use this window to create and provision LDEVs. You can create multiple LDEVs at once when setting up your storage system.

Create LDEVs window

Use this window to create and provision LDEVs. You can create multiple LDEVs at the same time when setting up your storage system.

Setting fields

Provisioning Type:

System Type: Open Mainframe

Emulation Type:

Parity Group Selection:

Drive Type/RPM:

RAID Level:

Total Selected Free Spaces: 0

Total Selected Free Space Capacity: 0.00 MB

LDEV Capacity: Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)

Number of LDEVs per Free Space:

LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number

(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)

Format Type:

Item	Description
Provisioning Type	Select the type of LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Basic: Internal volume. Dynamic Provisioning: DP-VOL. External: External volume. Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution.
System Type	Select the system of LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open: Volume for open systems. Mainframe: Volume for mainframe systems.

Item	Description
Data Direct Mapping	<p>Select Enable or Disable for the data direct mapping attribute. This item can be selected if the Provisioning Type is Dynamic Provisioning or External, and if the System Type is Open. If the Provisioning Type is External and an external volume with the data direct mapping attribute enabled does not exist, you cannot select Enable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The data direct mapping attribute is enabled. ▪ Disable: The data direct mapping attribute is disabled.
Emulation Type	<p>Select the LDEV emulation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For open systems, OPEN-V is default. ▪ For mainframe systems, 3390 is default. <p>Note: The emulation type might differ depending on the configuration.</p>
Capacity Saving	<p>Select the option for the capacity saving functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: Select to use the compression function. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: Select to use the deduplication and compression functions. This option cannot be selected if the LDEV status of the deduplication system data volume in the target pool is other than Normal. ▪ Disabled: Select to disable the capacity saving functions. Disabled is automatically selected when any of the following conditions is satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Enable is selected for Data Direct Mapping. - The license for the capacity saving functions is not installed. - Enable is set for Multi-Tier Pool. - Mainframe is set for System Type. - The device emulation type is other than OPEN-V.

Item	Description
Multi-Tier Pool	<p>Select Enable or Disable if using Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The pool for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is displayed in the Select Pool window. ▪ Disable: The pool for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is displayed in the Select Pool window.
Active Flash	<p>Select to enable active flash. To select this item, all of the following conditions must be met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The Multi-Tier Pool option is enabled. ▪ Pool volumes whose drive type is SSD or FMD are installed.
TSE Attribute	<p>Select whether to create a TSE-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: TSE-VOL is created. ▪ Disable: TSE-VOL is not created. <p>If all the following conditions are satisfied, you can specify this item:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mainframe is selected in the System Type. ▪ Disable is selected in the Multi-Tier Pool field.
Parity Group Selection, Pool Selection, or External Volume Selection	<p>Select the parity group to which the LDEV is assigned.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Parity Group Selection: Displayed when you create internal volumes. ▪ Pool Selection: Displayed when you create DP-VOLs. If the Data Direct Mapping is set to Enable, this item is not displayed. ▪ External Volume Selection: Displayed when you create external volumes.

Item	Description
Drive Type/RPM	Select the data drive type and RPM. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Any: All types of drives that are supported by the system. ▪ FMD DC2: Specify when creating an LDEV in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled. ▪ FMD: Flash module drive. ▪ FMD-HDE: FMD-HDE drive. Specify this item when creating an LDEV in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled. ▪ SSD: SSD drive. ▪ SAS/RPM: SAS drive of the specified rotational speed (RPM). ▪ External Storage: External storage system. ▪ Mixed: Mixed types of drives.
RAID Level	Select the RAID level. When External Storage is selected from the Drive Type/RPM field, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Select Free Spaces	Displays the Select Free Spaces window.
Select Pool	Displays the Select Pool window.
Total Selected Free Spaces	Displays the number of the selected free spaces.
Total Selected Free Space Capacity	Displays the total capacity of the free spaces.
Selected Pool Name (ID)	Displays the selected pool name and ID.
Selected Pool Capacity	Displays the selected pool capacity.

Item	Description
LDEV Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you want to offset the specified LDEV capacity by boundary, set the Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) to ON. • If the emulation type is OPEN-V, Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) is set to OFF by default. • If the emulation type is other than OPEN-V, Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) is set to ON by default. ▪ Input area: Specify the LDEV capacity to create in a free space, a pool, or an external volume. <p>Detailed calculation of the LDEV capacity differs depending on the specification of the unit. If the Data Direct Mapping is set to enable, this item is not displayed.</p> <p>(Open systems) When creating of LDEVs carved from accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, estimate the LDEV capacity. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p>
Number of LDEVs per Free Space, Number of LDEVs, or Number of LDEVs per External Volume	<p>Specify the number of LDEVs to create in a free space, pool, or the external volume.</p> <p>If the Provisioning Type is set to Dynamic Provisioning and the Data Direct Mapping is set to enable, this item is not displayed. If the Provisioning Type is set to External and the Data Direct Mapping is set to enable, 1 is displayed in the Number of LDEVs per External Volume.</p> <p>(Open systems) When creating LDEVs in accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, estimate the number of LDEVs. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p>

Item	Description
Available Volumes	<p>Select available volumes. This item is displayed when the Provisioning Type is Dynamic Provisioning and data direct mapping is enabled. The following items are displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID ▪ LDEV Name ▪ Parity Group ID ▪ Capacity: The capacity of LDEV ▪ Vender/Model/Serial Number ▪ Pool Name (ID) ▪ Capacity: The capacity of the pool
LDEV Name	<p>LDEV name. Specify the prefix characters and the initial number.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prefix: A fixed character string. ▪ Initial Number: The initial number of the LDEV name. <p>Specify the prefix characters and the initial number according to the examples below. You can specify up to 32 characters total.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3... 9). ▪ 08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10... 99). ▪ 23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25... 99). ▪ 098: Up to 902 numbers are added (098, 099, 100... 999).

Item	Description
Format Type	<p>Specify the format type. This is displayed when an internal or external volume is used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Quick Format (default): You cannot select this when the provisioning type is external volume or for an LDEV in a parity group with accelerated compression enabled. ▪ Write to Control Blocks: You can select this option when the external mainframe volume is created. This is default when selecting the external volume of the mainframe system. ▪ Normal Format: Normal formatting. ▪ No Format: Volumes are not formatted.
Initial LDEV ID	<p>Specify the LDEV ID. LDKC is fixed to 00. Default of CU and DEV is 00:00.</p> <p>For creating multiple LDEVs, select the interval of the assigned LDEV ID from the Interval list.</p>
View LDEV IDs	Displays the View LDEV IDs windows.
Initial SSID	<p>Specify the SSID. The default is 0004.</p> <p>When creating multiple LDEVs, specify the beginning number setting to the LDEV.</p>
View SSIDs	Displays the View SSIDs window.
CLPR	Cache logical partition number, displayed as <i>ID:CLPR</i> .
MP Blade	<p>Specify the MP blade you want to assign to the LDEV.</p> <p>If automatic assignment is enabled for one or more MPs, you can also select Auto.</p> <p>If Auto is enabled, the default is Auto. If Auto is disabled, the default is the lowest number of the MP blade.</p>
Full Allocation	<p>Select Enable to reserve pages in a pool that is associated with LDEVs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Full allocation is performed. ▪ Disable (default): Full allocation is not performed.

Item	Description
	<p>You can select Enable only when all of the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity is same or less than the depletion threshold. ▪ The specified pool is not undergoing the shrink processing. ▪ The LDEV emulation type is OPEN-V or 3390-A. ▪ The data direct mapping attribute is disabled.
Tiering Policy	<p>Tiering Policy: All(0) is selected by default. You can change a level from Level1(1) to Level5(5) or from Level6(6) to Level31(31). From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can also be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.</p> <p>For a DP-VOL for which the capacity saving function is enabled, All(0) or Level1(1) through Level5(5) can be specified.</p> <p>You can specify this function when the multi-tier pool option is enabled.</p>
New Page Assignment Tier	<p>Specify the new page assignment tier you want to assign to the LDEV. Middle is selected by default. You can select from the levels of High, Middle, and Low. You can specify this function when the multi-tier pool option is enabled.</p>
Relocation Priority	<p>Specify this option if the LDEV is to be relocated preferentially. You can select Default or Prioritize.</p> <p>You can specify this function when the Multi-Tier Pool is enabled.</p>
T10 PI	<p>Specify the LDEV's T10 PI attribute (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>This item can be specified only when the Provisioning Type is Basic, Dynamic Provisioning, or Snapshot.</p>
Add	<p>Adds the LDEVs that have settings specified in the setting field to the Selected LDEVs table.</p>

The items that can be set in this window depend on the type of volume you are creating. The following table lists the items that can be set according to volume type.

Item	Internal volume	V-VOL for open system	V-VOL for mainframe system	External volume	Snapshot volume	LDEV of the ALU attribution
Provisioning Type	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required
System Type	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	N/A
Data Direct Mapping	N/A	Optional	Disabled	Optional	N/A	N/A
Emulation Type	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	N/A
Capacity Saving	N/A	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Multi-Tier Pool	N/A	Required	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Active Flash	N/A	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
TSE Attribute	N/A	Disabled	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Drive Type/RPM	Required	Required	Required	Disabled	N/A	N/A
RAID Level	Required	Required	Required	Disabled	N/A	N/A
Select Free Spaces	Required	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	N/A
Select Pool	N/A	Required	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)	Optional	Optional	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A
LDEV Capacity	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	N/A
Number of LDEVs per Free Space	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Item	Internal volume	V-VOL for open system	V-VOL for mainframe system	External volume	Snapshot volume	LDEV of the ALU attribution
Number of LDEVs	N/A	Required	Required	N/A	Required	Required
Number of LDEVs per External Volume	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	N/A
Available Volumes	N/A	Optional	N/A	Optional	N/A	N/A
LDEV Name	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Format Type	Required	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	N/A
Initial LDEV ID	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
View LDEV IDs	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Initial SSID	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
View SSIDs	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
CLPR	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A	Optional	Optional
MP Blade	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Full Allocation	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A
Tiering Policy	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A
New Page Assignment Tier	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A
Relocation Priority	N/A	Optional	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A
T10 PI	Optional	Optional	Disabled	N/A	Optional	N/A

Selected LDEVs table

<input type="checkbox"/>	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Drive Type/RPM	RAID Level	Emula Type
No Data						

Selected: 0 of 0

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name, including the combination of prefix characters and the initial number.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier.
Data Direct Mapping	Information about the data direct mapping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LDEV ID: LDEV ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, or LDEV ID of the DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled. If data direct mapping is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Parity Group ID: Parity Group ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If data direct mapping is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated).

Item	Description
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Format Type	Format type.
SSID	Storage system identifier in hexadecimal format.
CLPR	Cache logical partition number, displayed as <i>ID:CLPR</i> . For detailed information about CLPRs, see the <i>Performance Guide</i> .
MP Blade ID	MP blade identifier. If Auto is selected, the ID is automatically assigned.
Multi-Tier Pool	Indicates whether Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled or disabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The LDEV is for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Disabled: The LDEV is not for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe.
Full Allocation	Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation in a pool associated with the V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is performed. ▪ Disable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is not performed.
Active Flash	Indicates whether active flash is enabled or disabled. Enabled: The LDEV is for active flash or active flash for mainframe. Disable: The LDEV is for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. - (hyphen): The LDEV is for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe.
Tiering Policy	The tiering policy name and ID for the LDEV.
New Page Assignment Tier	Displays the new page assignment tier for the LDEV.
Relocation Priority	Displays the relocation priority assigned to the LDEV.

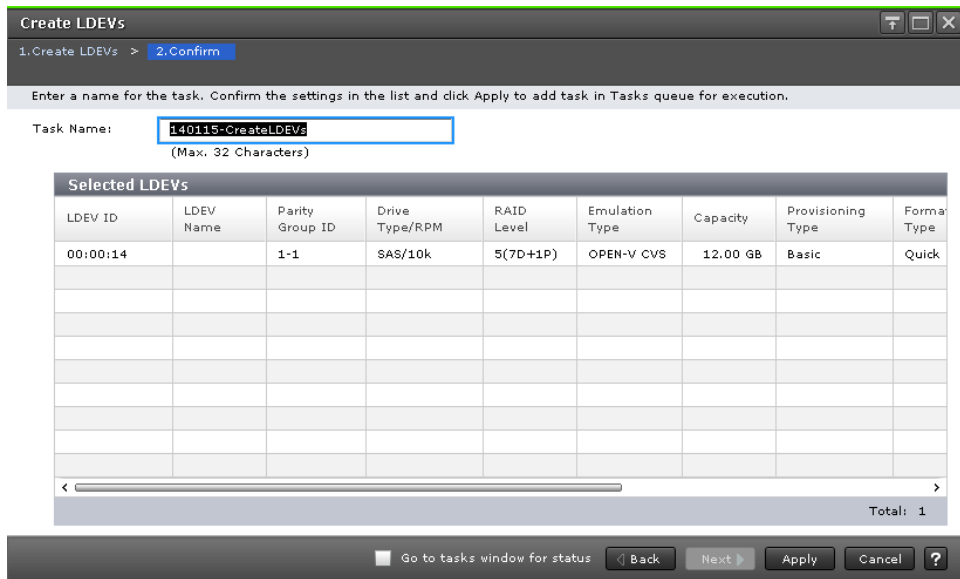
Item	Description
Capacity Saving	Displays the capacity saving setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The Capacity Saving function is not used.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TSE: TSE-VOL ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume for which the attribute is not defined.
Encryption	Encryption information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning, the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.

Item	Description
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group that is created of LDEVs</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
T10 PI	Displays the LDEV's T10 PI attribute information (Enabled or Disabled).
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and ID of which this LDEV is a member.
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Displays the information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: The model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine having the LDEV. ▪ Attribute: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.
Edit SSIDs	Opens the Edit SSIDs window.
Change LDEV Settings	Opens the Change LDEV Settings window.
Remove	Removes the added LDEV.

Create LDEVs confirmation window



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, and then click Help.



Selected LDEVs table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name, including the combination of prefix characters and the initial number.
Data Direct Mapping	Information about the data direct mapping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LDEV ID: LDEV ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, or LDEV ID of the DP-VOL data direct mapping enabled. If the data direct mapping attribute is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Parity Group ID: Parity Group ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If the data direct mapping attribute is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Drive Type/RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name (pool identifier).
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated).
Emulation Type	Emulation type.

Item	Description
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Type of LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution.
Format Type	Format type.
SSID	Storage system identifier in hexadecimal format.
CLPR	Cache logical partition number, in <i>ID:CLPR</i> format. For detailed information about CLPRs, see the <i>Performance Guide</i> .
MP Blade ID	MP blade identifier. If Auto is selected, the ID is automatically assigned.
Multi-Tier Pool	Displays whether Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled or disabled. Enable: The LDEV for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is displayed. Disable: The LDEV for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe is displayed.
Active Flash	Indicates whether active flash is enabled or disabled. Enabled: The LDEV is for active flash or active flash for mainframe. Disable: The LDEV is for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. Hyphen (-): The LDEV is for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe.
Full Allocation	Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation in a pool associated with the V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is performed. ▪ Disable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is not performed.

Item	Description
Tiering Policy	Displaying the tiering policy name and ID for the LDEV.
New Page Assignment Tier	Displays the new page assignment tier for the LDEV.
Relocation Priority	Relocation priority assigned to the LDEV.
Capacity Saving	Displays the capacity saving setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The Capacity Saving function is not used.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. TSE: TSE-VOL. ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution. Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. Hyphen (-): Volume in which attribute is not defined.

Item	Description
Encryption	<p>Encryption information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ Hyphen(-): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning , the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group that is created of LDEVs.</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>Hyphen (-): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
T10 PI	<p>Displays the LDEV's T10 PI attribute information (Enabled or Disabled).</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	<p>Resource group name and ID of which this LDEV is a member.</p>

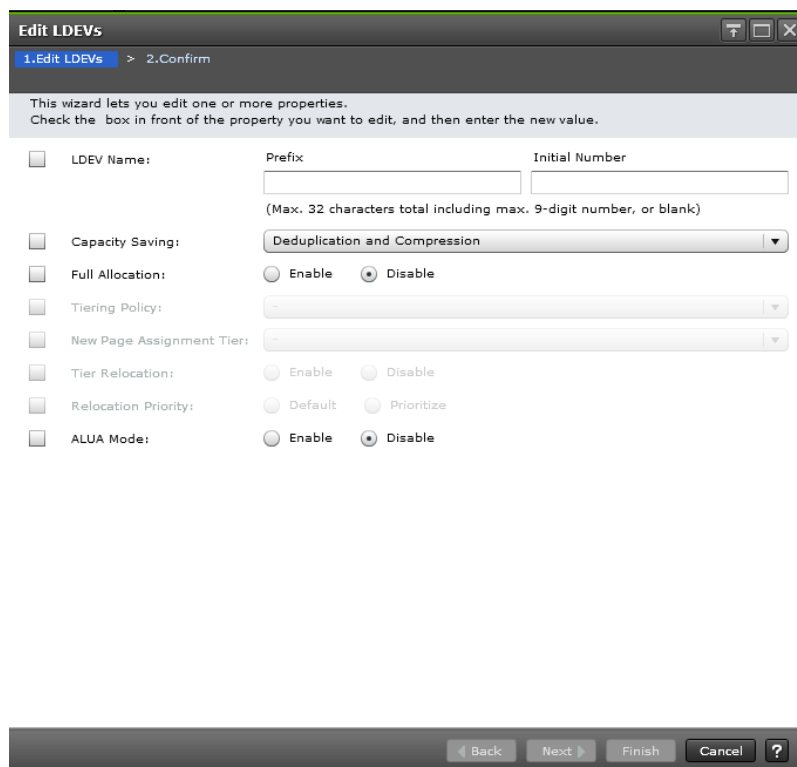
Item	Description
Virtual Storage Machine	Displays the information about the virtual storage machine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: The model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine having the LDEV. ▪ Attribute: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

Edit LDEVs wizard

Use this window to change the LDEV name.

Edit LDEVs window

Use this window to edit LDEV properties.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit LDEVs' wizard window with the following configuration options:

- LDEV Name:** Includes fields for 'Prefix' and 'Initial Number'. A note below states: '(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)'. There are checkboxes to the left of the property name.
- Capacity Saving:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Deduplication and Compression'.
- Full Allocation:** Radio buttons for 'Enable' and 'Disable' (selected).
- Tiering Policy:** A dropdown menu.
- New Page Assignment Tier:** A dropdown menu.
- Tier Relocation:** Radio buttons for 'Enable' and 'Disable'.
- Relocation Priority:** Radio buttons for 'Default' and 'Prioritize'.
- ALUA Mode:** Radio buttons for 'Enable' and 'Disable' (selected).

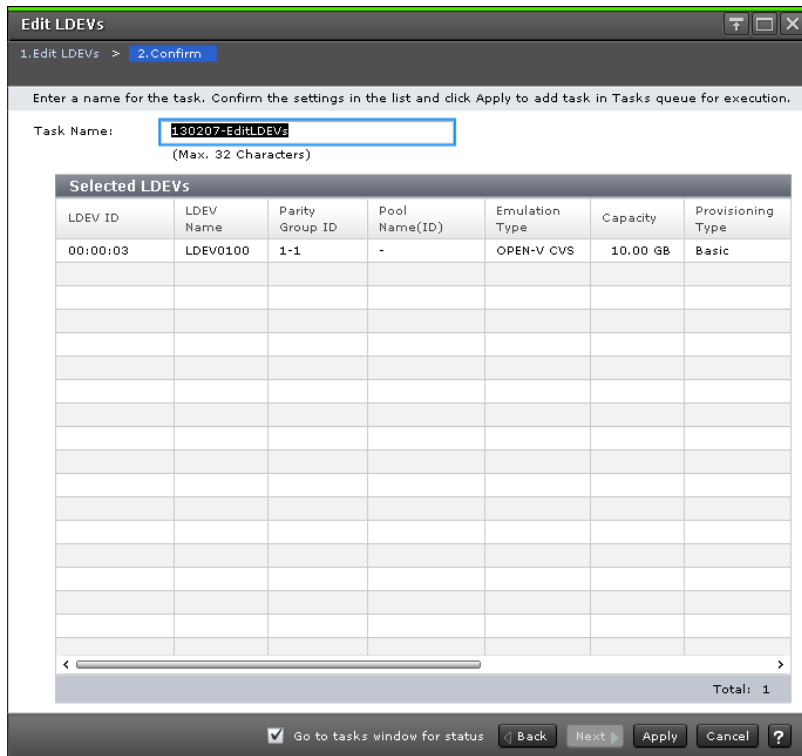
At the bottom of the window, there are navigation buttons: 'Back', 'Next', 'Finish', 'Cancel', and a help icon (?).

Item	Description
LDEV Name	<p>Specify the LDEV name, using up to 32 characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prefix: Fixed character string. ▪ Initial Number: Initial number. <p>Specify the prefix characters and the initial number according to these examples.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3 ... 9). ▪ 08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10 ... 99). ▪ 23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25 ... 99). ▪ 098: Up to 902 numbers are added (098, 099, 100 ... 999).
Capacity Saving	<p>Select the option for the capacity saving function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: Select this option to use the compression function. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: Select this option to use the deduplication and compression functions. ▪ Disabled: Select this option to disable the Capacity Saving function. <p>If any of the following conditions is satisfied, Disabled is set for Capacity Saving:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Direct Mapping is enabled. ▪ The license for the capacity saving function is not installed. ▪ There are not enough cache management devices. ▪ A journal volume for Universal Replicator is selected.
Full Allocation	<p>Select Enable to allocate all pages of LDEVs on the current pool. The default is Disable. If LDEVs are satisfied of all following conditions, you can select Enable.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All LDEVs are V-VOLs of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe. ▪ The sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity is same or less than the depletion threshold. ▪ The specified pool is not in the shrink processing of the pool capacity. ▪ The LDEV emulation type is OPEN-V or 3390-A.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The status of LDEV is Normal. ▪ The data direct mapping attribute is disabled.
Tiering Policy	Specify the tiering policy for the LDEV. You can specify this function only for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOLs.
New Page Assignment Tier	<p>Specify the new page assignment tier you want to assign to the LDEV. Middle is set by default. You can select from High, Middle, or Low.</p> <p>You can specify this function only for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOLs.</p>
Tier Relocation	Specify Enable or Disable for the performing of the tier relocation. You can specify this function only for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOLs.
Relocation Priority	Specify the relocation priority assigned to the LDEV. You can set this function only for Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOLs with tier relocation enabled.
ALUA Mode	Select to Enable or Disable ALUA mode for global-active device pairs. For details, see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i> .

Edit LDEVs confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name, including the combination of prefix characters and the initial number.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier.
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Type of LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution.

Item	Description
Capacity Saving	<p>Displays the capacity saving setting of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Full Allocation	<p>Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation in a pool associated with the V-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Full allocation is performed. ▪ Disable: Full allocation is not performed. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEVs other than V-VOLs for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe.
Tiering Policy	<p>Tiering policy. A hyphen (-) is displayed for volumes other than Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe volumes.</p>
New Page Assignment Tier	<p>Displays the new page assignment tier for the LDEV. A hyphen (-) is displayed for volumes other than Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe volumes.</p>
Tier Relocation	<p>Displays whether tier relocation is enabled or disabled. A hyphen (-) is displayed for volumes other than Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe volumes.</p>
Relocation Priority	<p>Displays the relocation priority assigned to the LDEV. A hyphen is displayed if the LDEV is the one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV other than Dynamic Tiering. ▪ LDEV other than Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ The tier relocation of LDEV is set to disabled.
ALUA Mode	<p>Information about the ALUA mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. ▪ Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.

Change LDEV Settings window

Use this window to edit one or more LDEV properties.

Item	Description
LDEV Name	<p>Specify the LDEV name, using up to 32 characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prefix: Fixed character string. Initial Number: Initial number. <p>Specify the initial number according to these examples. Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3 ... 9) 08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10 ... 99) 23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25 ... 99) 098: Up to 902 numbers are added (098, 099, 100 ... 999)

Item	Description
Initial LDEV ID	<p>Specify the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Assigns the ID at a certain interval starting with the ID you specify.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDKC: Specify the LDKC number. It is fixed to 00. ▪ CU: Specify the CU number. ▪ DEV: Specify the LDEV number. ▪ Interval: Specify the interval of the assigned LDEV ID. ▪ View LDEV IDs: Opens the View LDEV IDs window.
MP Blade	<p>Select the MP blade you want to assign to the LDEV.</p> <p>Select any ID or Auto.</p> <p>If automatic assignment is enabled for one or more MPs, you can also select Auto.</p>
T10 PI	<p>Specify the LDEV's T10 PI attribute (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>This item can be specified if the Provisioning Type is Basic, Dynamic Provisioning, or Snapshot.</p>

View SSIDs window

Use this window to view storage system identifier information.

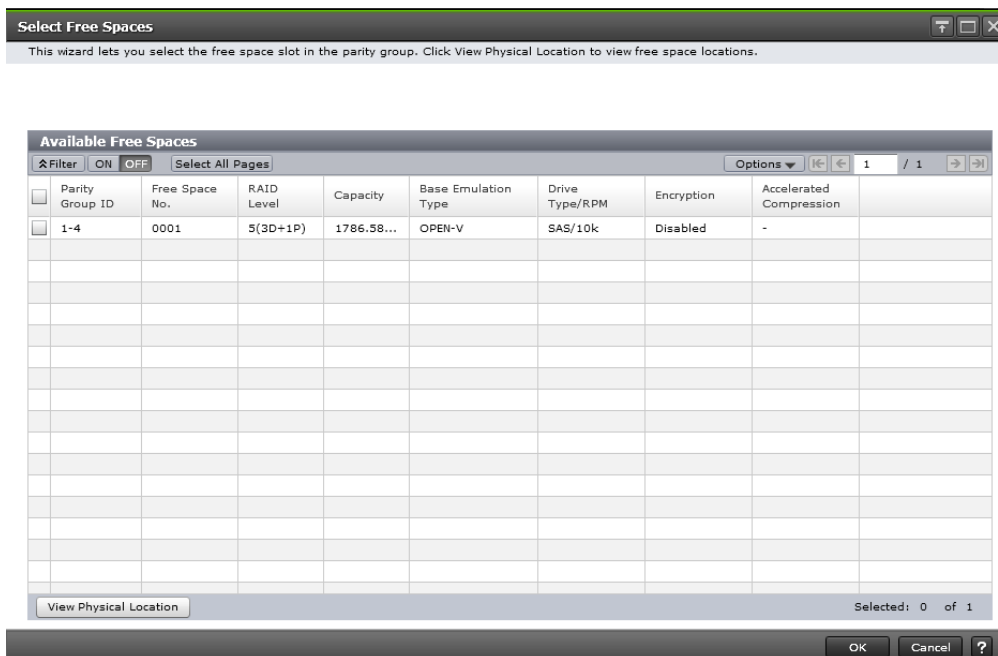
LDKC	CU	LDEV Boundary	SSID
00	00	00-3F	0004
00	00	40-7F	0005
00	00	80-BF	0006
00	00	C0-FF	0007
00	01	00-3F	0008
00	01	40-7F	0009
00	01	80-BF	000A
00	01	C0-FF	000B
00	02	00-3F	000C
00	02	40-7F	000D
00	02	80-BF	000E
00	02	C0-FF	000F
00	03	00-3F	0010
00	03	40-7F	0011
00	03	80-BF	0012
00	03	C0-FF	0013
00	04	00-3F	0014
00	04	40-7F	0015
00	04	80-BF	0016
00	04	C0-FF	0017

Total: 1020

Item	Description
LDKC	LDKC number.
CU	Control unit number.
LDEV Boundary	The range of LDEVs that can be allocated to the SSID. Each LDEV group (divided by LDEV boundary) has a unique SSID.
SSID	Storage system identifier in hexadecimal format.

Select Free Spaces window

Use this window to view information about available free space slots in the parity group. Only the physical free space in the parity groups assigned to the logged-on user are available.



Item	Description
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Free Space No.	Sequence number for identifying free space in the parity group.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated).
Capacity	Capacity of free space.
Base Emulation Type	Emulation type of the parity group.
Drive Type/ RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Encryption	Encryption information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: encrypted parity group ▪ Disable: non-encrypted parity group If the parity group in which the encryption setting is not defined, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Accelerated Compression	Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled. Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.

Item	Description
	Hyphen (-): The parity group with the accelerated compression is not supported.
View Physical Location	Opens the View Physical Location window.

Select Pool window

Select one pool from the following list.

Pool Name (ID)	Pool Type	RAID Level	Capacity			Drive Type/RPM	Encryption	User-Defined Threshold (%)		Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	Subscription (%)		Number of V-VOLs	Number of Root VOLs
			Total	Used	Used (%)			Warning	Depletion		Current	Limit		
<input type="radio"/> TestPool0(0)	DP	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	Yes	698391	Unlimited	1	-
<input type="radio"/> TestPool2(1)	DP	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	Yes	698391	Unlimited	1	-
<input type="radio"/> TestPool3(2)	DP	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	Yes	698391	Unlimited	1	-
<input type="radio"/> TestPool4(3)	DP	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	No	698391	Unlimited	1	-
<input type="radio"/> TestPool5(4)	TI	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	80	-	-	-	-	-	0
<input type="radio"/> test(5)	DP	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.08 GB	1	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	No	3262	Unlimited	0	-
<input type="radio"/> TestPool6(6)	DP	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0	SAS/10k	Disabled	70	80	Yes	3000	3000	1	-

Selected: 0 of 7

Available Pools table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of pool. ▪ Used: For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-disabled parity groups, the sum of the mapped capacity and reserved capacity. For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the pool used capacity is displayed. For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-disabled parity groups, the displayed value of Used might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reason: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and reserved capacity, which are rounded up on each page. • The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (uses a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). • DP-VOL with data direct mapping attribute includes the control information (168 MB is used per 3,145,548 MB) and capacity for one page. ▪ Used (%): For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-disabled parity groups, the percentage of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity of a pool. For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the pool used capacity percentages against the pool capacity is displayed. The Used (%) field displays the value which is truncated after the decimal point of the actual value.
Drive Type/RPM	<p>Displays the data drive type and RPM. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.</p>

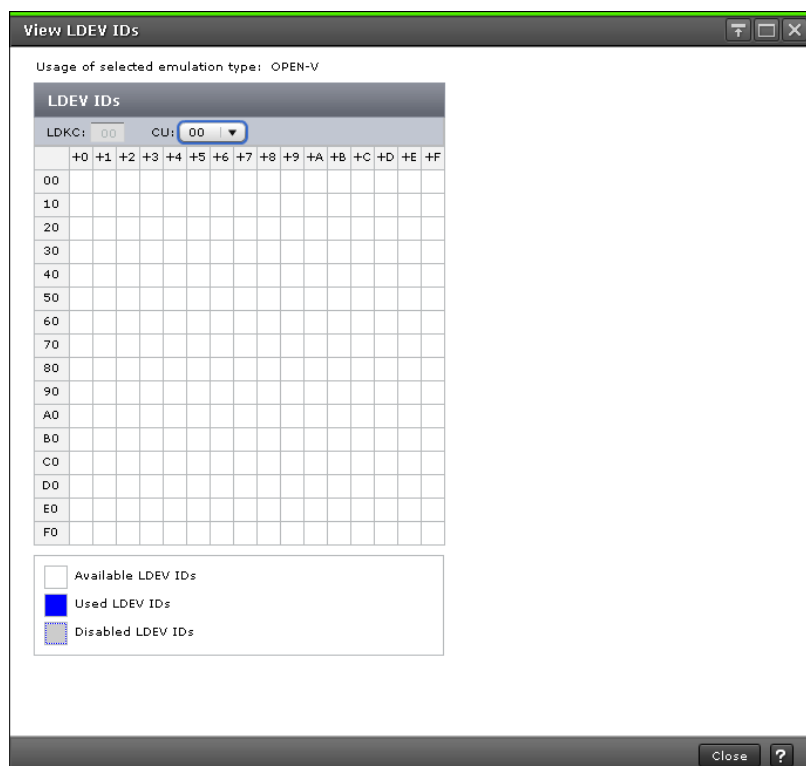
Item	Description
Encryption	<p>Encryption information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): Pool is created by external volumes, or pool is being blocked.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed.
Tier Management	<p>Displays Auto or Manual according to the Tier Management setting when Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled. Displays Manual for pools other than Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe which are available for monitoring. For other pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Number of V-VOLs	<p>Displays the number of V-VOLs associated with the pool.</p>
Number of Root VOLs	<p>Displays the number of root volumes of Thin Image pairs associated with the pool.</p>
Detail	<p>Displays the Pool Properties window when selecting a row and clicking this button</p>

View LDEV IDs window

Use this window to view available, used, and unavailable LDEV IDs in matrix format. The vertical scale in the matrix indicates the second-to-last digit of the LDEV number, and the horizontal scale indicates the last digit of the LDEV number.

In the matrix, used LDEV numbers are displayed in blue, unselectable LDEV numbers are displayed in gray, and unused LDEV numbers are displayed in white. The LDEV numbers corresponding to any one of the following conditions cannot be specified:

- The LDEV is already in use.
- The LDEV is already assigned to another emulation group (grouped every 32 LDEVs).
- The LDEV is not assigned to the user.
- If the following values are not identical when a mainframe volume or multiplatform volume is created:
 - The LDEV ID and the virtual LDEV ID
 - The model and serial number of the storage system and the virtual storage machine



Summary

Item	Description
Usage of selected emulation type	Emulation type selected in the Create LDEVs window.
LDEV IDs	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV. LDKC: Indicates the LDKC number. CU: Indicates the CU number.

Emulation groups and types for mainframe systems

Emulation group	D-type (Overseas PCM) emulation type
Group 1	3390-3, 3390-3A, 3390-3B, 3390-3C 3390-9, 3390-9A, 3390-9B, 3390-9C 3390-A 3390-L, 3390-LA, 3390-LB, 3390-LC 3390-M, 3390-MA, 3390-MB, 3390-MC 3390-V

Emulation groups and types for open systems

Emulation group	D-type (Overseas PCM) emulation type
Group 4	OPEN-3, OPEN-8, OPEN-9, OPEN-E
Group 5	None
Group 6	OPEN-V

View Physical Location window

Use this window to view information about the physical location of where free spaces and LDEVs are assigned in a parity group.

The screenshot shows a window titled "View Physical Location" with two main sections:

Parity Group Property

Parity Group ID	5-1
RAID Level	1(2D+2D)
Capacity(Free/Total)	1.43 TB/5.34 TB
Physical Capacity	-
Drive Type/RPM	SAS/7.2k
Vendor/Model/Serial Number	- / - / -
Resource Group Name (ID)	meta_resource(0)

Physical Location

Filter: ON OFF Options ▾

Physical Location No.	Free Space No.	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Emulation Type	Capacity	Number of Paths
0000	-	00:00:40		OPEN-V CVS	500.00 GB	510
0001	-	00:00:13		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0002	-	00:00:14		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0003	-	00:00:15		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0004	-	00:00:16		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0005	-	00:00:17		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0006	-	00:00:18		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0007	-	00:00:19		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0008	-	00:00:1A		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	0
0009	-	00:08:00		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0010	-	00:08:01		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0011	-	00:08:02		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0012	-	00:08:03		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0013	-	00:08:04		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0014	-	00:08:05		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0
0015	-	00:08:06		OPEN-V CVS	320.00 GB	0

Total: 41

Close ?

Parity Group Property table

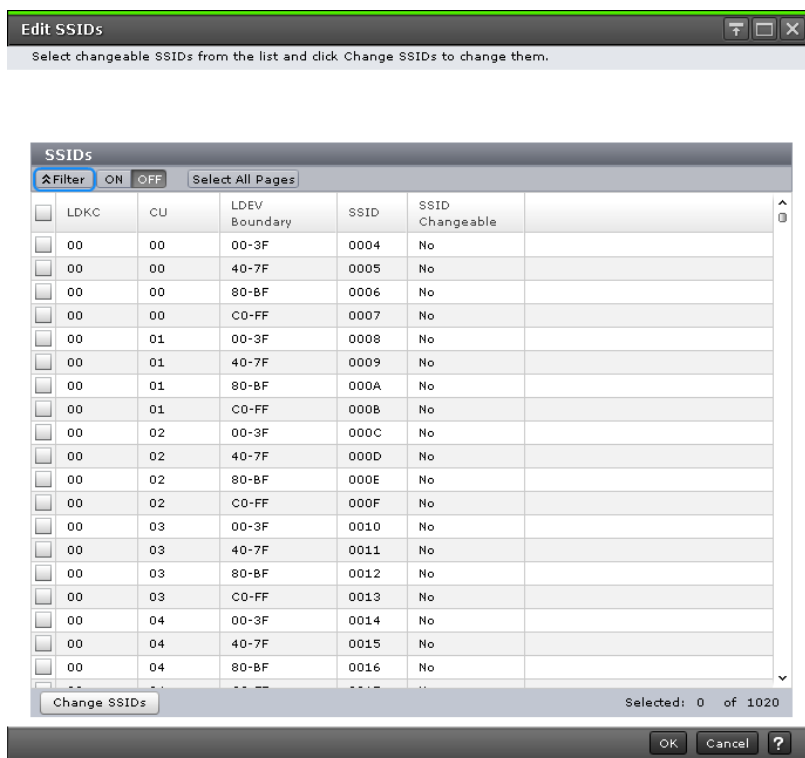
Item	Description
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier. For an interleaved parity group, all parity groups that are contained in the interleaved parity group are shown.
RAID Level	RAID level. An asterisk "*" indicates that the parity group to which the LDEV belongs is interleaved (concatenated).
Capacity (Free/Total)	Free capacity and total capacity of the parity group. The control information used by the storage system, such as control cylinders, is not included in the Free capacity. The total capacity of the LDEVs and Free capacity is displayed in the Total.
Physical Capacity	Capacity assured for writing data in the parity group.
Drive Type/ RPM	Drive type and rpm in use on this LDEV.
Vendor/Model/Serial Number	For external volumes, vendor name, model name, and serial number appear. For internal volumes, -/-/- appears.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and ID of which this parity group is a member.

Physical Location table

Item	Description
Physical Location No.	Location where the free spaces and LDEVs are assigned.
Capacity	Physical Capacity of the LDEV. If LDEVs are allocated across the physical area and virtual area, this item displays the capacity allocated in the physical area (the capacity allocated in the virtual area is not displayed). Therefore, the LDEV capacity might not match with the capacity for LDEV displayed in the Logical Devices window.
Free Space No.	Free space number. The hyphenation appears for volumes other than free spaces.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier. A hyphen (-) appears for other than LDEV IDs.
LDEV Name	LDEV name. A hyphen (-) appears for volumes other than LDEVs.
Emulation Type	Emulation type. A hyphen (-) appears for volumes other than LDEVs.
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV. A hyphen (-) appears for volumes other than LDEVs.

Edit SSIDs window

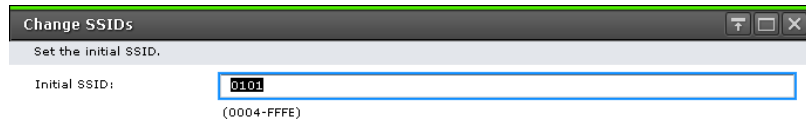
Use this window to select a storage system identifier whose properties can be changed.



Item	Description
LDKC	LDKC number.
CU	Control unit number.
LDEV Boundary	The range of LDEVs that can be allocated to the SSID. Each LDEV group (divided by LDEV boundary) has a unique SSID.
SSID	Storage system identifier in hexadecimal format.
SSID Changeable	Indicates whether the storage system identifier is can be changed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: The SSID can be changed. The SSID was assigned when creating LDEVs but has not yet been registered (unused). ▪ No: The SSID can not be changed. The SSID has been registered (used) and cannot be changed. ▪ Hyphen (-): The SSID is not assigned.
Change SSIDs	Select a row and click to open the Change SSID window.

Change SSIDs window

Use this window to change the SSID.

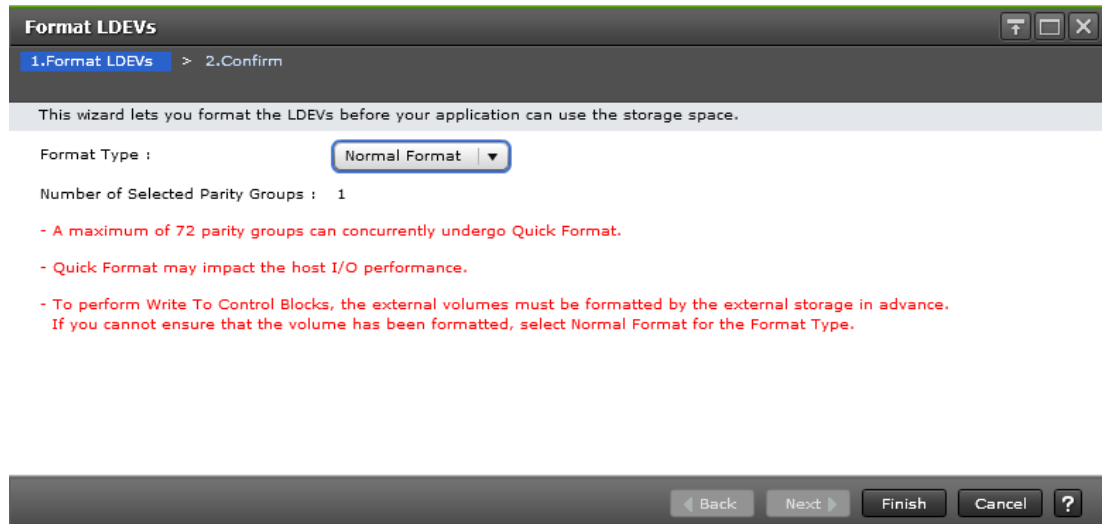


Item	Description
Initial SSID	Specify the initial storage system identifier in hexadecimal format. The default is 0004 if none is specified.

Format LDEVs wizard

Use this window to format LDEVs. LDEVs must be formatted before you can use the storage space.

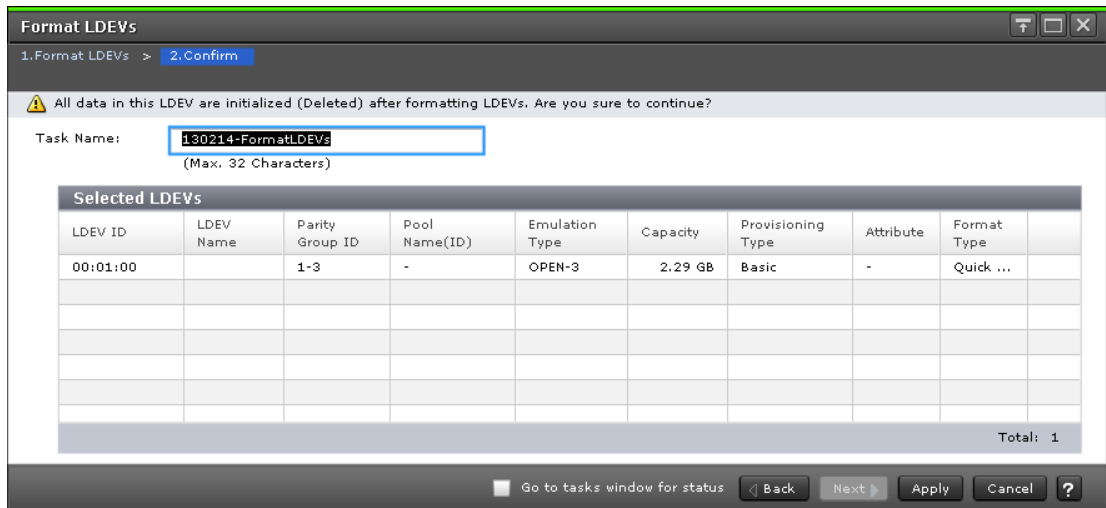
Format LDEVs window



Item	Description
Format Type	<p>Select the type of formatting to be used on this LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Quick Format (default): Select this to perform quick-formatting. This option is available only for formatting an internal volume. ▪ Write to Control Blocks: Select this when the provisioning type is for a mainframe external volume. The management area of external volumes for mainframe systems will be overwritten. This is the default option for an external volume. ▪ Normal Format: Select this to perform normal-formatting. This option is available for formatting an internal volume, or an external volume whose emulation type is OPEN.
Number of Selected Parity Groups	Number of selected parity groups.

Format LDEVs confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier.
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type to be assigned to the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution.

Item	Description
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: CCI command device. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV with the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEV for which the attribute is not defined.
Format Type	Type of formatting operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Quick Format: Quick formatting is performed. ▪ Normal Format: Normal formatting is performed. ▪ Write to Control Blocks: The management area of external volumes for mainframe systems is overwritten.

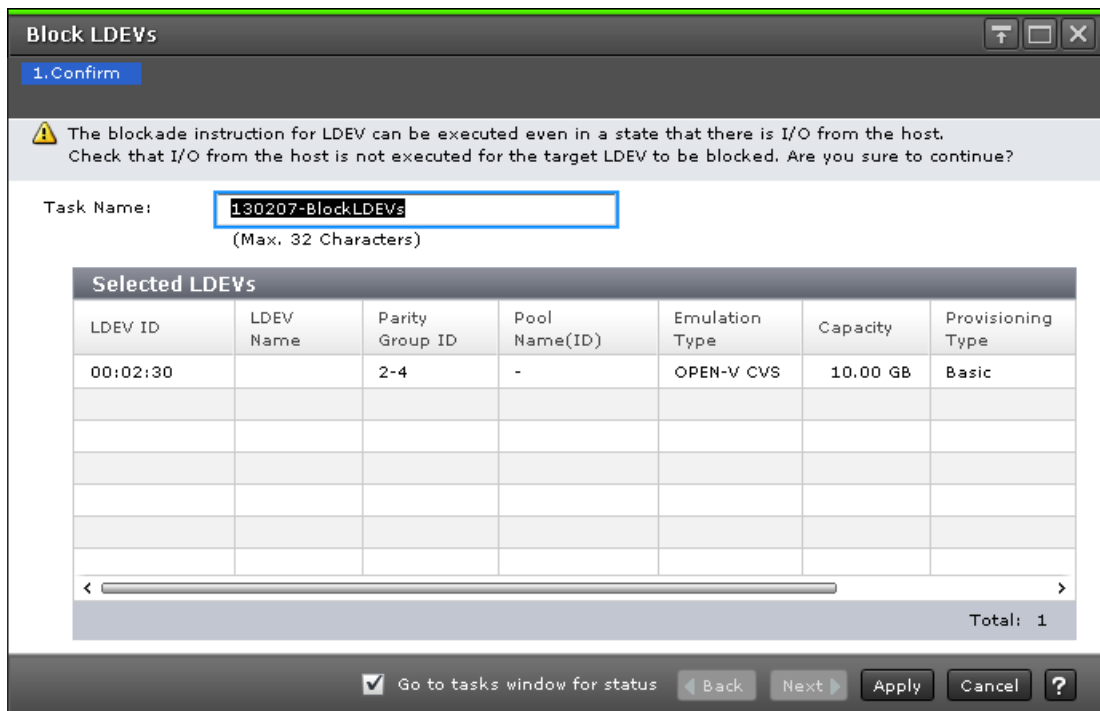
Restore LDEVs window

Use this window to recover blocked LDEVs.

Item	Description
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: CCI command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device for CCI. ▪ JNL VOL: Journal volume for Universal Replicator. ▪ Quorum Disk: Quorum disk for global-active device. ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV of the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEV for which the attribute is not defined.

Block LDEVs window

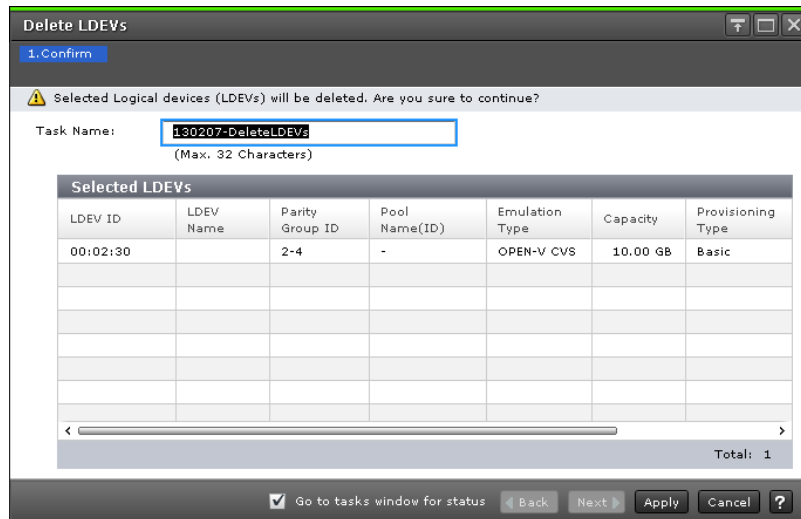
Use this window to block specific LDEVs. The data on the LDEV cannot be accessed when the LDEV is blocked.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier.
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type assigned to the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: CCI command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device for CCI. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV with the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEV for which the attribute is not defined.

Delete LDEVs window

Use the window to delete an LDEV from a parity group.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Parity group identifier.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier.
Emulation Type	Emulation type.
Capacity	LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type assigned to the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution.

Item	Description
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: CCI command device. ▪ ALU: LDEV with the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV with the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEV for which the attribute is not defined.
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group that is created of LDEVs</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression function for the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression function for the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The parity group does not support the accelerated compression function.</p>
Expanded Space Used	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, and then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>This item is displayed whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded area or physical area.</p> <p>Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.</p>
Capacity Saving	<p>Displays the capacity saving setting of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.

LDEV Properties window

Use this window to view the properties of the selected LDEV.



LDEV Properties table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Capacity	Displays the LDEV capacity.

Item	Description
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

Basic tab

LDEV basic information is displayed in the Basic Properties, LUNs, and Hosts.

Basic Properties table

Item	Description
Parity Group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ ID: Displays the parity group ID. ▪ Interleaved Parity Groups: Displays the interleaved parity groups. ▪ RAID Level: Displays the RAID level of parity group. The asterisk (*) indicates the parity group is the interleaved parity group. ▪ Drive Type/RPM: Displays the data drive type and RPM.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Encryption: Displays the encryption setting (enable or disable). If the parity group in which the encryption setting is not defined, a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ Accelerated compression: Displays the accelerated compression setting (enable or disable). If the parity group with accelerated compression setting is not defined, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Pool	<p>Name (ID): Displays the pool name and ID.</p> <p>RAID Level: Displays the RAID level of pool.</p> <p>Type: Displays the data drive type of pool.</p> <p>Encryption: The encryption information of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hyphen(-): Pool is created by external volumes. Or pool is being blocked.
Provisioning Type	<p>Display the type of LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ DP: DP-VOL. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ External MF: Migration volume. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume. ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution.

Item	Description
Status	<p>Displays the LDEV status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Normal: Normal status. ▪ Blocked: Host cannot access blocked volumes. ▪ Warning: Problem occurs in the volumes. ▪ Formatting: Volumes are being formatted. ▪ Preparing Quick Format: Volumes are being prepared for quick formatting. ▪ Quick Formatting: Volumes are being quick-formatted. ▪ Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪ Copying: Data in the volumes are being copied. ▪ Read Only: Data cannot be written on the Read Only volumes. ▪ Shredding: Volumes are being shredded.
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ JNL VOL: Journal volume. ▪ Pool VOL: Pool volume. The number in parentheses shows the pool ID. ▪ Quorum Disk: Quorum disk for global-active device. ▪ TSE: TSE-VOL. ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution. ▪ SLU: LDEV of the SLU attribution. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ Deduplication System Data: Deduplication system data volume ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.

Item	Description
Command Device Attribute	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Security: Displays the setting (Enable or Disable) of Command Device Security. ▪ User Authentication: Displays the setting (Enable or Disable) of user authentication. ▪ Device Group Definition: Displays the setting (Enable or Disable) of Device Group Definition.
Number of Paths	Displays the number of paths of the selected LDEV.
UUID	Displays the UUID.
CLPR	Displays the ID and name of the CLPR in <i>ID:CLPR</i> format.
Access Attribute	Displays the access attribute of the LDEV.
SSID	Displays the SSID.
Cache Mode	Displays the cache mode.
V-VOL Management Task	Displays the V-VOL management task being performed on a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, or a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Current MP Blade ID	Displays the current MP blade ID.
Current MP Blade Name	Displays the current MP blade name.
Assigned MP Blade ID	Displays the assigned MP blade ID.
Assigned MP Blade Name	Displays the assigned MP blade name.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
T10 PI	Displays the LDEV's T10 PI attribute information (Enabled or Disabled).
External Storage System	Information about the external storage system.

Item	Description
	<p>If LDEV is the DP-VOL of the data direct mapping attribute, the information about the external storage system to which LDEV is being mapped appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Vendor/Model/Serial Number: The information about these items of the external storage system is displayed. A hyphen(-) appears if an external storage system is not mapped to LDEV. ▪ Path Group ID: The information about this item of the external storage system is displayed. If the link of the path group id is clicked, the Mapped Volumes tab appears. A hyphen(-) appears if an external storage system is not mapped to LDEV.
Data Direct Mapping	<p>Information about the data direct mapping.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: LDEV ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, or LDEV ID of the DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled. If the link of LDEV ID is clicked, the LDEV Properties window appears. If the data direct mapping attribute is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed. If a DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled is not created in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, this field is blank. ▪ Parity Group ID: Parity Group ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If the data direct mapping attribute is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	<p>Displays the resource group name and ID of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.</p>
Full Allocation	<p>Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation with V-VOLs for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Full allocation is performed. ▪ Disabled: Full allocation is not performed. ▪ Hyphen (-): LDEVs other than V-VOLs for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe.
Tiering Policy	<p>Displays the tiering policy name and ID.</p>
New page Assignment Tier	<p>Displays the new page assignment tier.</p>
Tier Relocation	<p>Displays the tier relocation setting.</p>

Item	Description
Relocation Priority	Displays the relocation priority setting.
Expanded Space Used	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>This item displays whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.</p> <p>Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.</p>
Capacity Saving	<p>Displays the capacity saving setting of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Capacity Saving Status	<p>The status of the capacity saving function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. The processing progress is displayed as a percentage in parentheses. ▪ Deleting Volume: The deletion of DP-VOL whose capacity saving function is Enabled is being performed. The processing progress is displayed as a percentage in parentheses. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.

Item	Description
Deduplication Data	<p>Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication. <p>If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0.</p> <p>When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.</p>
Virtual Attribute	Displays the virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

LUNs table

This table is not displayed if the path is not set.

Item	Description
Port ID	Port name.
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	Host group name or iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
LUN ID	Identifier of the logical unit.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>

Hosts table

This table provides information about the host that can view LDEVs. This table is not available if the WWN is not registered in the host to which the path is set.

Item	Description
Type	Types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel ports. ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI ports.
HBA WWN / iSCSI Name	HBA WWN or iSCSI name.
Host Name	Host name.

Replication Tab

Information about the volume of the local replication pair is displayed in the Replication Properties, SI Pairs, TI Pairs, TC Pairs, UR Pairs, and GAD Pairs tables.

For details about each item, see the following:

- *Hitachi ShadowImage® User Guide*
- *Hitachi ShadowImage® for Mainframe User Guide*
- *Hitachi Thin Image User Guide*
- *Hitachi Compatible FlashCopy/FlashCopy SE User Guide*
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide*
- *Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide*
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide*
- *Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide*
- *Global-Active Device User Guide*

Replication table

Item	Description
Local Replication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ ShadowImage L1: Displays the status of the ShadowImage L1 pair. ▪ ShadowImage L2: Displays the status of the ShadowImage L2 pair. ▪ Thin Image: Displays the status of the Thin Image pair. ▪ ShadowImage for Mainframe: Displays the status of the ShadowImage for Mainframe pair.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compatible FlashCopy[®] V2: Displays the status of the Compatible FlashCopy[®] V2 relationship. ▪ Compatible FlashCopy[®] SE: Displays the status of the Compatible FlashCopy[®] SE relationship.
Remote Replication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TrueCopy: Displays the status of the TrueCopy pair. ▪ Universal Replicator: Displays the status of the Universal Replicator pair. ▪ TrueCopy for Mainframe: Displays the status of the TrueCopy for Mainframe pair. ▪ Universal Replicator for Mainframe: Displays the status of the Universal Replicator for Mainframe pair. ▪ global-active device: Displays the status of the global-active device pair.

SI Pairs table

Item	Description
Primary Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the primary volume. ▪ LDEV Name: Displays LDEV name of the primary volume. ▪ Emulation Type: Displays emulation type of the primary volume. ▪ Capacity: Displays capacity of the primary volume. ▪ CLPR: Displays CLPR ID of the primary volume.
Copy Type	Displays copy type of the pair.
Status	Displays the pair status.
Secondary Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the secondary volume. ▪ LDEV Name: Displays LDEV name of the secondary volume. ▪ Emulation Type: Displays emulation type of the secondary volume. ▪ Capacity: Displays capacity of the secondary volume. ▪ CLPR: Displays CLPR ID of the secondary volume.

Item	Description
Copy Pace	Displays the pace of copying of the pair.
CTG ID	Displays the consistency group number of the pair.
Mirror Unit	Displays the mirror unit number of the pair.
Detail	Displays the View Pair Properties window.

HTI Pairs table

Item	Description
Primary Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the primary volume. ▪ LDEV Name: Displays LDEV name of the primary volume. ▪ Emulation Type: Displays emulation type of the primary volume. ▪ Capacity: Displays capacity of the primary volume. ▪ CLPR: Displays CLPR ID of the primary volume.
Snapshot Group	<p>Displays the snapshot group name.</p> <p>Information is shown for this item only if you have configured a snapshot group for the HTI pair.</p>
Status	Displays the pair status.
Snapshot Date	Displays the date and time when you created the pair to store snapshot.
Secondary Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the secondary volume. ▪ LDEV Name: Displays LDEV name of the secondary volume. ▪ Capacity: Displays capacity of the secondary volume. ▪ CLPR: Displays CLPR ID of the secondary volume.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays pool name and identification number.
CTG ID	Displays the consistency group identification number.
Mirror Unit	Displays the mirror unit number of the pair.

Item	Description
Cascade	Indicates whether a cascade pair can be created by using the pair. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled: Cascade pair can be created. Disabled: Cascade pair cannot be created.
Type	Displays the type of the pair. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Snapshot: Pair with the snapshot attribute. Clone: Pair with the clone attribute.
Topology ID	Displays the topology ID of the pair. The topology ID indicates the layer of the pair location based on the mirror unit. The topology ID consists of the LDEV ID of the root volume and the mirror unit.
Root Volume	Displays the LDEV ID of the root volume of the pair.
Detail	Displays the View Pair Properties window.

TC Pairs table

Item	Description
Copy Type	Displays the copy type of the pair <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TC: TrueCopy pair TCMF: TrueCopy for Mainframe pair
Pair Position	Displays whether the volume is a primary or secondary volume.
Status	Displays the pair status.
Remote Storage System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Model / Serial Number: Displays the model and serial number of the remote storage system. Remote Storage System - SSID: Displays the SSID of the remote storage system. Remote Storage System - LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the remote storage system. Remote Storage System - Port ID, Host Group ID, LUN ID: Displays Port ID, Host Group ID, and LUN ID of the remote storage system.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Host Group ID / iSCSI Target ID: Displays Host Group ID or iSCSI Target ID of the remote storage system. ▪ LUN ID: Displays LUN ID of the remote storage system.
Path Group ID	Displays the path group ID.
Update Type	Displays the update type.
CTG ID	Displays the consistency group ID.
CTG Utilization	Displays whether the consistency group is shared by multiple local and remote storage systems.
Preserve Mirror Status	Displays the preserve mirror status.
Fence Level	Displays the fence level.
Host I/O Time Stamp Transfer	Displays whether the host I/O time stamp is transferred from P-VOL to S-VOL.
Detail	Displays the View Pair Properties window.

UR Pairs table

Item	Description
Copy Type	Displays the copy type of the pair <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ UR: Universal Replicator pair ▪ URMF: Universal Replicator for Mainframe pair
Journal ID	Displays the journal ID.

Item	Description
Pair 1	<p>Displays the pair 1 information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pair Position: Displays whether the volume is a primary or secondary volume. ▪ Mirror ID: Displays the mirror ID. ▪ Status: Displays the pair status. ▪ Remote Storage System: Displays the information about the remote storage system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Model / Serial Number: Displays the model and serial number of the remote storage system. • LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the remote storage system. • Port ID, Host Group ID, LUN ID: Displays Port ID, Host Group ID, and LUN ID of the remote storage system. • Host Group ID / iSCSI Target ID: Displays Host Group ID or iSCSI Target ID of the remote storage system. • LUN ID: Displays LUN ID of the remote storage system. • Journal ID: Displays journal ID of the remote storage system. ▪ Path Group ID: Displays the path group ID. ▪ CTG ID: Displays the consistency group ID. ▪ Error Level: Displays the error level.

Item	Description
Pair 2	Displays the pair 2 information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pair Position: Displays whether the volume is a primary or secondary volume. ▪ Mirror ID: Displays the mirror ID. ▪ Status: Displays the pair status. ▪ Remote Storage System: Displays the information about the remote storage system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Model / Serial Number: Displays the model and serial number of the remote storage system. • LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the remote storage system. • Port ID, Host Group ID, LUN ID: Displays Port ID, Host Group ID, and LUN ID of the remote storage system. • Host Group ID / iSCSI Target ID: Displays Host Group ID or iSCSI Target ID of the remote storage system. • LUN ID: Displays LUN ID of the remote storage system. • Journal ID: Displays journal ID of the remote storage system. ▪ Path Group ID: Displays the path group ID. ▪ CTG ID: Displays the consistency group ID. ▪ Error Level: Displays the error level.
Detail	Displays the View Pair Properties window.

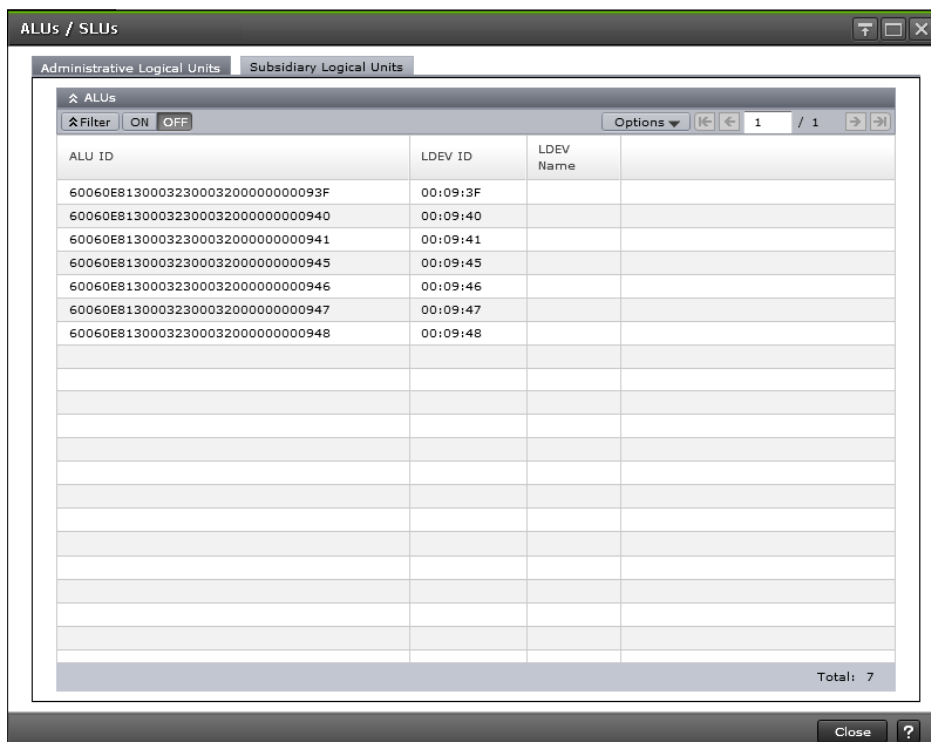
GAD Pairs table

Item	Description
Pair Position	Displays whether the volume is a primary or secondary volume.
Status	Displays the pair status.

Item	Description
Remote Storage System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Model / Serial Number: Displays the model and serial number of the remote storage system. LDEV ID: Displays LDEV ID of the remote storage system. Port ID, Host Group ID, LUN ID: Displays Port ID, Host Group ID, and LUN ID of the remote storage system.
Path Group ID	Displays the path group ID.
Quorum Disk ID	Displays the quorum disk ID.
Mirror ID	Displays the mirror ID.
CTG ID	Displays the consistency group ID.
Detail	Displays the View Pair Properties window.

ALUs / SLUs window

Use this window to view the administrative logical units (ALUs) and subsidiary logical units (SLUs) in the storage system. To open this window, open the **Logical Devices** window, and then in the LDEVs pane click More Actions > View ALUs/SLUs.



Administrative Logical Units tab

Item	Description
ALU ID	ALU attribution identifier of the LDEV. In the VASA environment, if the ALU ID is not assigned, a question mark (?) is displayed.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which consists of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.

Subsidiary Logical Units tab

Item	Description
SLU ID	SLU attribution identifier of the LDEV. In the VASA environment, if the SLU ID is not assigned, a question mark (?) is displayed.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which consists of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type of the LDEV: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ DP: DP-VOL ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.

Unbind SLUs window

The screenshot shows the 'Unbind SLUs' window with the following elements:

- Window title: Unbind SLUs
- Step indicator: 1. Confirm
- Warning message: All SLUs will be unbound from the selected ALUs. Are you sure you want to continue?
- Task Name field: 150131-UnbindSLUs (Max. 32 Characters)
- Table titled 'Selected ALUs':

LDEV ID	ALU ID	LDEV Name
00:00:04	60060E81300032300032000000000004	
- Total: 1
- Buttons: Go to tasks window for status, Back, Next, Apply, Cancel, ?

Selected ALUs

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, a combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
ALU ID	ALU attribution identifier of an LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.

Components window

Use this window to view information about the controller chassis components in the storage system.

The screenshot shows the 'Components' window for a storage system. At the top, it displays 'VSP G1000(S/N:12345) > Components' and 'Last Updated: 2015/11/07 14:56'. Below this, there are two buttons: 'Edit High Temperature Mode' and 'View Temperature Monitor'. A summary table shows the following data:

Number of Controller Chassis	1
High Temperature Mode	Disabled (16-32 degrees C)
Power Consumption	12345 W

Below the summary is a table titled 'Components' with an 'Export' button and a 'Total: 1' indicator. The table has columns for 'Chassis ID', 'Chassis Type', and 'Temperature (degrees C)' (subdivided into 'Cluster 1' and 'Cluster 2'). The data row shows:

Chassis ID	Chassis Type	Temperature (degrees C)	
		Cluster 1	Cluster 2
DKC-0	Controller Chassis	27	29

Summary

Item	Description
Number of Controller Chassis	Number of controller chassis
High Temperature Mode	<p>High Temperature Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled (16-40 degrees C): High Temperature mode is enabled ▪ Disabled (16-32 degrees C): High Temperature mode is disabled
Power Consumption	<p>Total power consumption of the controller chassis and DKUs. When the power information cannot be acquired because of a failure in the component or network, the power information is not added to the power consumption information.</p> <p>In the following cases, the power consumption value might temporarily displays lower:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When starting the storage system ▪ After replacing a part of the storage system ▪ When updating the microcode or after updating the microcode
Edit High Temperature Mode	Opens the Edit Temperature Mode window
View Temperature Monitor	Opens the Temperature Monitor window

Components tab

Item	Description
Chassis ID	Chassis identifier of the storage system.
Chassis Type	Chassis type.
Temperature (degrees C)	<p>Temperature of the cluster.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cluster 1: Temperature of the cluster 1. ▪ Cluster 2: Temperature of the cluster 2. <p>A question mark (?) appears when the temperature information cannot be acquired because of a failure in the component or network.</p>

Item	Description
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

DKC: MP Blades tab

Use this window to view information about MP blades in the storage system.

DKC-0 Last Updated : 2013/02/04 11:25

Storage(S/N:302600) > Components > DKC-0

Number of MP Blades: 2

MP Blades





Edit MP Blades Export Selected: 0 of 2

MP Blade ID	MP Blade Name	Status	Cluster	Auto Assignment
MPB0	MPB-1MA	Normal	1	Enabled
MPB1	MPB-1MB	Normal	1	Enabled

Summary

Item	Description
Number of MP Blades	Number of MP blades assigned to this component.

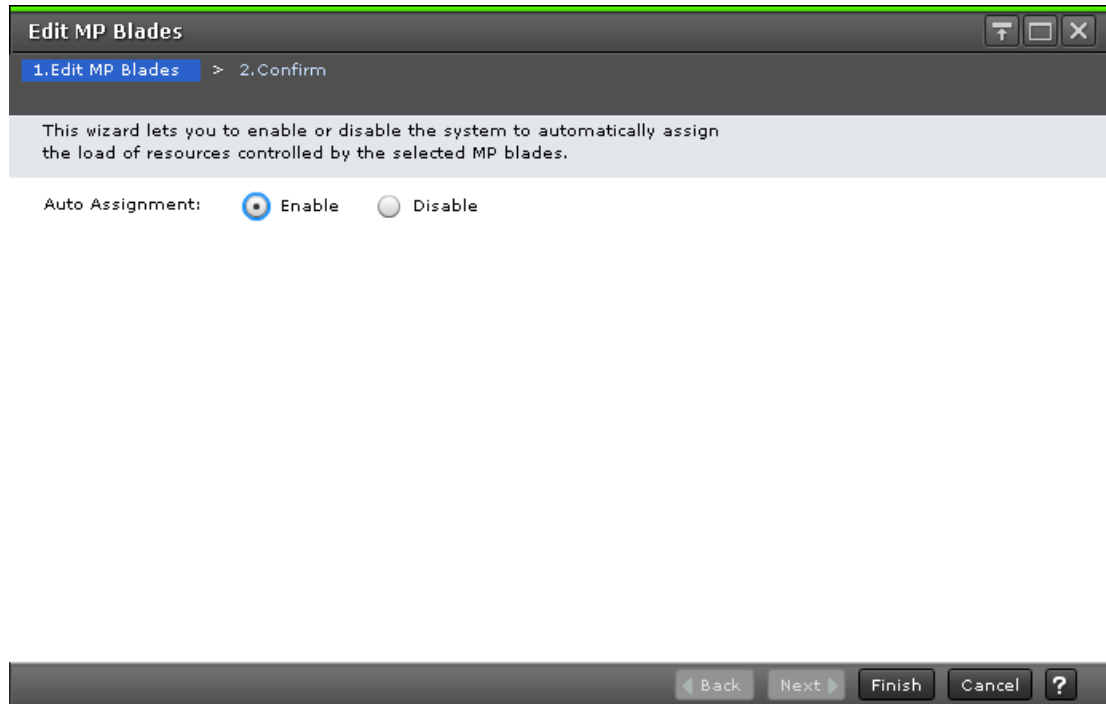
MP Blades tab

Item	Description
MP Blade ID	Identifier of the MP blade.
MP Blade Name	Name of the MP blade.
Status	Status of the MP blade.  Normal: Available.  Warning: The MP blade is partially blocked.  Blocked: The MP blade is blocked.  Failed: The MP blade is in abnormal status.
Cluster	Cluster number of the MP blade.
Auto Assignment	Indicates whether the MP blade is automatically assigned to resources. Enabled: The MP blade is automatically assigned to resources (logical devices, external volumes, and journal volumes). Disabled: The MP blade is not automatically assigned to resources.
Edit MP Blades	Opens the Edit MP Blades window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Edit MP Blades wizard

Use this wizard to enable or disable the storage system to automatically assign the load of resources controlled by the selected MP blades.

Edit MP Blades window



Item	Description
Auto Assignment	<p>Specify whether to automatically assign an MP blade to resources (logical devices, external volumes, and journal volumes).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Resources will be automatically assigned to the specified MP blade. ▪ Disable: Resources will not be automatically assigned to the specified MP blade.

Edit MP Blades confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Edit MP Blades [F] [X] [Close]

1. Edit MP Blades > 2. Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Selected MP Blades		
MP Blade ID	Cluster	Auto Assignment
MPB0	1	Enabled
Total: 1		

Go to tasks window for status [Back] [Next] [Apply] [Cancel] [?]

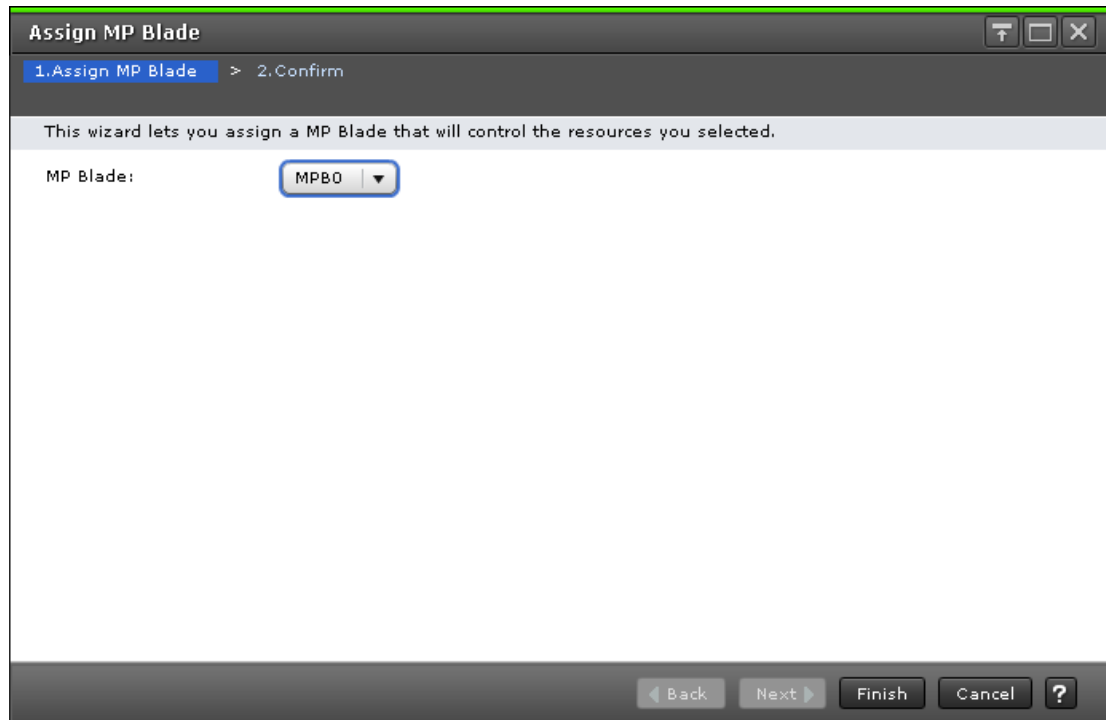
Item	Description
MP Blade ID	MP blade identifier.
Cluster	Cluster number of the MP blade.
Auto Assignment	Indicates whether automatic assignment of MP blades is in use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: An MP blade is automatically assigned to resources (logical devices, external volumes, and journal volumes). ▪ Disabled: An MP blade is not automatically assigned to resources.

Assign MP Blade wizard

Use this wizard to assign a MP blade that will control selected resources.

Assign MP Blade window

Use this window to select a MP blade to assign to an LDEV.



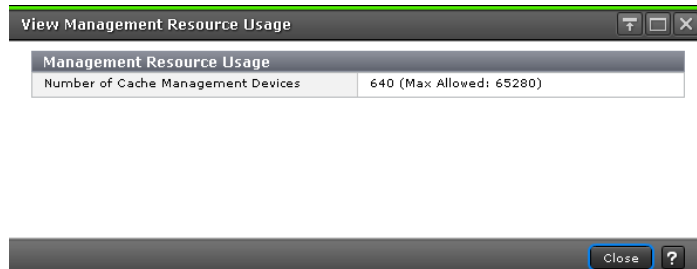
Item	Description
MP Blade	Change the MP blade assigned to the LDEV. <i>MP-blade-ID</i> : The selected MP blade is assigned to the LDEV.

Assign MP Blade confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ JNL VOL: Journal volume ▪ Pool VOL: Pool volume. The number in parentheses shows the pool ID. ▪ Quorum Disk: Quorum disk for global-active device ▪ TSE: TSE-VOL (mainframe systems) ▪ ALU: LDEV of the ALU attribution ▪ SLU: LDEV of the SLU attribution ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute ▪ Deduplication System Data: Deduplication System Data volume (open systems) ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined
MP Blade ID	MP blade identifier to be set.

View Management Resource Usage window



Management Resource Usage table

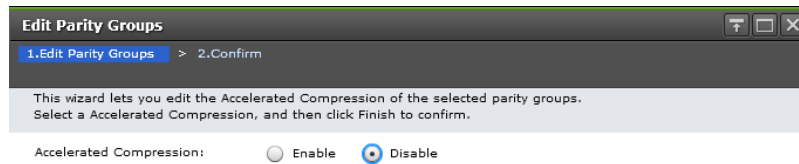
Item	Description
Number of Cache Management Devices	The current number and maximum allowed number of cache management devices in the storage system are displayed.

Edit Parity Groups wizard

Use this wizard to edit parity groups.

Edit Parity Groups window

Use this window to edit the accelerated compression of selected parity groups.



Item	Description
Accelerated Compression	Specify the accelerated compression in a parity group. If the parity group with accelerated compression is selected, this item can be specified. Enabled: accelerated compression is enabled. Disabled: accelerated compression is disabled.

Edit Parity Groups confirmation window

Use this window to confirm the accelerated compression setting of selected parity groups.

1.Edit Parity Groups > 2.Confirm


Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Selected Parity Groups				
Parity Group ID	RAID Level	Drive Type/RPM	Accelerated Compression	
1-3	1(2D+2D)	SSD(FMC)	Disable	
				Total: 1

Go to tasks window for status

Item	Description
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level.
Drive Type-Code	Displays the drive type code.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the drive type and RPM.
Accelerated Compression	Displays the accelerated compression setting for the parity group. Enabled: accelerated compression is enabled. Disabled: accelerated compression is disabled.

 **Note:** If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of other configured items, click Back to display related setting windows, then click Help.

Appendix D: Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and active flash GUI reference

The Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering windows in Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator display the Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering information for the storage system and allow you to perform Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering operations.

For general information about the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Pools window


The screenshot shows the 'Pools' window in Hitachi Device Manager. At the top, it displays 'Storage(S/N:1) > Pools' and 'Last Updated : 2015/01/09 11:30'. Below this is a summary table for 'Edit Tiering Policies'.


		DP	Mainframe DP	TI
Pool Capacity	Used/Total	0.00 MB / 49.25 GB [0 %]	0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]	0.00 MB / 105.86 GB [0 %]
	Estimated Configurable	56.36 TB	1023.80 TB	1126.24 TB
V-VOL Capacity	Allocated/Total	0.00 MB / 1.05 GB [0 %]	0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]	-
	Estimated Configurable	56.41 TB	1023.80 TB	-
Licensed Capacity (Used/Licensed)		0.00 MB / Unlimited	0.00 MB / Unlimited	0.00 MB / Unlimited
Number of Pools		6 (Max Allowed: 128)		

Below the summary table is a detailed list of pools. The table has columns for Pool Name, Status, Number of Pool VOLS, Number of V-VOLS, Number of Root VOLS, RAID Level, and Capacity (Total, Reserved, Used, Used (%)).

Pool Name	Status	Number of Pool VOLS	Number of V-VOLS	Number of Root VOLS	RAID Level	Capacity			
						Total	Reserved	Used	Used (%)
HDP	Normal	1	0	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
HDT	Normal	1	2	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
HISOL	Normal	1	0	-	5(3D+1P)	5.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
TI	Normal	2	-	0	5(3D+1P)	105.86 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
siqokak...	Normal	2	0	-	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0
siqokak...	Normal	2	0	-	5(3D+1P)	15.83 GB	0.00 GB	0.00 GB	0






Summary

Item	Description
Pool Capacity ¹	<p>Displays information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used/Total <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DP: Displays the pool capacity (the sum of the used capacity and reserved capacity, and the total pool capacity) of Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering. • Mainframe DP: Displays the pool capacity (the used capacity and the total pool capacity) of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. • TI: Displays the pool capacity (the used capacity and the total pool capacity) of Thin Image. <p>For each value, if the Estimated Configurable capacity is zero,  is displayed in the cell.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Estimated Configurable² <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DP: Displays the estimated pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering. • Mainframe DP: Displays the estimated pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. • TI: Displays the remaining physical pool capacity that is configurable for Thin Image.

Item	Description
V-VOL Capacity ¹	<p>Displays information about the DP-VOL capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Allocated/Total <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DP: In the Allocated field, total capacity of the Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering DP-VOLs to which LU paths are allocated is displayed. In the Total field, total capacity of the Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering DP-VOLs is displayed. • Mainframe DP: In each of the Allocated and Total fields, total capacity of the Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe DP-VOLs is displayed. <p>For each value, if the Estimated Configurable capacity is zero,  is displayed in the cell.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Estimated Configurable² <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DP: Displays the DP-VOL estimated configurable capacity of Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering. • Mainframe DP: Displays the DP-VOL estimated configurable capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe.
Licensed Capacity (Used / Licensed)	<p>Displays information about available licensed capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ DP: Displays the licensed capacity of Dynamic Provisioning. Used displays the total capacity of pools for Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Tiering. ▪ Mainframe DP: Displays the licensed capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe. Used displays the total capacity of pools for Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe and Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ TI: Displays the licensed capacity of the Thin Image. <p>Caution: In the Licensed Capacity(Used/Licensed) field, the total capacity of the system is displayed. The total capacity of the system includes capacities of LDEVs assigned to each user and resources other than LDEVs. Therefore, the value displayed as the "Used" Licensed Capacity (Used/ Licensed) might differ from the value of the "Total" Pool Capacity.</p>
Number of Pools	Displays the total number of pools for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering active flash, and Thin Image.
Edit Tiering Policies	Displays the Edit Tiering Policies window.
Notes:	

Item	Description
<p>1. The total value of the Total cells under Capacity of each pool type in the Pools tab window and the total Used capacity of the Pool Capacity in the Summary table are almost same, but small differences might occur.</p> <p>The capacity used by the HDPz volume is different from the capacity used by the DP volume. If the pool-VOL or DP-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe is created, the estimated configurable pool capacity and estimated configurable V-VOL capacity for both DP and HDPz change. The estimated capacity is calculated based on the configuration of current pools and DP-VOL, and remaining capacity of the shared memory.</p>	<p>2. The estimated configurable capacity of Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe is the estimate of the DP-VOL capacity or the pool capacity that can be created by using the remaining capacity of the shared memory after deduction of the capacity of the shared memory used by the current pool and DP-VOL. The values of the Estimated Configurable Pool Capacity and the Estimated Configurable V-VOL Capacity can be used only as a guide, but are not guaranteed to create pools and DP-VOLs having the estimated configurable capacity. If the pool-VOL or DP-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe is created or deleted, the estimated configurable pool capacity and estimated configurable V-VOL capacity for both Dynamic Provisioning and Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe change.</p>

Pools tab

Item	Description
Pool Name	Displays the pool name. Clicking the pool name takes you to the pool information window in the lower hierarchy.
Pool ID ¹	Displays pool ID.
Status	<p>Displays information about the pool status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Normal: Pool is in a normal status.  Warning: Pool-VOL in the pool is blocked, or the pool is being shrunk.  Exceeded Threshold: Used capacity of the pool exceeds the pool threshold.  Shrinking: Pool-VOL is being reduced.  Blocked: Pool is full, or an error occurred in the pool, indicating that the pool is blocked. If the pool is in both Warning and Blocked status, only Blocked is displayed.





Item	Description
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs associated with the pool.
Number of V-VOLs	Displays the number of V-VOLs associated with the pool. For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Number of Root VOLs	Displays the number of root volumes of the Thin Image pairs. If the pool is other than a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
RAID level	Displays RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays information about the pool capacity. If you use accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, and manage the capacity of a pool for which Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group, do not view this information. View the physical capacity only.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of the pool. For a pool that contains pool-volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writeable capacity might be smaller than the displayed capacity. Click Option to select the desired capacity unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One block = 512 bytes • One page = 42 MB • Mainframe: One slot = 58 KB, and one page = 38 MB ▪ Reserved: Displays the reserved page capacity of the pool. <p>The displayed value of Reserved might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reserved displays the sum of the used V-VOL capacity and the reserved page capacity that is rounded up on each page. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). ▪ The mapped capacity of V-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe includes the capacity of control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB). ▪ The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (requires a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB).

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used: Sum of the mapped capacity and reserved capacity. The displayed value of Used might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and reserved capacity, which are rounded up on each page. ▪ The mapped capacity of a DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (uses a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). ▪ A DP-VOL with data direct mapping attribute includes the control information (168 MB is used per 3,145,548 MB) and capacity for one page. ▪ Used (%): On a pool capacity basis, percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved page capacity (rounded down to the nearest integer). <p>For Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, and Thin Image pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the capacity unit is changed to Cylinder.</p>
Data Volumes Used Capacity ¹	Displays the user data capacity other than the deduplication system data volumes. The user data before the processing of the accelerated compression and the capacity saving is displayed.
Saving Effect ¹	<p>The capacity saving rates and capacity that is reduced by accelerated compression and the capacity saving function (compression and deduplication).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Saving Ratio: Displays the ratio of the user data capacity before and after performing the capacity saving and the accelerated compression functions. ▪ Saving¹: Displays the saved capacity for a pool. The total value of the capacity expansion function and the capacity saving function.

Item	Description
Software Saving	<p>Displays the information about the data capacity reduced by the capacity saving function, which includes compression and deduplication. A hyphen (-) is displayed if no DP-VOLs that the capacity saving settings are "Compression" or "Deduplication and Compression" are associated with the pool. For details about each item, see Capacity saving function: data deduplication and compression (on page 66).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Saving Ratio¹: Displays the capacity reduction ratio for data which is before and after processing by the capacity saving function. If there is no data which can be displayed, a hyphen (-) is displayed. <li>▪ Compression Ratio¹: Displays the capacity compression ratio for data which is before and after processing by the capacity saving function. If there is no data which can be displayed, a hyphen (-) is displayed. <li>▪ Deduplication Ratio¹: Displays the capacity deduplication ratio by the capacity saving function. If there is no data which can be displayed, a hyphen (-) is displayed. <li>▪ Saving¹: Displays the saved capacity by the capacity saving function. This is the value that System Data is deducted from the total capacity of Compression Deduplication and Reclaim. <li>▪ Compression: Displays the compressed capacity by the capacity saving function. <li>▪ Deduplication¹: Displays the deduplicated capacity by the capacity saving function. <li>▪ Reclaim¹: Displays the reclaimed capacity by the capacity saving function. <li>▪ System Data¹: Displays the system data consumed by the capacity saving function. This data includes meta data, garbage data, and deduplication system data volumes. <li>▪ Used (Pre Processed Data)¹: Displays the data capacity before performing of the capacity saving function.

Item	Description
FMD Saving ¹	<p>Displays the information about the data capacity saved by the accelerated compression function. If the pool does not support accelerated compression, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression Ratio¹: Displays the capacity compression ratio for data, before and after processing. If there is no data which can be displayed, a hyphen (-) is displayed. If the formatting progress percentage of the pool formatted capacity is less than 100%, because the non-formatted data exists in FMD-DC2 or FMD-HDE, the saving ratio might be different from what you expect. For details about the formatted pool capacity, see the item for Free + Reserved in View Pool Management Status window (on page 628). ▪ Saving¹: Displays the reduced capacity by the accelerated compression function, which is calculated as the total of Compression and Reclaim. ▪ Compression¹: Displays the compressed capacity by the accelerated compression function. ▪ Reclaim¹: Displays the reclaimed capacity by the accelerated compression function.

Item	Description
Logical FMD Capacity ¹	<p>Displays the logical capacity of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups used in the pool. If the pool does not include pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total¹: Displays the total capacity for the pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups. ▪ Used¹: Displays the used capacity of the pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups. ▪ Expansion Ratio: Displays the ratio of the total capacity for the pool volumes capacity assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups and the capacity assured for writing. An icon is displayed when the used pool capacity or the physical capacity of the used pool capacity exceeds 50% of the depletion threshold (the warning threshold for the Thin Image pool). No icon appears if Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group. Each icon indicates the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : In all accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that the expansion rate and the saving ratio are balanced. : In one or more accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that an excess of the unanticipated usage might occur. In this case, consider revising the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) carved from these parity groups. : In one or more accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that the accelerated compression function is not performed in the effective utilization. However, if there is a parity group with a  status (see above) in the pool, then this icon does not appear. In this case, consider revising the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) carved from these parity groups. <p>For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p>

Item	Description
FMD Capacity ¹	<p>For pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups used in the pool, this item displays the capacity guaranteed for writing. If the pool does not include pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total¹: Displays the total pool capacity of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups. ▪ Used¹: Displays the used capacity compressed by pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups.
Physical Capacity ¹	<p>For a pool containing pool volumes that support accelerated compression, this item displays the capacity assured for writing. If accelerated compression is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Displays the total pool capacity assured for writing. ▪ Used: Displays the used capacity of the pool. The used capacity is the capacity deducted from the free capacity assured for writing from the total pool capacity assured for writing. For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the compressed data capacity is included in the used capacity. ▪ Used (%): Displays the percentage of the used pool capacity against the total capacity assured for writing
Capacity Expansion Rate ¹	<p>For a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this item displays the ratio of the total capacity and the capacity assured for writing. If the pool volumes do not support the accelerated compression function, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Snapshot Used Capacity	<p>The used capacity for snapshot data in a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data.</p>
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays information about the threshold of a pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold.

Item	Description
	For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded ¹	<p>Displays whether SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool cannot be used. ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool can be used.
Subscription (%)	<p>Displays information about the subscription of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Current: Percentage of the total V-VOL capacity assigned to the pool. ▪ Limit: Percentage of the subscription limit of the pool. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Current and Limit.</p>
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Drive Type/RPM	<p>Displays the data drive type and RPM of the pool. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.</p>

Item	Description
Encryption	<p>Encryption: The encryption information of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hyphen(-): Pool is created by external volumes. Or pool is being blocked.
Tier Management	<p>Displays whether Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled or disabled. If it is enabled Auto or Manual is displayed. If it is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Shrinkable	<p>Displays whether the pool-VOL can be removed. While the pool is being shrunk, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Monitoring Mode	<p>Displays the monitoring mode that is set for the pool. If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Monitoring Status	<p>Displays the status of pool monitoring.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ In Progress: The monitoring is being performed. ▪ During Computation: The calculating is being processed. <p>Other than these cases, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>






Item	Description
Recent Monitor Data	<p>Displays the latest monitoring data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the monitoring data exists, the monitoring period of time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - 2010/11/15 23:59 ▪ If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - ▪ If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Pool Management Task	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. ▪ Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. ▪ Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. ▪ Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool. <p>For details about the tier relocation, see the tier relocation log file.</p>
Relocation Result	<p>Displays the status of the tier relocation processing.</p> <p>In Progress: The status of Pool Management Task is Waiting for Relocation or Relocating.</p> <p>Completed: The tier relocation operation is not in progress, or the tier relocation is complete.</p> <p>Uncompleted (n% relocated): The tier relocation is suspended at the indicated percentage progression.</p> <p>Hyphen (-): The pool is not a Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool.</p>

Item	Description
Relocation Speed	Displays the tier relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest).
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is other than DP or DT.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is other than DP or DT.
Deduplication ¹	<p>For a DP pool, the deduplication setting of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Available: The deduplication setting for the pool is enabled. ▪ Not Available: The deduplication setting for the pool is disabled.
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group ¹	<p>Displays the setting status of the pool auto expansion function.</p> <p>Enable: The compression space of the accelerated compression function-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compression space of the accelerated compression function-enabled parity group is not managed automatically. For mainframe systems, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Create Pools	Displays the Create Pools window.
Create LDEVs	Displays the Create LDEVs window.

Item	Description
Expand Pool	Displays the Expand Pool window.
Delete Pools ²	Displays the Delete Pools window.
Restore Pools ²	Displays the Restore Pools window.
Edit Pools ²	Displays the Edit Pools window.
Monitor Pools ²	Displays the Monitor Pools window.
Stop Monitoring Pools ²	Displays the Stop Monitoring Pools window.
Start Tier Relocation ²	Displays the Start Tier Relocation window.
Stop Tier Relocation ²	Displays the Stop Tier Relocation window.
Complete SIMs ²	Displays the Complete SIMs window.
View Tier Properties ²	Displays the View Tier Properties window. This window can be viewed only for the pools for which Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled.
View Pool Management Status ²	Displays the View Pool Management Status window.
Export Tier Relocation Log ²	Displays the window to download the result of the tier relocation.
Export ²	Displays the window for outputting table information.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Pools: Volume tabs





Summary

Item	Description
Status	<p>Displays information about the pool status.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Pool is in a normal status. ▪  Warning: Pool-VOL in the pool is blocked, or the pool is being shrunk. ▪  Exceeded Threshold: Percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity of the pool and the reserved capacity of the pool exceed the pool threshold. ▪  Shrinking: Pool-VOL is being reduced. ▪  Blocked: The pool is full, or an error occurred in the pool, indicating that the pool is blocked. If the pool is in both Warning and Blocked status, only Blocked is displayed.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Pool VOL with System Area (Name)	Displays the LDEV ID and LDEV name of the pool-VOL which includes the pool management area.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed. ▪ For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed. ▪ For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed. ▪ For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed. ▪ For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed. ▪ For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed. ▪ For a pool with the data direct mapping attribute enabled, DT (data direct mapping) is displayed. ▪ For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.

Item	Description
RAID Level	Displays RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM of the pool. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
Encryption	<p>Encryption: The encryption information of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: Data encryption is not ensured in a pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage data encryption securely, use a pool with the encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): Pool is created by external volumes, or pool is being blocked.
Cache Mode	For a configuration of external volumes, cache mode is displayed as enabled or disabled. For the configuration of external volumes, whose cache modes are enabled and disabled, Mixed is displayed. For other configurations, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.

Item	Description
	<p>A hyphen is displayed if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ The pool type is other than DP or DT.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is other than DP or DT.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs set for the pool, and the maximum number of pool-VOLs that can be set for the pool.
Number of V-VOLs	<p>Displays the number of V-VOLs associated with the pool, and the maximum number of V-VOLs that can be associated with the pool.</p> <p>As for the pool with the data direct mapping attribute, a hyphen (-) appears for the maximum number of V-VOLs which can associate with the pool.</p> <p>For a Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Number of Root VOLs	Displays the number of root volumes of the Thin Image pairs. When the applicable volume does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Pool Capacity (Used/Total)	<p>Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and reserved capacity for the pool, and the total capacity of the pool. If the pool consists of multiple pool-VOLs, the sum of its capacities is displayed in the Total field.</p> <p>If you use an accelerated compression-enabled parity group, and manage the capacity of a pool for which Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group, do not view this information. View the physical capacity only.</p>

Item	Description
Saving Effect	Displays the data capacity saving rate and size provided by the accelerated compression function and the capacity saving function, which includes the compression and deduplication functions. For details about each item, see Capacity saving and accelerated compression functions (on page 60) . The saved capacity displayed in this area contains the reclaimed capacity and system data capacity. However, information for items of Compression and Deduplication in Software Saving and items of FMD Compression do not contain the reclaimed capacity and system data capacity. Therefore, the total of Compression and Deduplication in Software Saving and FMD Compression does not match with the capacity for the Saving Effect.
V-VOL Capacity (Used/ Total)	Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity for virtual volumes, and the total capacity of virtual volumes. For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed along with the used and total V-VOL capacity.
User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)	Displays the user-defined threshold (Warning/Depletion). For a Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	Displays whether SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool cannot be used. ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool can be used.
Tier Management	If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed. For a Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

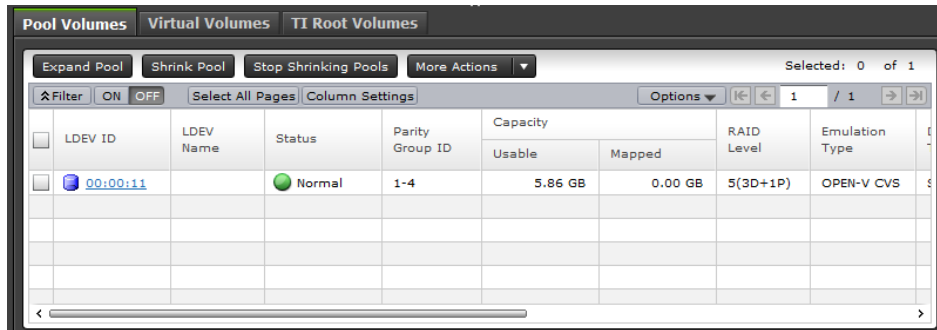
Item	Description
FMD Pool Volumes Capacity Expansion Ratio	<p>For the pool volume of a drive supporting accelerated compression, displays the ratio of the capacity reserved for writing against the total capacity of the pool volume. An icon is displayed when the used pool capacity or the physical capacity of the used pool capacity exceeds 50% of the depletion threshold (the warning threshold for the Thin Image pool). No icon appears if Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group. Each icon indicates the following:</p> <p>: In the parity group, all accelerated compression settings are enabled, and the expansion ratio and the deletion ratio are balanced.</p> <p>: The used capacity might exceed the threshold unexpectedly in at least one accelerated compression-enabled parity group. Consider reviewing the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) belonging to these parity groups. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p> <p>: Accelerated compression is not effectively used in at least one accelerated compression-enabled parity group. This icon does not appear if there is a parity group with the  icon. Consider reviewing the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) belonging to these parity groups. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p>
Cycle Time	Displays the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Period	Displays the time of starting and ending of performance monitoring. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Mode	Displays the monitoring mode that is set for the pool. If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Status	<p>Displays the status of pool monitoring.</p> <p>If the monitoring is being performed, In Progress is displayed. A hyphen (-) is displayed other than this case.</p>




Item	Description
Recent Monitor Data	<p>Displays the latest monitoring data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the monitoring data exists, the monitoring period of time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - 2010/11/15 23:59 ▪ If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed. Example: 2010/11/15 00:00 - ▪ If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Pool Management Task	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. ▪ Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. ▪ Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. ▪ Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool. <p>For details about the tier relocation, see the tier relocation log file.</p>
Relocation Result	<p>Displays the status of the tier relocation processing.</p> <p>In Progress: The status of Pool Management Task is Waiting for Relocation or Relocating.</p> <p>Completed: The tier relocation operation is not in progress, or the tier relocation is complete.</p> <p>Uncompleted (n% relocated): The tier relocation is suspended at the indicated percentage progression.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The pool is not a Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool.</p>

Item	Description
Relocation Speed	Displays the tier relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest).

Pool Volumes tab





Only the LDEVs assigned to the logged-on user are available.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Status	Displays the following information about the pool-VOL status. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Normal: Pool-VOL is in the normal status.  Shrinking: Pool-VOL is being reduced.  Blocked: Pool-VOL is blocked.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Usable: The usable capacity in the pool-VOL that is offset on the basis of the page appears. For the pool-VOL with system area, the displayed capacity does not include the capacity of the management area. Mapped: The mapped capacity in the pool-VOL that is offset on the basis of the page appears.

Item	Description
	For the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, active flash, and Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the unit of capacity is changed to Cylinder.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
Tier ID	Displays the tier ID. For a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, or a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Provisioning Type	<p>Displays the type of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume.
Attribute	<p>Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ - (hyphen): LDEV for which the attribute is not defined.
Cache Mode	For the external volume, this item is displayed as enabled or disabled. If the LDEV is not an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Shrinkable	Displays whether the pool-VOL can be removed while the pool is being shrunk, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Encryption ¹	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting.

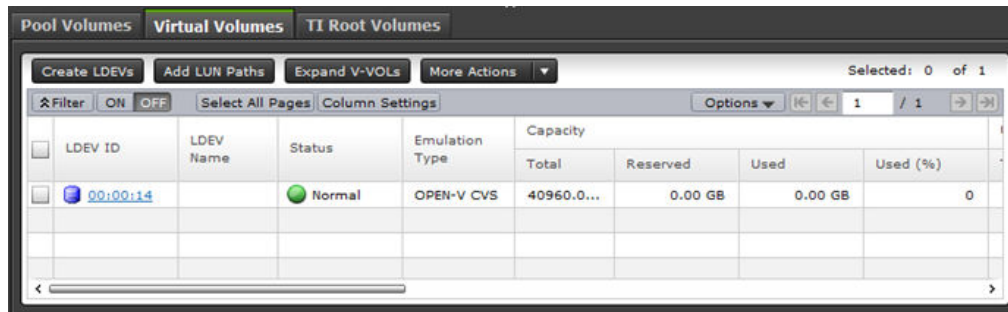
Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume.
Accelerated Compression ¹	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group comprised of LDEVs.</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
Expanded Space Used ¹	<p>Displays the information that LDEV is allocated in the expanded area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated in the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>This item displays whether the LDEV area is allocated in the expanded or physical area.</p> <p>Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area.</p> <p>No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.</p>
Data Direct Mapped LDEV	<p>Displays LDEV ID of pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If the link of LDEV ID is clicked, the LDEV Properties window appears.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) appears if data direct mapping is disabled. If a DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled is not created in the pool with data direct mapping enabled, this item is blank.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	<p>Displays the resource group names and IDs of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.</p>

Item	Description
Physical Parity Group Capacity Expansion Ratio	<p>For accelerated compression-enabled parity groups of which pool volumes are created, the capacity expansion ratio before and after the processing appears. If either the used pool capacity or the used physical pool capacity exceeds 50% of the depletion threshold (the warning threshold for the Thin Image pool), an icon of one of the following statuses appears:</p> <p>: In all accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that the expansion rate and the saving ratio are balanced.</p> <p>: In one or more accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that an excess of the unanticipated usage might occur. In this case, consider revising the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) carved from these parity groups. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p> <p>:</p> <p>In one or more accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, this status shows that the accelerated compression function is not performed in the effective utilization. However, if there is a parity group with a  status (see above) in the pool, then this icon does not appear. In this case, consider revising the total capacity of LDEVs (pool volumes) carved from these parity groups. For details, see Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled (on page 407).</p>
Expand Pool	Displays the Expand Pool window.
Shrink Pool	Displays the Shrink Pool window.
Stop Shrinking Pools	Displays the Stop Shrinking Pools window.
Edit External LDEV Tier Rank ²	Displays the Edit External LDEV Tier Rank window. You cannot operate the pool other than the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, active flash, or active flash for mainframe.
Edit External Volumes ²	Displays the Edit External Volumes window. If the volume type of the specified pool-VOL is other than the external volume, you cannot operate this button. For details, see <i>Hitachi Universal Volume Manager User Guide</i> .
Export ²	Displays the window for outputting table information.












Item	Description
Notes:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This item does not appear in the window by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Appears when you click More Actions. 	

Virtual Volumes tab

When you select a Thin Image pool, this tab is not displayed.



Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.

Item	Description
Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Normal status. ▪  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume. ▪  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume. ▪  Formatting: Volume is being formatted. ▪  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting. ▪  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted. ▪  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied. ▪  Read Only: Data cannot be written to a read-only volume. ▪  Shredding: Volume is being shredded. ▪  - (hyphen): Any status other than the above.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays information about the V-VOL capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Total: Displays the V-VOL capacity. <li>▪ Reserved: Displays the reserved capacity of the V-VOL. <p>The displayed value of Reserved might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reserved displays the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. <li>• If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). <li>• The mapped capacity of V-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning includes the capacity of control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB).

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Used: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. The displayed value of Used might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. <li>• If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). <li>• If the emulation type is 3390-A and the TSE attribute is enabled, the mapped capacity for DP-VOL contains the management area capacity. <li>• The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (uses a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). <li>• DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled includes the control information (168 MB is used per 3,145,548 MB) and the capacity for one page. <p>If used capacity is referenced during I/O or copy processing by software such as ShadowImage or Universal Replicator, the used capacity displayed might be different from the actual capacity even if the full allocation is enabled on the V-VOL. This is caused by a gap between the times that information is gathered about the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity.</p> <li>▪ Used(%): For the entire capacity of V-VOL, this item displays percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. Used(%) is obtained by dividing the total of the user data and control information by the user area capacity. For an LDEV such as a TSE-VOL, where the ratio of the control information is high relative to the user area, Used(%) may exceed 100%.

Item	Description
Used Capacity	<p>Displays information about the mapped capacity of a V-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tier1: Displays the used capacity of tier 1. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the logical volume is a not a V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Tier2: Displays the used capacity of tier 2. A hyphen (-) is displayed if tier 2 does not exist or if the logical volume is a not a V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Tier3: Displays the used capacity of tier 3. A hyphen (-) is displayed if tier 3 does not exist or if the logical volume is a not a V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. <p>The reserved page capacity is not included in the used capacity for each tier of the V-VOL. Therefore, the Used value in the Capacity column might not correspond with the Used Capacity value.</p>
Capacity Saving	<p>The setting of the capacity saving function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is set. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression function is set. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not set. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Capacity Saving Status	<p>The status of the capacity saving function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format operation for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format operation for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Deleting Volume: A DP-VOL with the capacity saving function enabled is being deleted. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.

Item	Description
Deduplication Data ¹	<p>Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication. <p>If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0.</p> <p>When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.</p>
Number of Paths	<p>Displays the number of alternate paths. A hyphen(-) is displayed for the Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.</p>
CLPR	<p>Displays the CLPR ID.</p>
Full Allocation	<p>Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation in a pool associated with the V-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Pages are reserved. ▪ Disable: Pages are not reserved.
Tiering Policy	<p>Displays the tiering policy name and ID.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All(0): The policy of which all tiers in the pool are used. ▪ Level1(1) - Level5(5): One of the policy from Level1 to Level5 is set to V-VOL. ▪ Level6(6) - Level31(31): The tiering policy of the user definition is set to V-VOL. <p>From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.

Item	Description
New Page Assignment Tier	<p>Displays the new page assignment tier.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ High: High is set to V-VOL. ▪ Middle: Middle is set to V-VOL. ▪ Low: Low is set to V-VOL. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Tier Relocation	<p>Displays whether tier relocation is set to enabled or disabled. If the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL is not used, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Relocation Priority	<p>Displays the relocation priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prioritized: The priority is set to V-VOL. ▪ Blank: The priority is not set to V-VOL. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL or the tier relocation function is disabled.
Pool Management Task	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. ▪ Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. ▪ Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. ▪ Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool.

Item	Description
V-VOL Management Task	<p>Displays the V-VOL management task being performed to V-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reclaiming Zero Pages: The zero page reclaiming processing is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Zero Page Reclaiming: The zero page reclaiming processing is being waited. ▪ Blank: The V-VOL management task is not being performed to V-VOL.
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TSE: TSE-VOL. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Access Attribute ¹	Displays the access attribute of the LDEV.
T10 PI ¹	Displays the LDEV's T10 PI attribute information (Enabled or Disabled).
Data Direct Mapped LDEV ¹	<p>Displays LDEV ID of pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. If the link of LDEV ID is clicked, the LDEV Properties window appears.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) appears if the data direct mapping attribute is disabled.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names and IDs of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank.












Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute¹: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for the LDEV, this column is blank.
Create LDEVs	Displays the Create LDEV window.
Add LUN Paths	Displays the Add LUN Paths window. If Mainframe DP or DT is displayed in the Pool Type, you cannot select this item.
Expand V-VOLs	Displays the Expand V-VOLs window.
Format LDEVs ²	Displays the Format LDEVs window.
Delete LDEVs ²	Displays the Delete LDEVs window.
Shred LDEVs ²	Displays the Shred LDEVs window.
Delete LUN Paths ²	Displays the Delete LUN Paths window.
Block LDEVs ²	Displays the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs ²	Displays the Restore LDEVs window.
Edit LDEVs ²	Displays the Edit LDEVs window.
Reclaim Zero Pages ²	Displays the Reclaim Zero Pages window.
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages ²	Displays the Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window.
View Tier Properties ²	Displays the View Tier Properties window. This window can open only for a pool for which Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled.
Edit Command Devices ³	Opens the Edit Command Devices window.
Assign MP Blade ³	Opens the Assign MP Blade window.
Delete UUIDs	Opens the Delete UUIDs window.

Item	Description
Initialize Deduplication Data ¹	Opens the Initialize Deduplication Data window.
Force Delete Pairs ³	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TC Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (TC Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ UR Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (UR Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ GAD Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (GAD Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i>.
View ALUs / SLUs ³	Displays the ALUs / SLUs window.
Export ³	Displays the window for outputting table information.
Notes:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 3. Available when you click More Actions > more. 	

Root Volumes tab or TI Root Volumes tab

- When you select a Thin Image pool, the Root Volumes tab is displayed.
- When you select a Dynamic Provisioning pool, the TI Root Volumes tab is displayed.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the combination of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Clicking LDEV ID opens the LDEV Properties window.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.

Item	Description
Status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪  Normal: Normal status. ▪  Blocked: Host cannot access a blocked volume. ▪  Warning: Problem occurs in the volume. ▪  Formatting: Volume is being formatted. ▪  Preparing Quick Format: Volume is being prepared for quick formatting. ▪  Quick Formatting: Volume is being quick-formatted. ▪  Correction Access: Access attribute is being corrected. ▪  Copying: Data in the volume is being copied. ▪  Read Only: Data cannot be written to a read-only volume. ▪  Shredding: Volume is being shredded. ▪  - (hyphen): Any status other than the above.
Used Pool Capacity	Displays the used pool capacity.
Pool Usage(%)	Displays the pool usage level.
Number of Paths	Displays the number of alternate paths.
CLPR	Displays the CLPR. Displays in <i>ID:CLPR</i> form.

Item	Description
Pool Management Task	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. ▪ Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited. ▪ Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. ▪ Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. ▪ Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool.
Encryption ¹	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume.

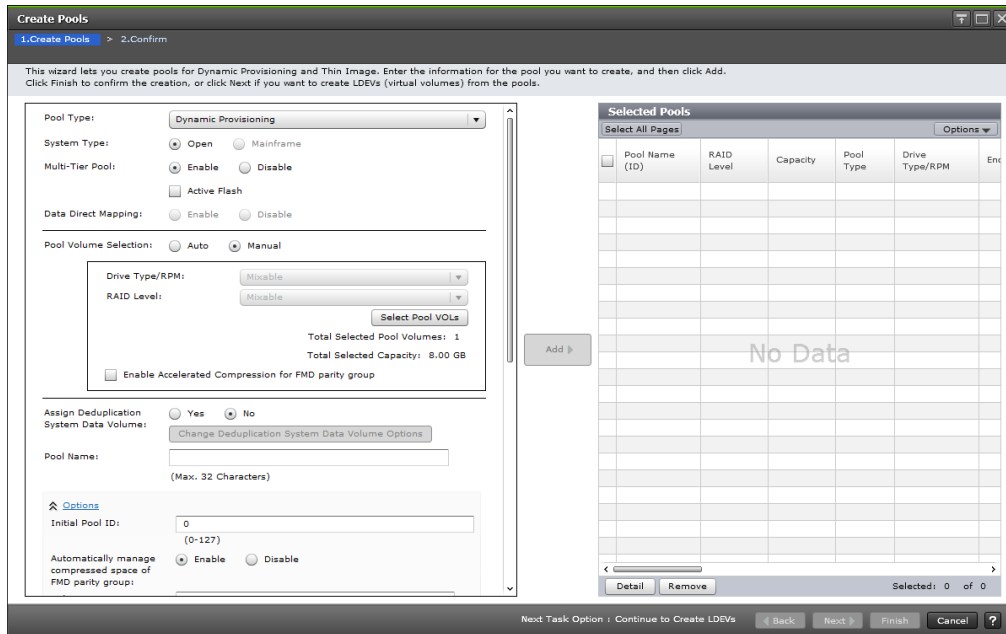
Item	Description
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Information about the virtual storage machine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.
Export	Displays the window for outputting table information.
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Create Pools wizard

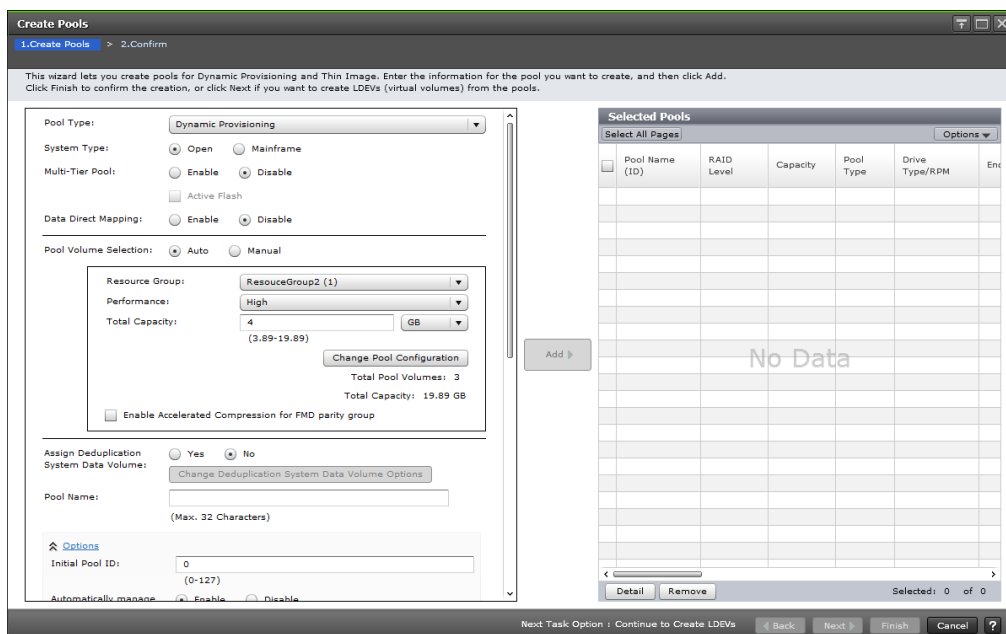
Create Pools window

Use this window to create new pools for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, and Thin Image.

When selecting pool-VOLs manually



When selecting pool-VOLs automatically



Item	Description
*Pool Type	Select the pool type. For Thin Image, select Thin Image.

Item	Description
	For the following software, select Dynamic Provisioning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning ▪ Dynamic Tiering ▪ Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe ▪ Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe ▪ active flash ▪ active flash for mainframe
*System Type	Select the system type. If you select Thin Image, only Open is displayed.
*Multi-Tier Pool	If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual for performance monitoring and tier relocation is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Active Flash	When the following conditions are satisfied, this check box can be selected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Multi-Tier Pool is enabled. ▪ Pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE are installed. If this check box is selected, active flash can be used.
Data Direct Mapping	Select Enable or Disable for the data direct mapping attribute. This item can be selected if following are specified: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pool Type: Dynamic Provisioning ▪ System Type: Open ▪ Multi-Tier Pool: Disable
*Pool Volume Selection	Select the mode of the pool-VOL setting from Auto or Manual. If Enable is selected in Data Direct Mapping, Manual is selected automatically.
*Drive Type/RPM	Select the data drive type and RPM of the pool-VOL. When the volume is created by Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash, <i>Mixable</i> appears. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage. This item is displayed when you select Manual as your Pool Volume Selection.

Item	Description
*RAID Level	<p>Select the RAID level of the pool-VOL. This item is displayed when you select Manual as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p><i>Mixable</i> appears in the case of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or active flash. A hyphen (-) appears when External Storage is selected in the Drive Type/RPM list.</p>
*Select Pool VOLs	<p>Opens the Select Pool VOLs window. Selecting a pool-VOL is mandatory. This item is displayed when you select Manual as your Pool Volume Selection.</p>
Total Selected Pool Volumes	<p>Displays the total number of the selected pool-VOLs. This item is displayed when you select Manual as your Pool Volume Selection.</p>
Total Selected Capacity	<p>Displays the total capacity of the selected pool-VOLs. This item is displayed when you select Manual as your Pool Volume Selection.</p>
Enable Accelerated Compression for FMD parity group	<p>Select this item when all of the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All selected pool volumes are created using parity groups of SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, or FMD-HDE. ▪ If the selected pool volume is created using an accelerated compression-disabled parity group, the accelerated compression setting of the parity group can be enabled. ▪ At least one pool volume created using accelerated compression-disabled parity group is selected. <p>When this item is selected, FMD compression effect can be achieved.</p>
Resource Group	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Select the resource group name of the pool.</p>
Performance	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Select the performance of the pool.</p>
Total Capacity	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Specify the total capacity of the pool.</p>

Item	Description
Change Pool Configuration	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Opens the Change Pool Configuration Pattern window. You can change the pool configuration that is automatically selected. For details, see Change Pool Configuration Pattern window (on page 643).</p>
Total Pool Volumes	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Displays the total number of pool-VOLs.</p>
Total Capacity	<p>This item is displayed when you select Auto as your Pool Volume Selection.</p> <p>Displays the capacity of the pool created by the selected pool configuration.</p>
Assign Deduplication System Data Volume (Open systems)	<p>Select Yes or No to enable or disable the deduplication setting. Deduplication cannot be enabled if any of the following conditions exists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The license for the capacity saving function is not installed. ▪ The System Type is Mainframe. ▪ Data Direct Mapping is enabled. ▪ Pool volumes are not selected. ▪ There are not enough available LDEV IDs. ▪ There are not enough available cache management devices. <p>Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options: Opens the Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options window.</p>
*Pool Name	Set the pool name. You can enter up to 32 case-sensitive and alphanumeric characters.
Initial Pool ID	<p>The smallest available number is entered in the text box as a default. No number appears in the text box if no available pool ID exists.</p> <p>If you specify the pool ID which is used already, the minimum pool ID after that the specified pool ID is automatically set.</p>

Item	Description
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group	<p>For a pool containing pool volumes that belong to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group, set the pool auto expansion function. If Mainframe is selected for System Type, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Enable: The compression space of an accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compression space of an accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.</p>
Warning Threshold	<p>Set the threshold between 1 and 100%. The default value is 70%.</p> <p>For Thin Image: Set the threshold between 20% and 95%. The default value is 80%. If Enable is selected in Data Direct Mapping, 100% is specified automatically.</p>
Depletion Threshold	<p>Set the threshold between 1% and 100%. The default value is 80%.</p> <p>When creating a Thin Image pool, this setting is not necessary. If Enable is selected in Data Direct Mapping, 100% is specified automatically.</p>
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	<p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, specify whether SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold (default = yes). If you attempt to split a Thin Image pair in the pool after SIM code 62Exxx is output, the operation fails and the pair is suspended by error.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes (default): When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool cannot be split. <p>If Multi-Tier Pool or Data Direct Mapping is enabled for the pool, Yes cannot be selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool can be split.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>You can set this item if the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning is selected in Pool Type. ▪ Open is selected in System Type. ▪ Data Retention Utility is installed.

Item	Description
	<p>Select Yes or No in the protect function for DP-VOL. If this function is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests, and, at the same time, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p>
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>You can set this item if the following conditions are satisfied:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Dynamic Provisioning is selected in Pool Type. ▪ Open is selected in System Type. ▪ Data Retention Utility is installed. <p>Select Yes or No in the protect function for DP-VOL. If this function is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests, and, at the same time, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p>
Tier Management	<p>Select Auto or Manual of performance monitoring and tier relocation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cycle Time Select the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation. ▪ Monitoring Period When 24 Hours is selected in the Cycle Time list, specify the time zone from 00:00 to 23:59 (default value), in which performance monitoring is to be performed. Take one or more hours between the starting time and the ending time. If you specify the starting time later than the ending time, the performance monitoring continues until the time when you specify as the ending time on the next day. <p>This function can be set when the multi-tier pool is enabled.</p>
Monitoring Mode	<p>Specifies the monitoring mode, If you perform the tier relocation weighted to the past period monitoring result, select Continuous Mode. If you perform the tier relocation on the specified cycle, select Period Mode. You can specify this function when the multi-tier pool feature is enabled.</p>

Item	Description
Relocation speed	Specifies the page relocation speed. You can set the speed to: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). The default is 3(Standard). If the speed specified is slower than 3(Standard), the data drive load is low when tier relocation is performed.
Buffer Space for New page assignment	<p>You can set this function when the multi-tier pool feature is enabled.</p> <p>Tier 1: Enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 1. A default value depends on the data drive type of pool-VOL in tier 1. The default value of SSD or FMD is 0%. The default value of drive types other than SSD or FMD is 8%.</p> <p>Tier 2: Enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 2. A default value depends on the data drive type of pool-VOL in tier 2.</p> <p>Tier 3: Enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 3. A default value depends on the data drive type of pool-VOL in tier 3.</p>
Buffer Space for Tier relocation	<p>You can set this function when the multi-tier pool feature is enabled.</p> <p>Tier 1: Enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 1. A default value is 2%.</p> <p>Tier 2: Enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 2. A default value is 2%.</p> <p>Tier 3: Enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 3. A default value is 2%.</p>
Add	When you click Add, the configured information is added to the right side of the Selected Pools table.
*Items with asterisks require configuration.	

Selected Pools table

Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity	Pool Type	Drive Type/RPM	Usage
No Data					

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays RAID level of the pool. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Capacity	Displays the total capacity of the created pool. For open systems, the displayed capacity is approximately 4.1 GB (capacity of the management area) less than the total capacity of the selected pool volumes. For mainframe systems, the displayed capacity is approximately 3.7 GB (capacity of the management area) less than the total capacity of the selected pool volumes. As for a pool comprised of pool volumes assigned to accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity might be smaller than the displayed capacity.
Pool Type	Displays the pool type. For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed. For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.

Item	Description
	<p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Drive Type/RPM	<p>Displays the data drive type and RPM. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates Mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.</p>
Encryption	<p>Encryption: The encryption information of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hyphen(-): Pool which is created by external volumes.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.</p>

Item	Description
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	<p>Displays the setting for outputting SIM code 62Exxx when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output. ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is the type other than DP or DT.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is the type other than DP or DT.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Tier Management	If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual for performance monitoring and tier relocation is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Cycle Time	Displays the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Period	Displays the time zone of performance monitoring when 24 Hours is selected as the Cycle Time. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Monitoring Mode	If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed.
Relocation speed	Displays the page relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Buffer Space for New page assignment (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for new page assignment to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Buffer Space for Tier relocation (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for tier relocation to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Item	Description
	Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Deduplication (Open systems)	If the pool type is DP, this item displays Available or Not Available for the deduplication setting. If the pool type is other than DP, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group	<p>Displays the setting status of the accelerated compression function. For mainframe systems, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Enable: The compressed space of an accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compressed space of an accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.</p>
Detail	Displays the Pool Properties window when a row is selected, and shows the error window when a row is not selected or multiple rows are selected.
Remove	<p>Deletes the pool selected in the Selected Pools window.</p> <p>Displays the error window when a row is not selected.</p>

Next Task Option

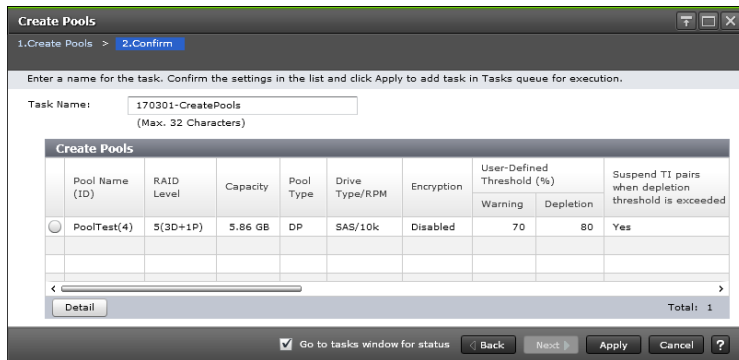
Click Next to go to the task setting window.

Create Pools confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, and then click Help.



Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity. (Open systems) For a pool containing pool volumes assigned by accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity may be smaller than the displayed capacity.
Pool Type	Displays the pool type. For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed. For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed. For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed. For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed. For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed. For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed. For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.

Item	Description
Encryption	<p>Encryption: The encryption information of the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool which is created by pool-VOLs whose encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hyphen(-): Pool is created by external volumes.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.</p>
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	<p>Displays the setting for outputting SIM code 62Exxx when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output. ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen is displayed if the pool corresponds with one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed.

Item	Description
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. At the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen is displayed under these conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Tier Management	If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual for performance monitoring and tier relocation is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Cycle Time	Displays the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Period	Displays the time zone of performance monitoring when 24 Hours is selected as the Cycle Time. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Mode	If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed.
Relocation speed	Displays the page relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Buffer Space for New page assignment (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for new page assignment to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Buffer Space for Tier relocation (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for tier relocation to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Deduplication (Open systems)	<p>If the pool type is DP, this item displays Available or Not Available for the deduplication setting. If the pool type is other than DP, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group	<p>Displays the setting status of the pool auto expansion function. For mainframe systems, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Enable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p>

Item	Description
	Disable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.
Enable Accelerated Compression for FMD parity group	Displays the status of the accelerated compression function for the FMD parity group. For mainframe systems, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Yes: Accelerated compression is enabled on the FMD parity group. No: Accelerated compression is not enabled on the FMD parity group. - (hyphen): Accelerated compression cannot be enabled on the parity group.
Detail	Displays the Pool Properties window when a row is selected, and shows the error window when a row is not selected or multiple rows are selected.

Selected deduplication system data volumes

This table is displayed only when a deduplication system data volume is selected.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name, and the pool ID is displayed in parentheses.
Capacity	Displays the LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV.
SSID	Displays the SSID of the LDEV.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names, and the IDs of the resource groups are displayed in parentheses.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV.

Expand Pool wizard

Expand Pool window

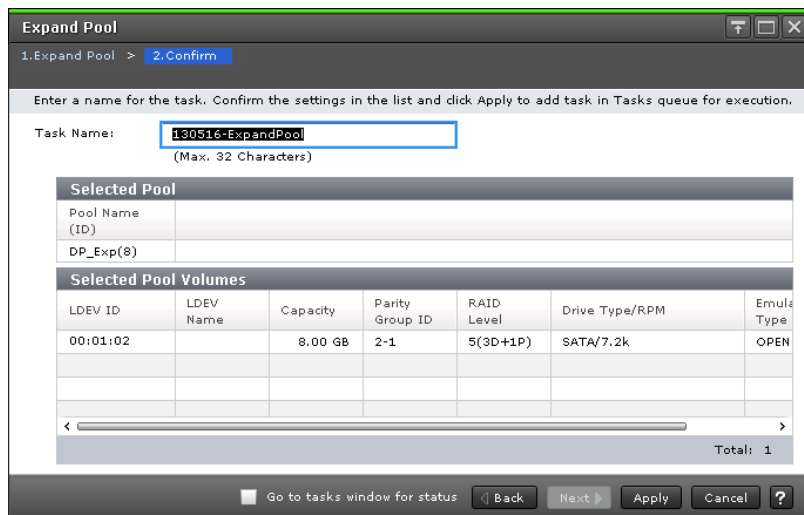
Use this window to add LDEVs to a pool to expand the pool to increase pool capacity.

Item	Description
Drive Type/RPM	The Drive Type/RPM of the selected pool or Mixable is displayed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage.
RAID Level	Set the RAID level of the selected pool. If the level is not set, Mixable appears. If External Storage is selected in the Drive Type/RPM field, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Select Pool VOLS	Opens the Select Pool VOLS window.
Total Selected Pool Volumes	Total number of the pool-VOLs selected for this pool.

Item	Description
Total Selected Capacity	Total capacity of the pool-VOLs selected for this pool.
Enable Accelerated Compression for FMD parity group	<p>This item can be selected when all of the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All pool volumes in the pool to be expanded and all pool volumes to be added are created using parity groups of SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, or FMD-HDE. If the pool volumes in the pool to be expanded and the pool volumes to be added are created using an accelerated compression-disabled parity group, the accelerated compression setting of the parity group can be enabled. At least one pool volume is selected, and at least one pool volume created using accelerated compression-disabled parity group is contained in the pool volumes of the target pool or in the selected pool volumes. <p>When this item is selected, FMD compression effect can be achieved.</p>

Expand Pool confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Selected Pool table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.

Selected Pool Volumes table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Capacity	Displays the pool-VOL capacity.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
RAID Level	Displays RAID level. If a pool-VOL is an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
Emulation Type	Displays the device emulation type.
Cache Mode	For an external volume, this item is displayed as enabled or disabled. If the LDEV is not an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Attribute	Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume for which the attribute is not defined.
Accelerated Compression	Displays information about the accelerated compression function of the parity group. Enabled: Accelerated compression is enabled on the parity group. Disabled: Accelerated compression is not enabled on the parity group.

Item	Description
	- (hyphen): The parity group does not support accelerated compression.
Enable Accelerated Compression for FMD parity group	<p>Displays the status of the accelerated compression function for the FMD parity group.</p> <p>Yes: Accelerated compression is enabled on the FMD parity group.</p> <p>No: Accelerated compression is not enabled on the FMD parity group.</p> <p>- (hyphen): Accelerated compression cannot be enabled on the FMD parity group.</p>

Edit Pools wizard

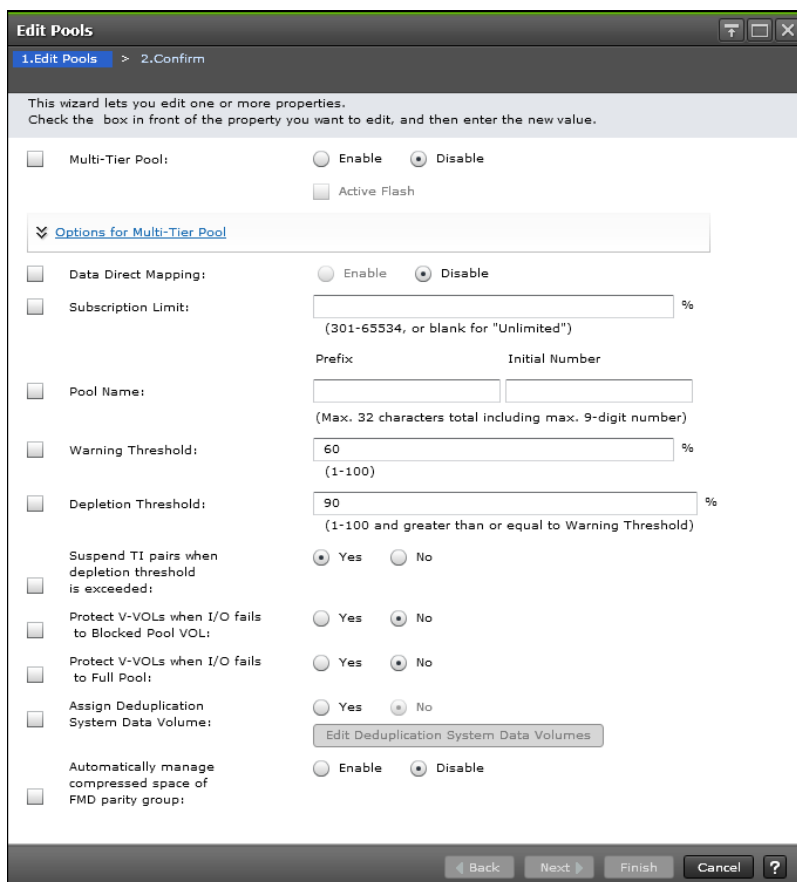
Edit Pools window

Use this window to edit the settings of the selected pool.



Caution:

- If you need to perform two or more operations to edit several items in the same pool, wait until the first task has been applied before performing the next task. If the next task is performed while the first task is being applied, the first task is canceled and the next task is applied to the storage system, so the result might be different from what you expect.
- If you modified pool parameters by using Command Control Interface and then use Device Manager - Storage Navigator, click File > Refresh All to display the latest pool information before performing the next operation by using Device Manager - Storage Navigator. If you use Device Manager - Storage Navigator without refreshing the windows, the information updated by Command Control Interface might not yet be displayed on the Device Manager - Storage Navigator windows, so if you perform an operation the result might be different from what you expect.



Item	Description
Multi-Tier Pool	<p>Select the check box, then Enable or Disable when using or not using Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe.</p> <p>In Thin Image, you cannot change the setting of this function.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, you cannot change this setting from Disable to Enable.</p> <p>If TSE-VOL is assigned to the selected pool, the pool cannot be changed from Disable to Enable.</p>
Active Flash	<p>Select the check box if you are using active flash. If pool volumes whose drive type is SSD, FMD, FMD DC2, FMD-HDE are installed, this check box can be selected.</p> <p>In Thin Image, you cannot change the setting of this function.</p>
Options for Multi-Tier Pool	<p>Specifies the performance monitoring, tier relocation, edit buffer space for new page assignment, and buffer space for tier relocation if Multi-Tier Pool is set to Enable.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>In Thin Image, you cannot change the setting of this function.</p> <p>Select the Tier Management check box, and then set the tier management, the cycle time, and the monitoring period.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tier Management: Select Auto or Manual. ▪ Cycle Time: When selecting Auto in the Tier Management option, select the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation from the Cycle Time list. ▪ Monitoring Period: When selecting 24 Hours in the Cycle Time list, specify the time of starting and ending of performance monitoring in 00:00 to 23:59 (default value). Take one or more hours between the starting time and the ending time. If you specify the starting time later than the ending time, the performance monitoring continues until the time when you specify as the ending time on the next day. <p>Select the Monitoring Mode check box, and then set the monitoring mode.</p> <p>Monitoring Mode: Specify the monitoring mode. If you perform the tier relocation weighted to the past period monitoring result, select Continuous Mode. If you perform the tier relocation on the specified cycle, select Period Mode.</p> <p>Select the Relocation Speed check box. Then set the tier relocation speed.</p> <p>Relocation Speed: Specify the page relocation speed when tier relocation is performed. You can set the speed to: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest).</p> <p>Select the Buffer Space for New page assignment check box, and then set the buffer space for new page assignment.</p> <p>Buffer Space for New page assignment: Enter an integer value from 0 to 50 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 1, tier 2, and tier 3. If there is no tier, you cannot set this item.</p> <p>Select the Buffer Space for Tier relocation check box, and then set the buffer space for tier relocation.</p> <p>Buffer Space for Tier relocation: Enter an integer value from 2 to 40 as the percentage (%) to set for tier 1, tier 2, and tier 3.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>If the check box is not selected, you cannot set this item. You must set all items if you change the pool setting from Dynamic Provisioning (or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe) to Dynamic Tiering (or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe) or active flash (or active flash for mainframe).</p> <p>If the check box is selected, you cannot collapse the Options for Multi-Tier Pool field.</p>
Data Direct Mapping	<p>Select the check box, and then select Enable or Disable for the data direct mapping attribute. This item can be enabled only when the pool type is Dynamic Provisioning and multi-tier pool is disabled.</p> <p>Enable or Disable cannot be selected in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ You cannot select Enable or Disable if any of the following conditions is satisfied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multi-Tier Pool is enabled. • A Thin Image pool is selected. • A Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool is selected. • A Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool is selected. ▪ You cannot select Enable when the selected pool contains a DP-VOL associated with an LDEV that does not have the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ You cannot select Enable when the selected Dynamic Provisioning pool contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data. ▪ You cannot select Disable when the selected pool contains an LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute.
Subscription Limit	<p>Select the Subscription Limit check box, and then enter the subscription limit (%). In Thin Image, you cannot change the setting of this function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If this field is blank, the subscription is set to be unlimited. ▪ For an open system, use blank or a value in the following range: (Total V-VOL capacity including the control information / pool capacity) × 100(%) +1 to 65534(%)

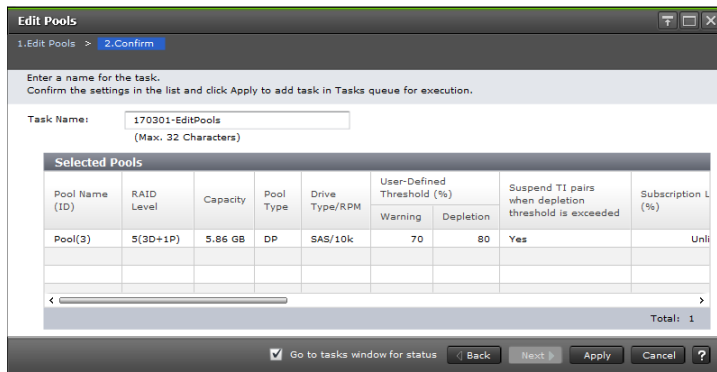
Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ For a mainframe system, use blank or a value in the following range: (Total V-VOL capacity / pool capacity) × 100(%) +1 to 65534(%) ▪ For the open system, when the current subscription setting is unlimited and the value calculated by the following formula exceeds 65534, you cannot configure the subscription limit. (Total V-VOL capacity including the control information / pool capacity) × 100 ▪ For the mainframe system, when the current subscription setting is unlimited and the value calculated by the following formula exceeds 65534, you cannot configure the subscription limit. (Total V-VOL capacity / pool capacity) × 100 ▪ If the check box is not selected, the subscription limit is disabled.
Pool Name	<p>Select the Pool Name check box, and then enter the pool name.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prefix: Enter the alphanumeric characters, which are fixed characters of the head of the pool name. The characters are case-sensitive. ▪ Initial Number: Enter the initial number following the prefix name, up to 9 digits.* ▪ You can enter up to 32 characters including the initial number. The initial number must be 9 digits or fewer. <p>* When a pool is selected, the pool name appears in the Prefix text box by default. When multiple pools are selected, the initial number from the set number to the maximum number of digits is automatically set.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When 1 is set in the Initial Number field, number 1 to 9 is automatically given to the pool name. ▪ When 08 is set in the Initial Number field, number 08 to 99 is automatically given to the pool name. ▪ When 098 is set in the Initial Number field, number 098 to 999 is automatically given to the pool name.

Item	Description
Warning Threshold	<p>Select the check box, and then enter a threshold. The minimum threshold is the sum of the mapped capacity rates, reserved capacity rates, and one percent (1%). The maximum threshold is 100%.</p> <p>For Thin Image, you cannot change the setting of this function:</p> <p>Check Warning Threshold and enter a threshold.</p> <p>You cannot set this item if the result of the following calculation exceeds 95:</p> $(used-pool-capacity/pool-capacity) \times 100 (\%)$
Depletion Threshold	<p>Select the check box, and then enter a threshold. The minimum threshold is the sum of the mapped capacity rates, reserved capacity rates, and one percent (1%). The maximum threshold is 100%.</p> <p>If you change the Thin Image pool, you cannot set this item.</p>
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>Select the check box, and then select Yes or No in the protect function for DP-VOL. If this function is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>However, if one of following is applicable, this check box goes inactive:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Mainframe pools are selected.
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	<p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool that contains Thin Image pairs and snapshot data, specify whether SIM code 62Exxx is output when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold. If you attempt to split a Thin Image pair in the pool after SIM code 62Exxx is output, the operation fails and the pair is suspended by error.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool cannot be split. <p>If Multi-Tier Pool or Data Direct Mapping is enabled for the pool, Yes cannot be selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output, and Thin Image pairs in the pool can be split.

Item	Description
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Select the check box, and then select Yes or No in the protect function for DP-VOL. If this function is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>However, if one of following is applicable, this check box goes inactive:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Mainframe pools are selected.
Assign Deduplication System Data Volume (Open systems)	<p>Select Yes or No to enable or disable the deduplication setting. Deduplication cannot be enabled if any of the following conditions exists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ The license for the capacity saving function is not installed. ▪ The System Type is Mainframe. ▪ Data Direct Mapping is enabled. ▪ There are not enough available LDEV IDs. ▪ There are not enough available cache management devices. <p>Deduplication cannot be disabled if the setting for Deduplication is being disabled.</p>
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group	<p>For pools containing pool volumes that belong to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group, set the pool auto expansion function. For Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pools, this item cannot be selected.</p> <p>Enable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.</p>

Edit Pools confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPMs. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates Mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.</p>
Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	<p>Displays the setting for outputting SIM code 62Exxx when the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is output. ▪ No: When the pool used capacity exceeds the depletion threshold, SIM code 62Exxx is not output.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool-VOL is blocked, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is other than DP or DT.
Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool	<p>Displays whether the protect function for DP-VOL is being enabled or disabled. If the setting is enabled, when the pool usage reaches the full size, DP-VOL is protected from reading and writing requests. And at the same instant, the access attribute of the DP-VOL is changed to the Protect attribute.</p> <p>A hyphen appears if the pool corresponds with one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Retention Utility is not installed. ▪ Pool type is other than DP or DT.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Tier Management	<p>If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual for performance monitoring and tier relocation is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Item	Description
Cycle Time	Displays the cycle of performance monitoring and tier relocation. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Period	Displays the time zone of performance monitoring when 24 Hours is selected as the Cycle Time. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Mode	If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed.
Relocation speed	Displays the page relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Buffer Space for New page assignment (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for new page assignment to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for new page assignment to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Buffer Space for Tier relocation (%)	<p>Displays the information of the buffer space for tier relocation to each tier.</p> <p>Tier 1: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 1 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>Tier 2: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 2 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 2 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Tier 3: If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function available, and tier 3 exists, the buffer space for tier relocation to tier 3 is displayed. If you make the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe function unavailable, or tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Deduplication	If the pool type is DP, this item displays Available or Not Available for the deduplication setting. If the pool type other than DP, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group	<p>Displays the setting status of the pool auto expansion function. For Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pools, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Enable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is managed automatically.</p> <p>Disable: The compressed space of the accelerated compression-enabled parity group is not managed automatically.</p>

Added Deduplication System Data Volumes

This table is displayed only when Deduplication System Data volumes are being added.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name, and the pool ID is displayed in parentheses.
Capacity	Displays the LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV.
SSID	Displays the SSID of the LDEV.

Item	Description
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names, and the IDs of the resource groups are displayed in parentheses.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV.

Removed Deduplication System Data Volumes

This table is displayed only when Deduplication System Data volumes are being removed.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name, and the pool ID is displayed in parentheses.
Capacity	Displays the LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV.
SSID	Displays the SSID of the LDEV.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names, and the IDs of the resource groups are displayed in parentheses.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV.

Item	Description
	For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM of the pool. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	Displays the pool threshold. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Detail	Displays the Pool Properties window when a row is selected, and shows the error window when a row is not selected or multiple rows are selected.

Next Task Option

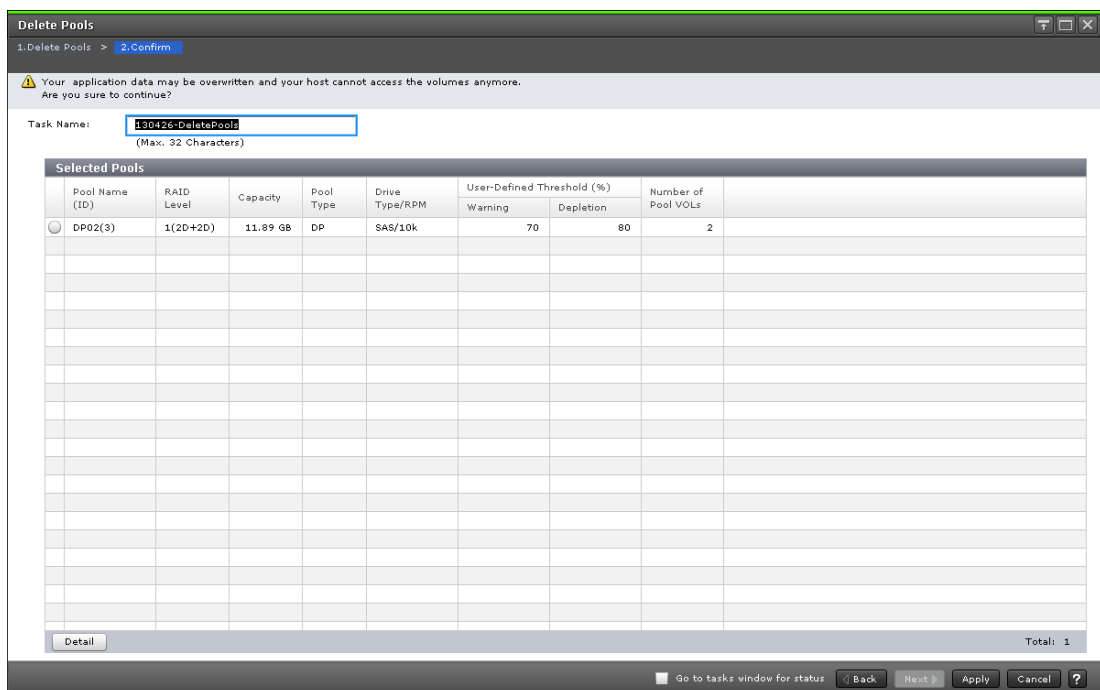
Click Next to go to the task setting window.

Delete Pools confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, and then click **Help**.



Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity.
Pool Type	Displays the pool type. For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed. For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed. For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed. For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed. For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed. For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed. For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.

Item	Description
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	Displays the pool threshold. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Detail	Displays the Pool Properties window when a row is selected, and shows the error window when a row is not selected or multiple rows are selected.



Note: Information in this topic assumes that only a single task is executed. If multiple tasks are executed, this window displays all configuration items. To check information of a configuration item, click Back to return to each configuration window, and then click Help.

Expand V-VOLs wizard

Expand V-VOLs window

Use this wizard to expand the V-VOLs to the defined final capacity of the virtual volumes.

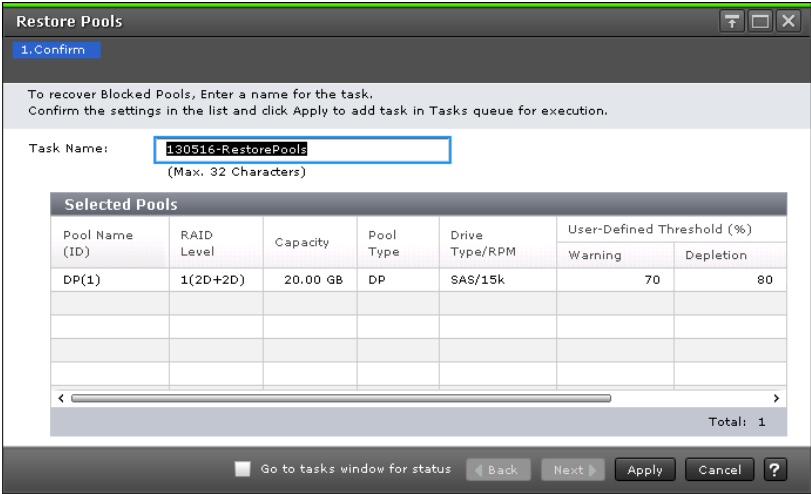
Item	Description
Specify total capacity	Select this check box when you specify the total capacity of V-VOL.
Specify additional capacity	Select this check box when you specify the additional capacity of V-VOL.
Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)	Select this check box if you want to offset the specified LDEV capacity by boundary.
Text Box	Specify the V-VOL (LDEV) capacity within the range of values indicated below the text box.

Expand V-VOLs confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Item	Description
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device of CCI. ▪ (Open systems) Deduplication System Data: Deduplication system data volume ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Full Allocation	Displays the status of the setting for the full allocation in a pool associated with the V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is performed. ▪ Disable: Full allocation of all DP-VOL pages is not performed.

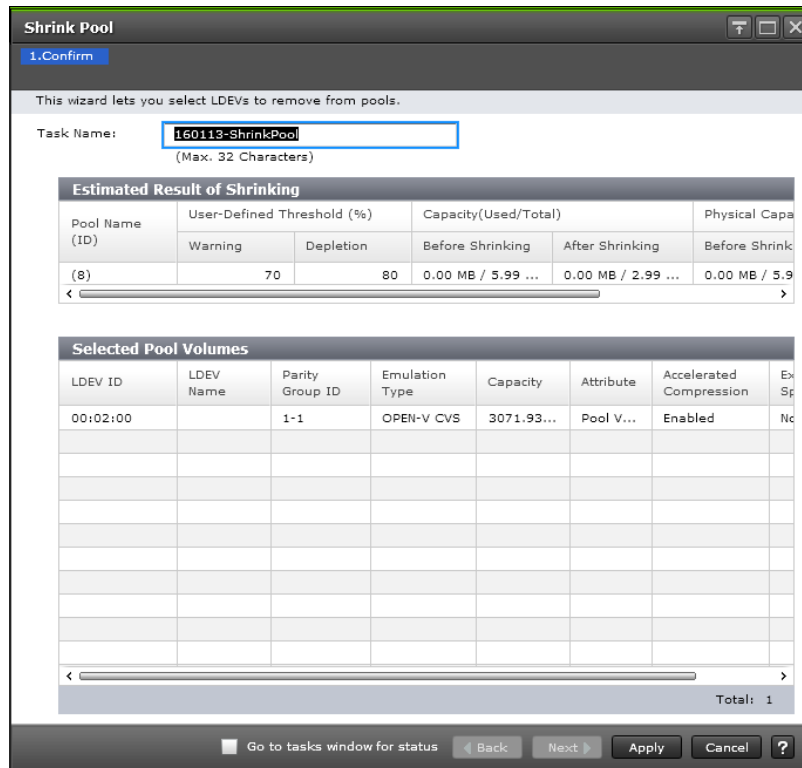
Restore Pools window



Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity. If the pool is blocked and pool-VOLs that belong to the pool cannot be identified, 0 is displayed.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.</p>
Number of Pool VOLs	<p>Displays the number of pool-VOLs.</p> <p>If the pool is blocked and pool-VOLs that belong to the pool cannot be identified, 0 is displayed.</p>

Shrink Pool window



Estimated Result of Shrinking table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	Displays the pool threshold. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.
Capacity(Used/Total)	Displays the capacity before and after shrinking.

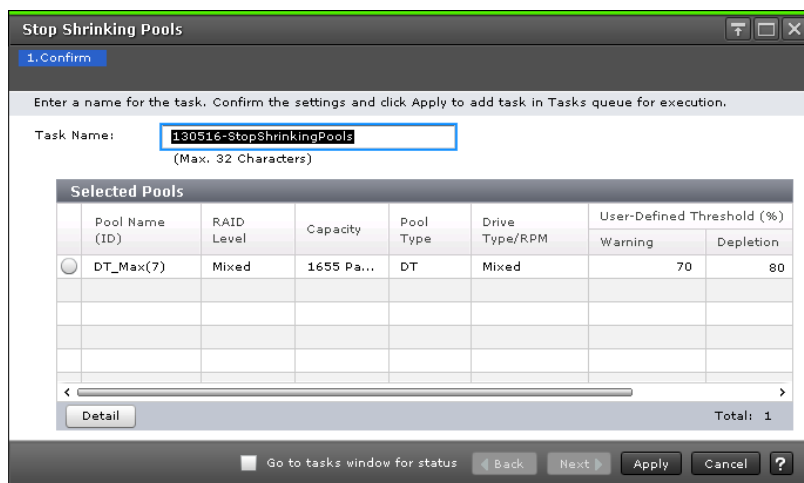
Item	Description
	<p>As for the pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity may be smaller than the displayed capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Before Shrinking: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved page capacity, the total capacity before shrinking the pool, and the pool usage rates. ▪ After Shrinking: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved page capacity, the total capacity after shrinking the pool, and the pool usage rates.
Physical Capacity (Used/ Total)	<p>Displays the capacity before and after shrinking.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Before Shrinking: For the pool of containing the pool-VOL which supports the accelerated compression, this item displays the total capacity, the used capacity, and the usage percentages. The capacity is the capacity reserved for writing data in the pool. If the accelerated compression is not supported, a hyphen (-) appears. ▪ After Shrinking: For the pool comprised of pool volumes supporting accelerated compression, this item displays the total capacity, the used capacity, and the usage percentages. The capacity is the capacity reserved for writing data in the pool. If the accelerated compression is not supported, a hyphen (-) appears.

Selected Pool Volumes table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Capacity	Displays the pool-VOL capacity.
Attribute	<p>Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used.</p> <p>Pool VOL: LDEV with pool-VOL</p>

Item	Description
	Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with data direct mapping attribute. Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Accelerated Compression	Displays the information about the accelerated compression of the parity group comprised of LDEVs. Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled. Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled. Hyphen (-): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.
Expanded Space Used	Displays the information that LDEV is allocated on the expanded area or the physical area. If the accelerated compression is enabled, LDEVs are initially allocated on the physical area, then LDEVs are allocated on the expanded area. This item displays whether the area of which LDEV is allocated is the expanded area or the physical area. Yes: LDEV is allocated in the expanded area. No: LDEV is allocated in the physical area.

Stop Shrinking Pools window



Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
RAID Level	<p>Displays the RAID level.</p> <p>If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Capacity	Displays the pool capacity.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. If multiple drive types or RPMs exist in a pool, this field indicates that drive types or RPMs are mixed. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage and the value of the external LDEV tier rank.
User-Defined Threshold (%)	<p>Displays the pool threshold.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Warning: Warning threshold is displayed. ▪ Depletion: Depletion threshold is displayed. <p>For a Thin Image pool, a hyphen (-) is displayed for Depletion.</p>
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs.
Detail	Displays the Pool Properties window when a row is selected, and shows the error window when a row is not selected or multiple rows are selected.

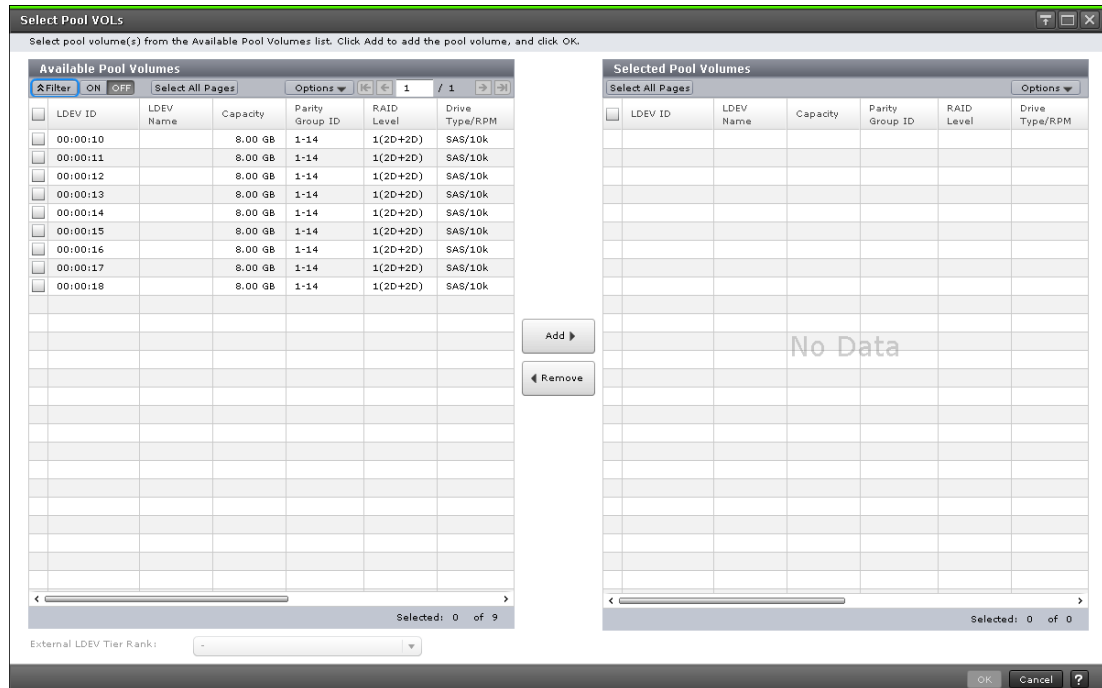
Complete SIMs window

Item	Description
Task Name	Confirm the settings, type a unique task name or accept the default, and then click Apply. A task name is case-sensitive and can be up to 32 ASCII letters, numbers, and symbols. The default is <code><date>-<window-name></code> .

Select Pool VOLs window

Use this window to add pool-VOLs to a pool. Up to 1024 volumes can be added including the volumes already in the pool. Only the LDEVs assigned to the logged-on user are available.

- Up to three different drive types of pool-VOLs can be registered in the same pool.



Available Pool Volumes table

<input type="checkbox"/>	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Capacity	Parity Group ID	RAID Level	Drive Type/RPM
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:10		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:11		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:12		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:13		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:14		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:15		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:16		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:17		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k
<input type="checkbox"/>	00:00:18		8.00 GB	1-14	1(2D+2D)	SAS/10k

Add ▶

◀ Remove

Selected: 0 of 9

Only the LDEVs assigned to the user are displayed.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Capacity	Displays the pool-VOL capacity.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If an LDEV is an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV. Basic: Internal volume. External: External volume.
Attribute	Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used.

Item	Description
	Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Cache Mode	For the external volume, the item is displayed as enabled or disabled. If the LDEV is not an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Encryption	Displays the information about parity group encryption. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume.
Accelerated Compression	Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group comprised of LDEVs. Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled. Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled. - (hyphen): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names and IDs of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.

External LDEV Tier Rank

Specify the tier rank of the external volume. If there is no external volume in the Available Pool Volumes table or Selected Pool Volumes table, you cannot select this option.

Add

When you select a row in the Available Pool Volumes table and click Add, the selected pool-VOL is added to the Selected Pool Volumes table.



Note: Up to 1,024 volumes can be added including the volumes already in the pool.

When adding a volume to the pool for which Multi-Tier Pool is enabled, note the following:

For a pool, you can add volumes whose Drive Type/RPM settings are the same and whose RAID Levels are different. For example, you can add the following volumes to the same pool:

- Volume whose Drive Type/RPM is SAS/15K and whose RAID Level is 5 (3D +1P)
- Volume whose Drive Type/RPM is SAS/15K and whose RAID Level is 5 (7D +1P)



Note:

For details about adding LDEVs carved from the accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, [Guidelines for pools when accelerated compression is enabled \(on page 407\)](#).

Remove

When you select a row in Selected Pool Volumes table and click Remove, the selected pool-VOL is removed from the Selected Pool Volumes table.

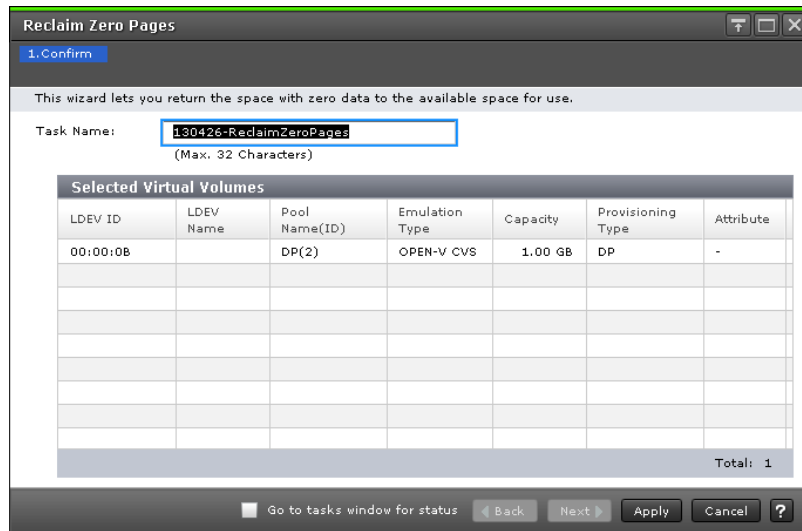
Selected Pool Volumes table

<input type="checkbox"/>	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Capacity	Parity Group ID	RAID Level	Drive Type/RPM
No Data						

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Capacity	Displays the pool-VOL capacity.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If an LDEV is an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM. When the volume is the external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage.
External LDEV Tier Rank	Displays the tier rank of the external volume. If the volume is not an external volume, a hyphen(-) is displayed.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV. Basic: Internal volume. External: External volume.

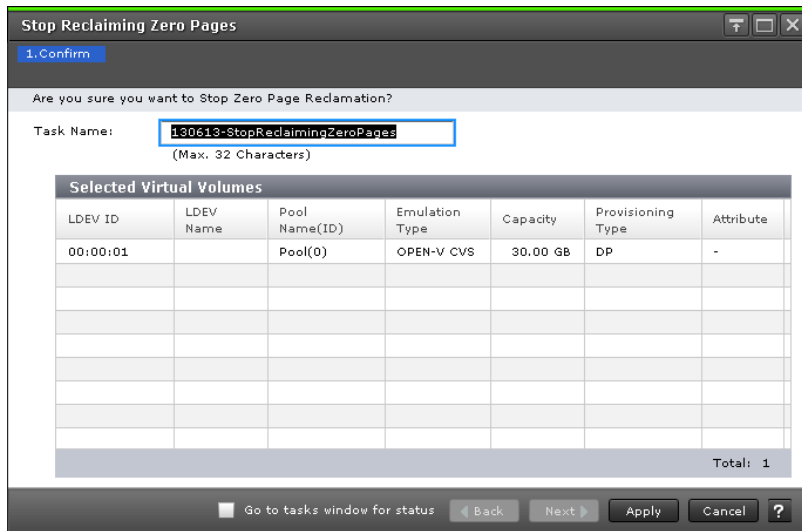
Item	Description
Attribute	<p>Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used.</p> <p>Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute.</p> <p>- (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.</p>
Cache Mode	<p>For the external volume, this item is displayed as enabled or disabled. If the LDEV is not an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Encryption	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume.
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group comprised of LDEVs.</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	<p>Displays the resource group names and IDs of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.</p>

Reclaim Zero Pages window



Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Capacity	Displays the capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the LDEV type. In this case, DP is displayed.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device of CCI. ▪ Deduplication System Data: Deduplication System Data volume ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.

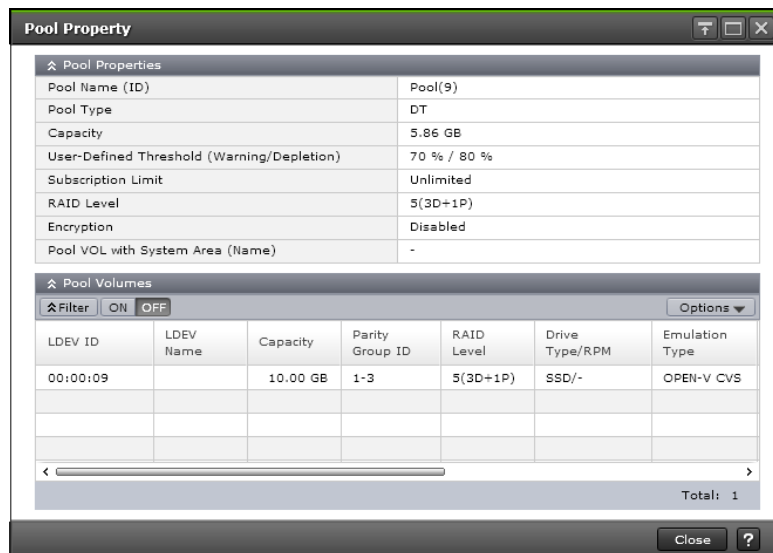
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window



Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Capacity	Displays the capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the LDEV type. In this case, DP is displayed.
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device of CCI. ▪ Deduplication System Data: Deduplication System Data volume ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.

Pool Property window

Use this window to view and change pool properties. Only the LDEVs assigned to the logged-on user are available.



Pool Properties table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Capacity	<p>Displays the pool capacity.</p> <p>As for the pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity may be smaller than the displayed capacity.</p>
User-Defined Threshold (Warning/Depletion)	Displays the user-defined threshold (Warning/Depletion).

Item	Description
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, this field indicates that RAID levels are mixed. If all pool-VOLs are external volumes, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Encryption	<p>Displays the encryption information of the pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Pool comprised of pool volumes with encryption settings are enabled. ▪ Disable: Pool comprised of pool volumes with encryption settings are disabled. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): The pool is created by external volumes, or the pool is being blocked.
Pool VOL with System Area (Name)	Displays LDEV ID and LDEV name of the pool-VOL which includes the system area. If you open this window from the Selected Pools table in the Create Pool window, a hyphen(-) is displayed.

Pool Volumes table

Only the LDEVs assigned to the user are displayed.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Capacity	Displays the pool volumes capacity. If you open this window from the Selected Pools table in the Create Pool window, the LDEV capacity selected in the Select Pool VOLs window is displayed.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.

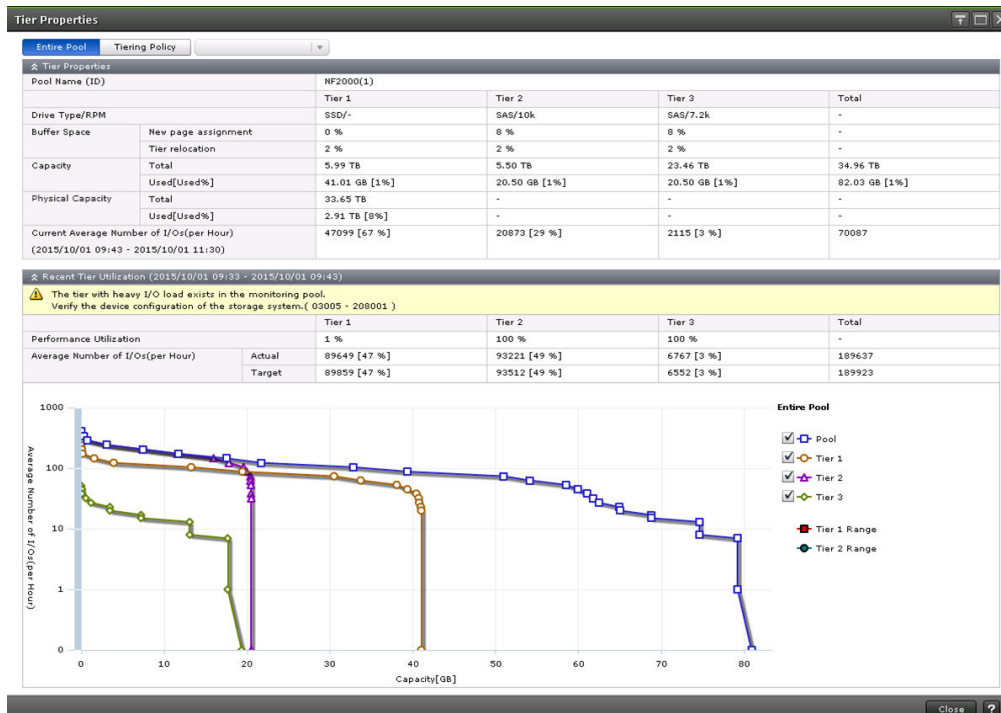
Item	Description
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If a pool-VOL is an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the tier ID. A hyphen (-) is displayed when selecting the pool for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, or Thin Image.
Tier ID	Displays the tier ID. A hyphen (-) is displayed when you select a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Thin Image pool.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV. Basic: Internal volume. External: External volume.
Attribute	Attribute of the volume indicating how the LDEV is being used. Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Cache Mode	For the external volume, this item is displayed as enabled or disabled. If the LDEV is not an external volume, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Encryption	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the pool-VOL which is enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume.
Accelerated Compression	<p>Displays information about the accelerated compression of the parity group comprised of LDEVs.</p> <p>Enabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is enabled.</p> <p>Disabled: The accelerated compression of the parity group is disabled.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The parity group with accelerated compression is not supported.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	<p>Displays the resource group names and IDs of the LDEV. The ID is provided in parentheses.</p>

Tier Properties window

This window displays tier properties and a performance graph.

When the pool name (pool ID) appears in the graph banner, you are looking a pool information. When the LDEV name (LDEV ID) appears in the graph banner, you are looking at V-VOL information.



For pools

The following tables list the Tier Properties information.

When selecting Entire Pool or Tiering Policy

Item	Description
Entire Pool or Tiering Policy	<p>Select the following resource to display the performance graph.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Entire Pool: Displays the performance graph of the entire pool. Tiering Policy: Displays the performance graph of the tiering policy.
All(0), and from Level1(1) to Level31(31)	<p>Select the Tiering Policy.</p> <p>The performance graph that corresponds to the selected tiering policy appears.</p> <p>From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear.</p>

Tier Properties table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and ID.
Tier name	Displays the tier names: Tier1, Tier2, Tier3, and Total. Each column displays information about the tier.
Drive Type/RPM	<p>Displays the data drive type and RPM of tier.</p> <p>If multiple types exist in a tier, Mixed is displayed. For an external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage with the value of the external LDEV tier rank.</p>
Buffer Space	<p>Displays the following buffer spaces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ New page assignment: Buffer spaces for new page assignment. ▪ Tier relocation: Buffer spaces for tier relocation.
Capacity	<p>Displays the capacity of the pool and each tier. For pools that contain pool volumes belonging to an accelerated compression-enabled parity group, and for which Enable is selected for Automatically manage compressed space of FMD parity group, see the physical capacity for the capacity of Tier 1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: displays the total capacity of each tier and a pool. <p>As for the pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity may be smaller than the displayed capacity.</p> ▪ Used [Used%]: Displays the percentage of the used capacity for the pool and each tier. The field is updated asynchronously with the Recent Tier Utilization table and when the View Tier Properties window is opened. The Used Capacity of each tier can differ from the sum of the used capacities of all tiers. <p>Tiering Policy: tiering policy name: Displays the used capacity size and percentage related to the tiering-policy of the pool and each tier. This item displays when you make a Tiering Policy selection.</p> ▪ Used (Pre Processed Data): Displays the data capacity before the reduction provided by the capacity saving function.

Item	Description
Physical Capacity	<p>Appears when Entire Pool is selected. In the tier 1 of containing the pool-VOL supporting accelerated compression, the capacity which is assured of the writing of data appears. Hyphens are displayed in Tier 2 column, Tier 3 column, and Total column.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Displays the total capacity of tier 1. ▪ Used [Used%]: Displays the used capacity and percentage of the tier 1.
Current Average Number of I/O(per Hour)	<p>Displays the actual monitored average I/Os and percentages of each tier and entire pool for the period from the creating of the pool to the current state. This item appears when selecting of Entire Pool. In addition, the number of I/Os is initialized in cases of following, and then I/Os are counted again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When monitoring information collection is completed. ▪ When the number of tiers in a pool changes. ▪ When a tier location of the pool VOL changes by adding a pool VOL. ▪ When multi tier pools are enabled after being invalid. ▪ When the fixed monitoring information is calculated again. <p>For details about cases that the fixed monitoring information is calculated again, see Tier relocation rules, restrictions, and guidelines (on page 152).</p>

Recent Tier Utilization (monitoring period) table

Item	Description
Header area	If an error occurs, a message appears.
Tier name	Displays the tier names: Tier1, Tier2, Tier3, and Total. Each column displays information about the tier.
Performance Utilization	Displays the percentage of progress in performance utilization processing.
Average Number of I/Os (per Hour)	Displays the average number of I/Os in a pool and each tier.

Item	Description
	<p>Actual: Displays the actual monitored average I/Os and percentages for each tier and a pool on an hourly basis.* This item appears when selecting the Entire Pool option.</p> <p>Target: Displays the target average I/Os and percentages for each tier and a pool after the tier determination calculation.* This item appears when selecting the Entire Pool option.</p> <p>Tiering Policy: tiering policy name: Displays the average number of I/Os for the pool and each tier that are related to the tiering-policy. This item displays when you make a Tiering Policy selection.*</p>
<p>* This field is updated when performance monitoring information is collected, asynchronously with Used Capacity (Used %). If ? is displayed, take the actions displayed in the header area of the Recent Tier Utilization table. If an error message and countermeasure are not shown in the header area of the Recent Tier Utilization table, refresh the window. If ? continues to be displayed, call customer support.</p>	

Performance Graph

Item	Description
Performance graph	Displays the performance graph of the entire pool or tiering policy.
Pool	<p>If Entire Pool and the period mode of the monitoring mode are specified, this item appears. When this check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale of the performance graph indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale of the performance graph indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>
Pool(Weighted average)	<p>If Entire Pool and the continuous mode of the monitoring mode are specified, this item appears. When this check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The number of I/Os is a weighted, averaged with the monitoring data from the past cycle weighted against the monitoring data from the current cycle. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>

Item	Description
Policy	<p>If Tiering Policy and the period mode of the monitoring mode are specified, this item appears. When the check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale of the performance graph indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale of the performance graph indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>
Policy(Weighted average)	<p>If Tiering Policy and the continuous mode of the monitoring mode are specified, this item appears. When the check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale of the performance graph indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale of the performance graph indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier1	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier1. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier1, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier2	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier2. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier2, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier3	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier3. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier3, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier1 range	<p>Displays the range in tier1.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier1, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier2 range	<p>Displays the range in tier2.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier2, this item does not appear.</p>

The following describes how to read the performance graph when it contains pool information.

The vertical scale of the graph indicates an average number of I/Os by each hour and the horizontal scale indicates capacity (GB) of the area where the I/Os are performed.

The two lines in the graph indicate tier 1 range and tier 2 range. They are calculated when the collection of performance monitoring has been completed (monitoring period is completed). They show the boundary of each tier.

A maximum of 127 dots is shown in the graph. The following information appears over a dot in the graph depending on where the cursor is placed.

- Capacities, average I/Os, and total I/Os appear if the cursor is placed on the dot of the Tier1, Tier2, Tier3, Pool, or the Pool(Weighted average).
- The lower value of the average I/Os appears if the cursor is placed on the dot of the Tier1 Range or the Tier2 Range.

The following table describes these items.

Item	Description
Capacities	The capacity (GB) of the area from the dot of the maximum value on the vertical scale to a specified dot. The capacity of the dot on the vertical scale is 0.00 GB.
Average I/Os	All I/Os are sorted into 127 sections. The average I/O is the representative I/O number assigned to each section, based on the definition of the storage system. By the total number of I/Os, the number of dots may be 127 or less.
Total I/Os	The total number of I/Os in the section from the dot of the maximum value on the vertical scale to a specified dot. The total I/Os is calculated using the average I/Os and capacities in the specified section. If the specified dot is on the vertical scale, the total I/Os is zero.

When no I/Os are in the lower tier with multiple tiers, the tier range line is placed at 0 on the vertical scale.

For example, if the dot is placed far from the lower limit of the tier range, the lower limit levels of the Tier 1 Range and Tier 2 Range are adjusted to improve the visibility of the performance graph. In this case, the value that is obtained by Command Control Interface might not correspond with the value of the dot displayed in a performance graph.

For V-VOLs

The following table provides the View Tier Properties table information when LDEV information is present.

Tier Properties table when selecting a DP-VOL

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the combination of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV name	Displays the LDEV name.
Tiering Policy	Displays the tiering policy name and ID.
New Page Assignment Tier	Displays the new page assigned tier.
Tier Relocation	Displays whether tier relocation is set to Enabled or Disabled.
Relocation Priority	Displays the relocation priority.
Tier name	Displays the tier names: Tier1, Tier2, Tier3, and Total. Each column displays information about the tier.
Drive Type/RPM	<p>Displays the data drive type and RPM of tier.</p> <p>If multiple types exist in a tier, Mixed is displayed. For an external volume, Drive Type displays External Storage with the value of the external LDEV tier rank.</p>
Pool Capacity	Displays the total capacity of each tier and total capacity of the pool.
Used Capacity (Used %)	<p>Displays the percentage of the used capacity for the pool and each tier. The field is updated asynchronously with the Recent Tier Utilization table and when the View Tier Properties window is opened. The Used Capacity of each tier might differ from the sum of the used capacities of all tiers.</p>
Current Average Number of I/O(per Hour)	<p>Displays the actual monitored average I/Os and percentages of each tier and entire pool for the period from the creating of the DP-VOL to the current state. In addition, the number of I/Os is initialized in cases of following, and then I/Os are counted again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When monitoring information collection is completed. ▪ When the number of tiers in a pool changes. ▪ When a tier location of the pool VOL changes by adding a pool VOL.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ When multi tier pools are enabled after being invalid. ▪ When the fixed monitoring information is calculated again. <p>For details about cases that the fixed monitoring information is calculated again, see Tier relocation rules, restrictions, and guidelines (on page 152).</p>

Recent Tier Utilization (monitoring period) table

Item	Description
Header area	If a error occurs, a message appears.
Tier name	Displays the tier names: Tier1, Tier2, Tier3, and Total. Each column displays information about the tier.
Average Number of I/O (per Hour)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Displays the actual monitored average I/Os and percentages of each tier and a DP-VOL on an hourly basis.* ▪ Target: Displays the target average I/Os and percentages of each tier and a DP-VOL after the tier determination calculation.
<p>* This field is updated when performance monitoring information is collected, asynchronously with Used Capacity (Used %). If ? is displayed, take the actions displayed in the header area of the Recent Tier Utilization table. If an error message and countermeasure are not shown in the header area of the Recent Tier Utilization table, refresh the window. If ? continues to display, call the customer support.</p>	

Performance Graph

Item	Description
Performance graph	Displays the performance graph of the entire pool or tiering policy.
Volume	<p>If the period mode of the monitoring mode is specified, this item appears. When this check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale of the performance graph indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale of the performance graph indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>

Item	Description
Volume(Weighted average)	<p>If the continuous mode of the monitoring mode is specified, this item appears. When this check box is selected, the performance graph appears. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The number of I/Os is a weighted, averaged with the monitoring data from the past cycle weighted against the monitoring data from the current cycle. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier1	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier1. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier1, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier2	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier2. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier2, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier3	<p>Displays the performance graph of tier3. The vertical scale indicates the average number of I/Os on an hourly basis. The horizontal scale indicates the capacity.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier3, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier1 range	<p>Displays the range in tier1.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier1, this item does not appear.</p>
Tier2 range	<p>Displays the range in tier2.</p> <p>If there is no monitor data in tier2, this item does not appear.</p>

The following describes how to read the performance graph when LDEV information is presented.

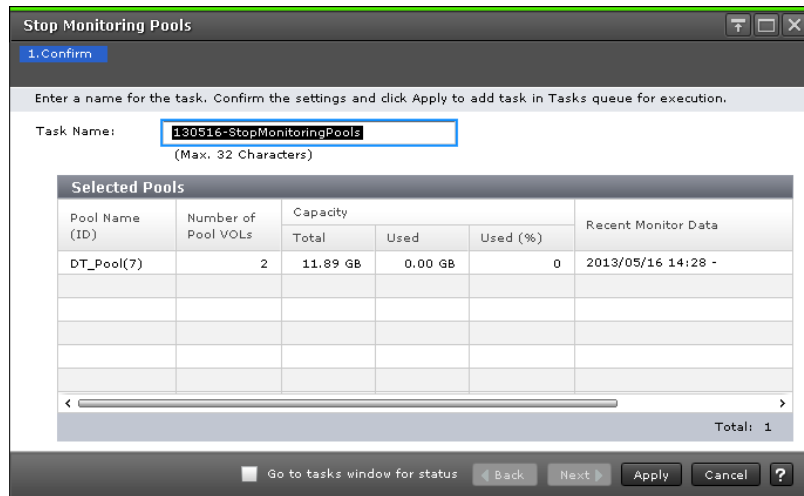
The vertical scale of the graph indicates an average number of I/Os by each hour and the horizontal scale indicates a capacity, in GB, of the area where the I/Os are performed.

The two lines in the graph indicate tier 1 range and tier 2 range. These ranges are calculated when the collection of performance monitoring data is complete (monitoring period is completed). They show the boundary of each tier.

Selected Pools table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs in the selected pool.
Capacity	<p>Displays the information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of pool. Using Option, you can select unit of capacity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 42 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image. • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 38 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Mapped: Page capacity of the pool in which user data and control information is stored. ▪ Mapped (%): Percentages of the page capacity of the pool that contains user data and control information. Mapped (%) displays the value which is truncated after the decimal point of the actual value. <p>For the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the unit of capacity is changed into Cylinder.</p>
Recent Monitor Data	<p>Displays the period of monitoring time as follows: <i>start-time-end-time</i></p> <p>If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed.</p> <p>If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Stop Monitoring Pools window

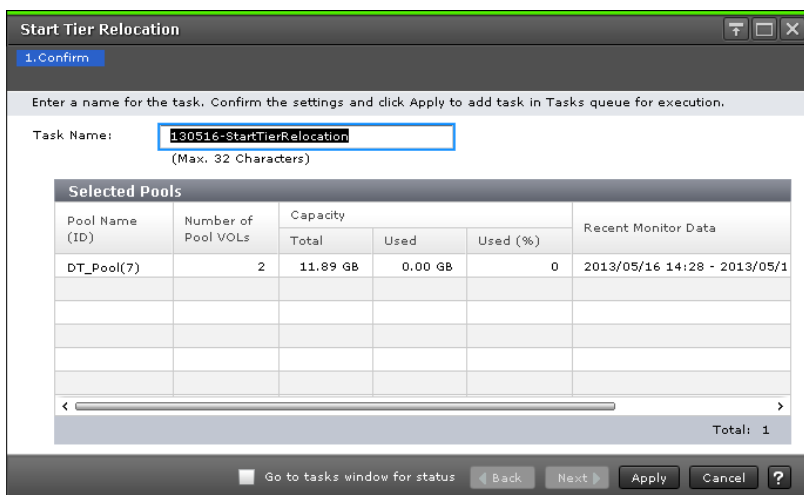


Selected Pools table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs in the selected pool.
Capacity	<p>Displays the information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of pool. Using Option, you can select unit of capacity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 42 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image. • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 38 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Mapped: Page capacity of the pool in which user data and control information is stored. ▪ Mapped (%): Percentages of the page capacity of the pool that contains user data and control information. Mapped (%) displays the value which is truncated after the decimal point of the actual value. <p>For the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the unit of capacity is changed into Cylinder.</p>

Item	Description
Recent Monitor Data	Displays the period of monitoring time as follows: <i>start-time-end-time</i> If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed. If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Start Tier Relocation window

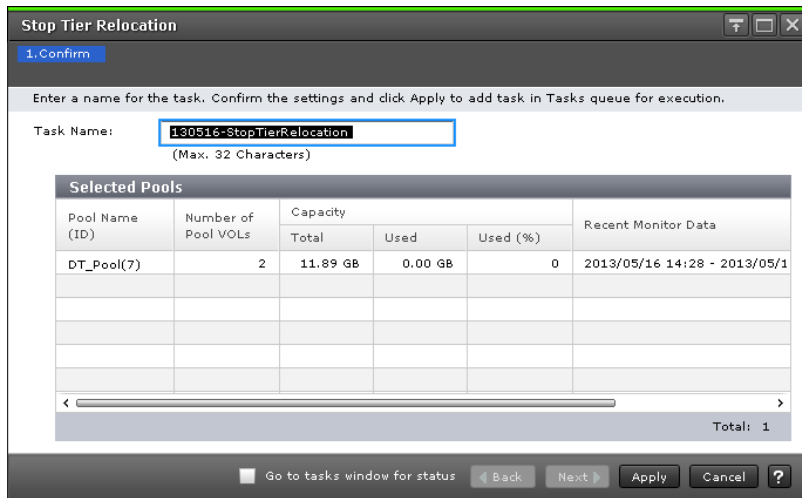


Selected Pools table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs in the selected pool.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays the information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of pool. Using Option, you can select unit of capacity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 42 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image. • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 38 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Mapped: Page capacity of the pool in which user data and control information is stored. ▪ Mapped (%): Percentages of the page capacity of the pool that contains user data and control information. Mapped (%) displays the value which is truncated after the decimal point of the actual value. <p>For the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the unit of capacity is changed into Cylinder.</p>
Recent Monitor Data	<p>Displays the period of monitoring time as follows: <i>start-time-end-time</i></p> <p>If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed.</p> <p>If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Relocation Speed	<p>Displays the tier relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest)</p>

Stop Tier Relocation window



Selected Pools table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs in the selected pool.
Capacity	<p>Displays the information about the pool capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Total capacity of pool. Using Option, you can select unit of capacity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 42 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image. • One block equals 512 bytes and one page equals 38 megabytes in a pool capacity of Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe. ▪ Mapped: Page capacity of the pool in which user data and control information is stored. ▪ Mapped (%): Percentages of the page capacity of the pool that contains user data and control information. Mapped (%) displays the value which is truncated after the decimal point of the actual value. <p>For the pool of Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, or Thin Image, a hyphen (-) is displayed if the unit of capacity is changed into Cylinder.</p>

Item	Description
Recent Monitor Data	Displays the period of monitoring time as follows: <i>start-time-end-time</i> If the monitoring data is being obtained, only the starting time is displayed. If the latest monitoring data does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Relocation Progress(%)	Displays the progress percentage of the tier relocation. 0 to 99: The relocation is performed at the indicated percentage progression. 100: The relocation operation is not in performed, or the relocation is complete. For details about the tier relocation, see the tier relocation log file.
Relocation Speed	Displays the tier relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest)

View Pool Management Status window

The screenshot shows the 'View Pool Management Status' window. The top section displays pool details for 'PoolTest1(0)' with a DP type, 6 V-VOLs, and 4 root VOLs. Below this, the 'Virtual Volumes' section is active, showing a table of 6 virtual volumes. Each volume has a LDEV ID, LDEV Name, and a capacity of 50.00 GB. The table also shows the status and progress of pool and V-VOL management tasks.

Pool Management Task		V-VOL Management Task		Capacity			
LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Status	Progress (%)	Status	Progress (%)	Total	Reserved
00:00:08			-		-	50.00 GB	0.00 Gi
00:00:09			-		-	50.00 GB	0.00 Gi
00:00:0A			-		-	50.00 GB	0.00 Gi
00:00:0B			-		-	50.00 GB	0.00 Gi
00:00:0C			-		-	50.00 GB	0.00 Gi
00:00:26			-		-	40960.0...	0.00 Gi

Total: 6

Pool Management Status table

Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.
Pool Type	<p>Displays the pool type.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning pool, DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering pool, DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DP is displayed.</p> <p>For a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, Mainframe DT is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash, DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool being used for active flash for mainframe, Mainframe DT(Active Flash) is displayed.</p> <p>For a pool with data direct mapping enabled, DP (data direct mapping) is displayed.</p> <p>For a Thin Image pool, TI is displayed.</p>
Number of V-VOLs	<p>Displays the number of V-VOLs associated with the pool, and the maximum number of V-VOLs that can be associated with the pool.</p> <p>If you select a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, or a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, this item appears.</p> <p>If the pool with the data direct mapping attribute is selected, the number of the V-VOLs is displayed, then a hyphen appears for the maximum number of V-VOLs which can associate with the pool.</p>
Number of Root VOLs	Displays the number of root volumes of Thin Image pairs that are associated with the pool.
Number of Pool VOLs	Displays the number of pool-VOLs set for the pool, and the maximum number of pool-VOLs that can be set for the pool.
Pool Management Task (Status/Progress)	<p>Displays the status and progress ratio of the pool management task being performed to the pool, and average progress ratio of each V-VOL in the pool.</p> <p>Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited.</p> <p>Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited.</p> <p>Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed.</p> <p>Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited.</p> <p>Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed.</p> <p>Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool.</p> <p>The following values that are displayed in the Virtual Volume table or in the Root Volumes table might not correspond with the value displayed for this item. This is because the progress of the pool management task is calculated after the progress of each V-VOL displayed in the Virtual Volume table or the Root Volumes table is calculated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Pool Management Task - Status ▪ Pool Management Task - Progress(%) <p>For details about the tier relocation, see the tier relocation log file.</p>
Relocation Result	<p>Displays the status of the tier relocation processing.</p> <p>In Progress: The status of Pool Management Task is Waiting for Relocation or Relocating.</p> <p>Completed: The tier relocation operation is not in progress, or the tier relocation is complete.</p> <p>Uncompleted (n% relocated): The tier relocation is suspended at the indicated percentage progression.</p> <p>- (hyphen): The pool is not a Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool.</p>

Item	Description
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used/Total: Displays the used and total pool capacity. If the pool consists of multiple pool-VOLs, the sum of its capacities is displayed in the Total field. As for the pool comprised of pool volumes assigned by the accelerated compression-enabled parity groups, the writable capacity might be smaller than the displayed capacity. ▪ Free + Reserved: Displays the sum of the free capacity and reserved capacity, and displays the formatted pool capacity. If the pool consists of multiple pool-VOLs, the sum of its capacities is displayed in the Total field. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl).
Tier Management	If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is enabled, Auto or Manual of performance monitoring and tier relocation is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Mode	Displays the monitoring mode that is set for the pool. If the continuous mode is enabled, Continuous Mode is displayed. If the period mode is enabled, Period Mode is displayed. If Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe is disabled, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Monitoring Status	Displays the status of pool monitoring. If monitoring is being performed, In Progress is displayed. A hyphen (-) is displayed other than this case.
Relocation Speed/Actual	Displays the tier relocation speed: 1(Slowest), 2(Slower), 3(Standard), 4(Faster), or 5(Fastest). Actual displays the measured value of the tier relocation capacity per second.

Virtual Volume table

If you select a Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, or a Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, this table displays.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.

Item	Description
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Management Task	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Status: Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. • Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. • Waiting for Relocation: The tier relocation process is being waited. • Relocating: The tier relocation process is being performed. • Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. • Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. • Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool. ▪ Progress(%): Displays V-VOL progress percentage (%) of the pool management task being performed. A hyphen (-) is displayed when the pool management task is not performed.
V-VOL Management Task	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Status: Displays the V-VOL management task being performed to V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reclaiming Zero Pages: The zero page reclaim processing that is being performed. • Waiting for Zero Page Reclaiming: The zero page reclaim processing • Blank: The V-VOL management task is not being performed to V-VOL. ▪ Progress(%): Displays the progress percentages (%) of the V-VOL management task being performed. A hyphen (-) is displayed when the V-VOL management task is not performed.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.

Item	Description
Capacity	<p>Displays information about the V-VOL used capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Displays the V-VOL capacity. ▪ Reserved: Displays the reserved page capacity of the V-VOL. <p>The displayed value of Reserved might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reserved displays the sum of the used V-VOL capacity and the reserved page capacity that is rounded up on each page. • If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). • The mapped capacity of V-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning includes the capacity of control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved page capacity. <p>The displayed value of Used might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved page capacity that is rounded up on each page. • If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). • If the emulation type is 3390-A and the TSE attribute is enabled, the mapped capacity for DP-VOL contains the management area capacity. • The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (uses a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). • DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled includes the control information (168 MB is used per 3,145,548 MB) and the capacity for one page. <p>If used capacity is referenced during I/O or copy processing by software such as ShadowImage or Universal Replicator, the used capacity displayed might be different from the actual capacity even if the full allocation is enabled on the V-VOL. This is caused by a gap between the times that information</p>

Item	Description
	<p>is gathered about the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used(%): For the entire capacity of V-VOL, this item displays percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity.
Full Allocation	<p>Displays the status of the setting for full allocation in a pool that are associated with the V-VOL.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Pages are reserved. ▪ Disable: Pages are not reserved.
Tiering Policy	<p>Displays the tiering policy name and ID.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All(0): Policy in which all tiers of the pool are used. ▪ Level1(1) - Level5(5):Policy selected from levels 1 to 5 is set to the V-VOL. ▪ Level6(6) - Level31(31): Policy defined by the user and set to the V-VOL. From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
New Page Assignment Tier	<p>Displays the new page assigned tier.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ High: High is set to V-VOL. ▪ Middle: Middle is set to V-VOL. ▪ Low: Low is set to V-VOL. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Tier Relocation	<p>Displays whether tier relocation is set to enable or disable. If the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL is not used, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Relocation Priority	<p>Displays the relocation priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prioritized: The priority is set to the V-VOL. ▪ Blank: The priority is not set to the V-VOL. ▪ - (hyphen): V-VOL is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL or the tier relocation function is disabled.

Item	Description
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ Deduplication System Data Volume: LDEV used to manage data deduplication. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine to which the LDEV belongs. ▪ LDEV ID: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to the LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID: Virtual SSID. If a Virtual SSID is not set for the LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for the LDEV, this column is blank.

Root Volumes table or TI Root Volumes table

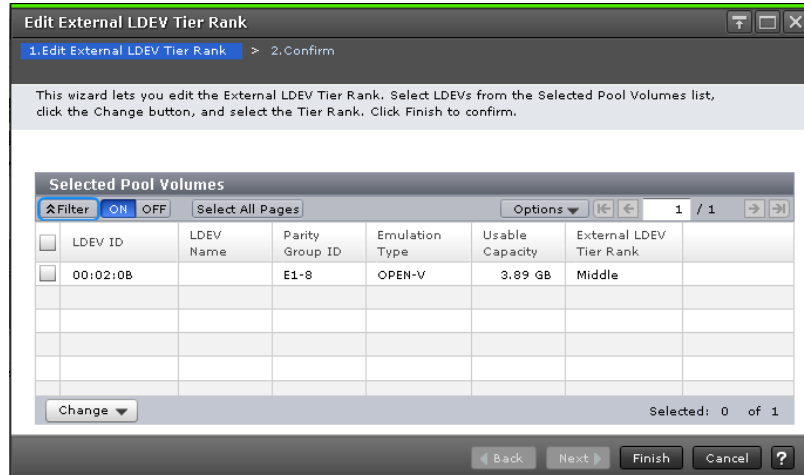
- When you select a Thin Image pool, the Root Volumes tab is displayed.
- When you select a Dynamic Provisioning pool, the TI Root Volumes tab is displayed.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.

Item	Description
Pool Management Task -- Status	<p>Displays the pool management task being performed to the pool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Waiting for Rebalance: The rebalance process is being waited. ▪ Rebalancing: The rebalance process is being performed. ▪ Waiting for Shrink: The pool shrinking process is being waited. ▪ Shrinking: The pool shrinking process is being performed. ▪ Blank: The pool management task is not being performed to the pool.
Pool Management Task -- Progress (%)	<p>Displays a progress percentage (%) of a pool management task being performed on each primary volume. A hyphen (-) is displayed when the pool management task is not performed.</p>
Used Pool Capacity	<p>Displays the used pool capacity.</p>
Pool Usage(%)	<p>Displays the pool usage ratio.</p>
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

Edit External LDEV Tier Rank wizard

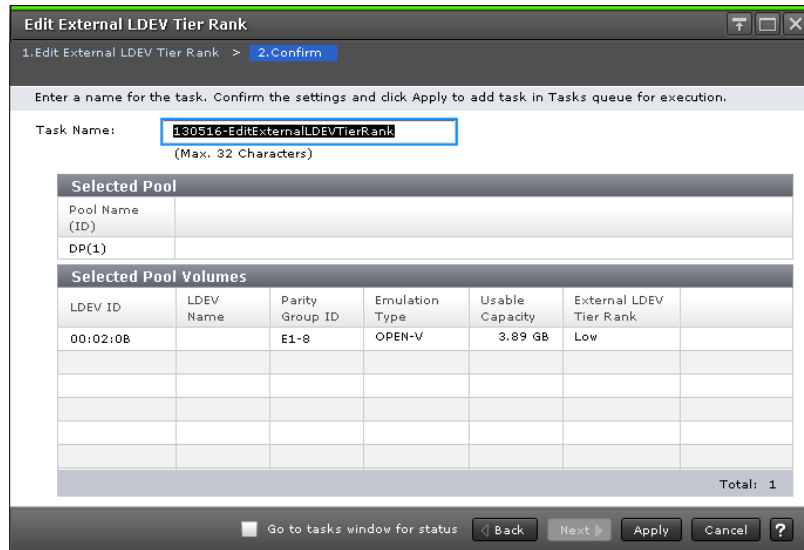
Edit External LDEV Tier Rank window



Selected Pool Volumes table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the combination of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Usable Capacity	The usable capacity in the pool-VOL that is offset on the basis of the page appears. For the pool-VOL with system area, the displayed capacity does not include the capacity of the management area.
External LDEV Tier Rank	Displays the tier rank of the external volume.
Change	Changes the tier rank of the selected pool-VOL to High, Middle, or Low.

Edit External LDEV Tier Rank confirmation window



Selected Pool table

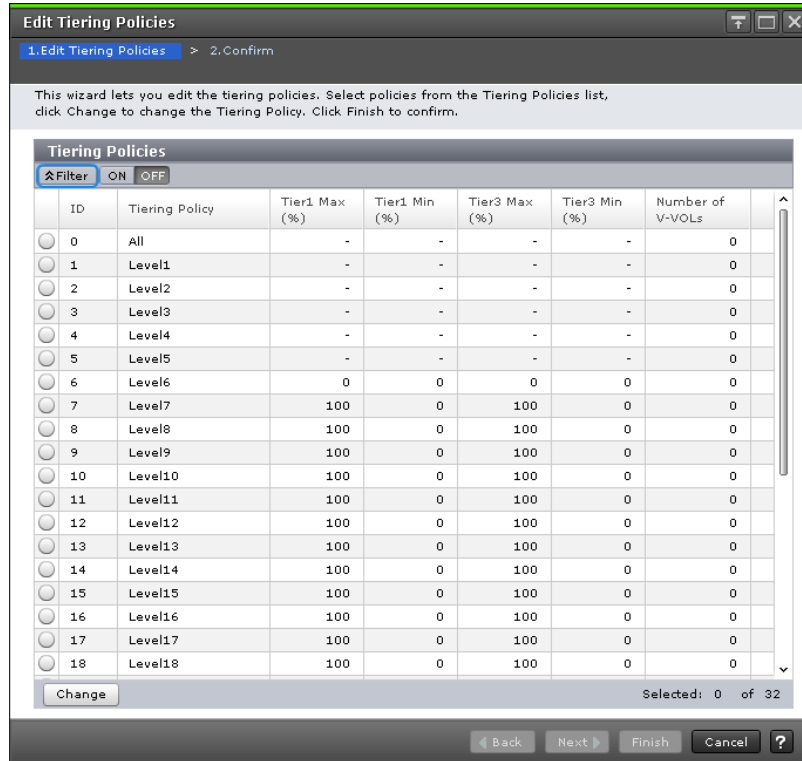
Item	Description
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID.

Selected Pool Volumes table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the combination of the LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Parity Group ID	Displays the parity group ID.
Emulation Type	Displays the emulation type.
Usable Capacity	The usable capacity in the pool-VOL that is offset on the basis of the page appears. For the pool-VOL with system area, the displayed capacity does not include the capacity of the management area.
External LDEV Tier Rank	Displays the tier rank of the external volume.

Edit Tiering Policies wizard

Edit Tiering Policies window

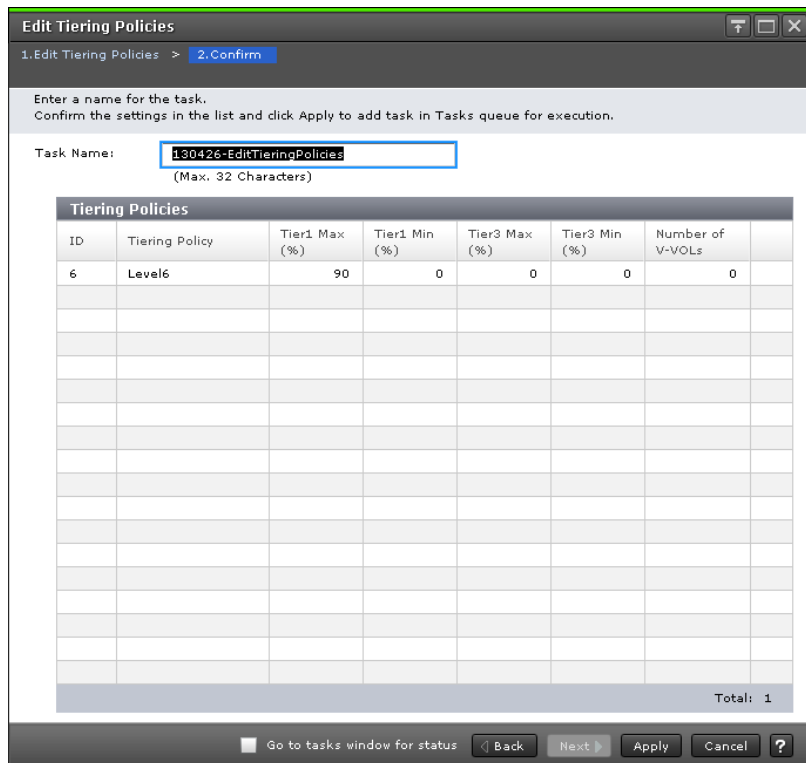


Tiering Policies table

Item	Description
ID	Displays the ID of the tiering policy.
Tiering Policy	Displays the name of the tiering policy.
Tier1 Max(%)	Displays the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy with an ID from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Tier1 Min(%)	Displays the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy whose ID is from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Tier3 Max(%)	Displays the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy with an ID from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Tier3 Min(%)	Displays the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy whose ID is from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Number of V-VOLs	Displays the number of V-VOLs to which the tiering policy is set.
Change	Displays the Change Tiering Policy window when you select the row and click this button. A policy with an ID is from 0 to 6 cannot be changed.

Edit Tiering Policies confirmation window



Tiering Policies table

Item	Description
ID	Displays the ID of the tiering policy.
Tiering Policy	Displays the name of the tiering policy.
Tier1 Max(%)	Displays the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy with an ID from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Tier1 Min(%)	Displays the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy whose ID is from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Tier3 Max(%)	Displays the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy with an ID from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Tier3 Min(%)	Displays the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity to which tier relocation is performed. For a policy whose ID is from 0 to 5, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Number of V-VOLs	Displays the number of V-VOLs to which the tiering policy is set.

Change Tiering Policy window

Change Tiering Policy

Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter the new value. Click OK.

ID: 6

Tiering Policy: Level6
(Max. 32 characters)

Allocation Threshold:

Tier 1 Max: 100 %
(0-100)

Tier 1 Min: 0 %
(0-100)

Tier 3 Max: 100 %
(0-100)

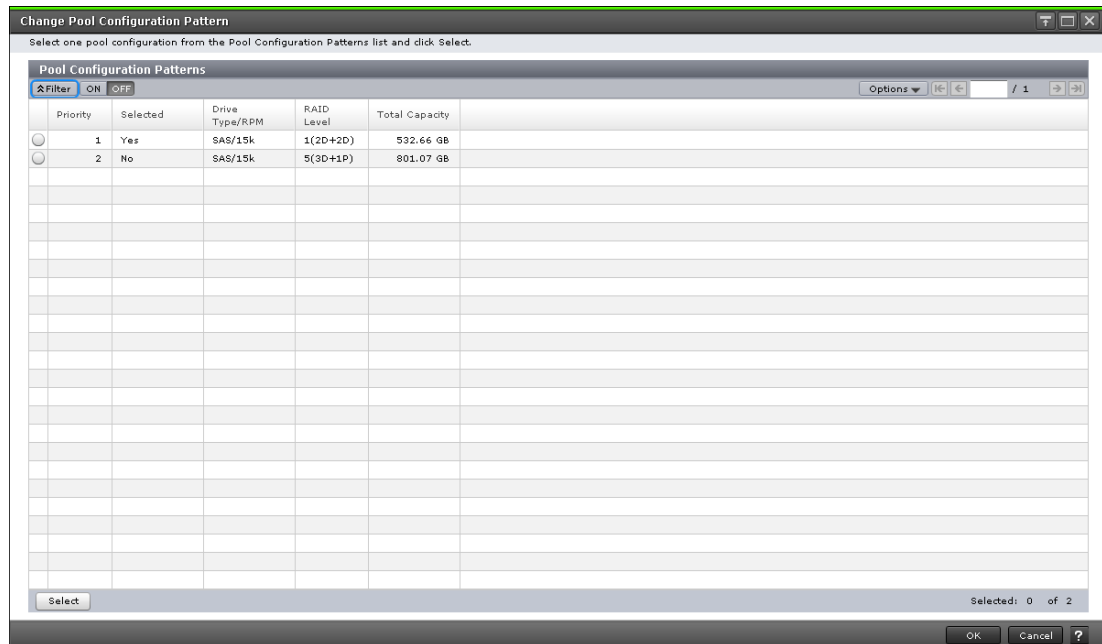
Tier 3 Min: 0 %
(0-100)

OK Cancel ?

Item	Description
ID	Displays the ID of the tiering policy.
Tiering Policy	Specify the tiering policy name. You can enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters. The name is case-sensitive. The following symbols cannot be used in the name: \ / : , ; * ? " < >
Allocation Threshold	Set the allocation thresholds for tier 1 and tier 3.
Tier1 Max(%)	Set the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity for the tier relocation from 0 (%) to 100 (%). The setting value is needed to satisfy either one of following conditions: Equal to Tier1 Min Larger than Tier1 Min
Tier1 Min(%)	Set the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 1 in the total capacity for the tier relocation from 0 (%) to 100 (%). The setting value is needed to satisfy either one of following conditions: Equal to Tier1 Max Smaller than Tier1 Max
Tier3 Max(%)	Set the maximum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity for the tier relocation from 0 (%) to 100 (%). The setting value is needed to satisfy either one of following conditions: Equal to Tier1 Min Larger than Tier1 Min
Tier3 Min(%)	Set the minimum percentage that is allocated to tier 3 in the total capacity for the tier relocation from 0 (%) to 100 (%). The setting value is needed to satisfy either one of following conditions: Equal to Tier1 Max Smaller than Tier1 Max
Note: The total of Tier1 Min and Tier3 Min must be 100(%) or less.	

Change Pool Configuration Pattern window

For Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pools

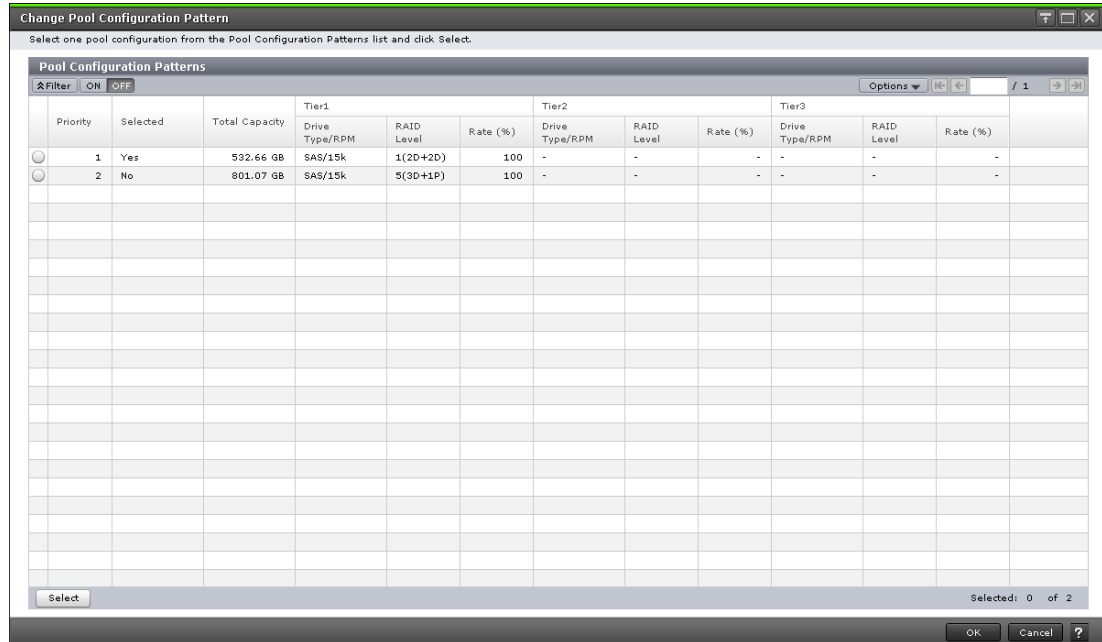


When you create a Dynamic Provisioning or Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe pool, the following table displays.

Pool Configuration Patterns table

Item	Description
Priority	Displays the priority of the pool configuration.
Selected	Displays whether the pool configuration is selected or not.
Total Capacity	Displays the total capacity of the pool.
Drive Type/RPM	Displays the data drive type and RPM of the pool.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level of the pool.
Select	If the pool configuration is changed, select a row in the Pool Configuration Patterns table. Then click this button. The selected pool configuration is reflected to the pool setting.

For Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pools



When you create a Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe pool, the following table displays.

Pool Configuration Patterns table

Item	Description
Priority	Displays the priority of the pool configuration.
Selected	Displays whether the pool configuration is selected or not.
Total Capacity	Displays the total capacity of the pool
Tier 1	Displays the tier 1 information. Drive Type/RPM: Displays the data drive type and RPM of pool-VOLs. RAID Level: Displays the RAID level of pool-VOLs. Rate (%): Displays the percentage of the tier 1 against the total capacity of the pool.
Tier 2	Displays the tier 2 information. Drive Type/RPM: Displays the data drive type and RPM of pool-VOLs. RAID Level: Displays the RAID level of pool-VOLs. Rate (%): Displays the percentage of the tier 2 against the total capacity of the pool.

Item	Description
Tier 3	Displays the tier 3 information. Drive Type/RPM: Displays the data drive type and RPM of pool-VOLs. RAID Level: Displays the RAID level of pool-VOLs. Rate (%): Displays the percentage of the tier 3 against the total capacity of the pool.
Select	If the pool configuration is changed, select a row in the Pool Configuration Patterns table. Then click this button. The selected pool configuration is reflected to the pool setting.

Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options window

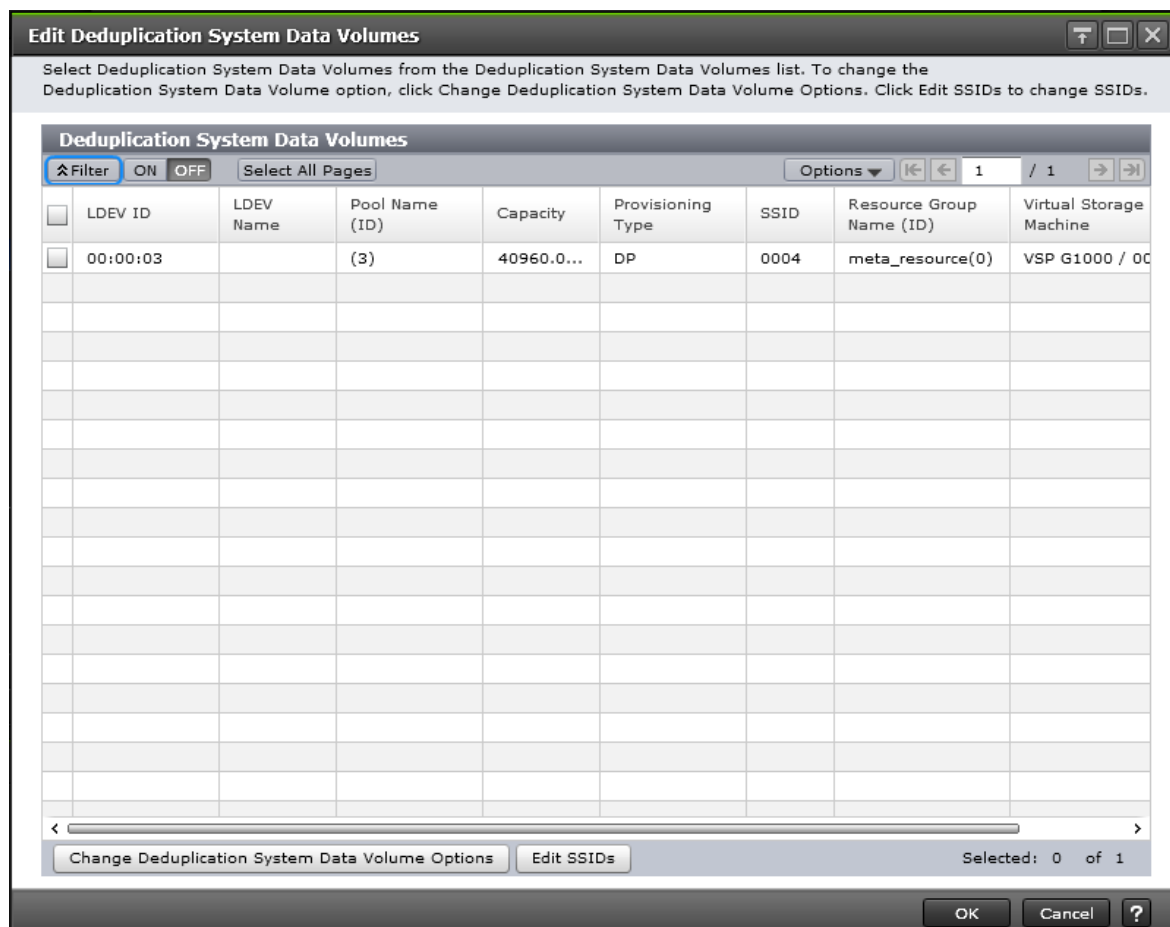
Use this window to change the options for a deduplication system data volume for a pool. To open this window, select the pool on the Pools window, click More Actions > Edit Pools to open the Edit Pools window, click Edit Deduplication System Data Volume to open the Edit Deduplication System Data Volume window, select the deduplication system data volume, and then click Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options.

Item	Description
Provisioning Type	Displays the provisioning type of the deduplication system data volume, which is Dynamic Provisioning.

Item	Description
Capacity	Displays 40 TB for the capacity of the deduplication system data volume.
LDEV Name	Specify the LDEV name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Prefix: Fixed character string. ▪ Initial Number: Initial number. Specify the initial number according to these examples. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3 ... 9). ▪ 08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10 ... 99). ▪ 23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25 ... 99). ▪ 098: Up to 902 numbers are added (098, 099, 100 ... 999).
Initial LDEV ID	Specify the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Assigns the ID at a certain interval starting with the ID you specify. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ LDKC: Specify the LDKC number. It is fixed to 00. ▪ CU: Specify the CU number. ▪ DEV: Specify the LDEV number. ▪ Interval: Specify the interval of the assigned LDEV ID. ▪ View LDEV IDs: Opens the View LDEV IDs window.

Edit Deduplication System Data Volume window

Use this window to edit a deduplication system data volume for a pool. To open this window, select the pool on the Pools window, click More Actions > Edit Pools to open the Edit Pools window, and then click Edit Deduplication System Data Volume.



Deduplication System Data Volume table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	Displays the LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays the LDEV name.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name, and the pool ID is displayed in parentheses.
Capacity	Displays the LDEV capacity.
Provisioning Type	Displays the type of the LDEV.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Displays the resource group names, and the IDs of the resource groups are displayed in parentheses.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV.

Item	Description
Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options	Opens the Change Deduplication System Data Volume Options window for the selected deduplication system data volume.

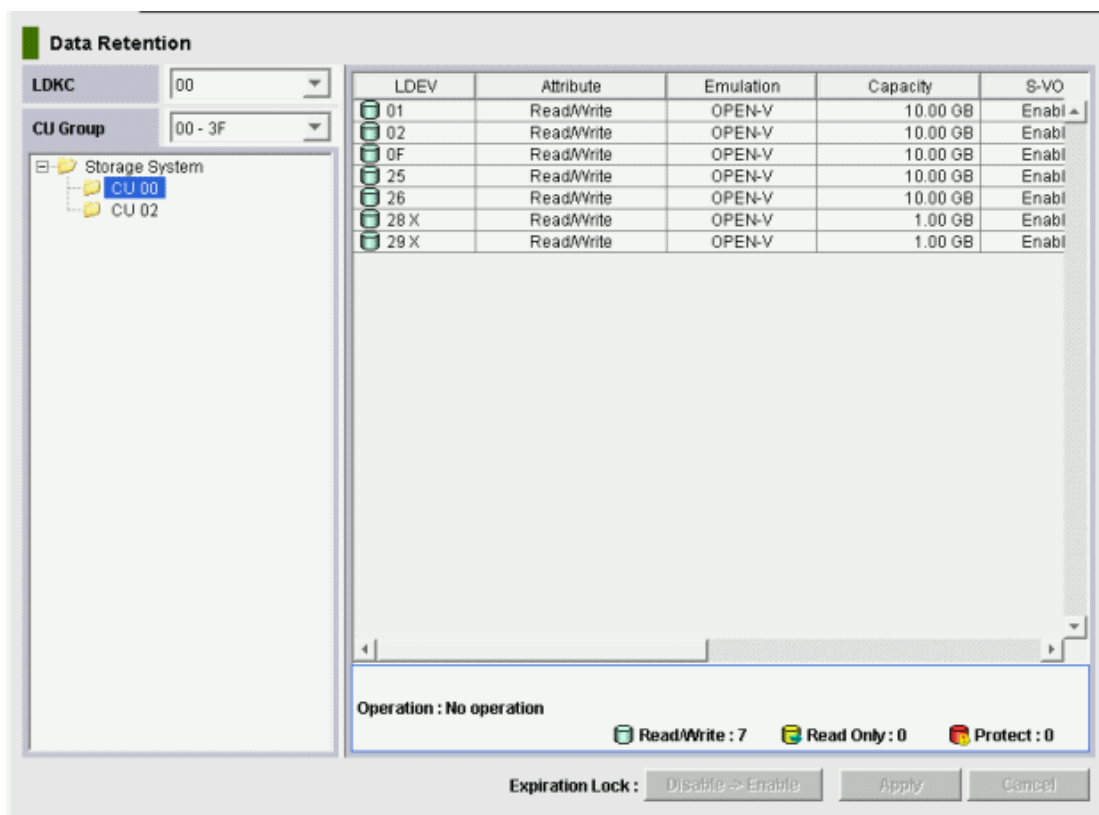
Appendix E: Data Retention Utility GUI reference

The Data Retention Utility windows in Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator display the Data Retention Utility information for the storage system and allow you to perform Data Retention Utility operations.

For general information about the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Data Retention window

Use the **Data Retention** window to assign an access attribute to open-system volumes.






Summary

Item	Description
LDKC	Select the LDKC that contains the desired CU groups.

Item	Description
CU Group	Select the CU group that contains the desired CUs from the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 00-3F: CUs from 00 to 3F appear in the tree. 40-7F: CUs from 40 to 7F appear in the tree. 80-BF: CUs from 80 to BF appear in the tree. C0-FE: CUs from C0 to FE appear in the tree.
Tree	A list of CUs. Selecting a CU provides the selected CU information in the volume list on the right of the tree. This tree appears only the CUs that include volumes to which access attributes can be actually set.
Volume list	Lists information about the CU selected in the tree. See the table below for details.
Expiration Lock	Enables or disables enhanced volume protection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disable > Enable: Indicates the expiration lock is disabled. You can change an access attribute to read/write when the retention term is over. Enable > Disable: Indicates the expiration lock is enabled. You cannot change an access attribute to read/write even when the retention term is over.
Apply	Applies settings to the storage system.
Cancel	Discards setting changes.

Volume list

The volume list provides information about access attributes that are assigned to volumes.

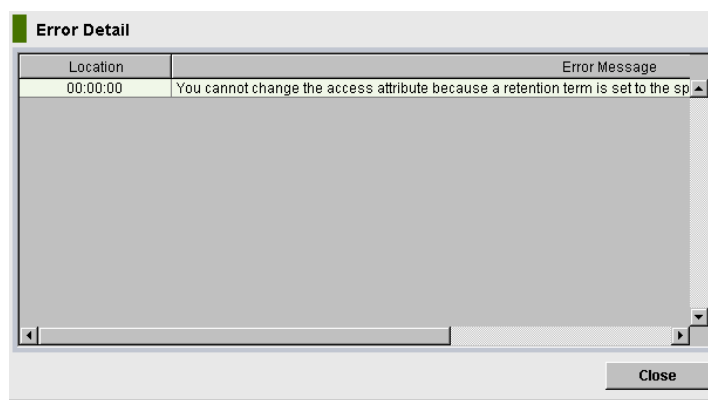
Item	Description
LDEV	LDEV number. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Read/write : Read-only : Protect

Item	Description
	<p>The symbol beside the LDEV number indicates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ #: an external volume ▪ A: LDEV of the ALU attribute. ▪ S: LDEV of the SLU attribute. ▪ V: a virtual volume ▪ D: Deduplication System Data volume ▪ X: a virtual volume used for Dynamic Provisioning
Attribute	<p>Access attribute assigned to this volume. These attributes can be assigned using the Command Control Interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Read/Write: Both read and writer operations are permitted on the logical volume. ▪ Read-only: Read operations are permitted on the logical volume. ▪ Protect: Neither read nor write operations are permitted.
Emulation	Volume emulation types.
Capacity	Capacity of each volume in GB to two decimal places.
S-VOL	Indicates whether the volume can be specified as a secondary volume (S-VOL). You can also use the CCI to specify whether each volume can be used as an S-VOL.
Reserved	<p>Indicates the method that can be used to make LU path and command device settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hyphen (-): Both CCI and Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator can be used to make LU path and command device settings. ▪ CCI: Only CCI can be used to make LU path and command device settings. Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator cannot be used to do so.
Retention Term	<p>Period (in days) when you are prohibited from changing access attribute to read/write. The retention term can be extended but cannot be shortened. During the retention term, you can change read-only to protect, or vice versa.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 500 days: Attempts to change access attribute to read/write are prohibited in the next 500 days. ▪ Unlimited: The retention term is extended with no limits. ▪ 0 days: You can change access attribute to read/write.

Item	Description
	Caution: In Data Retention Utility, you can increase the value for Retention Term, but cannot decrease the value.
Path	Number of LU paths.
Mode	<p>Indicates the mode that the CCI user assigns to the volume. You cannot use Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator to change modes. You must use the CCI to change modes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Zer: Zero Read Cap mode is assigned to the volume. If the Read Capacity command (which is a SCSI command) is issued to a volume in Zero Read Cap mode, it will be reported that the capacity of the volume is zero. ▪ Inv: Invisible mode is assigned to the volume. If the Inquiry command (which is a SCSI command) is issued to a volume in Invisible mode, it will be reported that the volume does not exist. Therefore, the hosts will be unable to recognize the volume. ▪ Zer/Inv. Both Zero Read Cap mode and Invisible mode are assigned to the volume. ▪ Hyphen (-): No mode is assigned by CCI to the volume.
Operation	<p>Target of the operation or the name of the operation. When no operation is performed, No Operation appears.</p> <p>Also shown are the volume icons and the total number of volumes with each access attribute.</p>

Error Detail dialog box

If an error occurs with Data Retention Utility, the **Error Detail** dialog box appears. The **Error Detail** dialog box displays error locations and error messages.



Items	Description
Location	Location where the error occurred. If an error relating to a volume occurred, the LDKC number, CU number, and LDEV number (volume number) are shown.
Error Message	Provides the full text of the error message. For details about the solution, see the <i>Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator Messages</i> .
Close	Closes the Error Detail window.

Appendix F: LUN Manager GUI reference

The LUN Manager windows in Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator display the LUN information for the storage system and allow you to configure and manage LUNs.

For general information about the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI, see the *System Administrator Guide*.

Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets window

Port ID	Type	Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI Target Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Number of LUNs	Authentication Method	Mutual CHAP	User Name	Number of Users	Resource Group Name (ID)
CL1-C	Fibre	#47	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL2-C	Fibre	#49	-	01 [(Deprecate...	Disabled	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL3-C	Fibre	#52	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL3-C	Fibre	SC-900_Nevilla...	-	DC [(Deprecate...	Disabled...	1	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL4-C	Fibre	test	-	01 [(Deprecate...	Disabled	1	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL4-C	Fibre	BC-900	-	DC [(Deprecate...	Disabled...	2	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL2-D	Fibre	SD-900	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL4-D	Fibre	ED-900	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL4-C	Fibre	AC-900	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...
CL4-D	Fibre	AC-900	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	-
CL4-C	Fibre	CD-900	-	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	0	0	-	-	-	-	meta_resource ...

Summary

Item	Description
Target	Total number of target ports.
RCU Target	Total number of RCU Target ports.
Initiator	Total number of Initiator ports.
External	Total number of External ports.
Total	Total number of ports.

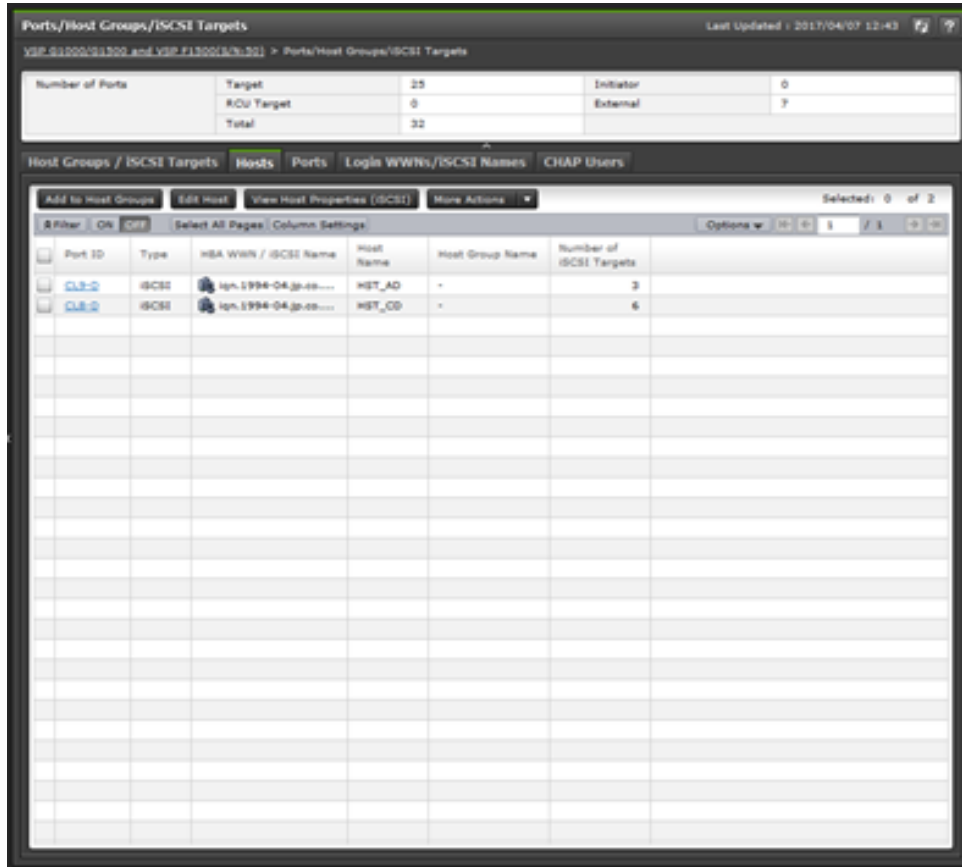
Host Groups / iSCSI Targets tab

This tab provides information about the host groups and iSCSI targets that are assigned to the logged-on user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port. Clicking a port ID opens Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs.
Type	Types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel ports ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI ports.
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	Icons and names of the host group or iSCSI target alias. Clicking a host group name or iSCSI target opens Port/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets: Hosts, LUNs, and Host Mode Options tabs.
Host Group ID / iSCSI Target ID ¹	Host group ID or iSCSI Target ID.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI Target name.
Host Mode	Host mode of the host group or iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts set to the relevant port.
Number of LUNs	Number of logical units.
ALUA Used ¹	Usage condition of ALUA. Yes: ALUA is used. No: ALUA is not used.
Asymmetric Access States ¹	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.
T10 PI Mode ¹	T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port. If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the host groups.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Create Host Groups	Opens the Create Host Groups window.
Create iSCSI Targets	Opens the Create iSCSI Targets window.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the Add LUN Paths window.
Add Hosts	Opens the Add Hosts window.
Delete Host Groups ²	Opens the Delete Host Groups window.
Delete iSCSI Targets ²	Opens the Delete iSCSI Targets window.
Edit Host Groups ²	Opens the Edit Host Groups window.
Edit iSCSI Targets ²	Opens the Edit iSCSI Targets window.
Create Alternative LUN Paths ²	Opens the Create Alternative LUN Paths window.
Add CHAP Users ²	Opens the Add CHAP Users window.
Remove CHAP Users ²	Opens the Remove CHAP Users window.
Remove Target CHAP Users ²	Opens the Remove Target CHAP Users window.
Edit Asymmetric Access States	Opens the Edit Asymmetric Access States window. For details, see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i> .
Export ²	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Hosts tab



This tab provides information about the HBA WWNs that are registered to the host groups or iSCSI targets assigned to the logged-on user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port. Clicking a port ID opens Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs.
Type	Types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fibre: Fibre Channel ports iSCSI: iSCSI ports
HBA WWN / iSCSI name	HBA WWNs/ iSCSI names and their icons.
Host Name	Name of hosts.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.
Add to Host Groups	Opens the Add to Host Groups window.

Item	Description
Edit Host	Opens the Edit Host window.
View Host Properties (iSCSI)	Opens the Host Properties window.
Remove Hosts (Fibre) ¹	Opens the Remove Hosts window.
Remove Hosts (iSCSI) ¹	Opens the Remove Hosts window.
Export ¹	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
Notes:	
1. Available when you click More Actions.	

Ports tab

The screenshot displays the 'Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets' window. At the top, a summary table shows the following data:

Number of Ports	Target	Initiator
	7	6
	RCU Target	External
	7	4
	Total	24

Below the summary table, the 'Ports' tab is selected. The main table lists 24 ports with the following columns: Port ID, Type, ISCSI Virtual Port Mode, WWN / iSCSI Name, IPv4 IP Address, IPv6 Mode, and Link Local Address. The table shows a mix of Fibre and iSCSI ports, with some iSCSI ports being disabled and others enabled.

Port ID	Type	ISCSI Virtual Port Mode	WWN / iSCSI Name	IPv4 IP Address	IPv6 Mode	Link Local Address
CL1-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001600	-	-	-
CL3-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001620	-	-	-
CL5-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001640	-	-	-
CL7-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001660	-	-	-
CL1-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001601	-	-	-
CL3-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001621	-	-	-
CL5-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001641	-	-	-
CL7-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001661	-	-	-
CL1-C	iSCSI	Disabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	192.168.0.17	Disabled	-
CL3-C	iSCSI	Disabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	192.168.0.18	Disabled	-
CL1-D	iSCSI	Disabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	192.168.0.21	Disabled	-
CL3-D	iSCSI	Disabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	192.168.0.22	Disabled	-
CL2-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001610	-	-	-
CL4-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001630	-	-	-
CL6-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001650	-	-	-
CL8-A	Fibre	-	50060E8007001670	-	-	-
CL2-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001611	-	-	-
CL4-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001631	-	-	-
CL6-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001651	-	-	-
CL8-B	Fibre	-	50060E8007001671	-	-	-
CL2-C	iSCSI	Enabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	-	-	-
CL4-C	iSCSI	Enabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	-	-	-
CL2-D	iSCSI	Enabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	-	-	-
CL4-D	iSCSI	Enabled	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.i.07...	-	-	-

This tab provides information about the ports assigned to the logged-on user.

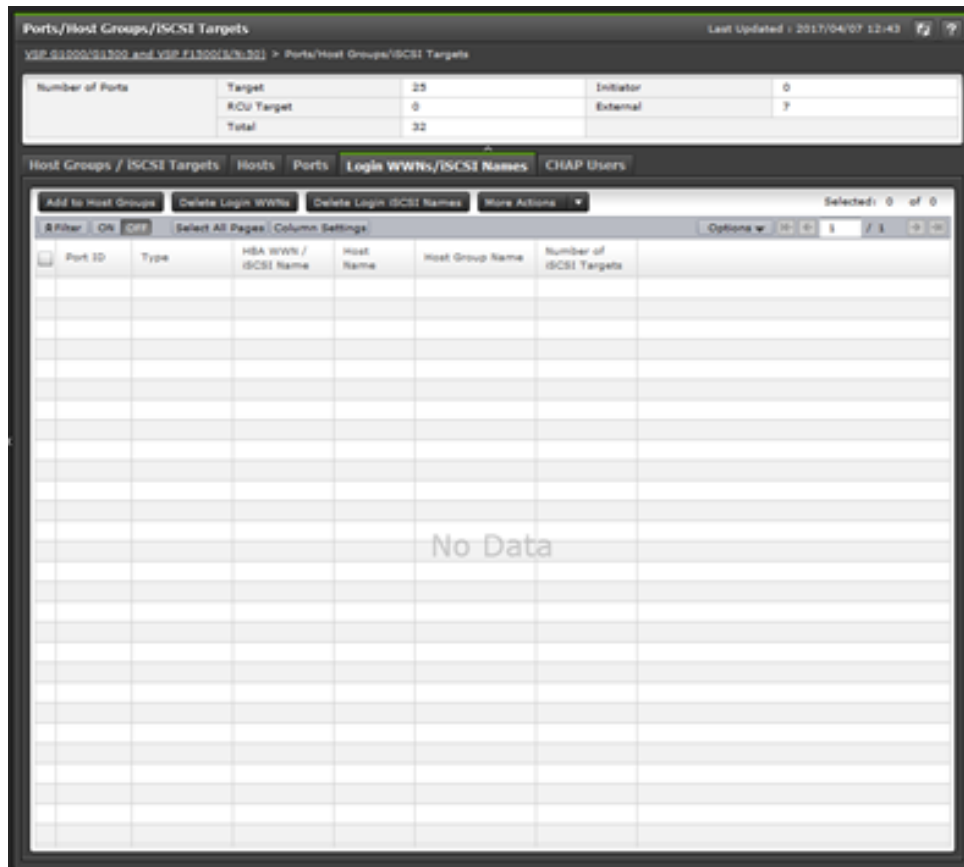
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port. Clicking a port ID opens Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs.
Type	Types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel ports. ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI ports.
Adapter Type	Adapter type of the port.
iSCSI Virtual Port Mode	Information about the setting of the iSCSI virtual port mode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port. ▪ Disabled: The iSCSI virtual port mode is disabled for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The port does not support the iSCSI virtual port mode.
WWN / iSCSI Name	WWN or iSCSI initiator name of the port.
IPv4	Information about the setting for IPv4: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IP Address: IP address for the port. ▪ Subnet Mask*: Subnet mask for the port. ▪ Default Gateway*: Default gateway for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
IPv6	Information about the setting for IPv6: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: IPv6 setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ Link Local Address: Link local address for the port. ▪ Global Address: Global address for the port. ▪ Global Address 2*: Global address for the port. ▪ Subnet Prefix*: Subnet prefix for the port address. ▪ Assigned Default Gateway*: Assigned default gateway address for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Speed	Data transfer speed for the selected Fibre Channel port in Gbps (gigabit per second).

Item	Description
	Valid speeds are 2, 4, 8, 10, or 16 Gbps. If Auto is set for the port speed, Auto (2, 4, 8, 10, or 16 Gbps) is displayed. The value enclosed in parentheses is defined by the storage system. A hyphen (-) appears in the parentheses when the connection is not in the linkup status.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Type	Type of the port.
Address (Loop ID)	Address of the port.
Fabric	Indicates whether a fabric switch is used.
Connection Type	Topology of the port.
TCP Port Number ¹	TCP port number. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Ethernet MTU Size(Byte)	<p>MTU size on Ethernet.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ MTU: Specified MTU size ▪ Linked MTU: Present MTU size for the data transfer ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
MAC Address ¹	MAC address.
Keep Alive Timer(sec.) ¹	Keep alive timer setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Selective ACK ¹	Selective ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Delayed ACK ¹	Delayed ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Maximum Window Size (KB) ¹	Maximum window size setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
iSNS Server ¹	<p>Information about the iSNS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: iSNS server setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ IP Address: IP address of the iSNS server. ▪ TCP Port Number: TCP port number of the iSNS server.

Item	Description
VLAN ¹	Information about VLAN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tagging Mode: Tagging mode setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ ID: VLAN identifier. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Authentication	Information about authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ CHAP User Name: CHAP user name of the port. ▪ Used: Shows whether the CHAP authentication is using the CHAP user. If Yes appears, the CHAP user is used. If No appears, the CHAP user is not used.
T10 PI Mode ¹	T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port. If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group names and IDS of the ports.
ENode MAC address ¹	The static MAC address assigned by the FCoE controller.
VLAN ID ¹	Unique identifier of the VLAN.
FPMA ¹	Dynamic MAC address assigned by the FCoE switch.
VP Index ¹	Management number of the FCoE switch.
VP Status ¹	Status of the virtual ports. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Link Down ▪ Link Up (Logged In) ▪ Link Up (Logged Out)
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Edit Ports	Opens the Edit Ports window.
Edit T10 PI Mode	Opens the Edit T10 PI Mode window.
Remove Port CHAP User	Opens the Remove Port CHAP User window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Item	Description
Notes:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> This item does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 	

Login WWNs / iSCSI Names tab



Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port. Clicking a port ID opens Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs.
Type	Types of ports: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fibre: Fibre Channel ports. iSCSI: iSCSI ports.
HBA WWN / iSCSI Name	HBA WWNs / iSCSI Names and their icons.
Host Name	Name of the host.

Item	Description
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.
Add to Host Groups	Opens the Add to Host Groups window.
Delete Login WWNs	Opens the Delete Login WWNs window.
Delete Login iSCSI Names	Opens the Delete Login iSCSI Names window.
View Login WWN Statuses ¹	Opens the View Login WWN Statuses window.
View Login iSCSI Name Statuses	Opens the View Login iSCSI Name Statuses window.
Export ¹	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Available when you click More Actions. 	

CHAP Users tab

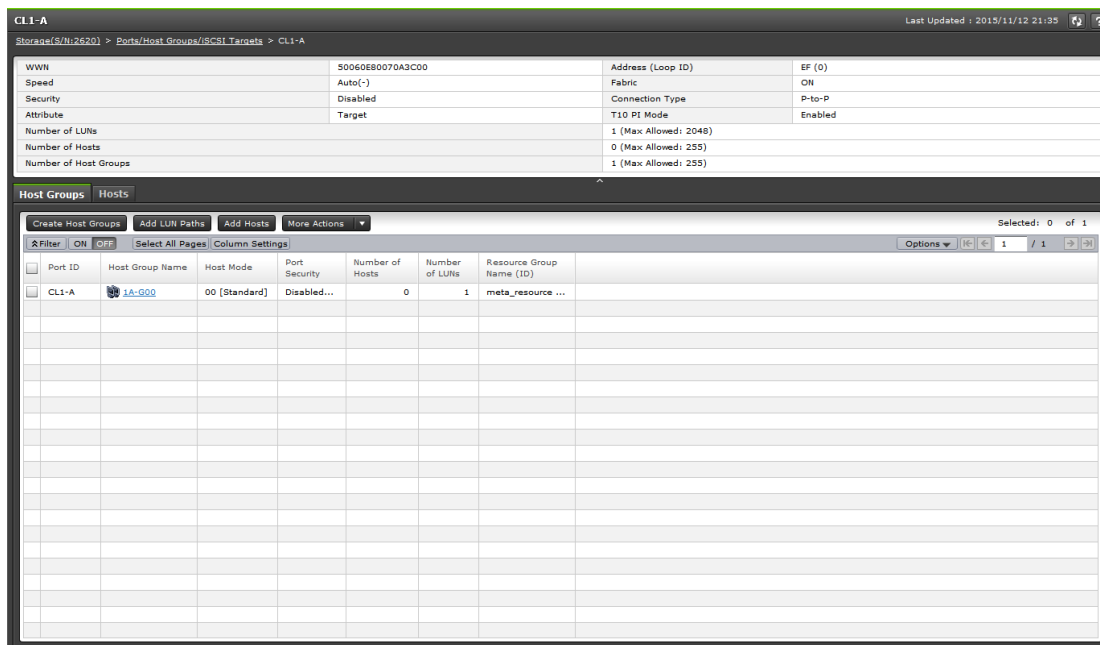
The screenshot shows the 'CHAP Users' tab in the LUN Manager GUI. At the top, there is a summary table with the following data:

Number of Ports	Target	25	Initiator	0
	R/O Target	0	External	7
	Total	22		

Below the summary table, there are tabs for 'Host Groups / iSCSI Targets', 'Hosts', 'Ports', 'Logix WWNs/iSCSI Names', and 'CHAP Users'. The 'CHAP Users' tab is active. It contains a table with the following columns: 'Port ID', 'User Name', and 'Number of iSCSI Targets'. The table is currently empty and displays 'No Data'.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	User name.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI Targets
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Edit CHAP User	Opens the Edit CHAP User window.
Remove CHAP Users	Opens the Remove CHAP Users window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Port/Host Groups: Host Groups and Hosts tabs (Fibre Channel)



Summary

Item	Description
WWN	WWN of the port.
Speed	Data transfer speed for the selected Fibre Channel port in the unit of Gbps (Gigabit per second). Valid speeds are 2, 4, 8, 10, or 16 Gbps. If Auto is set for the port speed, Auto (2, 4, 8, 10, or 16 Gbps) is displayed. The value enclosed in parentheses is defined by the storage system. A hyphen (-) is displayed in the parentheses when the connection is not in the linkup status.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Address (Loop ID)	Address of the selected port.
Fabric	Indicates whether a fabric switch is used.
Connection Type	Topology of the selected port.
Number of LUNs	Total number of logical units set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of logical units that can be registered to the port. When an initiator port or external port is selected, a hyphen (-) appears.
Number of Hosts	Total number of hosts set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of hosts that can be registered to the port. When an initiator port or external port is selected, a hyphen (-) appears.
Number of Host Groups	Total number of host groups set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of host groups that can be registered to the port. When an initiator port or external port is selected, the maximum number is not available.

Host Groups tab

This tab provides information about the host groups assigned to the logged-on user.



Caution: For the initiator port, only host group 0(zero) is displayed to enable you to set a host mode option.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Icons and names of host groups. Clicking a host group name opens Port/Host Groups: Hosts, LUNs, and Host Mode Options tabs.
Host Group ID ¹	Host group ID
Host Mode	Host mode of the host group.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.

Item	Description
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts in the host group.
Number of LUNs	Number of logical units in the host group.
ALUA Used	Usage condition of ALUA. Yes: ALUA is used. No: ALUA is not used.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Create Host Groups	Opens the Create Host Groups window.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the Add LUN Paths window.
Add Hosts	Opens the Add Hosts window.
Delete Host Groups ²	Opens the Delete Host Groups window.
Edit Host Groups ²	Opens the Edit Host Groups window.
Create Alternative LUN Paths ²	Opens the Create Alternative LUN Paths window.
Edit Asymmetric Access States	Opens the Edit Asymmetric Access States window.
Export ²	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Hosts tab

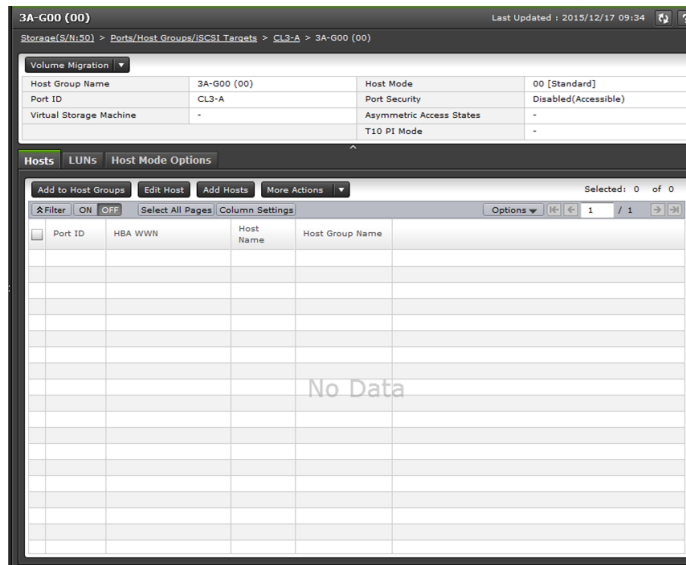
This tab provides information about the HBA WWNs that are registered to the host groups assigned to the logged-on user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	HBA WWNs and their icons.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Add to Host Groups	Opens the Add to Host Groups window.
Edit Host	Opens the Edit Host window.
Remove Hosts	Opens the Remove Hosts window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Ports / Host Groups / iSCSI Targets: Hosts, LUNs, Host Mode Options, and CHAP Users tabs

Fibre Channel

The **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window displays the following information on the Hosts, LUNs, and Host Mode Options tabs when a Fibre Channel port is selected.



Summary

Item	Description
Volume Migration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ View Migration Plans: Opens the View Migration Plans window. ▪ View Histories: Opens the View Histories window.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Mode	Host mode of the host group.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has a host group.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI Mode	<p>T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Hosts tab

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	HBA WWNs and their icons.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Add to Host Groups	Opens the Add to Host Groups window.
Add Hosts	Opens the Add Hosts window
Edit Host	Opens the Edit Host window.
Remove Hosts ¹	Opens the Remove Hosts window.

Item	Description
Export ¹	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Note:</p> <p>1. Available when you click More Actions.</p>	

LUNs tab

This tab provides information about the LU paths that correspond to the LDEV assigned to the logged-in user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
LUN ID	Icons and identifiers of the logical unit. Clicking a LUN ID opens the LUN Properties window.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Clicking an LDEV ID takes you to the LDEV Properties window.
LDEV Name	Name of each LDEV.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).

Item	Description
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Displays the logical volume capacity. ▪ Reserved: Displays the reserved capacity of the V-VOL. <p>The displayed value of Reserved might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reserved displays the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). ▪ The mapped capacity of V-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning includes the capacity of control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB). <p>If used capacity is referenced during I/O or copy processing by software such as ShadowImage or Universal Replicator, the used capacity displayed might be different from the actual capacity even if the full allocation is enabled on the V-VOL. This is caused by a gap between the times that information is gathered about the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity.</p>

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. The Used value displayed might be larger than the Total value displayed of due to following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of the control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). ▪ The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (Requires a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled includes the control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB) and the capacity for one page. ▪ Used(%): For the entire capacity of V-VOL, this item displays percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Used(%) is obtained by dividing the total of the user data and control information by the user area capacity. The control information (required 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB) is also included in DP-VOL. If the ratio of the control information of DP-VOL is high relative to the user area, Used(%) may exceed 100 %.
Used Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tier1: Displays the used capacity of tier 1. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ Tier2: Displays the used capacity of tier 2. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , or if tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ Tier3: Displays the used capacity of tier 3. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , or if tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
	The reserved capacity is not included in the used capacity for each tier of the V-VOL. Therefore, the Used value in the Capacity column may not correspond with the Used Capacity value.
Capacity Saving	Capacity saving setting of the LDEV: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used.
Capacity Saving Status	Status of the capacity saving function: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Deleting Volume: The deletion of DP-VOL whose capacity saving function is Enabled is being performed. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Deduplication Data ¹	Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication. <p>If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0.</p> <p>When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.</p>

Item	Description
Provisioning Type	Displays the type for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
CLPR	Cache logical partition number, displayed as <i>ID:CLPR</i> .
Full Allocation	Displays the status of the full allocation setting in a pool that is associated with the V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Pages are reserved. ▪ Disable: Pages are not reserved.
Tiering Policy	Displays the tiering policy name and ID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All(0): Policy specified when all tiers in the pool are used. ▪ Level1(1) to Level31(31): Policies selected from Level1 to Level31 are set to the V-VOL. From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear. ▪ - (hyphen): The logical volume is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
New Page Assignment Tier	Displays the new page assignment tier of the tiering policy. - (hyphen): The logical volume is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Tier Relocation	Displays whether tier relocation is set to Enable or Disable. If the logical volume is not to the V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume for which the attribute is not defined.

Item	Description
Access Attribute ¹	Displays the access attribute of the LDEV.
Encryption ¹	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning, the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.
Number of Paths	Displays the total number of relevant paths and alternative paths.
ALUA Mode	<p>Information about the ALUA mode.</p> <p>Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA.</p> <p>Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.</p>
T10 PI ¹	<p>Displays the LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Data Direct Mapped LDEV	<p>Displays the LDEV ID of the pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. Click the LDEV ID to open the LDEV Properties window.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) is displayed if the data direct mapping attribute is disabled.</p>

Item	Description
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute¹: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for the LDEV, this column is blank.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the Add LUN Paths window.
Copy LUN Paths	Opens the Copy LUN Path window.
Edit Command Devices	Opens the Edit Command Devices window.
View Host-Reserved LUNs ²	Displays the Host-Reserved LUNs window.
Delete LUN Paths ²	Opens the Delete LUN Paths window.
Edit UUIDs ²	Opens the Edit UUIDs window.
Delete UUIDs	Opens the Delete UUIDs window.
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Edit LDEVs	Opens the Edit LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Shred LDEVs	Opens the Shred LDEVs window. For details, see <i>Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide</i> .
Block LDEVs	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.

Item	Description
Assign MP Unit	Opens the Assign MP Unit window.
Reclaim Zero Pages	Opens the Reclaim Zero Pages window.
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages	Opens the Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window.
Expand V-VOLs	Opens the Expand V-VOL window.
View Tier Properties	Opens the View Tier Properties window.
Migrate Volumes	Opens the Migrate Volumes window.
Force Delete Pairs (TC/UR/GAD Pairs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TC Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (TC Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ UR Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (UR Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ GAD Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (GAD Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i>.
View ALUs / SLUs ²	Open the ALUs / SLUs window.
Unbind SLUs	Opens the Unbind SLUs window.
Export ²	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Host Mode Options tab

Item	Description
Mode No.	Number of the host mode option.
Option Description	Description of the host mode option.
Status	Setting (enable or disable) of the host mode option.

Item	Description
Edit Host Groups	Opens the Edit Host Group window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

iSCSI

The **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** window displays the following information on the Hosts, LUNs, Host Mode Options, and CHAP Users tabs when an iSCSI port is selected.

The screenshot shows the iSCSI Targets configuration window for port 1C-G00 (00). The top section displays configuration details for the selected port:

iSCSI Target Alias	1C-G00 (00)	Host Mode	01 [VMware]
iSCSI Target Name	iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.t.00000...	Port Security	Enabled
Port ID	CL1-C	Authentication	Method: None
Virtual Storage Machine	VSP G1000 / 00420	Mutual CHAP	Disabled
		User Name	

Below this, the **Hosts** tab is active, showing a table of hosts:

Port ID	HBA iSCSI Name	Host Name	iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI Target Name
<input type="checkbox"/> CL1-C	iqn.1998...	1C-G254	1C-G00 (00)	iqn.1994-0...

Summary

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.

Item	Description
Host Mode	Host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled. ▪ User name

Host tab (iSCSI)

This tab provides information about the iSCSI Names that are registered to the iSCSI targets assigned to the logged-on user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Names and their icons
Host Name	Name of hosts.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Edit Host	Opens the Edit Host window.
Add Hosts	Opens the Add Hosts window.
Host Mode	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Remove Hosts	Opens the Remove Hosts window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

LUNs tab (iSCSI)

This tab provides information about the LU paths that correspond to the LDEV assigned to the logged-in user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
LUN ID	Icons and identifiers of the logical unit. Click a LUN ID to open the LUN Properties window.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV. Click an LDEV ID to open the LDEV Properties window.
LDEV Name	Name of each LDEV.
Pool Name (ID)	Displays the pool name and pool ID. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Total: Displays the logical volume capacity. ▪ Reserved: Displays the reserved capacity of the V-VOL. The displayed value of Reserved might be larger than the displayed value of Total due to following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reserved displays the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). ▪ The mapped capacity of V-VOL for Dynamic Provisioning includes the capacity of control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB). <p>If used capacity is referenced during I/O or copy processing by software such as ShadowImage or Universal Replicator, the used capacity displayed might be different from the actual capacity even if the full allocation is enabled on the V-VOL. This is caused by a gap between the times that information is gathered about the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity.</p>

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used: Displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. The Used value displayed might be larger than the Total value displayed of due to following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Used displays the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity that is rounded up on each page. ▪ If the emulation type is 3390-A, the mapped capacity of V-VOL includes the capacity of the control cylinders (7 Cyl is required per 1,113 Cyl). ▪ The mapped capacity of DP-VOL includes the capacity of the control information (Requires a maximum of 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB). If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled includes the control information (168 MB is required per 3,145,548 MB) and the capacity for one page. ▪ Used(%): For the entire capacity of V-VOL, this item displays percentages of the sum of the mapped capacity and the reserved capacity. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Used(%) is obtained by dividing the total of the user data and control information by the user area capacity. The control information (required 168 MB per 3,145,548 MB) is also included in DP-VOL. If the ratio of the control information of DP-VOL is high relative to the user area, Used(%) may exceed 100 %.
Used Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tier1: Displays the used capacity of tier 1. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ Tier2: Displays the used capacity of tier 2. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , or if tier 2 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed. ▪ Tier3: Displays the used capacity of tier 3. If the logical volume is not the volume other than V-VOL , or if tier 3 does not exist, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
	The reserved capacity is not included in the used capacity for each tier of the V-VOL. Therefore, the Used value in the Capacity column may not correspond with the Used Capacity value.
Capacity Saving	Capacity saving setting of the LDEV: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used.
Capacity Saving Status	Status of the capacity saving function: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Deleting Volume: The deletion of DP-VOL whose capacity saving function is Enabled is being performed. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Deduplication Data ¹	Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication. If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0. When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.

Item	Description
Provisioning Type	Displays the type for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
CLPR	Cache logical partition number, displayed as <i>ID:CLPR</i> .
Full Allocation	Displays the status of the full allocation setting in a pool that is associated with the V-VOL. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Pages are reserved. ▪ Disable: Pages are not reserved.
Tiering Policy	Displays the tiering policy name and ID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All(0): Policy specified when all tiers in the pool are used. ▪ Level1(1) to Level31(31): Policies selected from Level1 to Level31 are set to the V-VOL. From Level 6 (6) to Level 31 (31), the names of tiering policies can be changed. If these names have changed, the new names appear. ▪ - (hyphen): The logical volume is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
New Page Assignment Tier	Displays the new page assignment tier of the tiering policy. - (hyphen): The logical volume is not the Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe V-VOL.
Tier Relocation	Displays whether tier relocation is set to Enable or Disable. If the logical volume is not to the V-VOL of Dynamic Tiering or Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.

Item	Description
Access Attribute ¹	Displays the access attribute of the LDEV.
Encryption ¹	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning , the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.
Number of Paths	Displays the total number of relevant paths and alternative paths.
Data Direct Mapped LDEV	<p>Displays LDEV ID of pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. Click the LDEV ID to open the LDEV Properties window.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) is displayed if the data direct mapping attribute is disabled.</p>

Item	Description
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number¹: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID¹: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name¹: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID¹: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute¹: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for the LDEV, this column is blank.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the Add LUN Paths window.
Copy LUN Paths	Opens the Copy LUN Path window.
Edit Command Devices	Opens the Edit Command Devices window.
View Host-Reserved LUNs ²	Displays the Host-Reserved LUNs window.
Delete LUN Paths ²	Opens the Delete LUN Paths window.
Edit UUIDs ²	Opens the Edit UUIDs window.
Delete UUIDs	Opens the Delete UUIDs window.
Create LDEVs	Opens the Create LDEVs window.
Edit LDEVs	Opens the Edit LDEVs window.
Format LDEVs	Opens the Format LDEVs window.
Shred LDEVs	Opens the Shred LDEVs window. For details, see <i>Hitachi Volume Shredder User Guide</i> .
Block LDEVs	Opens the Block LDEVs window.
Restore LDEVs	Opens the Restore LDEVs window.

Item	Description
Assign MP Blade Unit	Opens the Assign MP Unit window.
Reclaim Zero Pages	Opens the Reclaim Zero Pages window.
Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages	Opens the Stop Reclaiming Zero Pages window.
Expand V-VOLs	Opens the Expand V-VOL window.
View Tier Properties	Opens the View Tier Properties window.
Migrate Volumes	Opens the Migrate Volumes window.
Force Delete Pairs (TC/UR/GAD Pairs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TC Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (TC Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi TrueCopy® for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ UR Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (UR Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator User Guide</i> or <i>Hitachi Universal Replicator for Mainframe User Guide</i>. ▪ GAD Pairs: Opens the Force Delete Pairs (GAD Pairs) window. For details see the <i>Global-Active Device User Guide</i>.
View ALUs / SLUs ²	Open the ALUs / SLUs window.
Unbind SLUs	Opens the Unbind SLUs window.
Export ²	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option. 2. Available when you click More Actions. 	

Host Mode Options tab (iSCSI)

Item	Description
Mode No.	Number of the host mode option.
Option Description	Description of the host mode option.
Status	Setting (enable or disable) of the host mode option.

Item	Description
Edit iSCSI Targets	Opens the Edit iSCSI Targets window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

CHAP Users tab

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	User name. Click a user name to open the CHAP User Properties window.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI Targets
Edit CHAP User	Opens the Edit CHAP User window.
Remove CHAP Users	Opens the Remove CHAP Users window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Summary

Item	Description
IPv4	Information about the setting for IPv4: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IP Address: IP address for the port. ▪ Subnet Mask: Subnet mask for the port. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
IPv6	Information about the setting for IPv6: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: IPv6 setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ Link Local Address: Link local address for the port. ▪ Global Address: Global address for the port. ▪ Global Address 2: Global address for the port. ▪ Assigned Default Gateway: Assigned default gateway address for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
iSCSI name	iSCSI name of the port.
Speed	Data transfer speed.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port.
TCP Port Number	TCP port number. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Ethernet MTU Size	MTU size on Ethernet. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
MAC Address	MAC address.
Keep Alive Timer	Keep alive timer setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.

Item	Description
Selective ACK	Selective ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Delayed ACK	Delayed ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Maximum Window Size	Maximum window size setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
iSNS Server	<p>Information about the iSNS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: iSNS server setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ IP Address: IP address of the iSNS server. ▪ TCP Port Number: TCP port number of the iSNS server.
VLAN	<p>Information about VLAN:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tagging Mode: Tagging mode setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ ID: VLAN identifier. ▪ - (hyphen): The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
iSCSI Virtual Port Mode	<p>Information about the setting of the iSCSI virtual port mode for a port:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port. ▪ Disabled: The iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port. ▪ - (hyphen): The port does not support the iSCSI virtual port mode.
CHAP User Name	Information about the CHAP user name.
Number of LUNs	Total number of logical units set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of logical units that can be registered to the port.

Item	Description
Number of Hosts	Total number of hosts set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of hosts that can be registered to the port.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Total number of iSCSI targets set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of iSCSI targets that can be registered to the port.
Number of CHAP Users	Total number of CHAP users set to the relevant port, and the maximum number of CHAP users that can be registered to the port.
View Port Properties	Opens the Port Properties window.

iSCSI Targets tab

This tab provides information about the host groups that are assigned to the logged-on user.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	Icons and names of the iSCSI target alias. Clicking an iSCSI target alias opens Ports/ Host Groups/iSCSI Targets: Hosts, LUNs, and Host Mode Options tabs.
iSCSI Target ID ¹	iSCSI target ID.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	Host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts set to the relevant port.
Number of LUNs	Number of logical units.

Item	Description
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name ▪ Number of Users
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the iSCSI target.
Virtual Storage Machine ¹	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the iSCSI target.
Create iSCSI Targets	Opens the Create iSCSI Targets window.
Add LUN Paths	Opens the Add LUN Paths window.
Add Hosts	Opens the Add Hosts window.
Delete iSCSI Targets ²	Opens the Delete iSCSI Targets window.
Edit iSCSI Targets ²	Opens the Edit iSCSI Targets window.
Create Alternative LUN Paths ²	Opens the Create Alternative LUN Paths window.
Add CHAP Users ²	Opens the Add CHAP Users window.
Remove Target CHAP Users ²	Opens the Remove Target CHAP Users window.
Export ²	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.
<p>Notes:</p> <p>¹ Does not appear by default. To display this item, change the Column Settings of the table option.</p> <p>² Appears when you click More Actions.</p>	

Hosts tab

This tab provides information about the iSCSI Names that are registered to the iSCSI targets assigned to the logged-on user.

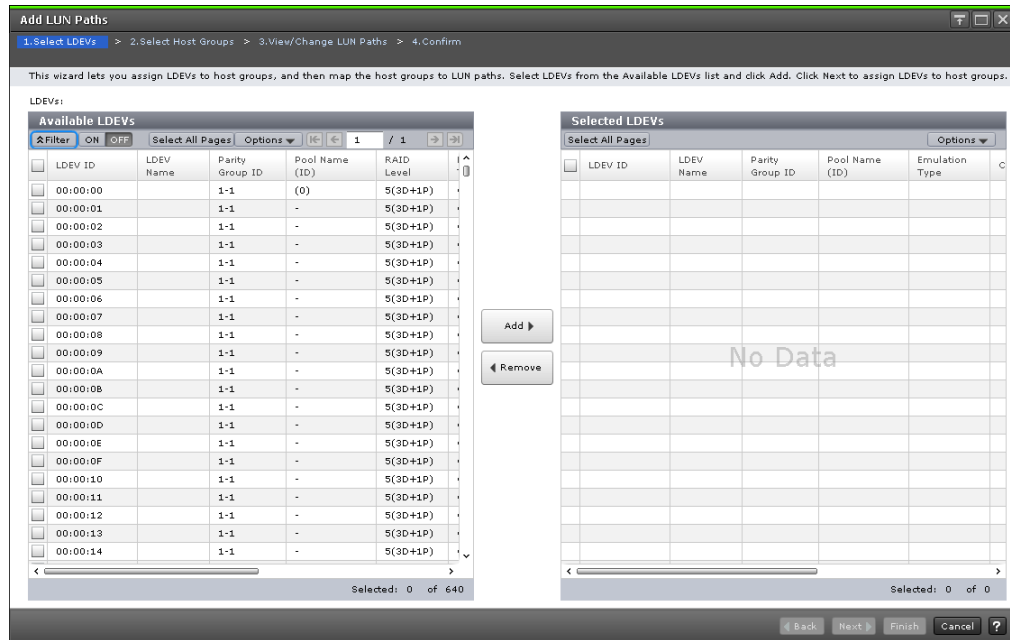
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Names and their icons.
Host Name	Name of hosts.
Edit Host	Opens the Edit Host window.
View Host Properties	Opens the Host Properties window
Remove Hosts	Opens the Remove Hosts window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

CHAP Users

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	User name. Clicking a user name opens the CHAP User Properties window.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI Targets
Edit CHAP User	Opens the Edit CHAP User window.
Remove CHAP Users	Opens the Remove CHAP Users window.
Export	Opens a window where you can export configuration information listed in the table to a file that can be used for multiple purposes, such as backup or reporting.

Add LUN Paths wizard

Select LDEVs window



Available LDEVs table

The screenshot shows the 'Available LDEVs' table with the following data:

LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level
00:00:00		1-1	(0)	5(3D+1P)
00:00:01		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:02		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:03		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:04		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:05		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:06		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:07		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:08		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:09		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0A		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0B		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0C		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0D		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0E		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:0F		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:10		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:11		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:12		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:13		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)
00:00:14		1-1	-	5(3D+1P)

The table is titled 'Available LDEVs' and includes a filter button and navigation controls. An 'Add' button and a 'Remove' button are visible to the right of the table.

This table lists logical volumes for which LU paths can be established. Only the LDEVs available to the logged-on user are available.

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier. If the LDEV is not used as a pool-VOL, a hyphen (-) appears.
RAID Level	Displays the RAID level. If multiple RAID levels exist in a pool, Mixed appears in this field.
Emulation Type	Emulation type for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
T10 PI	The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the LDEV.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV.
Add	Adds logical volumes selected from the Available LDEVs table to the Selected LDEVs table.
Remove	Removes logical volumes from the Selected LDEVs table.

Selected LDEVs table

Selected LDEVs					
Select All Pages					
<input type="checkbox"/>	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	Emulation Type
No Data					

Selected: 0 of 0

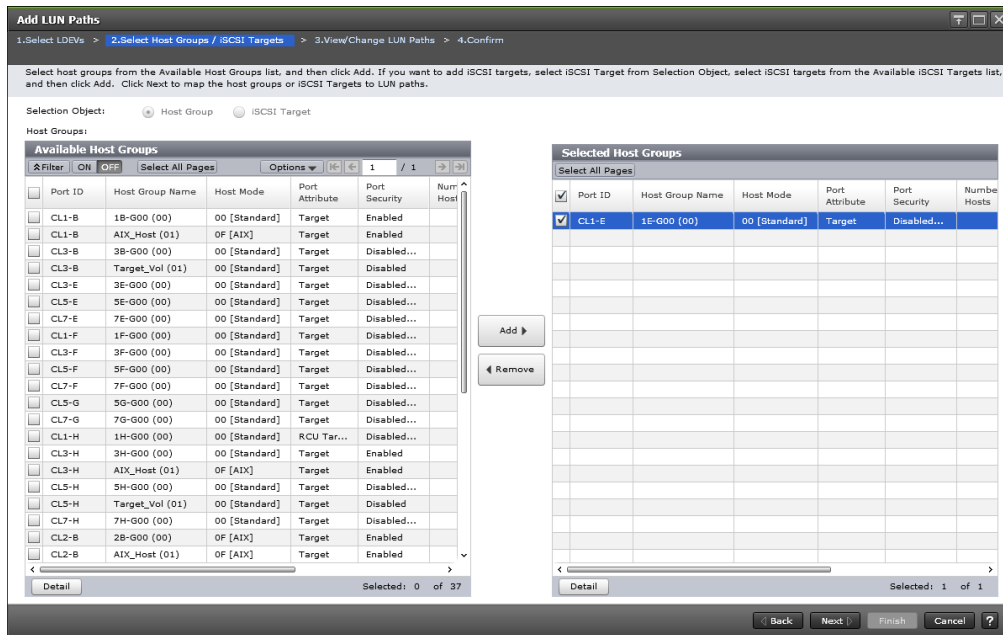
Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool name and pool identifier. If the LDEV is not used as a pool-VOL, a hyphen (-) appears.
Emulation Type	Emulation type for each logical volume (or logical device).

Item	Description
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. ▪ Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
T10 PI	The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the LDEV.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV.

Select Host Groups/iSCSI Targets window

Fibre Channel

Select host groups from the Available Host Groups list to add to LUN paths.



Selection Object

Item	Description
Selection Object	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Host Group: Select to add LUN paths to host groups. ▪ iSCSI target: Select to add LUN paths to iSCSI targets.

Available Host Groups table

Selection Object: Host Group iSCSI Target

Host Groups:

Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Num Hosts
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-B	1B-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-B	AIX_Host (01)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-B	3B-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-B	Target_Vol (01)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-E	3E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-E	5E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-E	7E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-F	1F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-F	3F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-F	5F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-F	7F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-G	5G-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-G	7G-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-H	1H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	RCU Tar...	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-H	3H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-H	AIX_Host (01)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-H	5H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-H	Target_Vol (01)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-H	7H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-B	2B-G00 (00)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-B	AIX_Host (01)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled

Buttons: Add, Remove

Selected: 0 of 37

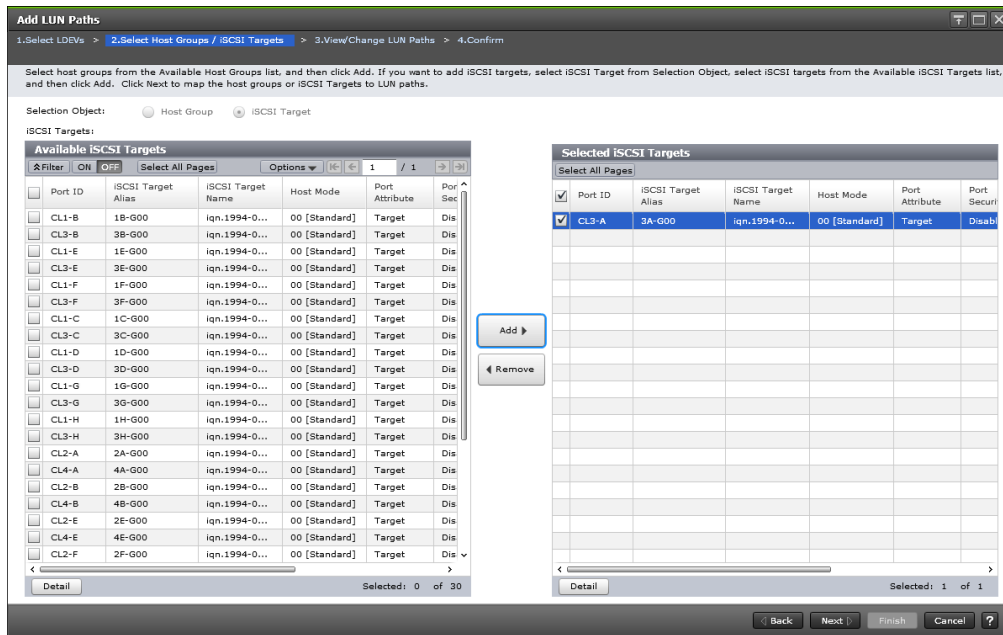
This table lists host groups for which LU paths can be established. Only the host groups assigned to the logged-on user are available.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	<p>Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI Mode	<p>The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the host group.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

iSCSI

Select host groups from the Available iSCSI Targets list to add to LUN paths.

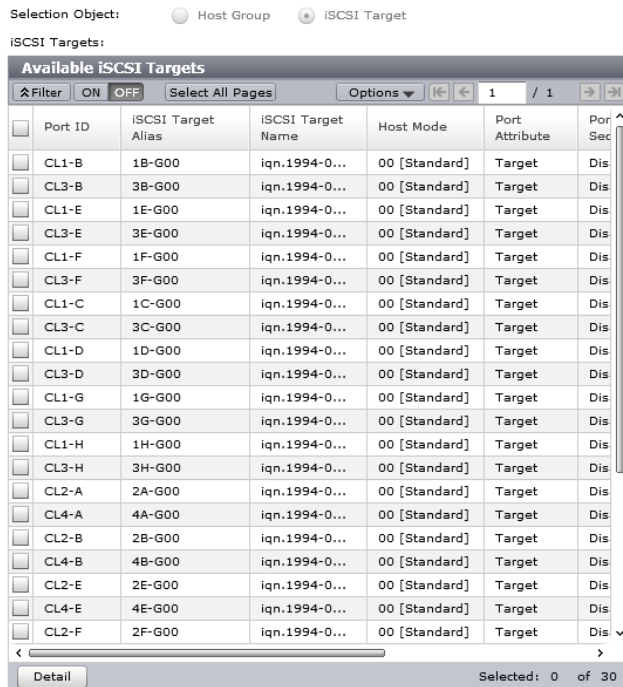


Selection Object

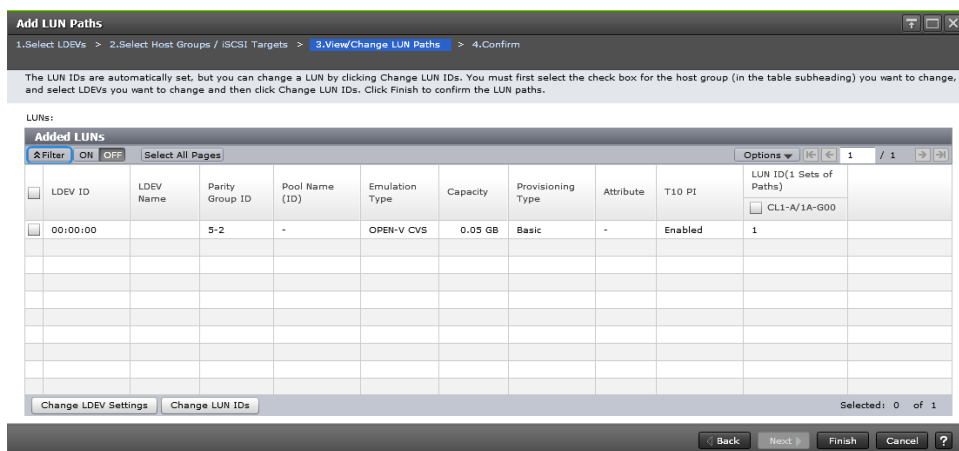
Item	Description
Selection Object	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Host Group: Select to add LUN paths to host groups. iSCSI target: Select to add LUN paths to iSCSI targets.

Available iSCSI Targets table

This table lists iSCSI targets for which LU paths can be established. Only the iSCSI targets assigned to the logged-on user are available.



Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target ID	iSCSI target ID.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	Host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts set to the relevant port.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the iSCSI target.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the port.
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.
Add	Adds host groups selected from the Available iSCSI Targets table to the Selected iSCSI Targets table.
Remove	Removes the selected host groups from the Selected iSCSI Targets table.



Added LUNs table

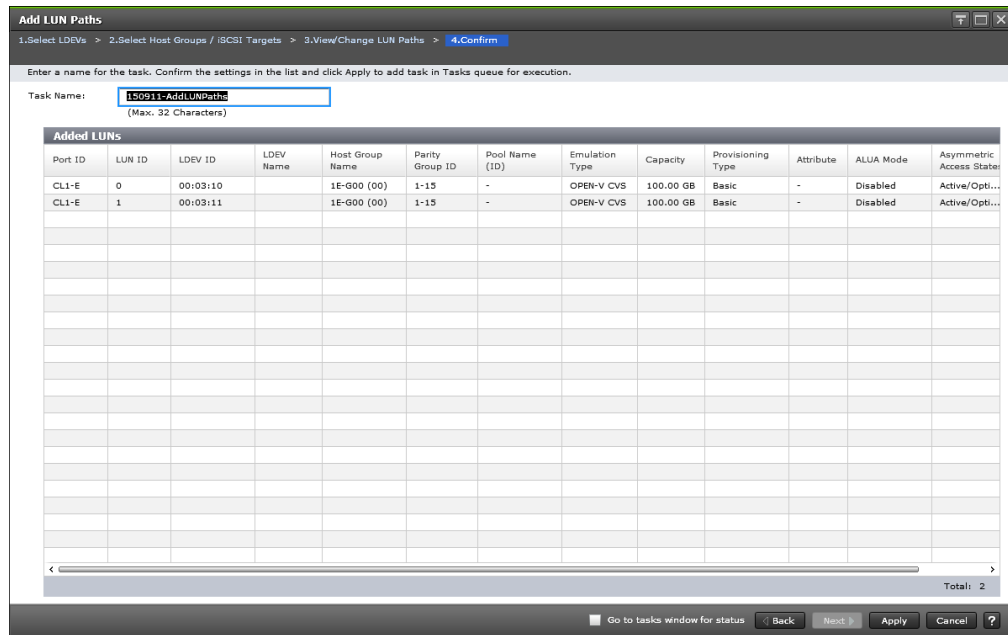
Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool names and pool identifiers. If the LDEV is not used as a pool-VOL, a hyphen (-) appears.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type of the logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
T10 PI	<p>The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
LUN ID (<i>number-of-LUNs</i>) Sets of Paths)	Number of assigned LUNs.
<i>port-ID/ host-group-name (or iSCSI target name)</i>	Name of the port and the host group (or iSCSI target name) of assigned LUNs. This item appears according to the number of assigned LUNs.
Change LDEV Settings	To change the LDEV name setting, select an LDEV and then click this button.
Change LUN IDs	To change the LUN setting, select the check box in the table column of <i>port-ID/host-group-name</i> , select the target LDEV, and then click this button.

Add LUN Paths confirmation window

Fibre Channel

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



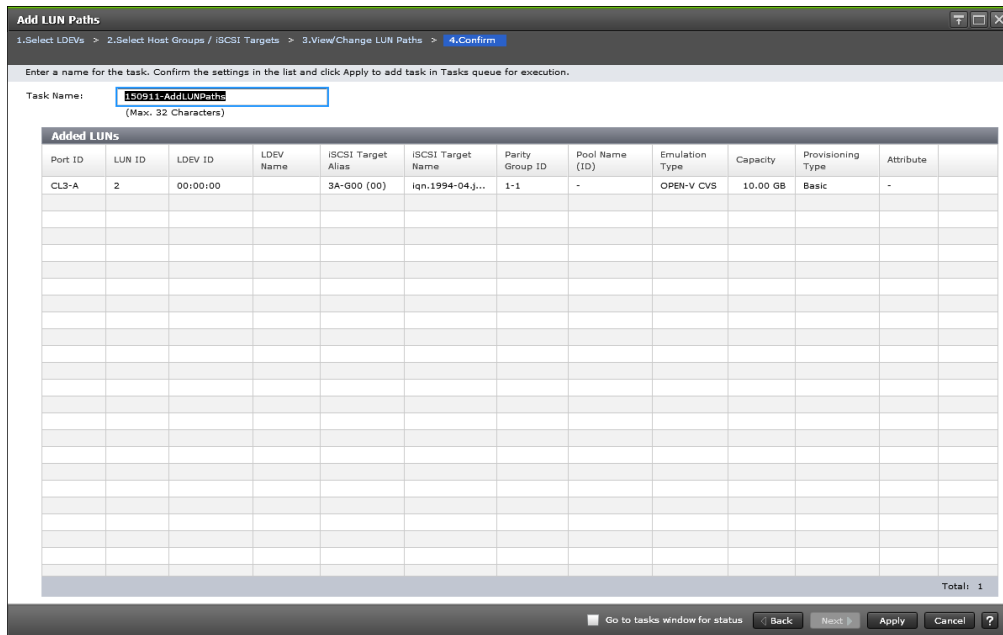
Added LUNs table

Item	Description
Port ID	Name of the port.
LUN ID	Identifier of LUN.
LDEV ID	Identifier of the LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool names and pool identifiers. If the LDEV is not used as a pool-VOL, a hyphen (-) appears.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning types for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.

Item	Description
Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.
T10 PI	The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
LUN ID (<i>number-of-LUNs</i>) Sets of Paths)	Number of assigned LUNs.
<i>port-ID/ host-group-name (or iSCSI target name)</i>	Name of the port and the host group (or iSCSI target name) of assigned LUNs. This item appears according to the number of assigned LUNs.

iSCSI

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Item	Description
Port ID	Name of the port.
LUN ID	Identifier of LUN.
LDEV ID	Identifier of the LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
iSCSI Target Alias	Name of the iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	Name of the iSCSI target.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Pool Name (ID)	Pool names and pool identifiers. If the LDEV is not used as a pool-VOL, a hyphen (-) appears.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning types for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.

Item	Description
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Command Device: Command device. Remote Command Device: Remote command device. Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
T10 PI	<p>The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>

Create Host Groups wizard

Create Host Groups window

Create Host Groups

1. Create Host Groups > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you create host groups. To view all host mode options, click Options. Click Finish to confirm the creation, or click Next if you want to add LUN paths. When you change the Host Mode, all of the Host Mode Options will be set to default.

Host Group Name: (Max. 64 characters)

Resource Group Name (ID):

Host Mode:

[Host Mode Options](#)

Hosts:

Available Hosts

Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-A	0123456789012345	1A-G00 (00)

Add New Host Selected: 0 of 1

Ports:

Available Ports

Port ID	Attribute	Security	T10 PI Mode	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CL1-A	Target	Disabled	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-A	Target	Disabled	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-A	Target	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-A	Target	Disabled	Disabled

Selected: 1 of 29

Selected Host Groups

Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CL1-A	Host (01)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled

Detail Remove Selected: 1 of 1

Next Task Option : Continue to Add LUN Paths

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

Item	Description
Host Group Name	Enter the name of the host group. As a host group name, you can use single-byte ASCII characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) up to 64 characters. You cannot use the following symbols: \ / : , ; * ? " < > You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host group name.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Select the resource group in which the host group is created. If Any is selected, among all ports being allocated to the user, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table. If other than Any is selected, among ports assigned to the selected resource group, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table.
Host Mode	Select the host mode from the list.
Add	Adds the settings to the Selected Host Groups table.

Available Hosts table

Host Group Name: (Max. 64 characters)

Resource Group Name (ID):

Host Mode:

[Host Mode Options](#)

Hosts:

Available Hosts				
Filter	ON	OFF	Select All Pages	Options
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-A	0123456789012345		1A-G00 (00)

Add ▶

Ports:

Available Ports				
Filter	ON	OFF	Select All Pages	Options
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port ID	Attribute	Security	T10 PI Mode
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CL1-A	Target	Disabled	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-A	Target	Disabled	Enabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-A	Target	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-A	Target	Disabled	Disabled

This table lists information about the registered hosts.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
New Host	Indicates whether this is a new host. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: The host is newly added and has never been connected via a cable to any port in the storage system. ▪ No: The host has been connected via a cable to another port.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Add New Host	Adds a new host. Or, select host bus adapters and then click this button to assign a nickname to the host bus adapter.

Available Ports table

This table lists the registered ports.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).

Item	Description
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the host group.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the host group.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.
Remove	Removes the selected host groups from the Selected Host Groups table.

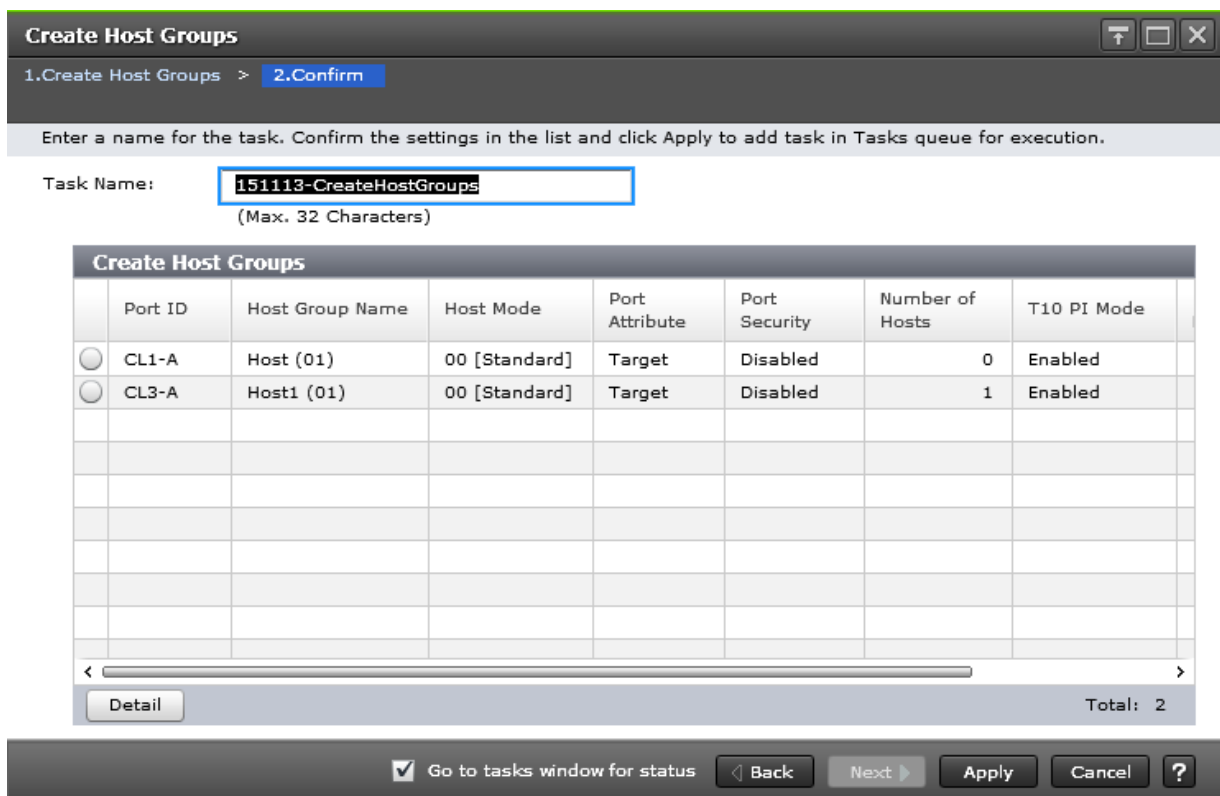
Next Task Option

Click Next to go to the task setting window.

Create Host Groups confirmation window



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, and then click Help.



Create Host Groups table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.

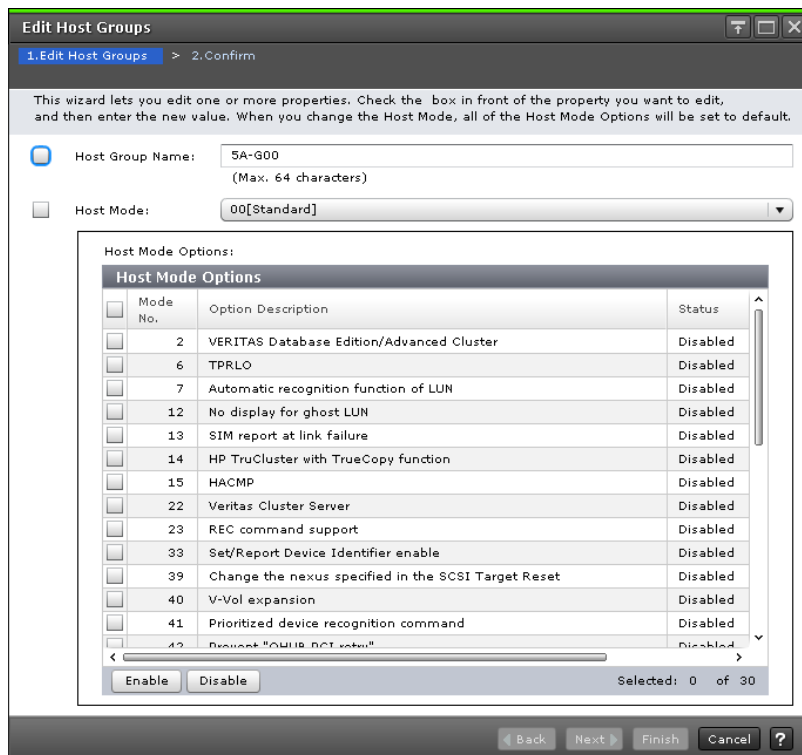
Item	Description
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the host group.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the host group.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

Edit Host Groups wizard

Edit Host Groups window

Use this window to edit host group properties for selected host groups. Properties include host group name, host mode, or host mode options.

When you select multiple host groups to which different host modes are defined, if the host group assigned to an initiator port is included, you cannot finish the Edit Host Groups operation.



Item	Description
Host Group name	Specify the name of the host group. Host group name can be up to 64 single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols). You cannot use the following symbols: \ / : , ; * ? " < > You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host group name. If a host group assigned to an initiator port is included in the specified host groups, this item is unavailable.
Host Mode	Select the host mode from the list. If a host group assigned to an initiator port is included in the specified host groups, this item is unavailable.

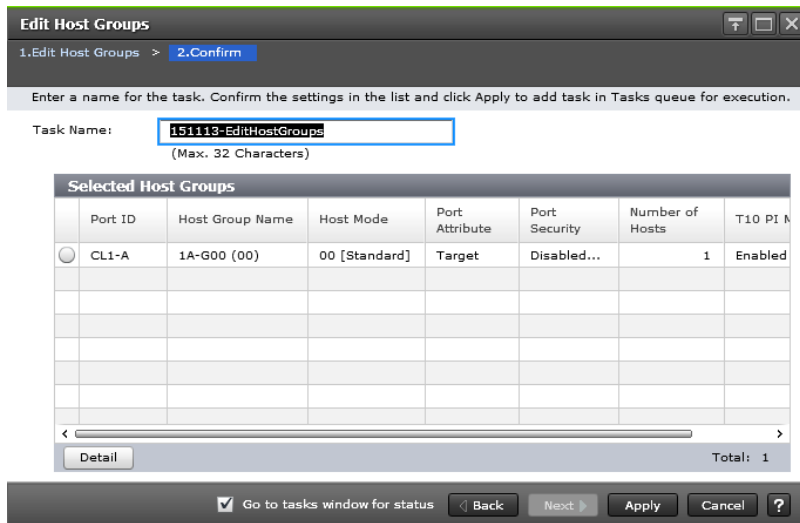
Host Mode Options table

To set the host mode option, select a host mode option, and then click Enable. If you do not need a host mode option, select an unnecessary host mode option, and then click Disable.

Item	Description
Mode No.	Number identifier of the host mode option.
Option Description	Description of the host mode option.
Status	Indicates the current status setting (Enabled or Disabled) of the host mode option on this host group.
Enable	Enables the host mode option.
Disable	Disables the host mode option.

Edit Host Groups confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

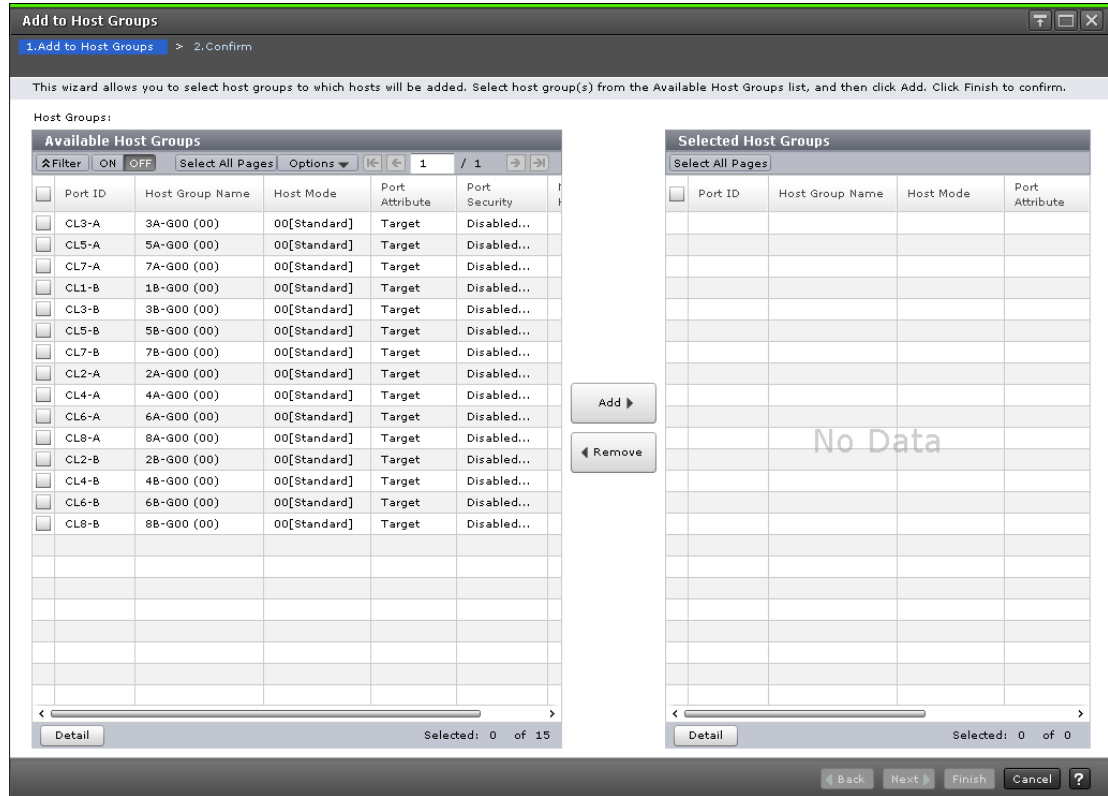


Selected Host Groups table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

Add to Host Groups wizard (when specific host is selected)

Add to Host Groups window



Available Host Groups table

This table lists host groups in which selected hosts can be registered. Only the host groups assigned to the logged-on user are available.

Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-A	3A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-A	5A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-A	7A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-B	1B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-B	3B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-B	5B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-B	7B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-A	2A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-A	4A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL6-A	6A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL8-A	8A-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-B	2B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-B	4B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL6-B	6B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL8-B	8B-G00 (00)	00[Standard]	Target	Disabled...

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

Item	Description
Add	Adds host groups selected from the Available Host Groups table to the Selected Host Groups table.
Remove	Removes the selected host groups from the Selected Host Groups table.

Selected Host Groups table

This table lists the selected host groups.

Selected Host Groups				
Select All Pages				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute
No Data				

Selected: 0 of 0

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

Add to Host Groups confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the lists and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Selected Hosts	
HBA WWN	Host Name
0123456789012345	
Total: 1	

Selected Host Groups						
Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Number of Hosts	T10 PI Mode
CL3-A	3A-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	1	Enabled
Total: 1						

Go to tasks window for status

Selected Hosts table

This table lists the hosts selected to be added to a host group.

Item	Description
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.

Selected Host Groups table

A list of host groups to which hosts are registered.

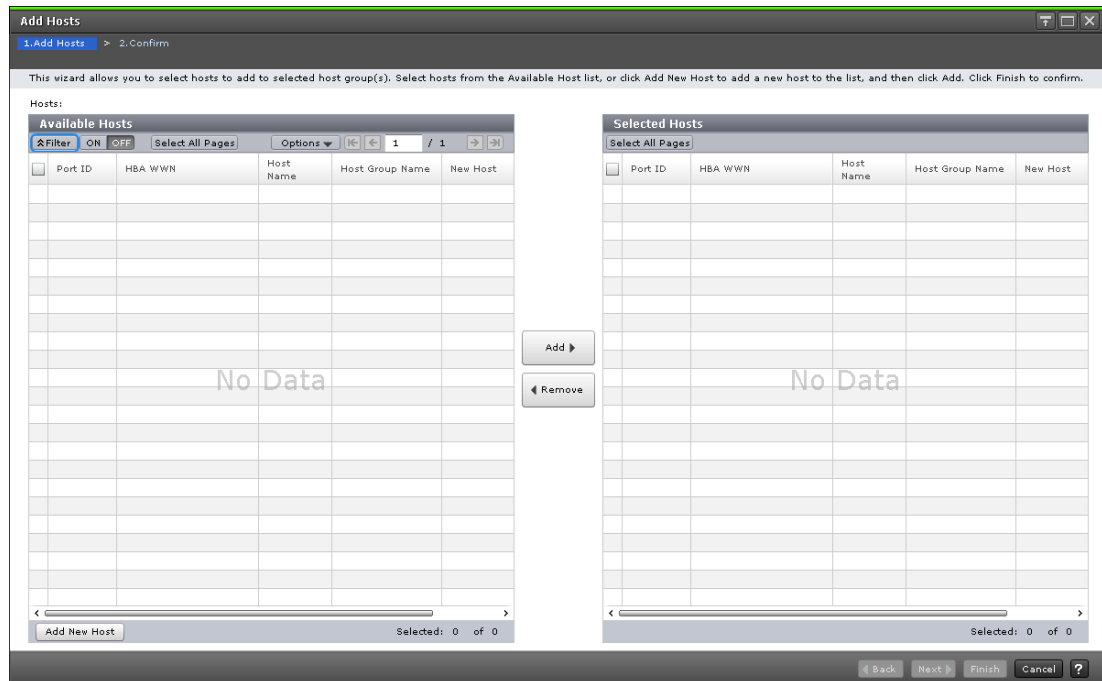
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Add Hosts wizard (when specific hosts group is selected)

Add Hosts window

Fibre Channel

The **Add Hosts** window displays the following information when a host group on a Fibre Channel port is selected.



Available Hosts table (Fibre Channel)

Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name	New Host
No Data				

This table lists the hosts that can be registered in the selected host group.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
New Host	Indicates whether this is a newly added host. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes: The host is newly added and has never been connected via a cable to any port in the storage system. No: The host has been connected via a cable to another port.
Add New Host	Adds a new host. Note that Port ID and Host Group Name will be blank after a new host is added.
Add	Adds hosts selected from the Available Hosts table to the Selected Hosts table.
Remove	Removes hosts from the Selected Hosts table.

Selected Hosts table (Fibre Channel)

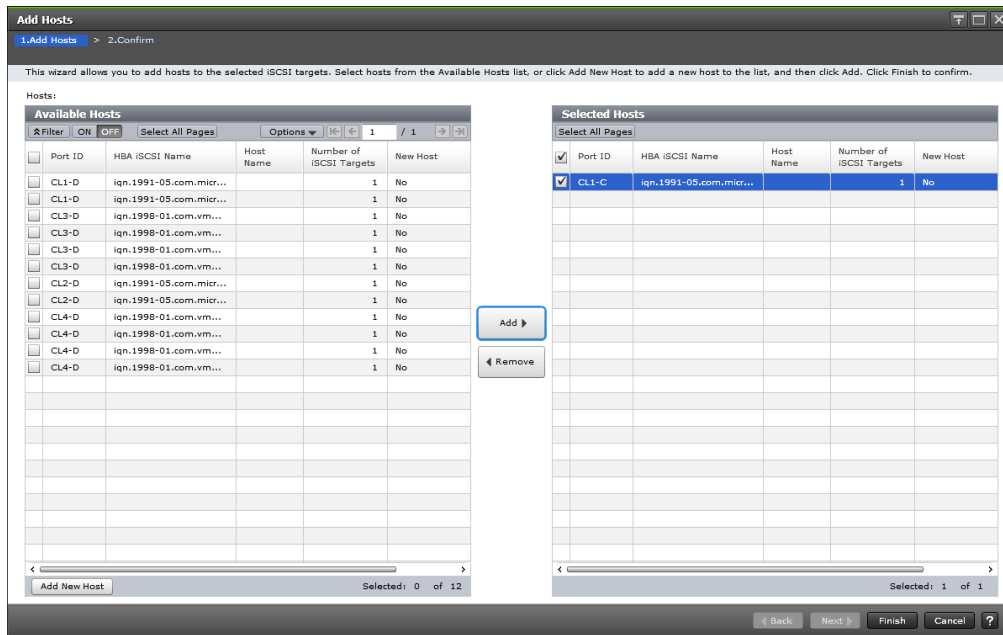
This table lists hosts selected from the Available Hosts table.

Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name	New Host
No Data				

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port. This field is blank for the host created by clicking Add New Host.
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group. Note that this field is blank for the host created by clicking Add New Host.
New Host	Indicates whether this is a newly added host. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Yes: The host is newly added and has never been connected via a cable to any port in the storage system. ▪ No: The host has been connected via a cable to another port.

iSCSI

The **Add Hosts** window displays the following information when a host group on an iSCSI port is selected.



Available Hosts table (iSCSI)

Hosts:

Port ID	HBA iSCSI Name	Host Name	Number of iSCSI Targets	New Host
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-D	iqn.1991-05.com.micr...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-D	iqn.1991-05.com.micr...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-D	iqn.1991-05.com.micr...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-D	iqn.1991-05.com.micr...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-D	iqn.1998-01.com.vm...	1	No

Buttons: Add ►, ◀ Remove

This table lists the hosts that can be registered in the selected iSCSI target.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Name of the port.

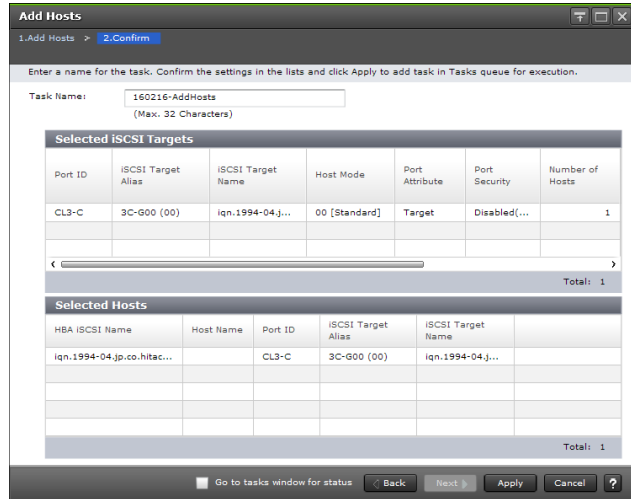
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Selected Hosts table (Fibre Channel)

This table contains a list of added host groups.

Item	Description
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.

iSCSI



Selected iSCSI Targets table (iSCSI)

This table lists the selected iSCSI targets.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled User name Number of users

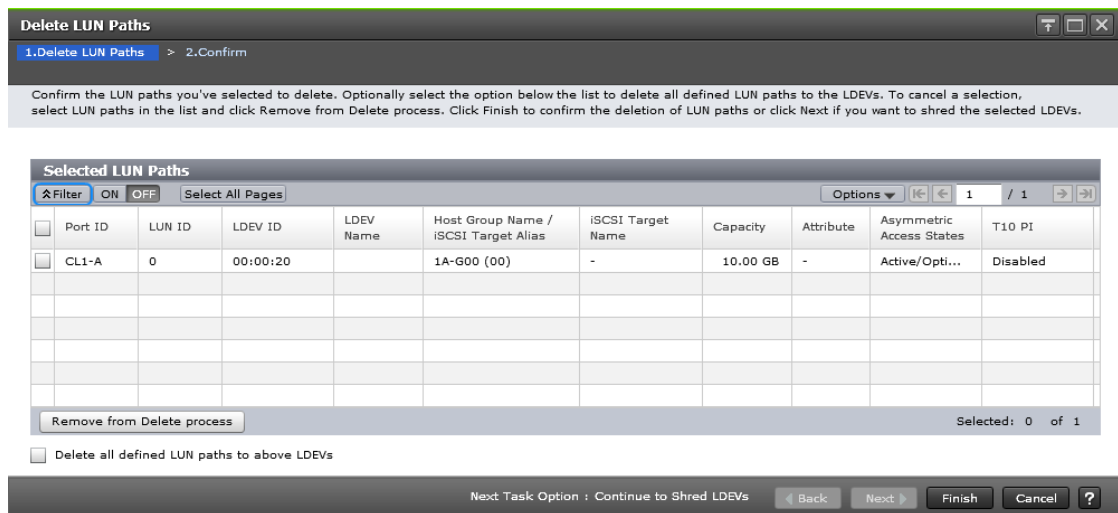
Selected Hosts table (iSCSI)

This table contains a list of added host groups.

Item	Description
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI name of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Port ID	Port ID
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias
iSCSI target Name	iSCSI target name

Delete LUN Paths wizard

Delete LUN Paths window



Selected LUN Paths table

This table provides information about the selected LUN paths.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
LUN ID	Identifier of the selected LUN paths.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.

Item	Description
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	Name of the host group or iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Attribute	<p>Displays the attribute of the LDEV.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV of the data direct mapping attribute. ▪ Hyphen (-): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI	<p>The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Remove from Delete process	Removes LUN paths from the Selected LUN Paths table.
Delete all defined LUN paths to above LDEVs	<p>Removes LUN paths from the Selected LUN Paths table.</p> <p>When this check box is selected, the host groups of all the alternate paths in the LDEV displayed in the Selected LUNs table must be assigned to the Storage Administrator group permitted to manage them.</p>

Next Task Option

Click Next to go to the task setting window.

Item	Description
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI	<p>The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, and then click Help.

Edit Host wizard

Use this wizard to edit host parameters.



Caution: In one host, if the setting operations are performed with two times or more to edit many setting items, wait until the primary task applies then perform the secondary operation. If the secondary operation is performed while being applying of the primary task, the primary task is canceled and the secondary task is applied to the storage system.

Edit Host window

Fibre Channel

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Host' dialog box with the following content:

Edit Host [Close] [Maximize] [Help]

1. Edit Host > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit one or more properties. Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter the new value.

HBA WWN: (16 Characters)

Host Name: (Max. 64 characters, or blank)

Apply same settings to the HBA WWN in all ports.

[Back] [Next] [Finish] [Cancel] [?]

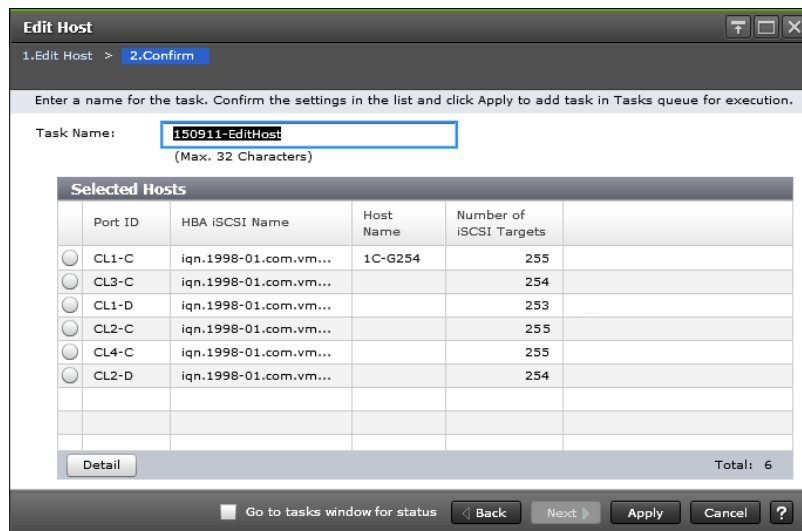
For Fibre Channel Ports

Item	Description
HBA WWN	Specify the WWN of the port in 16 digits of hexadecimal numbers.
Host Name	Specify the host name. Host name can be up to 64 single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols). You cannot use the following symbols: \ / : , ; * ? " < > You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host name. A host name is case-sensitive.
Apply same settings to the HBA WWN in all ports	If this check box is selected, the changes made in this dialog box will also affect other ports.

iSCSI

For iSCSI Ports

Item	Description
HBA iSCSI Name	<p>Specify the WWN of the port in 16 digits of hexadecimal numbers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> iqn or eui: Select the format of the iSCSI name. Text box: Specify the iSCSI name. <p>For the iqn format, an iSCSI name takes up to 219 single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols). You cannot use the following symbols: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , / ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { } ~</p> <p>For the eui format, an iSCSI name takes fixed to 16 alpha-numerals.</p>
Host Name	<p>Specify the host name.</p> <p>Host name can be up to 32 single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols).</p> <p>You cannot use the following symbols: \ / : , ; * ? " < > </p> <p>You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host name. A host name is case-sensitive.</p>
Apply same settings to the HBA iSCSI name in all ports.	<p>If this check box is selected, the changes made in this dialog box will also affect other ports.</p>



Selected Hosts table (iSCSI ports)

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Name of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.
Detail	Details about the selected host.

Edit Ports wizard

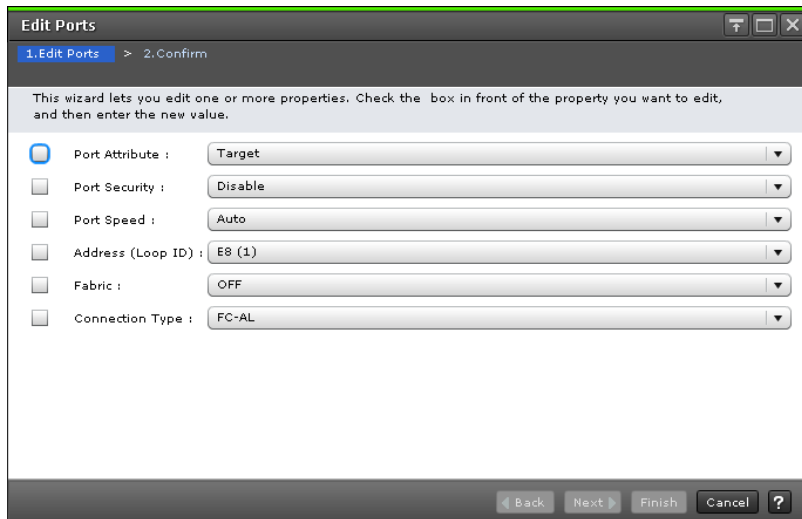
Use this wizard to edit port parameters.



Caution: In one port, if the setting operations are performed with two times or more to edit many setting items, wait until the primary task applies then perform the secondary operation. If the secondary operation is performed while being applying of the primary task, the primary task is canceled and the secondary task is applied to the storage system.

Edit Ports window

Fibre Channel

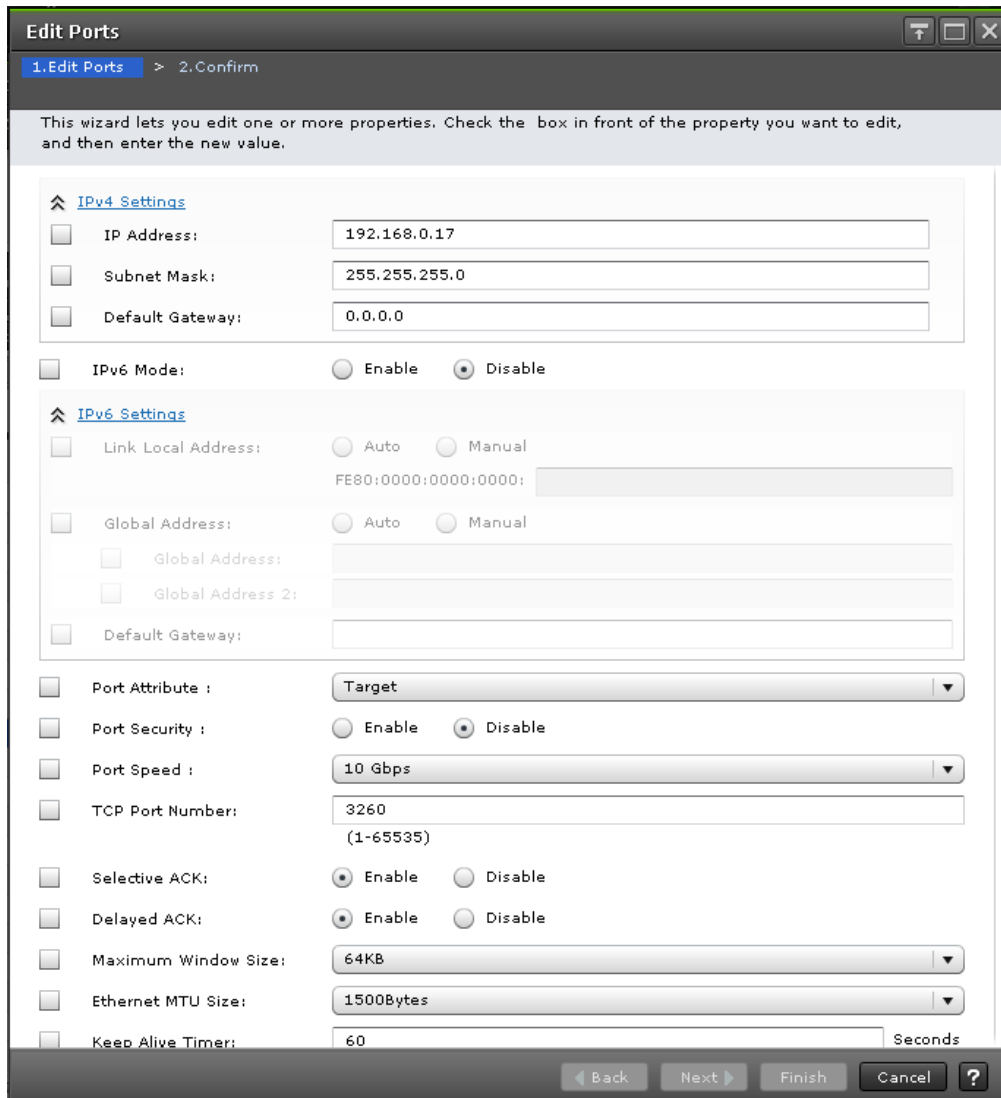


For Fibre Channel ports

Item	Description
Port Attribute	<p>Select the attribute of the port indicating I/O flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager. <p>If this port attribute is changed from Target or RCU Target to Initiator or to External, the host group of this port belongs to meta_resource.</p> <p>Therefore, the host group of this port is not displayed in windows.</p>
Port Security	Select whether LUN security is Enabled or Disabled.
Port Speed	<p>Select the data transfer speed, in Gbps, for the selected Fibre Channel port.</p> <p>If Auto is selected, the storage system automatically sets the data transfer speed to 4, 8, 10, or 16 Gbps.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>Caution: If you are using 4-Gbps HBA and switch, set the transfer speed of the CHF port as 4 Gbps. If you are using 8-Gbps HBA and switch, set the transfer speed of the CHF port as 8 Gbps. If you are using 16-Gbps HBA and switch, set the transfer speed of the CHF port as 16-Gbps. If the Auto Negotiation setting is required, the linkup might become improper at server restart. Check a channel lamp, and if it is blinking, remove and re-insert the cable to perform the signal synchronization and linkup.</p> <p>When the transfer speed of the CHF port is set to Auto, the data might not be transferred at the maximum speed depending on the connected device. Confirm the transfer speed appearing in Speed in the Ports list when you start up the storage system, HBA, or switch. When the transfer speed is not the maximum speed, select the maximum speed from the list on the right or remove and reinsert the cable.</p>
Address (Loop ID)	Select the address of the selected port. .
Fabric	Select whether a fabric switch is set to ON or OFF. .
Connection Type	<p>Select the topology:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ FC-AL: Fibre Channel arbitrated loop ▪ P-to-P (point-to-point). <p>Caution: Some fabric switches require that you specify point-to-point topology. If you enable a fabric switch, check the documentation for the fabric switch to determine whether your switch requires point-to-point topology.</p>

iSCSI



For iSCSI ports

Item	Description
IPv4 Settings	Information about IPv4. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IP Address: IP address of the port. ▪ Subnet Mask: Subnet mask of the port. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway of the port.

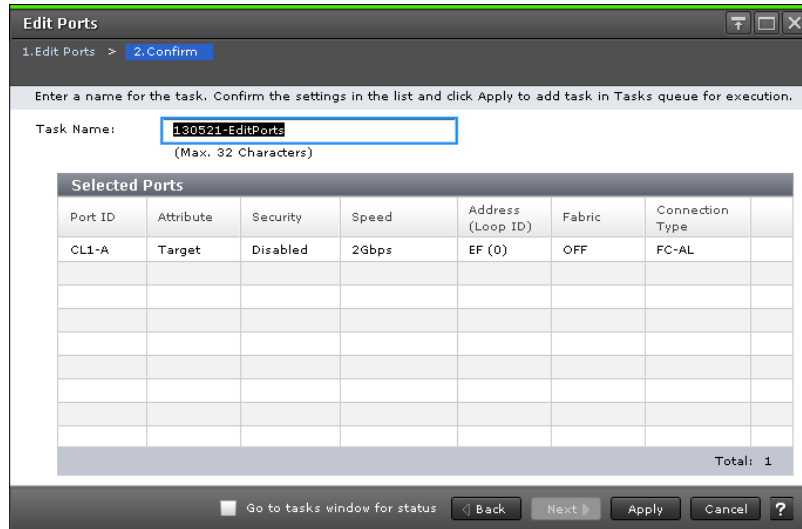
Item	Description
IPv6 Mode	<p>Specify this information if IPv6 is used or not used. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: IPv6 mode is enabled. If Enable is selected, the IPv6 Settings can be specified. ▪ Disable: IPv6 mode is disabled.
IPv6 Settings	<p>Information about IPv6. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Link Local Address: Link local address for the port. Auto: Sets the link local address automatically. Manual: Sets the link local address manually. Specify the link local address in the text box. ▪ Global Address: Global address for the port. Global Address: If Manual is selected, enter the address for the global address. Global Address 2: If Manual is selected, enter the address for the global address 2. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway address for the port.
Port Attribute	<p>Specify the attribute of the port: Initiator, Target, RCU Target, or External. If the port attribute is changed from Target or RCU Target to Initiator or External, iSCSI targets that belong to this port are included in meta_resource. iSCSI targets that belong to this port are not displayed in the window.</p>
Port Security	<p>Specify whether to use LUN security on the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Use LUN security on the port. ▪ Disable: Do not use LUN security on the port.
Port Speed	<p>The data transfer speed is fixed to 10 Gbps.</p>
TCP Port Number	<p>Specify the TCP port number. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.</p>
Selective ACK	<p>Specify this information if the selective ACK is used or not used. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The selective ACK is enabled. ▪ Disable: The selective ACK is disabled.

Item	Description
Delayed ACK	Specify this information if the delayed ACK is used or not used. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The delayed ACK is enabled. ▪ Disable: The delayed ACK is disabled.
Maximum Window Size	Select the maximum window size from 64 KB, 128 KB, 256 KB, 512 KB, or 1024 KB. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.
Ethernet MTU Size	Select Ethernet MTU size from 1500 bytes, 4500 bytes, or 9000 bytes. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.
Keep Alive Timer	Specify the interval time to perform the keep alive timer option. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.
VLAN Tagging Mode	Specify this information if the VLAN tagging mode is used or not used. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The VLAN tagging mode is enabled and specify the VLAN ID in the text box. ▪ Disable: The VLAN tagging mode is disabled.
iSNS Server	Specify this information if the iSNS server is used or not used. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The iSNS server mode is enabled. And specify the IP Address and TCP Port Number of the following. ▪ Disable: The iSNS server mode is disabled.
IP Address	Specify the IP address for IPv4 or IPv6. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.
TCP Port Number	Specify the TCP port number. If the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port, this item cannot be selected.
CHAP User Name	Specify the CHAP user name.
Secret	Specify the secret to be used for host authentication.
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation.

Caution: If you change multiple parameters for the same port separately, change the next parameter after the first task is completed. Otherwise, the latter change overwrites the first one. Therefore, the changes might be different from the ones you expected.

Edit Ports confirmation window

Fibre Channel

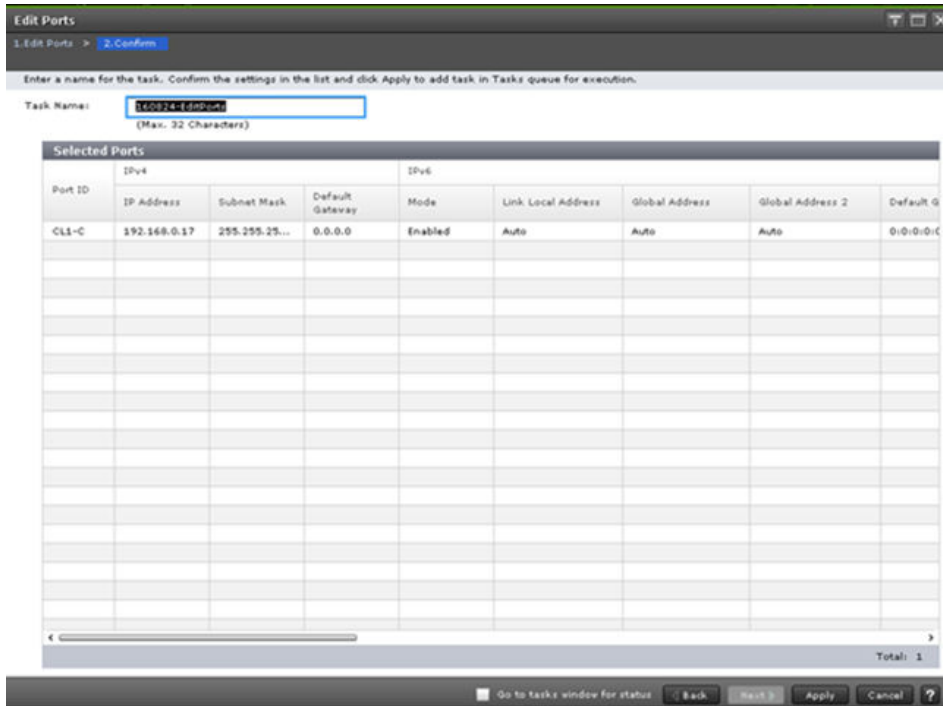


Selected Ports table for Fibre Channel ports

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.

Item	Description
Speed	Data transfer speed for the selected Fibre Channel port in Gbps (Gigabits per second).
Address (Loop ID)	Address of the selected port.
Fabric	Status setting (ON or OFF) for a fabric switch.
Connection Type	Topology of the selected port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ FC-AL: Fibre Channel arbitrated loop ▪ P-to-P: Point-to-point

iSCSI



Selected Ports table for iSCSI ports

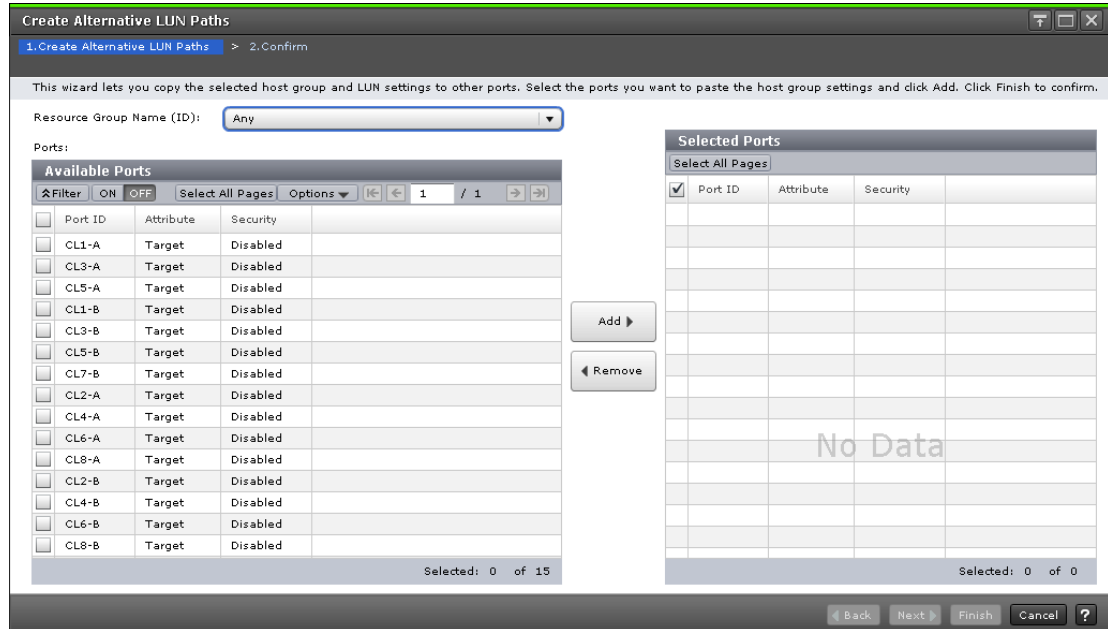
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.

Item	Description
IPv4	Information about IPv4. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IP Address: IP address of the port. ▪ Subnet Mask: Subnet mask of the port. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway of the port.
IPv6	Information about IPv6. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: IPv6 setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ Link Local Address: Link local address for the port. ▪ Global Address: Global address for the port. ▪ Global Address 2: Global address for the port. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway address for the port.
Port Security	Specify this information if the LUN security is used or not used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The LUN security is enabled. ▪ Disable: The LUN security is disabled.
Port Speed	Select the data transfer speed for the selected port. 1 Gbps, 10 Gbps, or Auto can be selected.
TCP Port Number	Select the address of the selected port. Do not set the address to an FCoE port. Specify the TCP port number.
Selective ACK	Specify this information whether the selective ACK is used or not used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The selective ACK is enabled. ▪ Disable: The selective ACK is disabled.
Delayed ACK	Select the topology. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ FC-AL: Fibre Channel arbitrated loop ▪ P-to-P (point-to-point). Only P-to-P can be specified for an FCoE port. <p>Caution: Some fabric switches require that you specify point-to-point topology. If you enable a fabric switch, check the documentation for the fabric switch to determine whether your switch requires point-to-point topology.</p>

Item	Description
Maximum Window Size	Select the maximum window size from 64 KB, 128 KB, 256 KB, 512 KB, or 1024 KB.
Ethernet MTU Size	Select Ethernet MTU size from 1500 bytes, 4500 bytes, or 9000 bytes.
Keep Alive Timer	Specify the interval time to perform the keep alive timer option.
VLAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tagging Mode: Appears with enabled or disabled for VLAN. ▪ ID: Identifier of VLAN.
iSNS Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: iSNS server setting (Enabled or Disabled). ▪ IP Address: IP address of the iSNS server. ▪ TCP Port Number: TCP port number of the iSNS server.
CHAP Authentication	<p>Information for the host authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ User Name: User name appears. ▪ Secret: If the secret is specified, a character string of six asterisks (*) appears.

Create Alternative LUN Paths wizard

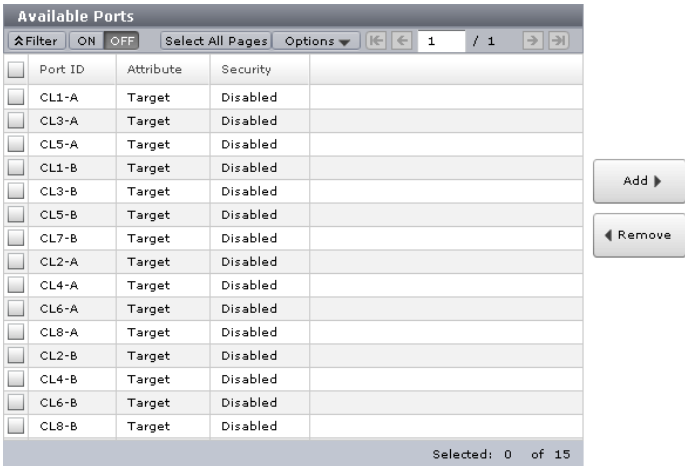
Create Alternative LUN Paths window



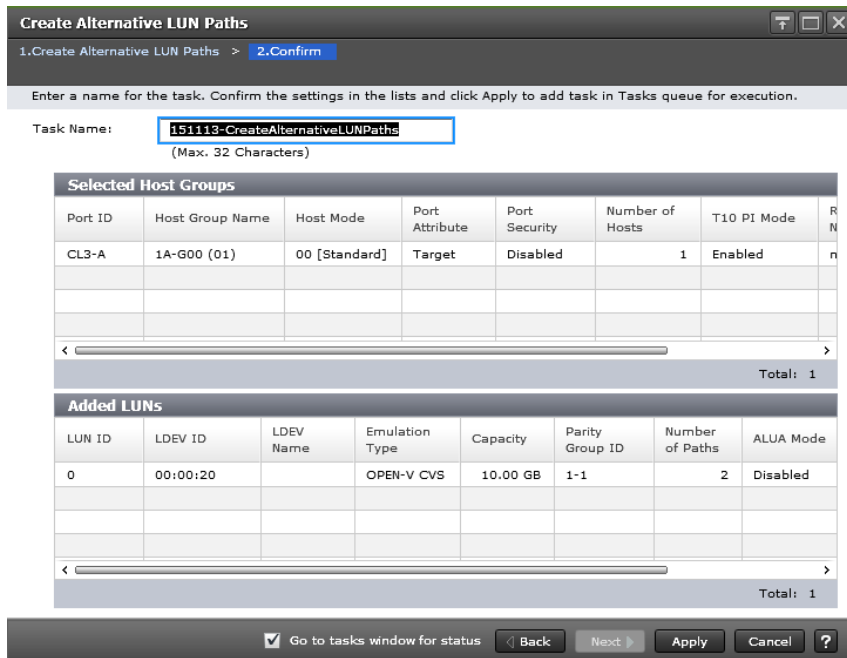
Item	Description
Resource Group Name (ID)	Select the resource group in which the host group is created. If Any is selected, among all ports being allocated to the user, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table. If other than Any is selected, among ports assigned to the selected resource group, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table.

Available Ports table

This table lists the ports for which alternate paths can be created.



Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Add	Adds ports selected from the Available Ports table to the Selected Ports table.
Remove	Removes ports from the Selected Ports table.



Selected Host Groups table for Fibre Channel ports

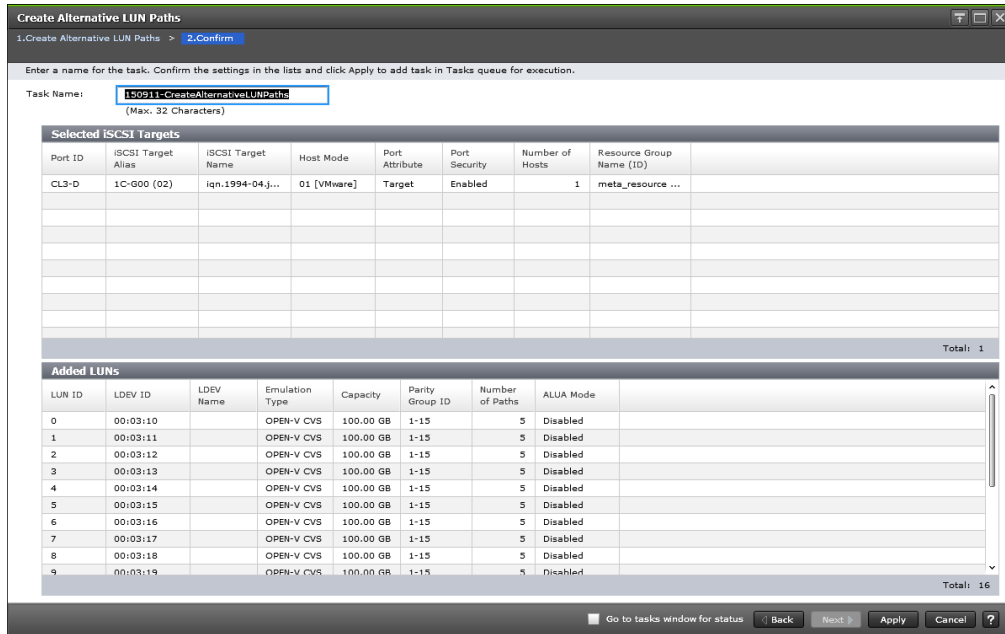
Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).

Item	Description
	If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the resource group containing the host groups.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.

Added LUNs table

Item	Description
LUN ID	Identifier of the added logical unit.
LDEV ID	Identifier of the LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
Emulation Type	Emulation type for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.

iSCSI



Selected iSCSI Targets table for iSCSI ports

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	Alias of the iSCSI target.
iSCSI Target Name	Name of the iSCSI target.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the resource group containing the host groups.

Added LUNs table

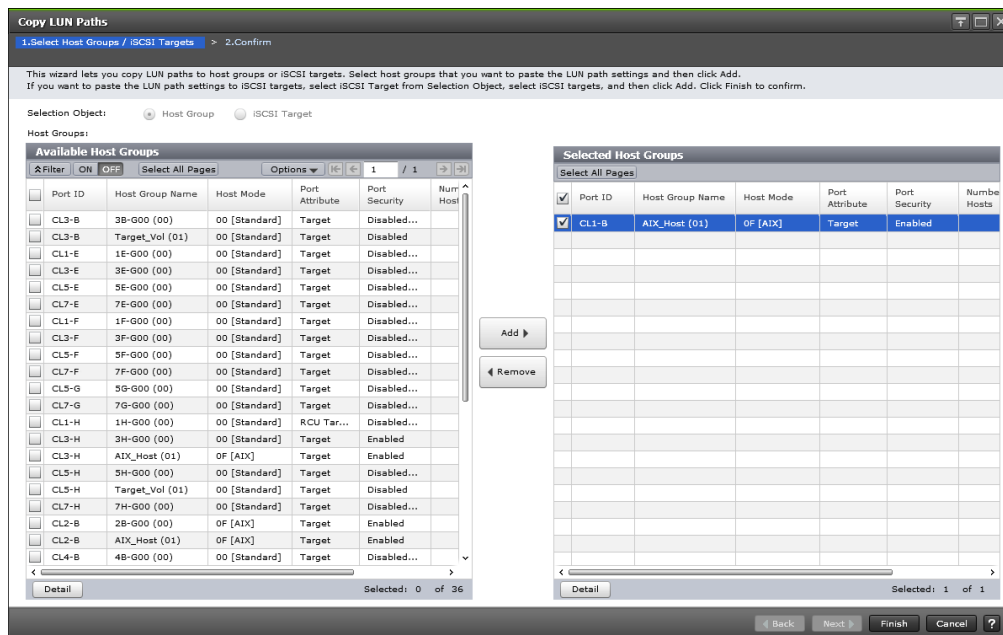
Item	Description
LUN ID	Identifier of the added logical unit.
LDEV ID	Identifier of the LDEV.
LDEV Name	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.

Item	Description
Emulation Type	Emulation type for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.

Copy LUN Paths wizard

Copy LUN Paths window

Fibre Channel



Selection Object

Item	Description
Selection Object	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Host Group: Select to copy LUN paths to host groups. iSCSI target: Select to copy LUN paths to iSCSI targets.

Available Host Groups table

Selection Object: Host Group iSCSI Target

Host Groups:

Available Host Groups						
Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Numb	Host
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-B	3B-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-B	Target_Vol (01)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-E	1E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-E	3E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-E	5E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-E	7E-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-F	1F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-F	3F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-F	5F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-F	7F-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-G	5G-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-G	7G-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-H	1H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	RCU Tar...	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-H	3H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Enabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL3-H	AIX_Host (01)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-H	5H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL5-H	Target_Vol (01)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL7-H	7H-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-B	2B-G00 (00)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL2-B	AIX_Host (01)	0F [AIX]	Target	Enabled	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL4-B	4B-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	

Selected: 0 of 36

This table lists the host groups for which LU paths can be copied. Only the host group assigned to the logged-on user are available.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI Mode	<p>The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Detail	Details about the selected host group.
Add	Adds host groups selected from the Available Host Groups table to the Selected Host Groups table.
Remove	Removes the selected host groups from the Selected Host Groups table.

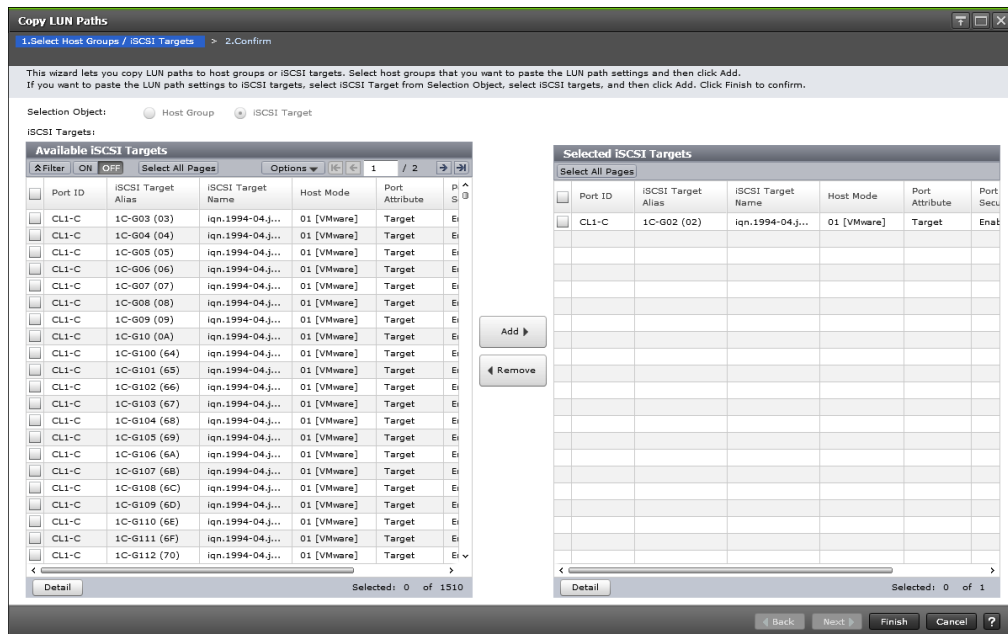
Selected Host Groups table

Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Number of Hosts
CL1-B	AIX_Host (01)	OF [AIX]	Target	Enabled	

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Item	Description
	<p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p> <p>Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.</p>
T10 PI Mode	<p>The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).</p> <p>If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p>
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

iSCSI



Available Selected iSCSI Targets table

Selection Object: Host Group iSCSI Target

iSCSI Targets:

Port ID	iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI Target Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G03 (03)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G04 (04)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G05 (05)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G06 (06)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G07 (07)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G08 (08)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G09 (09)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G10 (0A)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G100 (64)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G101 (65)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G102 (66)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G103 (67)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G104 (68)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G105 (69)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G106 (6A)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G107 (6B)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G108 (6C)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G109 (6D)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G110 (6E)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G111 (6F)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target
<input type="checkbox"/>	CL1-C	1C-G112 (70)	iqn.1994-04.j...	01 [VMware]	Target

Buttons: Add, Remove

Selected: 0 of 1510

This table lists iSCSI targets for which LU paths can be copied. Only iSCSI targets assigned to the logged-on user are available.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	Host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts set to the relevant port.
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.
Add	Adds host groups selected from the Available iSCSI Targets table to the Selected iSCSI Targets table.
Remove	Removes the selected host groups from the Selected iSCSI Targets table.

Copy LUN Paths

1.Select Host Groups / iSCSI Targets > 2.Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Selected Host Groups								
Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asymmetric Access States	T10 PI Mode	
CLS-A	5A-G00 (00)	00 [Standard]	Target	Disabled...	0	-	Disabled	
								Total: 1

Added LUNs								
LUN ID	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Emulation Type	Capacity	Parity Group ID	Number of Paths	ALUA Mode	T10 PI
0	00:00:20		OPEN-V CVS	10.00 GB	1-1	2	Disabled	Disabled
								Total: 1

Go to tasks window for status

Selected Host Groups table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. Target: Receives I/O commands from a host. RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.

Item	Description
	Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

Added LUNs table

Item	Description
LUN ID	Identifier of the added logical unit.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Emulation Type	Emulation type for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Parity Group ID	Displays the IDs of parity groups.
Number of Paths	Displays the number of paths set to the relevant LDEV.
ALUA Mode	Information about the ALUA mode. Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.

iSCSI

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Copy LUN Paths

1.Select Host Groups / iSCSI Targets > 2.Confirm

Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Selected iSCSI Targets							
Port ID	iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI Target Name	Host Mode	Port Attribute	Port Security	Number of Hosts	
CL1-C	1C-G02 (02)	iqn.1994-04-j...	01 [VMware]	Target	Enabled	1	
							Total: 1

Added LUNs							
LUN ID	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Emulation Type	Capacity	Parity Group ID	Number of Paths	ALUA Mode
0	00:03:10		OPEN-V CVS	100.00 GB	1-15	5	Disabled
1	00:03:11		OPEN-V CVS	100.00 GB	1-15	5	Disabled
							Total: 2

Go to tasks window for status Back Next Apply Cancel ?

Selected iSCSI Targets (iSCSI)

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	Host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts set to the relevant port.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.

Added LUNs table (iSCSI)

Item	Description
LUN ID	Identifier of the added logical unit.

Selected Hosts table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Remove selected hosts from all host groups containing the hosts in the storage system	If this check box is selected, selected hosts are removed from all host groups containing the hosts in the storage system.

Remove Hosts confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

Remove Hosts

1. Remove Hosts > 2. Confirm

⚠ Your applications on the selected hosts will not be able to access the data anymore. Are you sure to continue?

Task Name: (Max. 32 Characters)

Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name
CL1-A	0123456789ABCDEF	HOST0100	1A-G00 (00)

Total: 1

Go to tasks window for status

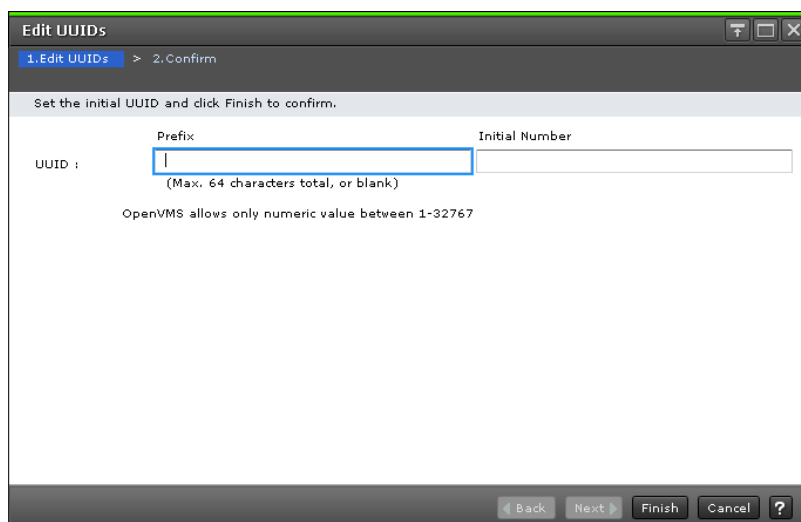
Selected Hosts table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.

Item	Description
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.


Edit UUIDs wizard

Edit UUIDs window



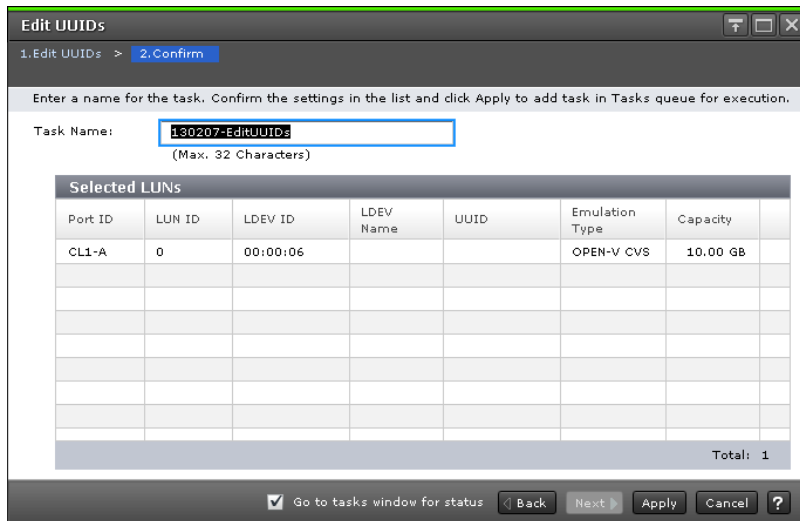
Item	Description
Prefix	<p>For an OpenVMS server host: The total length of the Prefix and the Initial Number cannot exceed 5 characters. If the Prefix is 5 characters, you cannot specify an Initial Number and vice versa.</p> <p>For a server host other than OpenVMS: The total length of the Prefix and the Initial Number cannot exceed 64 characters. If the Prefix is 64 characters, you cannot specify an Initial Number and vice versa.</p>

Item	Description
	<p>The following rules apply to UUID:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ These characters cannot be used: \ / : , ; * ? " < > ▪ A space character cannot be used for the first and the last characters. ▪ UUIDs are case-sensitive. For example, <code>Abc</code> and <code>abc</code> are different UUIDs.
Initial Number	<p>For an OpenVMS server host: The total length of the Prefix and the Initial Number cannot exceed 5 characters. If the Prefix is 5 characters, you cannot specify an Initial Number and vice versa.</p> <p>For a server host other than OpenVMS: The total length of the Prefix and the Initial Number cannot exceed 64 characters. If the Prefix is 64 characters, you cannot specify an Initial Number and vice versa.</p> <p>The following rules apply to the initial number.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1: Up to 9 numbers are added (1, 2, 3 ... 9) ▪ 08: Up to 92 numbers are added (08, 09, 10 ... 99) (If the host mode is OpenVMS, the numbers are: 8, 9, 10 ... 99) ▪ 23: Up to 77 numbers are added (23, 24, 25 ... 99)

 **Caution:** If UUID is blank, the UUID setting is released.

Edit UUIDs confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.



Selected LUNs table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
LUN ID	Logical units whose UUID has been changed.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
UUID	Identifies the set or changed UUID. A blank field indicates that the UUID is released.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.

Add New Host window

Fibre Channel

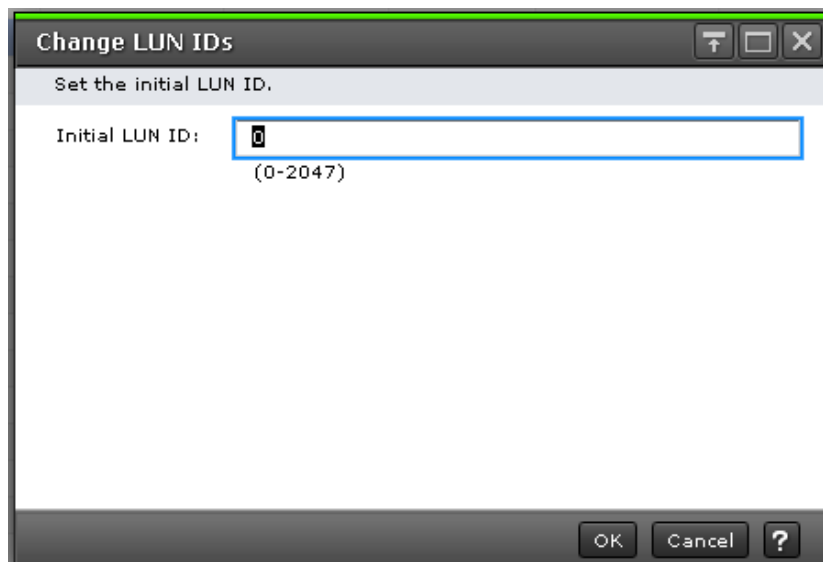
For Fibre Channel Ports

Item	Description
HBA WWN	Specify the WWN of the port in 16 digits of hexadecimal numbers.
Host Name	Specify the host name. As a host name, you can use single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols) up to 64 characters. You cannot use the following symbols: \ / : , ; * ? " < > You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host name. A host name is case-sensitive.

iSCSI

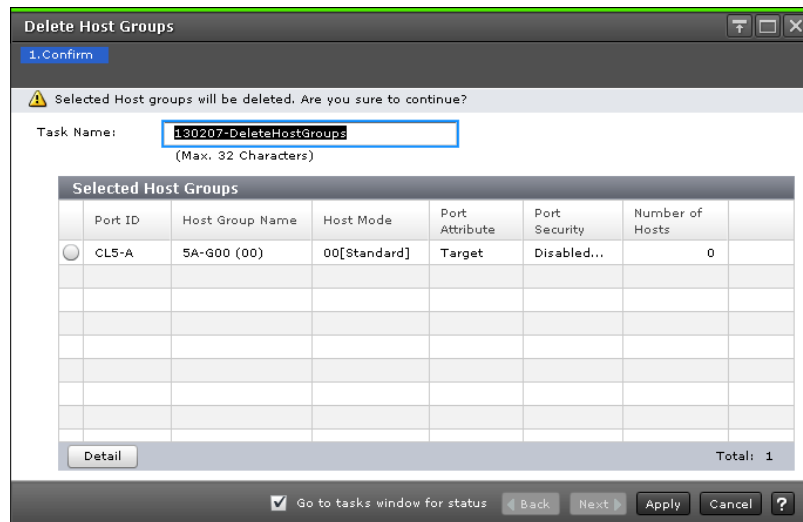
For iSCSI ports

Item	Description
HBA iSCSI Name	<p>Specify the WWN of the port in 16 digits of hexadecimal numbers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ iqn or eui: Select the format of the iSCSI name. ▪ Text box: Specify the iSCSI name. <p>For the iqn format, an iSCSI name takes up to 219 single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols). You cannot use the following symbols: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , / ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { } ~</p> <p>For the eui format, an iSCSI name takes fixed to 16 alpha-numerals.</p>
Host Name	<p>Specify the host name.</p> <p>As a host name, you can use single-byte ASCII characters (alpha-numerals and symbols) up to 32 characters. You cannot use the following symbols: \\ / : ; , * ? " < > </p> <p>You cannot use blanks at the beginning or end of the host name. A host name is case-sensitive.</p>

Change LUN IDs window

Setting field

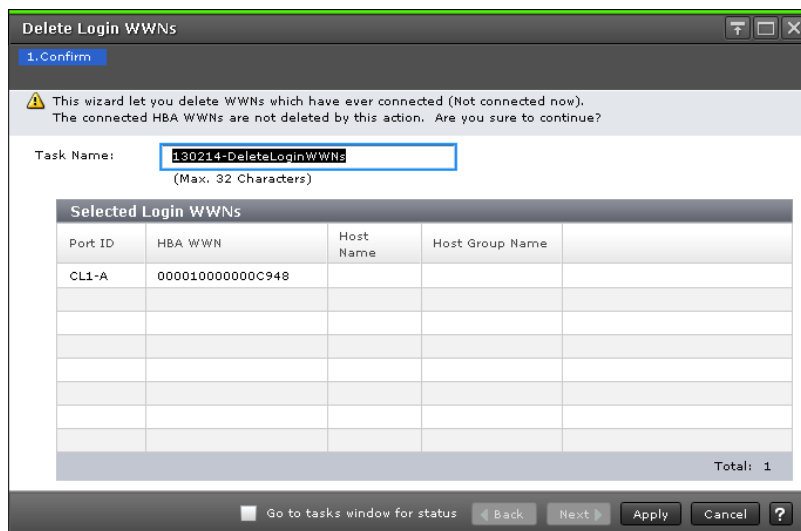
Item	Description
Initial LUN ID	Specify the initial LUN ID. If multiple LUs are selected, LUN IDs are set consecutively from the specified LUN ID.

Delete Host Groups window**Selected Host Groups table**

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Port Attribute	Attribute of the port indicating I/O flow. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Initiator: Issues I/O commands to a target port when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. ▪ Target: Receives I/O commands from a host.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> RCU Target: Receives I/O commands from an initiator when I/O is executed between storage systems with TrueCopy, and so on. External: Issues I/O commands to a target port of an external storage system with Universal Volume Manager.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.
Detail	Details about the selected host group.

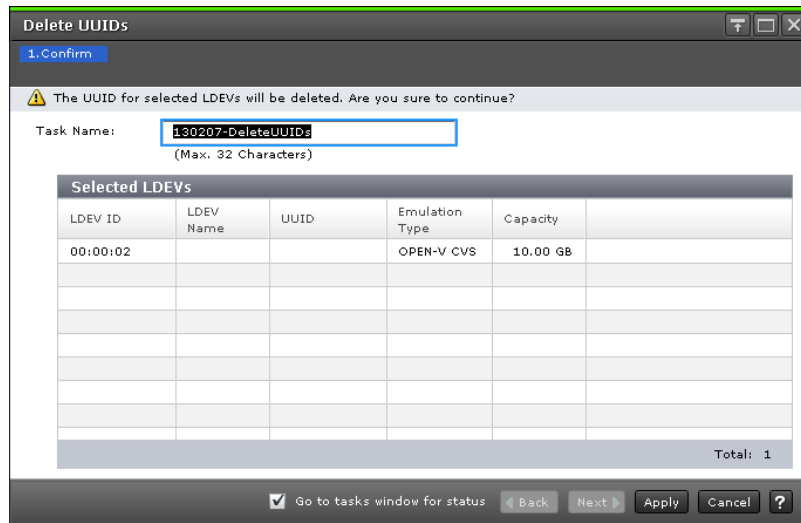
Delete Login WWNs window



Selected Login WWNs table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.

Delete UUIDs window

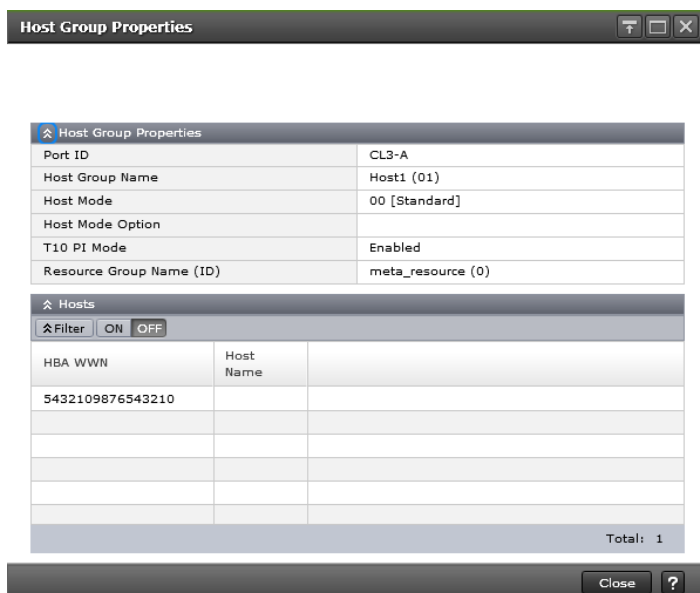


Selected LDEVs table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
UUID	This field is blank because the UUID is to be deleted.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.

Host Group Properties window

Use this window to view properties about a selected host group.



Host Group Properties table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Host Mode Option	The number of host mode options that are enabled.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group names and IDs of host groups. The ID is provided in parentheses.

Hosts table

Item	Description
HBA WWN	WWN of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.

LUN Properties window



LUN Properties	
LUN ID	0
LDEV ID	00:00:20
LDEV Name	
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	1A-G00
iSCSI Target Name	-
Host Mode	00 [Standard]
Host Mode Option	
Port ID	CL1-A
Type	Fibre
Emulation Type	OPEN-V CVS
Capacity	10.00 GB
Provisioning Type	Basic
LDEV Attribute	-
Command	Security
Device	User Authentication
Attributes	Device Group Definition
Access Attribute	Read/Write
Number of Paths	1
UUID	
CLPR	0:CLPR0
Encryption	Disabled
ALUA Mode	Disabled
Asymmetric Access States	Active/Optimized
T10 PI	Disabled

LUN Properties table

This table provides information about the selected LUN.

Item	Description
LUN ID	Identifier of the selected logical unit.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	Name of the host group or iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	Name of the iSCSI target.
Host Mode	The host mode of the host group.
Host Mode Option	The number of host mode options that are enabled.
Port ID	Identifier of the port on this volume.

Item	Description
Type	Type of port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel port. ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI port.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for the logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of the logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning type assigned to this logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
LDEV Attribute	Displays the attribute of the LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Command Device: Command device. ▪ Remote Command Device: Remote command device. ▪ Data Direct Mapping: LDEV with the data direct mapping attribute enabled. ▪ - (hyphen): Volume in which the attribute is not defined.
Command Device Attributes	If the logical volume is used as a command device, indicates the status of the attributes on this LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Security: Indicates the status of command device security is (enable or disable). ▪ User Authentication: Indicates the status of user authentication (enable or disable). ▪ Device Group Definition: Indicates the status of device group definition (enable or disable).
Access Attribute	Access attribute assigned to this LDEV. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Read/Write: Both read and write operations are permitted on the logical volume. ▪ Read-only: Read operations are permitted on the logical volume. ▪ Protect: Neither read nor write operations are permitted.

Item	Description
Number of Paths	Number of paths set for the LDEV.
UUID	User-definable LUN identifier. This field is blank if the UUID is not set.
CLPR	Cache logical partition numbers. For detailed information about CLPRs, see the <i>Performance Guide</i> .
Encryption	<p>Displays the information about parity group encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: Encryption setting of a parity group in which the LDEV is placed is enabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are enabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Disable: Encryption setting of a parity group (or a pool) in which the LDEV is placed is disabled. Or the virtual volume associated with the pool whose pool-VOLs are disabled of the encryption setting. ▪ Mixed: This status is displayed when two or more of the following are specified as pool-VOLs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume encryption setting is enabled. • Volume encryption setting is disabled. • External volume <p>Caution: The data encryption is not ensured in the pool that has the Mixed encryption setting. To manage the data encryption securely, use the pool with an encryption setting of Enabled or Disabled.</p> ▪ - (hyphen): External volume or migration volume. As for DP-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning, the pool-VOL in the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is an external volume, or the pool of which DP-VOL belongs is being blocked.
ALUA Mode	<p>Information about the ALUA mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: LDEV can be used in ALUA. ▪ Disabled: LDEV cannot be used in ALUA.
Asymmetric Access States	<p>Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed.</p> <p>Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port.</p>

Item	Description
	Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.
T10 PI	The LDEV's T10 PI attribute setting (Enabled or Disabled). If the T10 PI mode is not supported, a hyphen (-) is displayed.
Data Direct Mapped LDEV	Displays LDEV ID of pool-VOL in the pool with data direct mapping enabled. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the data direct mapping attribute is disabled.
Capacity Saving	Capacity saving setting of the LDEV: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Compression: The compression function is used. ▪ Deduplication and Compression: The deduplication and compression functions are used. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is not used.
Capacity Saving Status	Status of the capacity saving function: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabling: The format for enabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Rehydrating: The format for disabling the capacity saving function is being performed. ▪ Deleting Volume: The deletion of DP-VOL whose capacity saving function is Enabled is being performed. ▪ Enabled: The capacity saving function is enabled. ▪ Disabled: The capacity saving function is disabled. ▪ Failed: Data cannot be secured. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV does not support the capacity saving function.
Deduplication Data	Displays whether the deduplication function is applied to the volume (DP-VOL). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The deduplication function is applied. ▪ Disabled: The deduplication function is not applied. ▪ - (hyphen): The LDEV is not a DP-VOL, or the microcode version does not support deduplication.

Item	Description
	<p>If the capacity saving setting of a DP-VOL is Deduplication and Compression, Enabled is displayed even if the used capacity is 0.</p> <p>When the capacity saving setting is Disabled and the disabling of the capacity saving setting is in process, Enabled is displayed for Deduplication Data while deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL. When the disabling of the capacity saving setting is complete and no deduplicated data remains in the DP-VOL, Disabled is displayed.</p>
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has the LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to the LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for an LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Attribute: Virtual LDEV attribute. If the attribute is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.

LUNs table

This table provides information about the LUN ID registered for the selected LDEV.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Type	<p>Type of port:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel port. ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI port.

Item	Description
Host Group Name / iSCSI Target Alias	Name of the host group or iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	Name of the iSCSI target.
Host Group Name	Name of the host group.
LUN ID	Identifier of the logical unit.
Asymmetric Access States	Asymmetric access states of the port. When using iSCSI, a hyphen (-) is displayed. Active/Optimized: Access from the host is preferentially performed on this port. Active/Non-Optimized: When the Active/Optimized port is disabled, access from the host is performed on this port.

Hosts table

Lists the hosts that belong to the host group in which the selected LUN ID is registered.

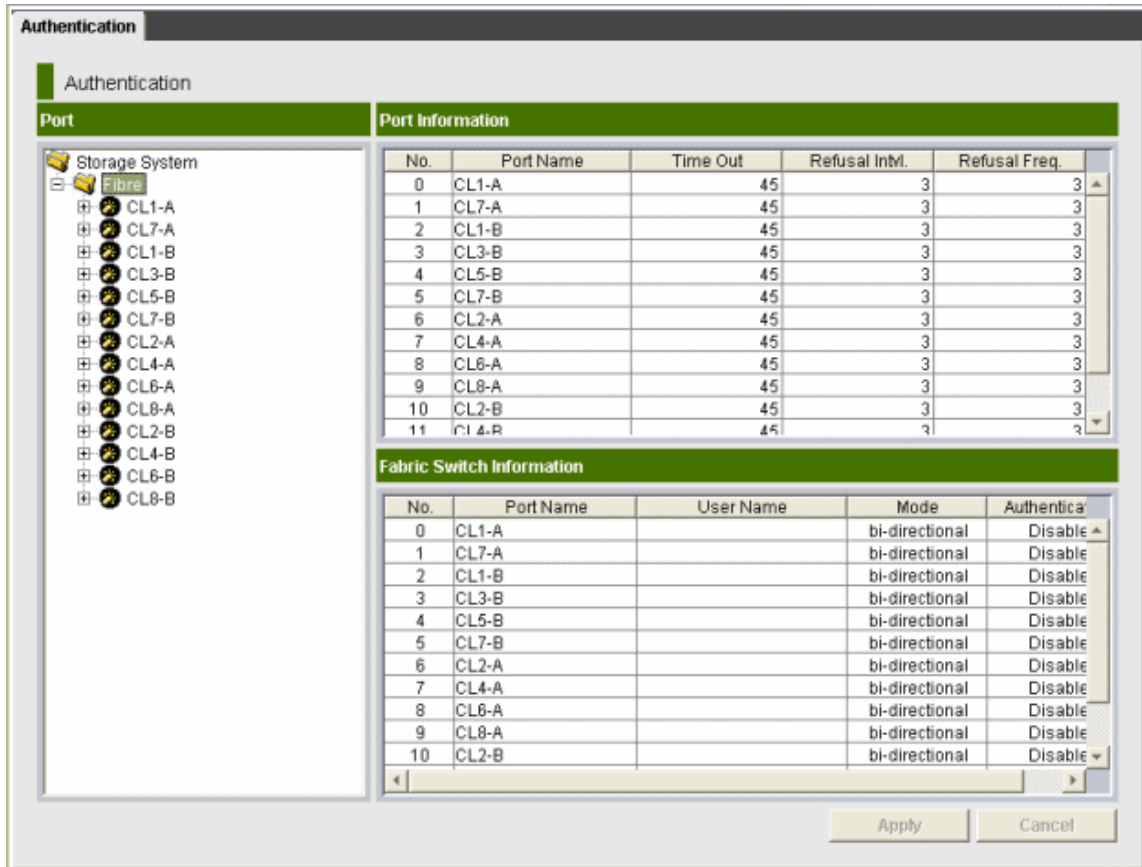
Item	Description
Type	Type of port: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Fibre: Fibre Channel port. ▪ iSCSI: iSCSI port.
HBA WWN / iSCSI Name	WWN of HBA or iSCSI name.
Host Name	Name of the host.

Authentication window

Authentication window (Fibre Channel folder selected)

To display the **Authentication** window, the Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be usable in advance. If the user authentication settings are performed, you must set the modify mode in the secondary window. The modify mode is an exclusive access control for operations of secondary windows. If you set the modify mode to ON, other users or programs cannot apply settings to a storage system. If you close the secondary window, the modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide* of your storage system.

On the menu bar, click Actions > Port/Host Group, Fibre > Authentication. The **Authentication** secondary window opens.




Port tree

The Port tree provides information about user authentication on each port.

Double-click the Fibre folder to show the Fibre Channel ports in the storage system.

If you select the Fibre folder, information about ports and fabric switches appears in the table on the right of the tree. The Fibre folder is available only if the storage system contains a Fibre Channel adapter.

Item	Description
 CLX-Y	This icon indicates a Fibre Channel port.

Port information list

Item	Description
Port Name	Fibre Channel port names.

Item	Description
Time out	The period of time between authentication sessions to the same port. If the previous authentication session to a port failed, the next authentication session starts after the specified period of time elapses. The unit is seconds.
Refusal Intvl.	If authentication fails for the number of times specified in Refusal Freq., connection to the port fails. Refusal Intvl. shows the interval (in minutes) from when connection to a port fails to when the next authentication session starts.
Refusal Freq.	Number of times that authentication is allowed for connection to a port. If authentication fails for the specified number of times, connection to the port fails.

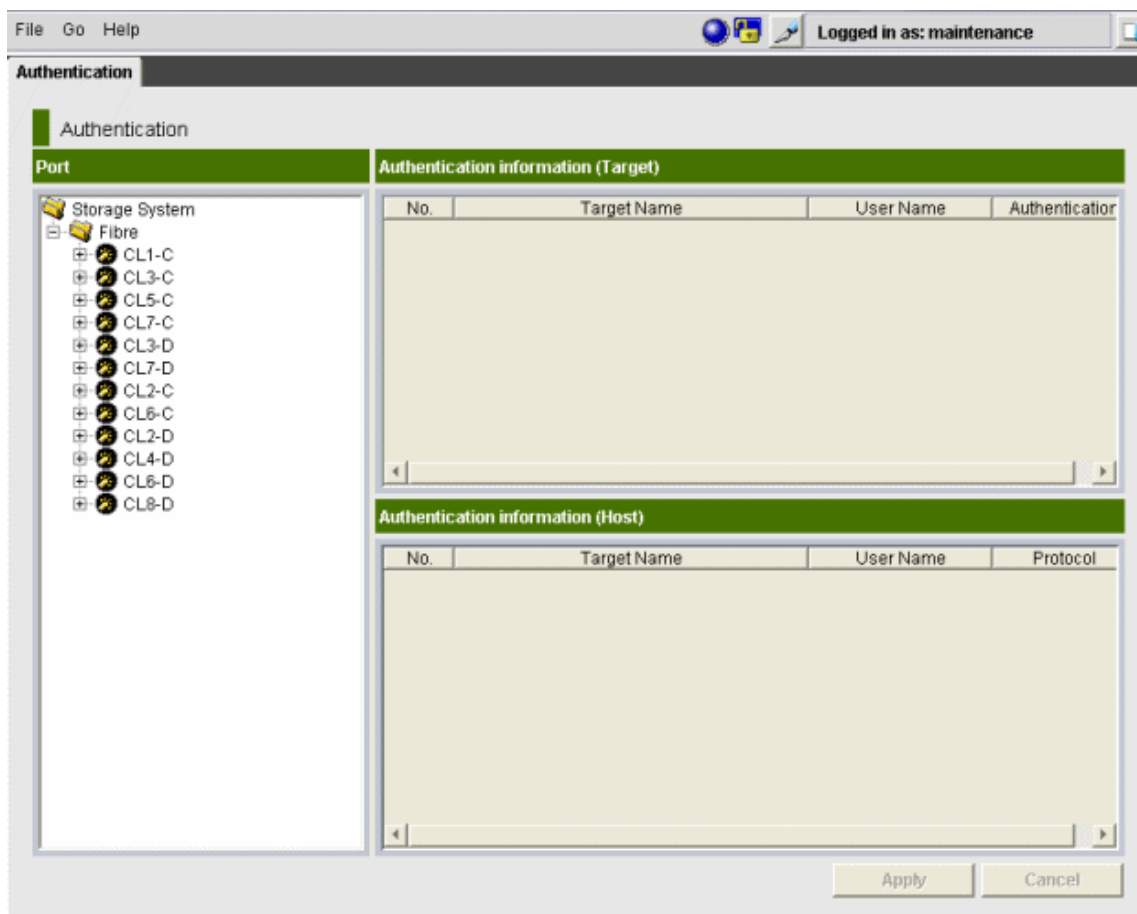
Fabric Switch information list

Item	Description
Port Name	Fibre Channel port name.
User Name	User name of the fabric switch.
Mode	Mode of authentication between ports and fabric switches. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ bidirectional: The authentication mode is mutual. ▪ unidirectional: The authentication mode is not mutual.
Authentication	Indicates whether to perform authentication for the fabric switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The fabric switch is a target of user authentication. ▪ Disable: The fabric switch is not a target of user authentication.

Authentication window (Fibre Channel port selected)

Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows must be defined for use in advance. When you select Modify from this window to make user authentication settings, other users or programs are prevented from changing storage system settings. When you close the secondary window, Modify mode is released. For more information about Hitachi Device Manager - Storage Navigator secondary windows and Modify mode, see the *System Administrator Guide* of your storage system.




On the menu bar, click Actions > Port/Host Group, Fibre > Authentication. The **Authentication** secondary window opens.



Port tree

Use this tree to find information about user authentication on each port. When you select a port from this tree, the Authentication Information (Target) list on the right provides user information of the hosts that are registered on the port. In addition, the Authentication Information (Host) list below the Authentication Information (Target) list provides the user information of the selected port.

Double-click the Fibre folder to view all Fibre Channel ports in the storage system. The Fibre folder is available only if the storage system contains a Fibre Channel adapter. Double-click the Fibre Channel ports to view host groups in that port. The host group name appears beside the icon.

Item	Description
 CLX-Y	Indicates a Fibre Channel port.
 host group name	Indicates that the host group performs authentication of hosts.
 host group name	Indicates that the host group does not perform authentication of hosts.

Authentication information (target) list

The list on the right provides user information of the host groups that are allowed to connect to the port or host group specified in the tree.

Item	Description
Group Name	Names of the host group.
User Name	User name of the host group. When the user name is not defined for a host group, this column is blank.
Authentication	Indicates whether to perform user authentication for the host. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enable: The host is a target of user authentication. ▪ Disable: The host is not a target of user authentication.

Authentication information (host) list

Below the User Information (Target) list appears a list that provides user information of the host selected in the port or host group in the tree. In this list, you can register up to 64 user information items.

Item	Description
Group Name	Name of the host group.
User Name	User name of the host. When the user name is not defined for a host, this column is blank.
Protocol	Indicates the protocol in use for user authentication. Always CHAP.

Add New User Information (Host) window

Add New User Information (Host)

Group Name: HA8500-3

User Name: (16 characters) (In disable, it may not input.)

Secret: (12-32 characters) (In disable, it may not input.)

Re-enter Secret:

Protocol: CHAP

OK Cancel

Item	Description
Group Name	Select the group name where the user will be registered.
User Name	Specify the user name of the host. 16 hexadecimal characters can be used. The user name is not case-sensitive.
Secret	Specify the secret to be used for host authentication. Use 12 to 32 characters, including alphanumerics, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : / [] , ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. An error occurs if you enter incorrect characters, and then click OK.
Protocol	Protocol to be used for user authentication. This protocol is always CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol).

Change User Information (Host) window

Item	Description
Group Name	Group name where the user is registered.
User Name	Specify the user name of the host. 16 hexadecimal characters can be used. The user name is not case-sensitive.
Secret	Specify the secret to be used for host authentication. Use 12 to 32 characters, including alphanumerics, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : / [] , ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. An error occurs if you enter incorrect characters, and then click OK.
Protocol	Protocol to be used for user authentication. This protocol is always CHAP (Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol).

Clear Authentication information window

No.	Group Name	User Name
0	HA8500-3	50060E8006013B00

Item	Description
No	Item number.
Group Name	Group name to be deleted.
User Name	The name of the user to be deleted.

Specify Authentication Information window

When selecting a port

When selecting a host group

Item	Description
Port Name	Port name where the authentication information is specified in the window that opens when you select a port.
Group Name	Group name where the authentication information is specified in the window that opens when you select a host group.
User Name	Specify the user name of the host. 16 hexadecimal characters can be used. The user name is not case-sensitive.
Secret	Specify the secret to be used for host authentication. Use 12 to 32 characters, including alphanumerics, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : / [] , ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. An error occurs if you enter incorrect characters, and then click OK.

Set Port Information

Item	Description
Time out	Specify the period of time from when authentication fails to when the next authentication session is ended. This period of time is between 15 to 60 seconds. The initial value is 45.

Item	Description
Refusal Interval	Specify the interval from when connection to a port fails to when the next authentication session starts, with up to 60 minutes. The initial value is 3.
Refusal Frequency	Specify the number of times of authentication allowable for connection to a port with up to 10 times. The initial value is 3.

Default Setting(User Name/Secret) window

Item	Description
Port Name	Fibre Channel port names.
User Name	Specify the user name of the Fibre Channel switch with 16 characters. You can use hexadecimal characters in a user name. The user name is not case-sensitive.
Secret	Specify the secret (that is, a password used in CHAP authentication) between 12 to 32 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols in a secret: . - + @ _ = : / [] , ~
Re-enter secret	Specify the secret, again, for confirmation.

Edit Command Devices wizard

The system administrator can enter CCI commands from open-system hosts to perform operations such as TrueCopy or ShadowImage operations or both on logical devices. For example, CCI commands can be used to create and to split pairs. If you want to allow the system administrator to enter CCI commands from open-system hosts, you must specify at least one logical device as the command device. If desired, you must also apply command device security to other logical devices in the storage system.

Use the **Edit Command Devices** window to edit command devices.



Caution: The following volumes cannot be specified as a command device:

- Volume whose access attribute is other than read/write.
- TrueCopy pair volume.
- Global-active device pair volume.
- ShadowImage pair volume.
- Universal Replicator pair volume.
- Virtual volume (V-VOL) for Thin Image.
- Volume reserved by Data Retention Utility.
- Journal volume.
- Pool volume that includes a DP-VOL with the direct mapping attribute enabled.
- Remote command device.
- LDEV of the ALU attribute.
- Quorum disk for global-active device.
- LDEV with ALUA mode enabled.
- LDEV with the T10 PI attribute enabled.

Procedure

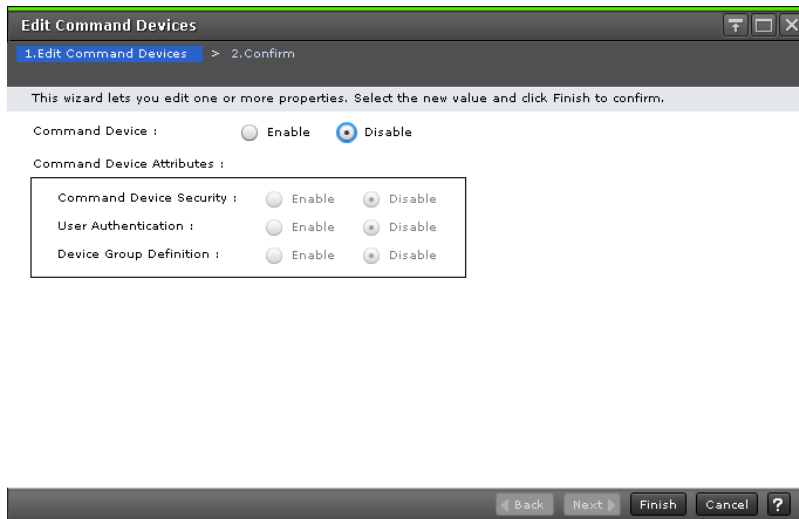
1. Click **Storage Systems**, and then expand the **Storage Systems** tree.
2. Click **Logical Devices**.
3. Click **More Actions** > **Edit Command Devices**.

The **Edit Command Devices** window opens.

Edit Command Devices window

If you want to enable command device security, user authentication, and device group definition, you must enable the command device in this window.

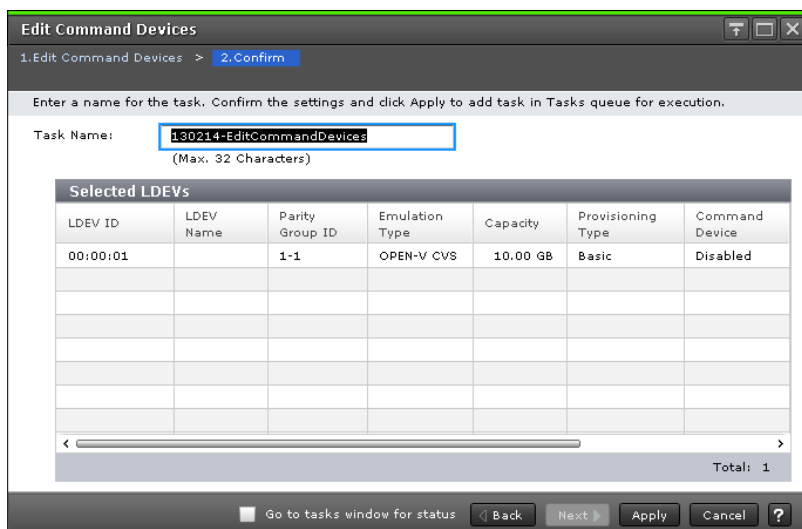
If the command device is disabled, you cannot enable command device security, user authentication, and device group definition.



Item	Description
Command Device	Select Enable to enable command devices. Select Disable to release command devices.
Command Device Security	Select Enable to apply command device security to a logical device in a storage system. Select Disable to release command device security. If you want to protect logical volumes from the use of CCI commands, you must apply command device security to the logical volumes. If command device security is applied to a logical device, the logical device will not be affected by CCI commands issued via command devices from the hosts. ¹
User Authentication	Select Enable to apply user authentication to a command device. Select Disable to release user authentication. ¹
Device Group Definition	Select Enable to apply device group definition to a command device. Select Disable to release device group definition. ¹
Note:	
1. For details about command device attribute settings, see the <i>Command Control Interface User and Reference Guide</i> .	

Edit Command Devices confirmation window

Confirm proposed settings, name the task, and then click Apply. The task will be added to the execution queue.

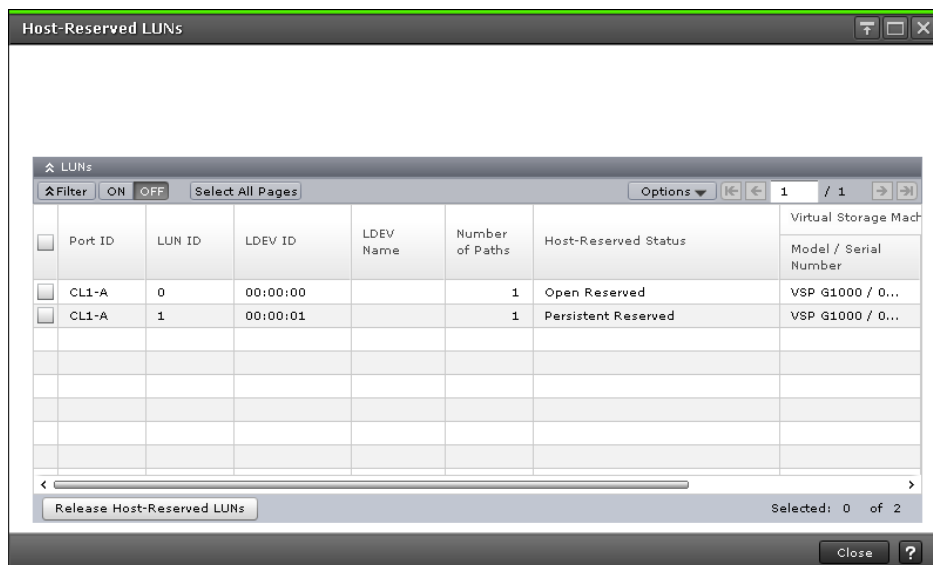


Selected LDEVs table

Item	Description
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Name of the LDEV.
Parity Group ID	Identifier of the parity group.
Emulation Type	Emulation types for each logical volume (or logical device).
Capacity	Size of each logical volume.
Provisioning Type	Provisioning types for each logical volume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Basic: Internal volume. ▪ External: External volume. ▪ DP: V-VOL of Dynamic Provisioning. ▪ Snapshot: Thin Image volume.
Command Device	Indicates whether the selected logical device is a command device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enabled: The command devices are enabled. ▪ Disabled: The logical device is not a command device.

Item	Description
Command Device Security	Indicates whether command device security is applied to the selected command device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled: Command device security is applied to the command device. Disabled: Command device security is not applied to the command device.
User Authentication	Indicates whether user authentication is applied to the selected command device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled: User authentication is applied to the command device. Disabled: User authentication is not applied to the command device.
Device Group Definition	Indicates whether the device group definition is applied to the selected command device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled: Device group definition is applied to the command device. Disabled: Device group definition is not applied to the command device.

Host-Reserved LUNs window



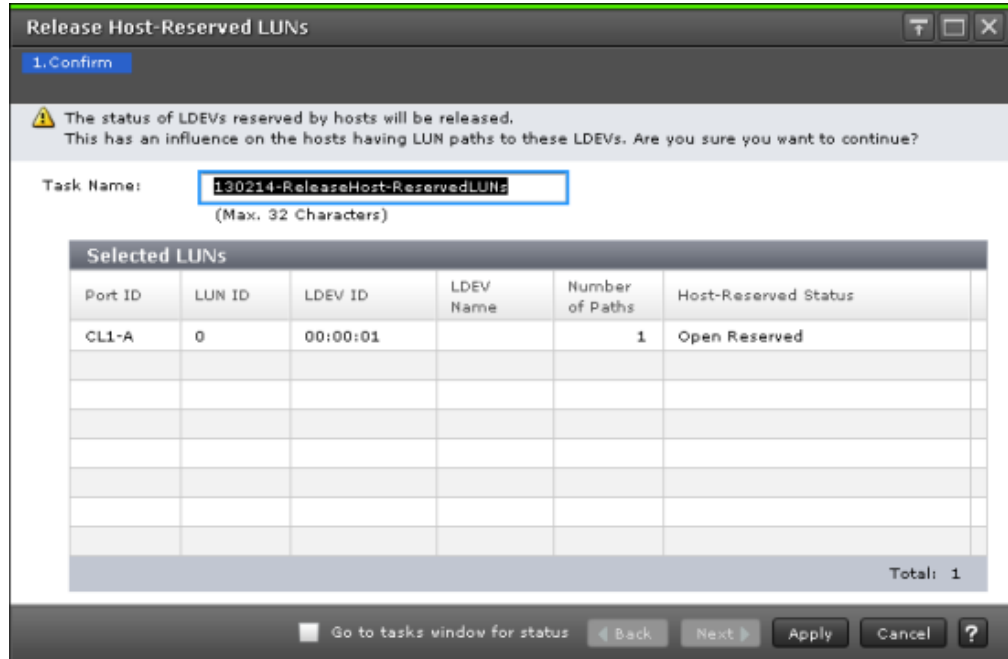
LUNs table

LUNs reserved by hosts are displayed.

Item	Description
Port ID	Displays names of ports.
LUN ID	Displays IDs of the LUNs.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays names of LDEVs.
Number of Paths	Displays the number of paths set for the relevant LDEV.
Host-Reserved Status	<p>Displays the status of the host-reserved LUN.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Open Reserved: LUN is reserved by the Open Reserved command. ▪ Persistent Reserved: LUN is reserved by the Persistent Group Reserve command. ▪ Mainframe Reserved: LUN is reserved by the mainframe system. ▪ ACA Active: LUN is in the ACA active status.
Virtual Storage Machine	<p>Information about the virtual storage machine.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Model / Serial Number: Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine that has LDEV. ▪ LDEV ID: Virtual LDEV ID. If a Virtual LDEV ID is not assigned to LDEV, this column is blank. ▪ Device Name: Virtual device name, which is a combination of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and the virtual CVS attribute. Values of the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute appear only for items that have been set. This column is blank when the virtual emulation type, virtual LUSE volume number, and virtual CVS attribute are not set. If the virtual CVS attribute is set, CVS is attached as the suffix to the device name. ▪ SSID: Virtual SSID. If Virtual SSID is not set for LDEV, this column is blank.
Release Host-Reserved LUNs	Displays the Release Host-Reserved LUNs window.

Release Host-Reserved LUNs wizard

Release Host-Reserved LUNs window



LUNs to release the reservations by hosts are displayed.

Selected LUNs table

Item	Description
Port ID	Displays names of ports.
LUN ID	Displays IDs of the LUNs.
LDEV ID	LDEV identifier, which is the combination of LDKC, CU, and LDEV.
LDEV Name	Displays names of LDEVs.
Number of Paths	Displays the number of paths set for the relevant LDEV.
Host-Reserved Status	Displays the status of the host-reserved LUN. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open Reserved: LUN is reserved by the Open Reserved command. Persistent Reserved: LUN is reserved by the Persistent Group Reserve command.

Item	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mainframe Reserved: LUN is reserved by the mainframe system. ▪ ACA Active: LUN is in the ACA active status.

View Login WWN Statuses window

The screenshot shows a window titled "View Login WWN Statuses" containing a table with the following data:

Port ID	HBA WWN	Host Name	Host Group Name	Status
CL1-A	50060E8006FC2404			Logged In
CL5-A	500143800133D264			Logged In
CL7-B	50060E8006FC2465			Logged In

The window also includes a "Filter" section with "ON" and "OFF" options, a "Total: 3" indicator at the bottom right, and a "Close" button.

Login WWNs table

Item	Description
Port ID	Displays names of ports.
HBA WWN	Displays the HBA WWNs and their icons.
Host Name	Displays the names of hosts.
Host Group Name	Displays the names of host groups.
Status	Displays the host login status (Logged In or Logged Out).

Port Properties window

The screenshot shows a window titled "Port Properties" with a tree view on the left and a table of properties on the right. The tree view is expanded to "Port Properties". The table contains the following data:

Port Properties		
Port ID		CL3-D
Type		iSCSI
IPv4	IP Address	192.168.0.22
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0
IPv6	Mode	Disabled
	Link Local Address	-
	Link Local Address Status	-
	Global Address	-
	Global Address Status	-
	Global Address 2	-
	Global Address 2 Status	-
	Subnet Prefix	-
	Assigned Default Gateway	-
	Current Default Gateway	-
Default Gateway Status	-	
Speed		10 Gbps
Security		Disabled
Attribute		Target
TCP Port Number		3260
Ethernet MTU Size	MTU	1500 Bytes
	Linked MTU	-1 Bytes
MAC Address		00:00:00:00:00:00
Keep Alive Timer		60 Second(s)
Selective ACK		Enabled
Delayed ACK		Enabled
Maximum Window Size		64 KB
iSNS Server	Mode	Disabled
	IP Address	-
	TCP Port Number	-
VLAN	Tagging Mode	Disabled
	ID	-
iSCSI Virtual Port Mode		Disabled

Port Properties table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Type	Type of the port. iSCSI: iSCSI port.

Item	Description
IPv4	<p>Information about IPv4. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IP Address: IP address of the port. If two or more ports are selected, this information cannot be specified. ▪ Subnet Mask: Subnet mask of the port. ▪ Default Gateway: Default gateway of the port.
IPv6	<p>Information about IPv6. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: IPv6 setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ Link Local Address: Link local address for the port. ▪ Link Local Address Status: Link local address status for the port. ▪ Global Address: The first global address for the port. ▪ Global Address Status: Status of the first global address for the port. ▪ Global Address 2: The second global address for the port. ▪ Global Address 2 Status: Status of the second global address for the port. ▪ Subnet Prefix: Subnet prefix for the port address. ▪ Assigned Default Gateway: Assigned default gateway address for the port. ▪ Current Default Gateway: Current default gateway address for the port. ▪ Default Gateway Status: Default gateway status.
Speed	Data transfer speed for the selected port.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.

Item	Description
TCP Port Number	TCP port number. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Ethernet MTU Size	<p>MTU size on Ethernet. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ MTU: Specified MTU size. ▪ Linked MTU: Present MTU size for the data transfer.
MAC Address	MAC address.
Keep Alive Timer	Keep alive timer setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Selective ACK	Selective ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) of the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Delayed ACK	Delayed ACK setting (Enabled or Disabled) of the port. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
Maximum Window Size	Maximum window size setting. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.
iSNS Server	<p>Information about the iSNS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Mode: iSNS server setting (Enabled or Disabled). ▪ IP Address: IP address of the iSNS server. ▪ TCP Port Number: TCP port number of the iSNS server.
VLAN	<p>Information about VLAN. A hyphen (-) is displayed if the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Tagging Mode: Tagging mode setting (Enabled or Disabled) for the port. ▪ ID: VLAN identifier.

CHAP User Properties table

Item	Description
User Name	User name.
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.

iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Authentication	<p>Information about the authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name ▪ Number of Users

Host Properties window

The screenshot shows the 'Host Properties' window. The top section displays host details:

HBA iSCSI Name	iqn.test1
Host Name	hostCL2A
Port ID	CL2-A
Number of iSCSI Targets	3

The bottom section shows a table of iSCSI Targets:

iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI Target Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts
2A-G00 (00)	iqn.1994-04.j...	00 [Standard]	Disabled...	1
Target001 (01)	iqn.1994-04.j...	00 [Standard]	Disabled	1
Target002 (02)	iqn.1994-04.j...	00 [Standard]	Disabled	1

Total: 3

Host Properties table

Item	Description
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Names and their icons.
Host Name	Name of hosts.
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.

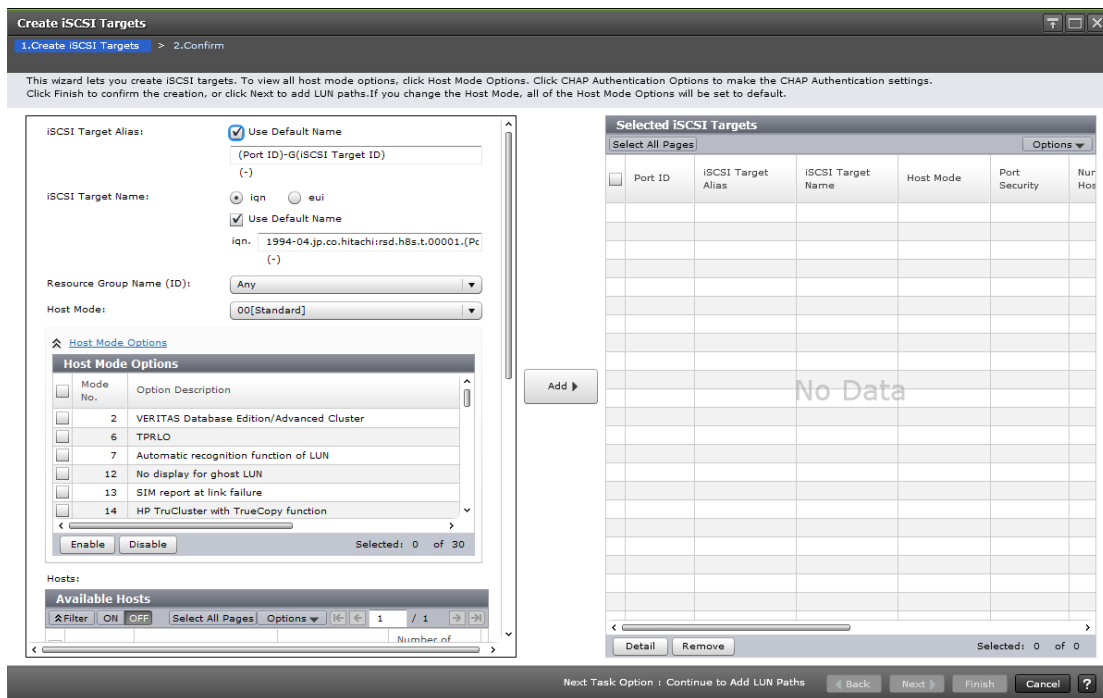
iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.

Item	Description
Host Mode	Host mode of the host group.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the host group.

Create iSCSI Targets wizard

Create iSCSI Targets window



Setting field

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Alias	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Use Default Name: If this check box is selected, the iSCSI target alias is input by default. ▪ Text box: Specify the iSCSI target alias. If Use Default Name is selected, the default value appears with the following format: <i>Port-ID-GiSCSI-target-ID</i> For instance, 1A-G00 appears. If Use Default Name is not selected, the blank field appears. You can enter up to 32 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / , ; * ? " < > .

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ iqn or eui: Select the format which you want to use. ▪ Use Default Name: If this check box is selected, the iSCSI target name is input by default. ▪ Text box: Specify the iSCSI target name. <p>If Use Default Name is selected, the default value appears with the following format:</p> <p>For the iqn format: <i>iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.Model-name.t.Serial-number.Port-identifieriSCSI-target-identifier</i></p> <p>For instance, <i>iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.t.62507.1a000</i> appears.</p> <p>For the eui format: <i>eui.(6-digits-of-OUI) (Fixed-value-given-to-each-storage)(Serial-number)(Port-name)(iSCSI-target-identifier)</i></p> <p>For instance, <i>eui.02004567A425678D</i> appears.</p> <p>If Use Default Name is not selected, the default value for the iqn format is as follows:</p> <p>For the iqn format: <i>iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.Model-name.t.Serial-number.Port-identifieriSCSI-target-identifier</i></p> <p>You can enter up to 219 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / , ; * ? " < > .</p> <p>If Use Default Name is not selected, the default value for the eui format is blank. You can enter fixed to 16 alphanumeric characters that are case-sensitive.</p>

Item	Description
Resource Group Name (ID)	Select the resource group in which the iSCSI target is created. If Any is selected, among all ports being allocated to the user, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table. If other than Any is selected, among ports assigned to the selected resource group, ports where the host group can be add are available in the Available Ports table.
Host Mode	Select the host mode from the list.

Host Mode Options table

Item	Description
Mode No.	The ID number of the host mode option.
Option Description	The description of host mode option.
Status	The setting status (Enabled or Disabled) of the host mode option.
Enabled	Indicates that the host mode option is enabled.
Disabled	Indicates that the host mode option is disabled.

Available Hosts table

This table lists information about the registered hosts.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	iSCSI name of the port.
Host Name	Name of the host.
Number of iSCSI Target	Number of the iSCSI targets.

Item	Description
New Host	Indicates whether the host is newly connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes: The host is newly added and has never been connected via a cable to any port in the storage system. No: The host has been connected via a cable to another port.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Add New Host	Adds a new host. Or, select host bus adapters then click to assign a nickname to the host bus adapter.

Available Ports table

This table lists the registered ports.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.

Authentication Method

Select the CHAP Authentication setting from Enable, Disable, or Use Host Setting.

CHAP Authentication Options

Item	Description
Mutual CHAP	Select the mutual authentication mode to Enable or Disable. If Disable is selected, the unidirectional authentication mode is performed
User Name	Specify the user name. If Disable is selected in the Mutual CHAP, this item is optionally specified. If Mutual is selected, this item must be specified. Specify the user name between 1 to 223 characters.

Item	Description
	You can use case-sensitive alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : [] , ~
Secret	Specify the secret which is used for host authentication. If Disable is selected in the Mutual CHAP, this item is optionally specified. If Mutual is selected, this item must be specified. Specify the secret (that is, a password used in CHAP authentication) between 12 to 32 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols in a secret: . - + @ _ = : [] ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. If incorrect, an error message appears when clicking Add.

Available CHAP Users table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	Name of the user.
User Seq. No.	User sequence identifier.
Number of iSCSI Target	Number of the iSCSI targets.
New CHAP User	Indicates whether the CHAP user is newly added or not. Yes: New CHAP user added by using of the Add New CHAP User window. No: Existing CHAP user.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Add New CHAP User	Click this button to add the new CHAP user. If the new CHAP user is added, Port ID is blank.

Add button

Adds the settings to the Selected iSCSI Targets table.

Selected iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name ▪ Number of Users
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the resource group containing the iSCSI target.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine.
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.
Remove	Removes the selected iSCSI targets from this table.

Next Task Option

Click Next to go to the task setting window, which is indicated in Next Task Option.

Create iSCSI Targets Confirm window



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, then click Help.

Selected iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Attribute	Port attribute.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.

Item	Description
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name ▪ Secret: If the secret is specified, the character string of six asterisks (*) appears. ▪ Number of Users
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the resource group containing the iSCSI target.
Virtual Storage Machine	Model name and serial number of the virtual storage machine.
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.

Edit iSCSI Targets wizard

Edit iSCSI Targets window

Edit iSCSI Targets

1. Edit iSCSI Targets > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit one or more properties. Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter a new value. If you change the Host Mode, all of the Host Mode Options will be set to default.

iSCSI Target Alias: 1A-G00 (Max. 32 characters)

iSCSI Target Name: iqn eui
iqn: 1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.h8s.t.00001.1a000 (Max. 219 characters)

Host Mode: 00[Standard]

Host Mode Options:

Mode No.	Option Description	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	2 VERITAS Database Edition/Advanced Cluster	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	6 TPRLO	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	7 Automatic recognition function of LUN	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	12 No display for ghost LUN	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	13 SIM report at link failure	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	14 ...	Disabled

Enable Disable Selected: 0 of 30

CHAP Authentication: Use Host Setting

Authentication Mode: Unidirectional Mutual

User Name: (Max. 223 characters)

Secret: (12 - 32 characters)

Re-enter Secret:

Back Next Finish Cancel ?

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Alias	Specify the iSCSI target alias.

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ iqn or eui: Select the format which you want to use. ▪ Text box: Specify the iSCSI target name. For the iqn format: <i>iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.Model-name.t.Serial-number.Port-identifier iSCSI-target-identifier</i> For instance, iqn.1994-04.jp.co.hitachi:rsd.r80.t.62507.1a000 appears. You can enter up to 219 ASCII characters and symbols, with the exception of: \ / , ; * ? " < > . For the eui format: <i>eui.(6-digits-of-OUI)(Fixed-value-given-to-each-storage)(Serial-number)(Port-name) iSCSI-target-identifier</i> For instance, eui.02004567A425678D appears. You can enter fixed to 16 alphanumeric characters that are case-sensitive.
Host Mode	Select the host mode from the list.

Host Mode Options table

To set the host mode option, select a host mode option, then click Enable. If you do not need a host mode option, select an unnecessary host mode option, then click Disable.

Item	Description
Mode No.	Number identifier of the host mode option.
Option Description	Description of the host mode option.
Status	Indicates the current status setting (Enabled or Disabled) of the host mode option on this host group.
Enable	Enables the host mode option.

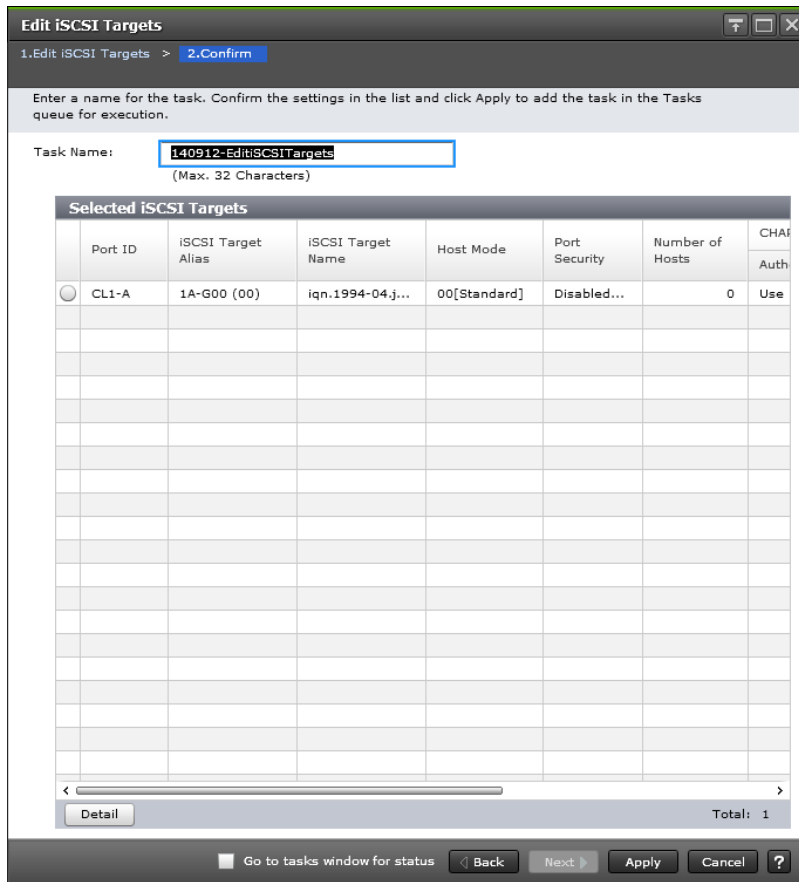
Item	Description
Disable	Disables the host mode option.

Item	Description
Authentication Method	Select the authentication setting from CHAP, None or Comply with Host Setting. If CHAP is selected, following items can be specified.
Mutual CHAP	Select Enable or Disable. If Enable is selected, the mutual authentication mode is performed. If Disable is selected, the unidirectional authentication mode is performed.
User Name	Specify the user name between 1 to 223 characters. You can use case-sensitive alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : [] , ~
Secret	Specify the secret (that is, a password used in CHAP authentication) between 12 to 32 characters. You can use alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols in a secret: . - + @ _ = : [] ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. If incorrect, an error message appears when clicking Finish.

Edit iSCSI Targets Confirm window



Note: If multiple tasks that are connected in one wizard are executed, this window shows all configured items of tasks. To show information of configured items other than this topic, click Back to display related setting windows, then click Help.



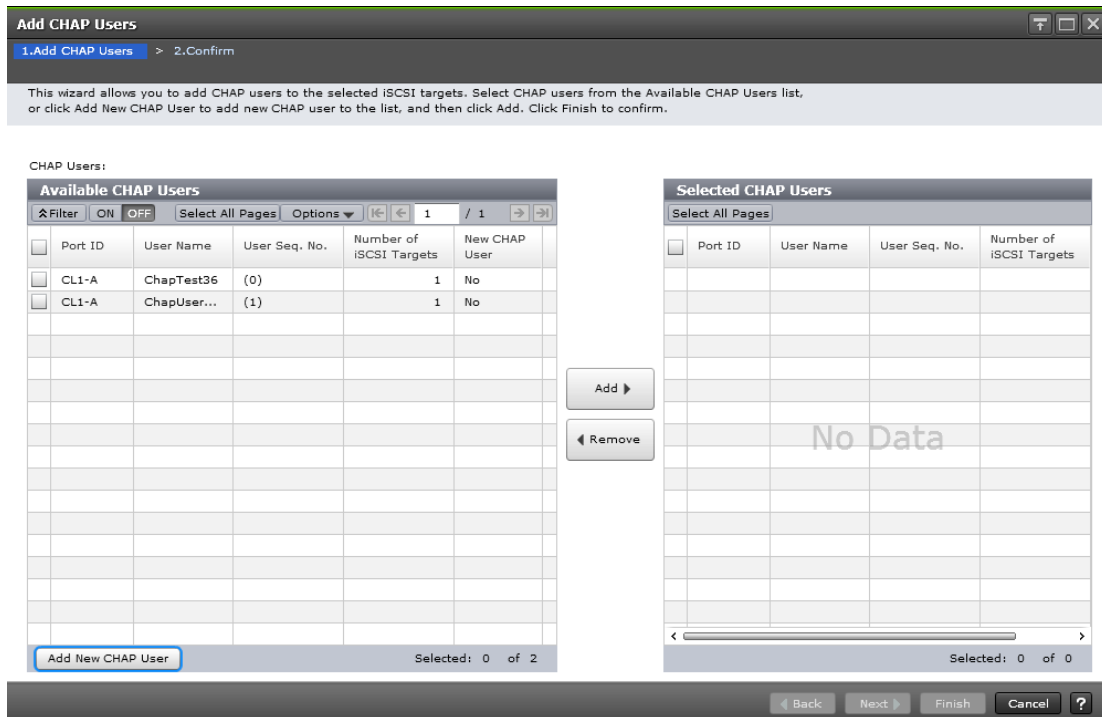
Selected iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Attribute	Port attribute.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.

Item	Description
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name ▪ Secret: If the secret is specified, the character string of six asterisks (*) appears. ▪ Number of Users
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.

Add CHAP Users wizard when selected iSCSI target

Add CHAP Users window



Available CHAP Users table

This window lists CHAP users that can be registered to the selected iSCSI target

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	Name of the user.
User Seq. No.	User sequence identifier.
Number of iSCSI Target	Number of the iSCSI targets.
New CHAP User	Indicates whether the CHAP user is newly added or not. Yes: New CHAP user added by using the Add New CHAP User window. No: Existing CHAP user.
Add New CHAP User	Click this button to add the new CHAP user. If the new CHAP user is added, Port ID is blank.
Add	Adds CHAP users selected from the Available LDEVs table to the Selected LDEVs table.
Remove	Removes logical volumes from the Selected LDEVs table.

Selected CHAP Users table

This table lists CHAP users that are selected from the Available CHAP Users table.

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	Name of the user.
User Seq. No.	User sequence identifier.
Number of iSCSI Target	Number of the iSCSI targets.
New CHAP User	Indicates whether the CHAP user is newly added or not. Yes: New CHAP user added by using the Add New CHAP User window. No: Existing CHAP user.

Item	Description
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled

Edit CHAP User wizard

Edit CHAP User window

Edit CHAP User

1. Edit CHAP User > 2. Confirm

This wizard lets you edit one or more properties. Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter a new value.

Port ID: CL1-A

User Name: ChapTest36
(Max. 223 characters)

Secret:
(12 - 32 characters)

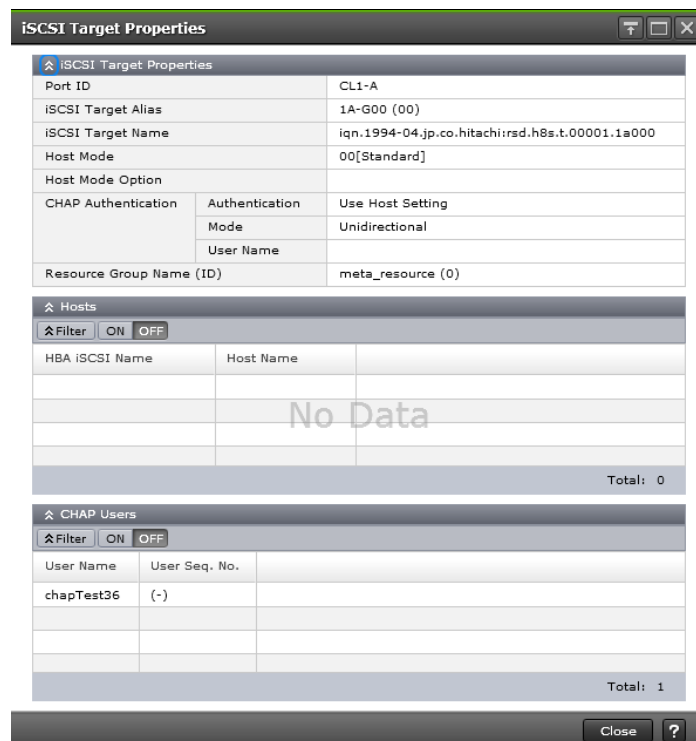
Re-enter Secret:

◀ Back Next ▶ Finish Cancel ?

Selected CHAP User table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	User name.
Secret	Secret: If the secret is specified, the character string of six asterisks (*) appears.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.
Detail	Details about the selected the CHAP user.

iSCSI Target Properties window



iSCSI Target Properties table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias and identifier.

Item	Description
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Host Mode Option	The number of host mode options that are enabled.
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting ▪ Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled ▪ User Name
Resource Group Name (ID)	Resource group name and identifier of the resource group containing the iSCSI target.

Hosts table

Item	Description
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI name.
Host Name	Host name.

CHAP Users table

Item	Description
User Name	Name of the user.
User Seq. No.	User sequence identifier.

Add New CHAP User window

Add New CHAP User

This dialog lets you add a CHAP user.

User Name:
(Max. 223 characters)

Secret:
(12 - 32 characters)

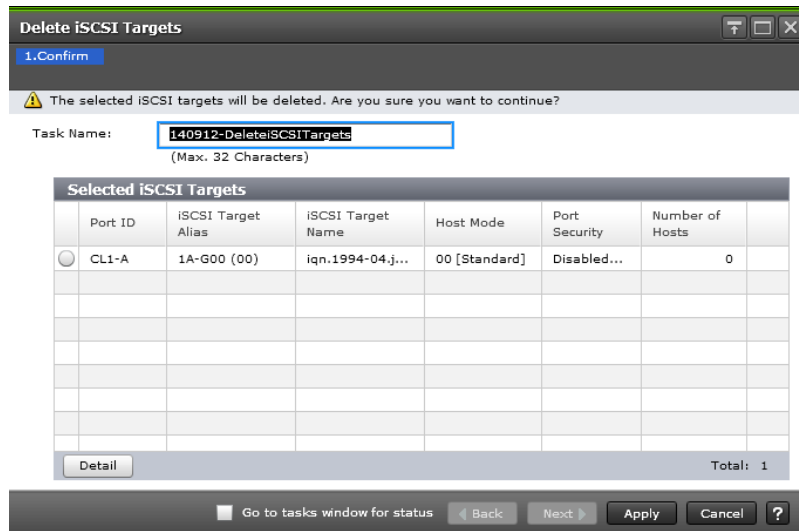
Re-enter Secret:

OK Cancel ?

Setting field

Item	Description
User Name	Specify the user name between 1 to 223 characters. You can use case-sensitive alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : [] , ~
Secret	Specify the secret to be used for host authentication. Use characters, including alphanumerics, spaces, and the following symbols: . - + @ _ = : [] ~
Re-enter Secret	Specify the secret again for confirmation. If incorrect, the error message appears when clicking OK.

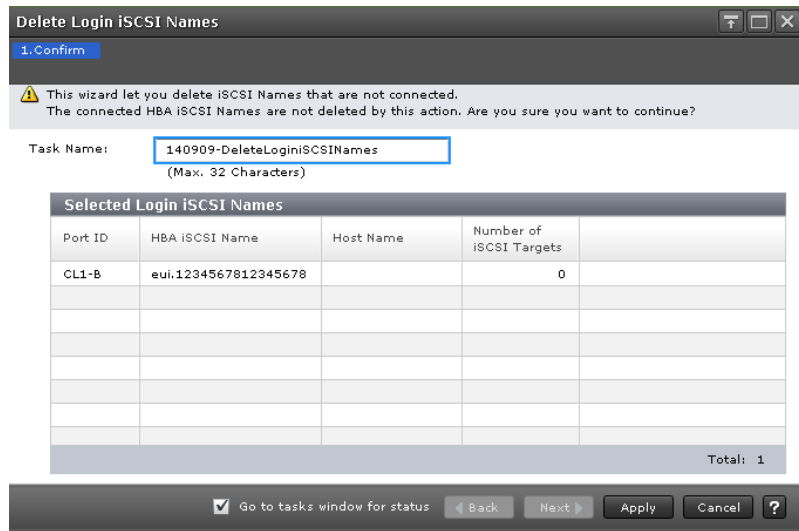
Delete iSCSI Targets window



Selected iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias name and identifier.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.
Detail	Details about the selected iSCSI target.

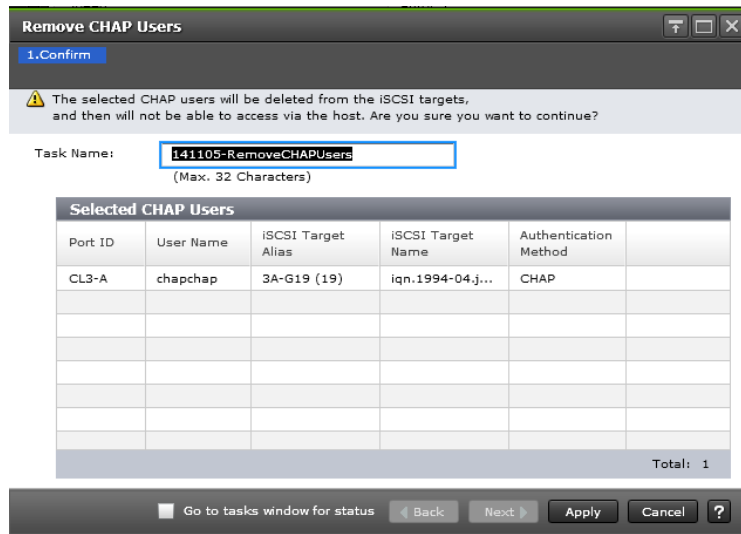
Delete Login iSCSI Names window



Selected Login iSCSI Names table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI names and their icons.
Host Name	Name of hosts.
Number of iSCSI Targets	Number of iSCSI targets.

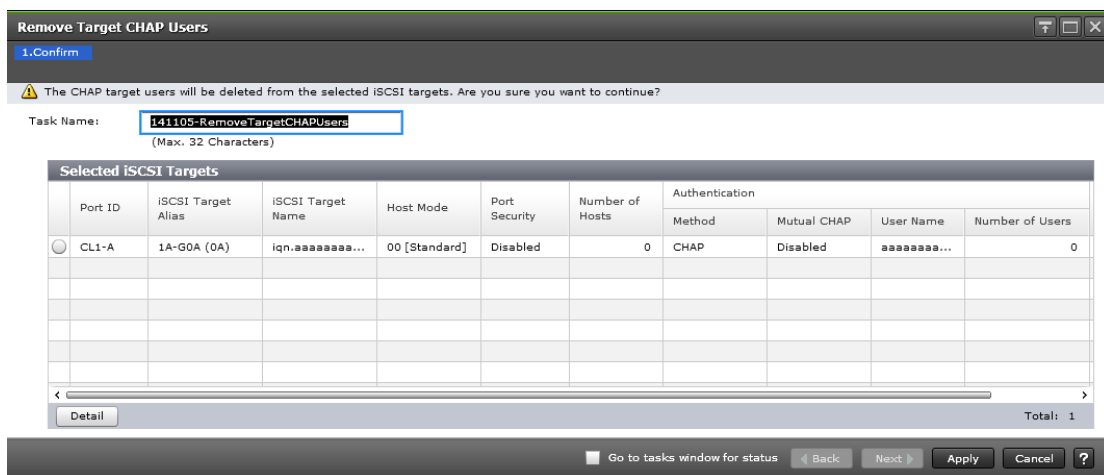
Remove CHAP Users window



Selected CHAP Users table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
User Name	User name.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias name and identifier.
Authentication	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.
Detail	Authentication setting information (CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting).

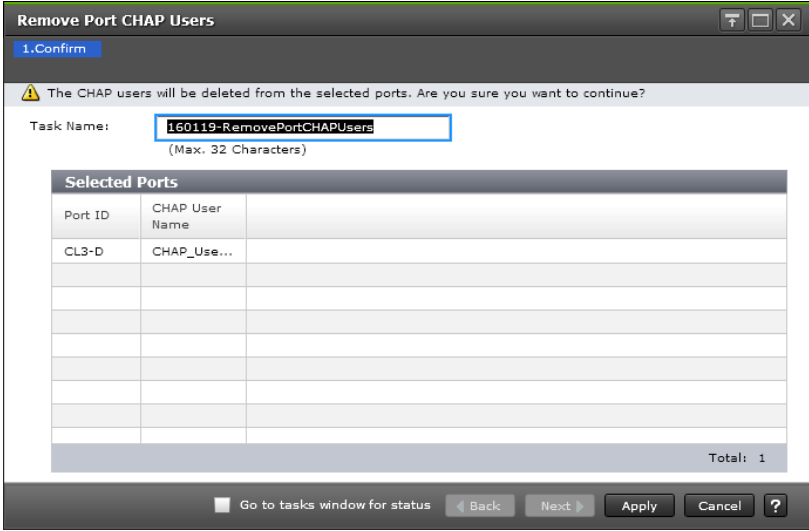
Remove Target CHAP Users window



Selected iSCSI Targets table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias name and identifier.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name.
Host Mode	The host mode of the iSCSI target.
Port Attribute	Port attribute.
Port Security	LUN security setting (Enabled or Disabled) on the port.
Number of Hosts	Number of hosts registered in the iSCSI target.
Authentication	Information about the authentication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Method: Authentication method that is CHAP, None, or Comply with Host Setting Mutual CHAP: Mutual CHAP setting that is Enabled or Disabled User Name
Detail	When clicking this button with selected a row, the iSCSI Target Properties window is displayed.

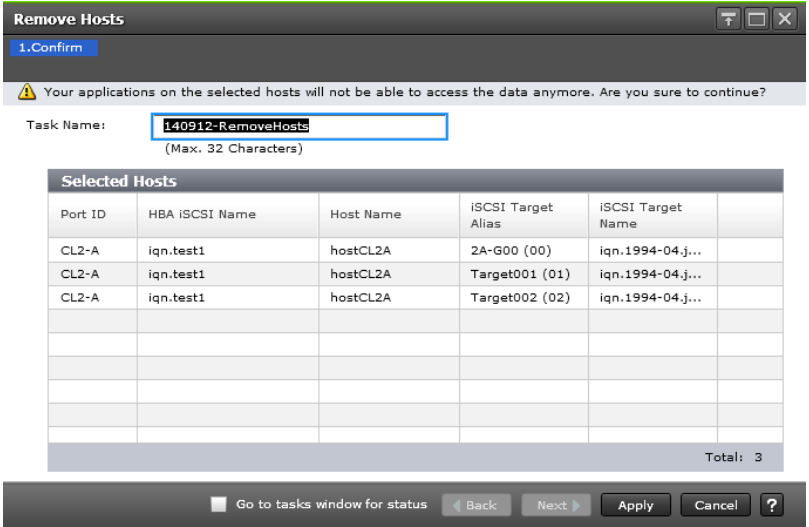
Remove Port CHAP Users window



Selected Ports table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
CHAP User Name	The CHAP user name set to the port.

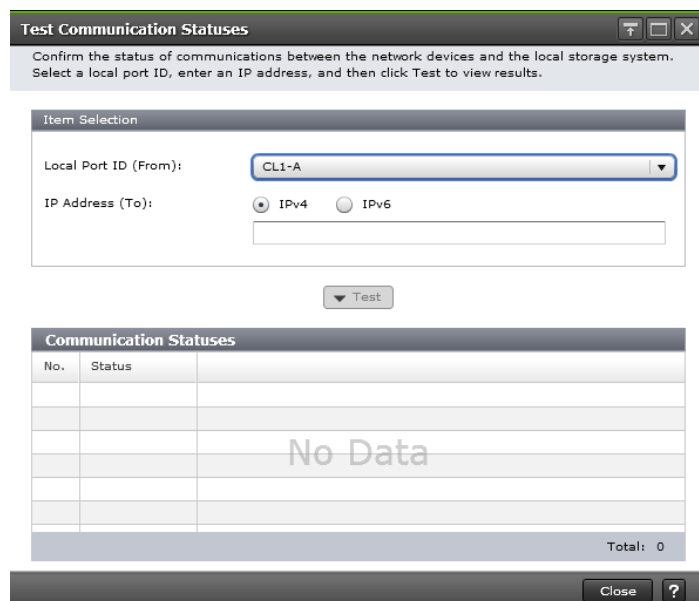
Remove Hosts window



Selected Hosts table

Item	Description
Port ID	Identifier of the port.
HBA iSCSI Name	HBA iSCSI Names.
Host Name	Name of the host.
iSCSI Target Alias	iSCSI target alias name and identifier.
iSCSI Target Name	iSCSI target name

Test Communication Statuses window



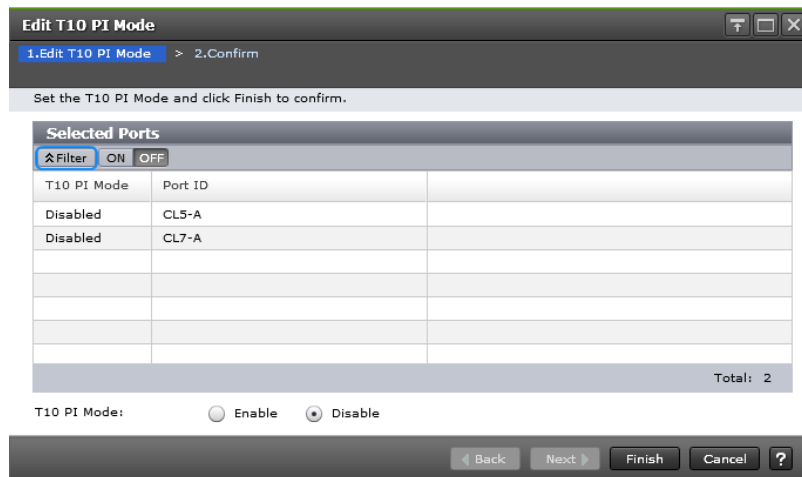
Item Selection

Item	Description
Local Port ID (From)	Port name of the local storage system. Ports for which the iSCSI virtual port mode is enabled are not displayed.

Item	Description
IP Address (To)	Specify an IP address of a device of which the ping command is executed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ IPv4: Select this item if the device is adopted to IPv4. Specify the address in a text box. ▪ IPv6: Select this item if the device is adopted to IPv6. Specify the address in a text box.
Test	Click to execute the ping command.
No.	Number of times of command executions from 1 to 5.
Status	Status of the result of the ping command execution.

Edit T10 PI Mode wizard

Edit T10 PI Mode window



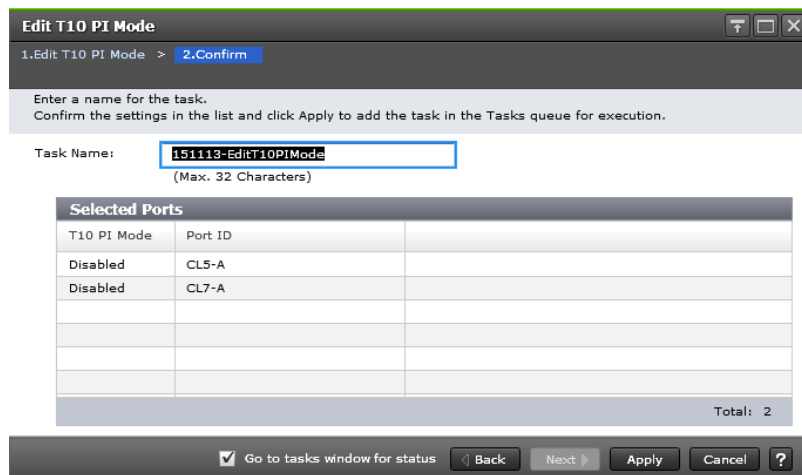
Selected Ports table

Item	Description
Port Name	Port name.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).

Information setting area

Item	Description
T10 PI Mode	<p>Select the T10 PI mode for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled: T10 PI mode on the port is enabled. Disabled: T10 PI mode on the port is disabled.

Edit T10 PI Mode confirmation window



Selected Ports table

Item	Description
Port Name	Port name.
T10 PI Mode	The port's T10 PI Mode setting (Enabled or Disabled).

Appendix G: Notices

This software product includes the following redistributable software.

LZ4 Library

This software product includes LZ4 Library.

LZ4 Library

Copyright © 2011-2014, Yann Collet

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Glossary

ALUA

See *asymmetric logical unit access*.

asymmetric access

A method of defining a preferred path for sending and receiving data when multiple alternate paths are used between a server and storage systems, such as a cross-path configuration for global-active device. To use, ALUA must be enabled.

asymmetric logical unit access (ALUA)

Asymmetric logical unit access functionality of SCSI. When multiple alternate paths are used to connect storage systems, or a server and one or more storage systems, you can define a preferred path in a storage system, and issue I/O requests from the server to storage systems. If a failure occurs in a preferred path, an alternate path is used. See also *asymmetric access*.

bind mode

In bind mode the Cache Residency Manager extents are used to hold read and write data for specific extent(s) on volume(s). Data written to the Cache Residency Manager bind area is not destaged to the drives. For bind mode, all targeted read and write data is transferred at host data transfer speed.

cache logical partition (CLPR)

Consists of virtual cache memory that is set up to be allocated to different hosts in contention for cache memory.

capacity saving

The data deduplication and data compression functions provided by the storage system controllers.

CCI

Command Control Interface

CLPR

See *cache logical partition (CLPR)*.

command device

A dedicated logical volume used only by Command Control Interface and Business Continuity Manager to interface with the storage system. Can be shared by several hosts.

copy pair

A pair of volumes in which one volume contains original data and the other volume contains the copy of the original. Copy operations can be synchronous or asynchronous, and the volumes of the copy pair can be located in the same storage system (local copy) or in different storage systems (remote copy).

A copy pair can also be called a volume pair, or just pair. A pair created by Compatible FlashCopy[®] is called a relationship.

CVS

custom volume size

deduplication system data volume

The volume used to manage data duplication in a pool. The deduplication system data volume is created when you enable deduplication on a pool.

device emulation

Indicates the type of logical volume. Mainframe device emulation types provide logical volumes of fixed size, called logical volume images (LVIs), which contain EBCDIC data in CKD format. Typical mainframe device emulation types include 3390-9 and 3390-M. Open-systems device emulation types provide logical volumes of variable size, called logical units (LUs), that contain ASCII data in FBA format. The typical open-systems device emulation type is OPEN-V.

disk controller (DKC)

The hardware component that manages front-end and back-end storage operations. The term DKC can refer to the entire storage system or to the controller components.

DKC

See *disk controller (DKC)*.

DKCMAIN

disk controller main. Refers to the microcode for the storage system.

DSD volume

Used in Hitachi Command Suite to identify a deduplication system data volume.

dump

A collection of data that is saved to a file when an error or crash occurs. The data is used by support personnel to determine the cause of the error or crash.

Dump tool

Downloads Device Manager - Storage Navigator configuration information onto recording media for backup and troubleshooting purposes.

emulation

The operation of a storage system to emulate the characteristics of a different storage system. For device emulation, the mainframe host recognizes the logical devices on the storage system as 3390-x devices. For controller emulation, the mainframe host recognizes the control units (CUs) on the storage system as 2105 or 2107 controllers.

The storage system operates the same as the storage system being emulated.

emulation group

A set of device emulation types that can be intermixed within a RAID group and treated as a group.

external volume

A logical volume whose data resides on drives that are physically located outside the Hitachi storage system.

FC

Fibre Channel; FlashCopy

FC-AL

fibre-channel arbitrated loop

flash drive

A data drive that uses a solid-state memory device instead of a rotating hard disk.

flash module (FMD)

A high speed data storage device that includes a custom flash controller and several flash memory sub-modules on a single PCB.

HBA

host bus adapter

HDD

hard disk drive

HDT

Hitachi Dynamic Tiering

host group

A group of hosts of the same operating system platform.

host mode

Operational modes that provide enhanced compatibility with supported host platforms. Used with fibre-channel ports on RAID storage systems.

host mode option

Additional options for fibre-channel ports on RAID storage systems. Provide enhanced functionality for host software and middleware.

internal volume

A logical volume whose data resides on drives that are physically located within the storage system. See also *external volume*.

JNL

journal

journal volume

A volume that records and stores a log of all events that take place in another volume. In the event of a system crash, the journal volume logs are used to restore lost data and maintain data integrity.

In Universal Replicator, differential data is held in journal volumes on until it is copied to the S-VOL.

LDEV

logical device

logical device (LDEV)

An individual logical data volume (on multiple drives in a RAID configuration) in the storage system. An LDEV may or may not contain any data and may or may not be defined to any hosts. Each LDEV has a unique identifier or "address" within the storage system composed of the logical disk controller (LDKC) number, control unit (CU) number, and LDEV number. The LDEV IDs within a storage system do not change. An LDEV formatted for use by mainframe hosts is called a logical volume image (LVI). An LDEV formatted for use by open-system hosts is called a logical unit (LU).

logical disk controller (LDKC)

A group of 255 control unit (CU) images in the RAID storage system that is controlled by a virtual (logical) storage system within the single physical storage system. For example, the Hitachi Universal Storage Platform V storage system supports two LDKCs, LDKC 00 and LDKC 01.

logical volume image (LVI)

A logical volume that is configured for use by mainframe hosts (for example, 3390-9).

LVI

See *logical volume image*.

MF, M/F

mainframe

OPEN-V

A logical unit (LU) of user-defined size that is formatted for use by open-systems hosts.

OPEN-x

A logical unit (LU) of fixed size (for example, OPEN-3 or OPEN-9) that is used primarily for sharing data between mainframe and open-systems hosts using Hitachi Cross-OS File Exchange.

PDEV

physical device

PG

parity group. See RAID group.

pool volume (pool-VOL)

A logical volume that is reserved for storing snapshot data for Thin Image operations or write data for Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, active flash, or active flash for mainframe.

port attribute

Indicates the type of fibre-channel port: target, RCU target, or initiator.

primary volume (P-VOL)

The volume in a copy pair that contains the original data to be replicated. The data on the P-VOL is duplicated synchronously or asynchronously on the secondary volume (S-VOL).

The following Hitachi products use the term P-VOL: Thin Image, Copy-on-Write Snapshot, ShadowImage, TrueCopy, Universal Replicator, Universal Replicator for Mainframe, and High Availability Manager.

See also secondary volume.

RCU

See remote control unit.

RCU target port

A fibre-channel port that is configured to receive remote I/Os from an initiator port on another storage system.

remote control unit (RCU)

A storage system at a secondary or remote site that is configured to receive remote I/Os from one or more storage systems at the primary or main site.

resync

resynchronize.

secondary volume (S-VOL)

The volume in a copy pair that is the copy of the original data on the primary volume (P-VOL). The following Hitachi products use the term "secondary volume": Thin Image, Copy-on-Write Snapshot, ShadowImage, TrueCopy, Universal Replicator, Universal Replicator for Mainframe, and High Availability Manager.

See also primary volume.

service information message (SIM)

Messages generated by a RAID storage system when it detects an error or service requirement. SIMs are reported to hosts and displayed on Device Manager - Storage Navigator.

service processor

The computer in a storage system that hosts the Device Manager - Storage Navigator software and is used to configure and maintain the storage system.

SI

Hitachi ShadowImage

SIM

See service information message.

Slz

ShadowImage for Mainframe

SM

shared memory

SOM

See system option mode.

source volume (S-VOL)

Used only in the earlier version of the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI (still in use). This is the volume in a mainframe copy pair containing the original data that is duplicated on the target volume (T-VOL). The following Hitachi products use the term source volume: ShadowImage for Mainframe, Dataset Replication, and Compatible FlashCopy®.

In the current version of the GUI, "target volume" and "T-VOL" are replaced with "primary volume".

See also *source volume*.

SSD

solid-state drive. Also called flash drive.

SVP

See *service processor*.

syslog

The file on the SVP that includes both syslog and audit log information, such as the date and time.

system option mode (SOM)

Additional operational parameters for the RAID storage systems that enable the storage system to be tailored to unique customer operating requirements. SOMs are set on the service processor.

T-VOL

See *target volume*.

T10 PI

See *T10 Protection Information*.

T10 Protection Information (T10 PI)

A code standard defined in SCSI. T10 PI adds 8-byte protection information at every 512 bytes to validate data. By combining T10 PI with Data Integrity Extension (DIX), which enables data protection covering application and operating system, data protection from application to disk drives can be provided.

target port

A fibre-channel port that is configured to receive and process host I/Os.

target volume (T-VOL)

The volume in a mainframe copy pair that is the copy of the original data on the source volume (S-VOL). The term is used only in the earlier version of the Device Manager - Storage Navigator GUI (still in use), for the following Hitachi products: ShadowImage for Mainframe, Dataset Replication, and Compatible FlashCopy® V2.

See also *source volume*.

TC

Hitachi TrueCopy

TCz

Hitachi TrueCopy for mainframe

UR

Hitachi Universal Replicator

URz

Hitachi Universal Replicator software for Mainframe

V-VOL

virtual volume

virtual volume (V-VOL)

A logical volume in a storage system. A V-VOL has no physical storage space.

Thin Image uses V-VOLs as secondary volumes of copy pairs.

In Dynamic Provisioning, Dynamic Provisioning for Mainframe, Dynamic Tiering, Dynamic Tiering for Mainframe, active flash, and active flash for mainframe, V-VOLs are called DP-VOLs.

VLVI

Hitachi Virtual LVI

VM

volume migration; volume manager

volume shredding

Deleting the user data on a volume by overwriting all data in the volume with dummy data.

XRC

IBM® Extended Remote Copy

Index

A

- accelerated compression
 - about pools 33
 - disabling 108, 417
 - enabling 106
 - workflow for creating parity groups, LDEVs, and pools 412
- access attribute
 - changing to read/write 314
- access attributes
 - assigning to a volume 312
 - changing to read-only or protect 313
 - expiration lock 315
 - overview 310
 - permitted operations 311
 - requirements 311
 - reserving volumes 317
 - restrictions 312
 - retention term 315
- active flash 39, 119, 169, 202, 204, 217
- active flash pool
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs automatically 233
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs manually 228
- adaptive data reduction 407
- Add 817
- adding 372
- Adding CHAP users 378
- ADR 407
- alternate 349
- alternate LU paths 320
- ALU ID 384
- ALUs
 - unbinding the associated SLUs 385
 - viewing 384
- attribute 275, 304
- Attribute command 313
- auto assignment of MP blades 116

B

- blocking volumes 108

- boundary values 106
- buffer space 216

C

- capacity
 - decreasing pool capacity 281
 - pool-VOLs 275
- capacity expansion
 - about pools 33
 - disabling 108
 - enabling 106
- capacity of a slot 106
- capacity saving
 - cautions and restrictions 72
 - garbage collection 66
 - inline mode 66
 - metadata 129
 - post-process mode 66
- CCI
 - virtual storage machine operations 87
- CHAP User 820
- CHAP User Properties window 801
- CHAP Users 817
- checking 407
- Command Control Interface
 - access attributes restrictions 312
- command device
 - setting 344
- communication 830
- communication status 373
- compression
 - cautions and restrictions 72
 - disabling on a DP-VOL 298
- configuration 358
- Confirming 373
- contacting customer support 402
- copying 350, 351
- Copying selected 351
- correspondence table for defining devices 349
- create 804
- Create iSCSI Targets window 804

- creating
 - active flash pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically [233](#)
 - active flash pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually [228](#)
 - DP pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically [225](#)
 - DP pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually [221](#)
 - DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled [308](#)
 - Dynamic Tiering pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically [233](#)
 - Dynamic Tiering pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually [228](#)
 - external volume with data direct mapping enabled [304](#)
 - host group [342](#)
 - iSCSI target [374](#)
 - parity groups, LDEVs, and pools with accelerated compression [412](#)
 - pool [220](#)
 - pool with data direct mapping enabled [306](#)
 - virtual storage machine [91](#)
- Creating [304](#)
- custom policies [180](#)
- customer support [402](#)

- D**
- data direct mapping
 - disabling on a pool [309](#)
 - enabling on a pool [309](#)
- Data Retention window [649](#)
- data transfer speed
 - Fibre Channel ports [324](#)
- data-size [407](#)
- data-transfer speeds [325](#)
- decreasing pool capacity [281](#)
- deduplication
 - cautions and restrictions [72](#)
 - disabling on a DP-VOL [298](#)
 - disabling on a pool [280](#)
 - enabling on a new pool [220](#)
 - enabling on an existing pool [279](#)
- deduplication system data volume requirements [128](#)
- defined [350](#)
- defining [346](#), [349](#)
- deleting
 - all DP-VOLs with capacity saving enabled in a pool [301](#)
 - DP-VOL [300](#)
 - login iSCSI names [370](#)
- deleting (*continued*)
 - pools [288](#)
- Depletion Threshold for pools [251](#)
- Device Manager - Storage Navigator
 - virtual storage machine operations [87](#)
- devices
 - correspondence table [349](#)
- disabling
 - virtualization management setting [97](#)
- disabling accelerated compression [417](#)
- disabling compression on DP-VOLs [298](#)
- disabling deduplication on a pool [280](#)
- disabling deduplication on DP-VOLs [298](#)
- DP pool
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs automatically [225](#)
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs manually [221](#)
- DP-VOL
 - active flash [240](#)
 - changing the tiering policy level [198](#)
 - creating [240](#)
 - data direct mapping attribute [29](#)
 - deleting [300](#)
 - disabling compression [298](#)
 - disabling deduplication [298](#)
 - enabling capacity saving function [297](#)
 - enabling compression [297](#)
 - enabling deduplication [297](#)
 - full allocation [295](#)
 - protection function [238](#), [239](#)
- DP-VOL with capacity saving enabled
 - deleting all in a pool [301](#)
- DP-VOL with data direct mapping enabled
 - creating [308](#)
- DP-VOLs
 - interoperability [132](#)
 - requirements [126](#)
 - requirements for increasing capacity [289](#)
- DSD volume [66](#)
- Dynamic Provisioning
 - sharing a pool with Thin Image [28](#)
- Dynamic Tiering pool
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs automatically [233](#)
 - creating by selecting pool-VOLs manually [228](#)

- E**
- edit [514](#), [515](#), [812](#)
- Edit [820](#), [831](#)
- editing [96](#)
- Editing CHAP users [379](#)
- enabled [407](#)

- enabling
 - virtualization management setting [94](#)
- enabling capacity saving functions on DP-VOLs [297](#)
- enabling compression on DP-VOLs [297](#)
- enabling deduplication on a new pool [220](#)
- enabling deduplication on an existing pool [279](#)
- enabling deduplication on DP-VOLs [297](#)
- Error Detail dialog box [399](#)
- estimating [407](#)
- Estimating [275](#)
- estimating FMD capacity
 - for a new pool [408](#)
 - to expand an existing pool [411](#)
 - when pool capacity is insufficient [416](#)
- expanding a pool [276](#)
- expiration lock
 - enabling/disabling [315](#)
- external volume with data direct mapping enabled
 - creating [304](#)

F

- fabric topology [329](#)
- FC-AL (Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop) topology [329](#)
- Fibre Channel [346](#)
- fibre channel ports
 - configuring [324](#)
- Fibre Channel ports
 - addresses [327](#)
 - configuring [328](#)
 - data transfer speed [324](#)
- Fibre Channel topology
 - overview [329](#)
- Fibre security control function [319](#)
- finding WWN
 - AIX [340](#)
 - HP-UX [340](#)
 - IRIX [340](#)
 - Sequent [340](#)
 - Solaris [339](#)
 - Windows [339](#)
- FMD capacity
 - estimating [407](#)
 - estimating for a new pool [408](#)
 - estimating to expand an existing pool [411](#)
 - estimating when pool capacity is insufficient [416](#)
- formatting
 - a specific LDEV [112](#)
 - about formatting LDEVs [109](#)
 - Quick Format function [110](#)

G

- garbage collection [66](#)
- global storage virtualization
 - requirements and specifications [86](#)
- global-active device [52, 85, 139](#)

H

- hafdc2_estimator [407](#)
- Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform F1500 [407](#)
- Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1000 [407](#)
- Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform G1500 [407](#)
- host
 - registering in host group [342](#)
 - registering in iSCSI target [374](#)
- host bus adapters
 - changing HBA iSCSI name [363](#)
 - changing WWNs [362](#)
 - deleting from host group [368](#)
- host group
 - creating [342](#)
- host group 0
 - initializing [367](#)
- host group function [319](#)
- host groups
 - adding [371, 372](#)
 - changing host mode [364](#)
 - changing host mode options [364](#)
 - changing name [364](#)
 - deleting [369](#)
 - deleting host bus adapters [368](#)
 - editing [364](#)
- host modes
 - listed and defined [331](#)
- hosts
 - configuring [330](#)
 - configuring workflow [330](#)
 - managing [362](#)

I

- important terms [23](#)
- inline mode [66](#)
- interoperability of DP-VOLs and pool-VOLs [132](#)
- iSCSI
 - changing [363](#)
- iSCSI ports [376](#)
- iSCSI security function [319](#)
- iSCSI target
 - creating [374](#)
- iSCSI target function [319](#)

iSCSI target properties 822
iSCSI targets 367, 804
iSCSI Targets
 changing iSCSI target setting 365
 changing name 365
iSCSI virtual port mode 361

K

key terms 23

L

LDEV
 size calculations 102
LDEVs
 about LDEV formatting 109
 blocking 108
 deleting (converting to free space) 115
 editing name 115
 formatting a specific LDEV 112
 formatting in a parity group 113
 Quick Format function 110
 restoring blocked LDEVs 114
LDEVs with ALU attribute 382
leap year 313
license information
 LZ4 833
logical units
 workflow for configuring 321
logical volumes
 managing 319
login iSCSI names
 deleting 370
LU paths
 configuration workflow 346
 configuring 346
 configuring on Fibre Channel 320
 deleting 352
 managing 352
 rules, restrictions, and guidelines 322
 viewing settings 354
LUN
 defined 320
LUN security
 enabling on ports 356
 example of disabling 355
 example of enabling 355
LUN security on ports
 disabling 357
LZ4 license information 833

M

management area capacity
 open-systems volume 105
managing
 hosts 362
managing logical volumes
 rules, restrictions, and guidelines 322
mapped capacity 197
metadata 129
migrating V-VOL data 245
monitoring 416
monitoring and tier relocation settings 213
monitoring capacity 245
monitoring pools 248
MP blade
 enabling/disabling auto assignment 116
multi VLAN 361

N

Network 358
Network configuration for iSCSI 358
nicknames
 changing 362, 363
nondisruptive migration 84

O

operating system and file system capacity 130

P

pair operations
 for virtual storage machine pairs 89
parity group
 enabling accelerated compression 106
parity groups
 configuring volumes 99
parity groups confirmation window 515
parity groups window 515
performance
 optimizing by setting data transfer speed for a
 Fibre Channel port 324
Performance Monitor
 automatic starting considerations 312
point-to-point topology 329
pool
 accelerated compression-enabled 33
 changing a Dynamic Provisioning pool to a
 Dynamic Tiering pool 211
 creating 220

- pool (*continued*)
 - creating active flash pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically 233
 - creating active flash pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually 228
 - creating DP pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically 225
 - creating DP pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually 221
 - creating Dynamic Tiering pool by selecting pool-VOLs automatically 233
 - creating Dynamic Tiering pool by selecting pool-VOLs manually 228
 - disabling data direct mapping 309
 - disabling deduplication 280
 - enabling data direct mapping 309
 - enabling deduplication 220, 279
 - prerequisites for creating 220
 - sharing with Dynamic Provisioning and Thin Image 28
 - shrinking 285
 - viewing capacity information 273
 - pool auto expansion 35
 - pool capacity
 - decreasing 281, 285
 - increasing 276
 - stop decreasing 286
 - pool capacity information
 - viewing 273
 - pool information
 - viewing 271
 - pool name
 - changing 277
 - pool subscription limit
 - changing 255
 - pool threshold
 - changing 255
 - pool with data direct mapping enabled
 - creating 306
 - pool-VOLs
 - interoperability 132
 - requirements 123
 - pools
 - deleting 288
 - managing 271
 - recovering 281
 - requirements 120
 - utilization thresholds 251
 - ports
 - rules, restrictions, and guidelines 322
 - Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets window 654
 - post-process mode 66
 - protection function for DP-VOLs
 - enabling and disabling 239
 - provisioning operations
 - for virtualized resources 89
 - system requirements for 41
- Q**
- queue depth 322
 - Quick Format 110
- R**
- reclaiming pages in a V-VOL 293
 - remove port chap users window 829
 - Removing 367
 - Removing CHAP users 379, 380
 - Removing target CHAP users 380
 - requirements
 - shared memory 42
 - reserved capacity 197
 - reserving volumes with access attributes 317
 - restoring blocked volumes 114
 - retention term
 - changing access attributes 315
- S**
- S-VOL disable attribute 316
 - saving rate 407
 - selected 351
 - service information messages (SIMs) 257
 - setting
 - T10 PI mode on a port 373
 - ShadowImage 141
 - shared memory
 - requirements 42
 - shrinking a pool 285
 - SIMs
 - completing automatically 269
 - completing manually 270
 - for HDP/HDT 257
 - overview 257
 - size calculations
 - LDEV 102
 - slot capacity 106
 - SLU ID 384
 - SLUs
 - unbinding from ALUs 385
 - viewing 384
 - software license information

- software license information (*continued*)
 - LZ4 833
- specifications
 - Virtual LUN volumes 100
- statuses 830
- storing data 35
- subscription limit of a pool
 - changing 255
- SVOS RF 8.3.0 407
- System Area 275
- system requirements 41

T

- T10 PI mode
 - setting on a port 373
- T10 PI Mode 831
- technical support 402
- terms 23
- test 830
- Thin Image
 - interoperability restrictions with Dynamic Provisioning 143
 - sharing a pool with Dynamic Provisioning 28
- Thin Image pairs
 - controlling behavior in a depleted DP pool 256
- thin provisioning
 - advantages 27
 - configuring 119
 - overview 119
 - work flow 33
 - workflow 143
- thin provisioning requirements 120
- tier capacity
 - reserving 185
 - reserving example 186
- tier rank 289
- tier relocation
 - rules, restrictions, and guidelines 152
- tier relocation log file 171
- tier relocation settings 213
- tiering
 - workflow 202
- tiering policy
 - changing execution modes example 190
 - notes on using 188
 - overview 179
 - relationship with graphs 183
 - relationship with tiers 182
 - reserving tier capacity 185
 - setting on a V-VOL 182

- tiering policy level
 - changing 198
- tool 407
- topology
 - example of FC-AL and point-to-point 329
- troubleshooting
 - Dynamic Provisioning 386
- troubleshooting for Data Retention Utility 318, 399
- TrueCopy 139

U

- unbind SLUs window 505
- unbinding SLUs from ALUs 385
- Universal Replicator 140
- used capacity 197
- UUID
 - clearing settings 353
 - setting 347

V

- V-VOL
 - active flash 240
 - creating 240
- V-VOL full allocation 129
- V-VOL page reservation requirement 129
- V-VOLs
 - changing name 291
 - increasing capacity 290
 - managing 271
 - releasing pages 293
 - requirements for increasing capacity 289
 - stop releasing pages 294
- VASA integration 382
- Viewing formatted pool capacity 273, 302, 303
- Viewing rebalancing progress 274
- virtual LDEV ID
 - setting 96
- Virtual LUN
 - specifications 100
- Virtual LUN volume specifications 100
- Virtual Partition Manager 143
- virtual port mode 361
- virtual storage machine pairs
 - pair operations for 89
- virtual storage machines
 - about 83
 - creating 91
 - operations supported by CCI and Device Manager - Storage Navigator 87
 - pair operations 89

- virtual storage machines (*continued*)
 - provisioning operations for [89](#)
 - requirements and specifications [86](#)
- virtualization management setting
 - disabling [97](#)
 - enabling [94](#)
- virtualization management settings [96](#)
- virtualized resources
 - about [83](#)
- Volume Migration
 - automatic starting considerations [312](#)
- volumes
 - blocking [108](#)
 - boundary values [106](#)
 - restoring blocked volumes [114](#)
- VSP F1500 [407](#)
- VSP G1000 [407](#)
- VSP G1500 [407](#)
- vSphere VVOL [382](#)
- WVOL [382](#)

W

- Warning Threshold for pools [251](#)
- WWN
 - changing [362](#)
 - deleting from WWN table [369](#)
 - deleting old WWNs [369](#)
 - finding on AIX, IRIX, or Sequent [340](#)
 - finding on different operating systems [338](#)
 - finding on HP-UX [340](#)
 - finding on Solaris [339](#)
 - finding on Windows [339](#)

Z

- zero pages
 - reclaiming [292](#)
- Zero Read Cap mode [652](#)

Hitachi Vantara



Corporate Headquarters
2845 Lafayette Street
Santa Clara, CA 95050-2639 USA
HitachiVantara.com | community.HitachiVantara.com

Contact Information
USA: 1-800-446-0744
Global: 1-858-5474526
HitachiVantara.com/contact